





Class F 386

Book .W91

Copyright N<sup>o</sup> Copy 2

**COPYRIGHT DEPOSIT.**



















THE EVOLUTION OF THE TEXAS FLAG.

- No. 1.—Flag of San Jacinto.  
 No. 2.—National Standard of Republic (January 21, 1839), present State Flag.  
 No. 3.—Flag of the Alamo.  
 No. 4.—San Felipe Flag (February 29, 1836).  
 No. 5.—Flag of Goliad and Velasco (Brown's).  
 No. 6.—McGahey Flag (1835).

- No. 7.—Flag of Ward's Georgia Battalion.  
 No. 8.—Captain Dodson's Flag (September, 1835).  
 No. 9.—Naval Flag (April 9, 1836).  
 No. 10.—Captain Burroughs's Flag (1836).  
 No. 11.—National Standard of Republic (December 10, 1836).

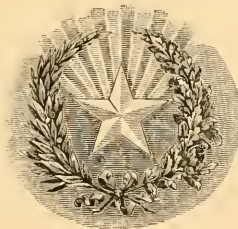
A COMPLETE  
HISTORY OF TEXAS

FOR SCHOOLS, COLLEGES, AND  
GENERAL USE

BY

DUDLEY G. WOOTEN, M.A.

VICE-PRESIDENT AND FELLOW TEXAS STATE HISTORICAL ASSOCIATION  
MEMBER SOUTHERN HISTORY ASSOCIATION



DALLAS  
THE TEXAS HISTORY COMPANY

47296

Library of Congress
TWO COPIES RECEIVED
SEP 14 1900
Copyright entry
Oct. 19, 1900
No. A. 26006
FIRST COPY.
2nd Copy Delivered to:
ORDER DIVISION
NOV 23 1900

COPYRIGHT, 1899,  
BY  
WILLIAM G. SCARFF.

*All Rights Reserved.*

Folk  
1899

WILLIAM G. SCARFF  
1899

## PREFACE.

**N**OTWITHSTANDING more has been written in a desultory way concerning Texas than of any other one American State, a thorough, connected, and systematic history of the country and its people, from the earliest known fact to the latest recorded event, has never been satisfactorily accomplished. It is not pretended that within the limits of a volume of this character the desired object has been fully attained; but it is believed that reasonable success has been reached in giving a very comprehensive and methodical account of the various stages in the development of the district and people embraced within the vast boundaries of Texas. A possible criticism of the book, as a school history, may be urged upon the score of its somewhat elaborate and difficult treatment of some of the topics discussed, especially in the earlier chapters. But upon reflection it is thought this objection is not a serious one. The great defect in all the histories of Texas that have heretofore been published, both for general and school use, has been their meagreness in the treatment of the essential and controlling facts in the early history of the country. Its annals as a Spanish and Mexican province have been presented more in the style of a romantic episode, than as part of a great colonial system whose government and institutions form one of the most interesting studies in the history of modern civilization. So, too, the period of the Revolution and Republic has been treated as a sort of spectacular display of valor and adventure, in which Mexican cruelty, Texan bravery, and the petty details of Indian outrages were of sole importance; instead of viewing these matters as mere incidents in the foundation of a sturdy commonwealth, whose laws and institutions were the natural product of race inheritance and transmitted qualities. It has been the author's idea that a book like this could afford to contain and suggest too much rather than too little. The intelligent and efficient methods of modern instruction will readily enable the competent teacher to

omit what is considered superfluous, to make clear what seems difficult, and to follow the general plan of the volume in its attempt to present the whole story of Texan development.

The author has freely availed himself of all that has been printed,—and much that has not been,—and he has sought to present the subject in its logical and chronological order, with as much particularity and as little of unnecessary detail as possible ; and at the same time to keep before the mind the entire field of study, as one complete and continuous action in real life and growth. So many sources of information and assistance have been drawn upon that the author is at a loss how to express his acknowledgments. The standard authorities used in the preparation of the book are mostly cited in the course of the “Parallel Readings” appended to the various chapters. As the Editor of William G. Scarff’s “Comprehensive History of Texas,” I have had access to all the manuscript and materials collected for that large work, and have used the knowledge thus acquired. On all early events in the history of Spanish America and Mexico the monumental volumes of H. H. Bancroft and Justin Winsor’s “Narrative and Critical History of America” have been accepted as authority. From the latter, by kind permission of the publishers, Messrs. Houghton, Mifflin & Co., several maps and illustrations have been used. For the pictures of scenes and localities around San Antonio, I am indebted partly to the handsome little volume of Mr. William Corner on that historic place. I am also grateful for the liberal permission of the *Cosmopolitan* magazine to reproduce several illustrations from that periodical, and to Messrs. Harper Brothers, The Woolfall Company, and the American Book Company for the reproduction of pictures from their publications. Valuable illustrations have also been obtained from Mrs. M. Looscan, Andrew J. Houston, Professor E. T. Dumble, and from many other persons and sources too numerous to be here named, but whose contributions to the work have my grateful remembrance, and will find reward in the appreciation which is solicited for this attempt to present Texas history in a new garb.

DUDLEY G. WOOTEN.

DALLAS, TEXAS, September, 1899.

## SUGGESTIONS TO TEACHERS.



**T**HE methods for the practical use of this History in school instruction will be apparent upon slight examination of the work. Its plan is not materially different from that of a number of approved historical textbooks now in use in our schools. Following each chapter is a list of "Questions," covering in detail every important fact and event contained in the preceding chapter. These can be used for recitations and review. Then comes a "Topical Analysis" of the subject-matter of the chapter, under the several most obvious and instructive historical themes embraced in the chapter. The idea has been not to make this analysis merely a synopsis of the chapter, but to embrace the broad general features of historical thought and investigation suggested by the chapter. In many instances the analyses will be found to contain topics not fully discussed in the text, but whose direct and logical relation to the subject will be apparent to any thoughtful student of history. Such topics should, when practicable, be pursued by parallel readings of other works on the history of the times and events discussed. For this purpose a short list of historical authorities has been appended to each chapter under the head of "Parallel Readings." It is especially urged that the classes be encouraged to consult these writings, and, in order to more fully carry out the plan, essays and exercises in reading by the class can be employed to promote interest and proficiency in the subjects under investigation. The "Tables of Contemporaneous Events" are intended to serve the same general purpose of keeping up in the student's mind the connection between events in Texas history and those that were transpiring on the broader arena of the world's life at the same time. The whole plan of the book has been to make the study of Texas history a

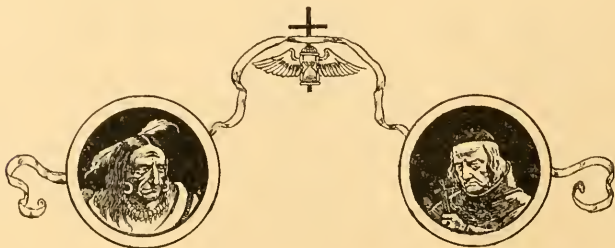
part of the study of the life and growth of humanity, as exemplified in the annals of many nations and diverse localities.

At the end of the chapters will also be found some suggestions under the head of "Geography." These cannot be too carefully followed. One of the greatest obstacles to a correct understanding of historical transactions is the vague and unsatisfactory idea most students and readers have of the scenes and surroundings in which the events transpired and the personages acted.

The fundamental object of the author, in the outset of the History, has been to impress upon the student a true conception of the great system of Spanish Discovery and Colonization, under which and out of which Texas became an inhabited country and afterwards a political force. Then the results of this intimate relation between New Spain and Texas, as evidenced in the subsequent social, religious, and political fortunes of the Province, Republic, and State, are sought to be shown. An intelligent perception of this feature of the subject furnishes the key to the history of revolutionary Texas, and incidentally to that of Mexico and the whole of Spanish America as well.

The numerous maps and illustrations have been chosen in line with the general objects of the book, and will be found to furnish valuable aids to the understanding of the text, both by their direct illustration of the events related and by their suggestive bearing on the topics embraced in the study as a whole.

By one or all of the methods suggested by the several features above mentioned, it is believed a much more comprehensive and critical knowledge can be imparted in regard to a subject whose intrinsic value and interest have not heretofore been properly appreciated in our schools.





# CONTENTS.



	PAGE
INTRODUCTION . . . . .	xiii
ANALYSIS OF THE SUBJECT . . . . .	I



## Preliminary Period, 1492-1687.

GENERAL VIEW OF DISCOVERY AND EXPLORATION IN THE  
WESTERN HEMISPHERE.



## Period II., 1528-1821.

SPANISH DISCOVERY AND DOMINATION IN TEXAS.

### CHAPTER I.

Characteristics of the Spanish Colonial System . . . . .	25
--	----

### CHAPTER II.

Early Spanish Discovery and Exploration in Texas and Adjacent Territory . . . . .	37
--	----

### CHAPTER III.

The Catholic Missions of New Spain . . . . .	47
--	----

### CHAPTER IV.

The Spanish Occupation of Texas . . . . .	61
---	----

### CHAPTER V.

The Indian Tribes of Spanish Texas . . . . .	83
--	----

### CHAPTER VI.

Events in Texas and Mexico resulting in the Revolution of 1821 . . . . .	96
--	----

## Period II., 1821-1836.

### MEXICAN RULE.

#### CHAPTER VII.

	PAGE
Colonization Enterprises of Moses and Stephen F. Austin . . . . .	128

#### CHAPTER VIII.

Other Colonies in Texas. . . . .	145
----------------------------------	-----

#### CHAPTER IX.

Political Affairs in Mexico, Coahuila, and Texas . . . . .	152
--	-----



## Period III., 1832-1836.

### THE REVOLUTION.

#### CHAPTER X.

Events leading to the Texas Revolution . . . . .	166
--	-----

#### CHAPTER XI.

The Outbreak of the Revolution; Consultation called; The Campaign of 1835 . . . . .	182
---	-----

#### CHAPTER XII.

The Consultation; The Provisional Government; Preparations for War . . . . .	197
--	-----

#### CHAPTER XIII.

The Independence of Texas declared; Campaign of 1836; Fall of the Alamo; Battle of the Coleto; Massacre at Goliad . . . . .	208
---	-----

#### CHAPTER XIV.

General Houston's Retreat; Battle of San Jacinto; Close of the War . . . . .	224
--	-----

**Period IV., 1836-1846.**

## THE REPUBLIC.

## CHAPTER XV.

	PAGE
Events following San Jacinto ; Troubles in the Army ; First General Election ; Organization of the Permanent Government . . . . .	240

## CHAPTER XVI.

Houston's First Administration ; Land and Financial Policies ; Indian and Army Troubles ; Election of President Lamar . . . . .	250
---	-----

## CHAPTER XVII.

President Lamar's Administration ; Santa Fé Expedition ; Indian Wars ; Texas System of Jurisprudence Established ; Foundation of Educational System . . . . .	263
---	-----

## CHAPTER XVIII.

Houston's Second Administration ; Financial Reform ; Mexican Hostilities ; Indian Treaties ; New Colonial Contracts . . . . .	279
---	-----

## CHAPTER XIX.

Annexation ; Diplomacy and Politics ; Anson Jones's Administration ; Texas Annexed to the United States . . . . .	301
---	-----

**Period V., 1846-1861.**

## FIRST PERIOD OF STATEHOOD.

## CHAPTER XX.

The New Government ; The Texas Land System ; Henderson's Administration ; Boundary Question ; Churches in Texas . . . . .	316
---	-----

## CHAPTER XXI.

The Mexican War ; Administrations of Governors Wood, Bell, and Pease ; The Boundary and Public Debt ; Railroads ; Public Schools ; Indians . . . . .	330
--	-----

CHAPTER XXII.

PAGE

Early Politics in Texas ; Campaign between Runnels and Houston ;  
Runnels's and Houston's Administrations ; The Secession Con-  
vention ; The Civil War . . . . . 346



**Period VI., 1861-1865.**

THE CIVIL WAR, OR CONFEDERACY.

CHAPTER XXIII.

Civil Government in Texas during the War ; Military Operations  
on the Coast and Frontiers ; Texans in the Confederate Armies 363



**Period VII., 1865-1874.**

THE RECONSTRUCTION PERIOD.

CHAPTER XXIV.

Presidential and Congressional Reconstruction ; Throckmorton's  
Administration ; Pease's Administration ; Texas under E. J.  
Davis's Administration . . . . . 372



**Period VIII., 1874-1897.**

SECOND PERIOD OF STATEHOOD.

CHAPTER XXV.

Administrations of Governors Coke, Hubbard, Roberts, and Ire-  
land ; Prosperity and Progress of the State . . . . . 389

CHAPTER XXVI.

Administrations of Governors Ross and Hogg ; Legislation against  
Corporations ; The Populist Party . . . . . 400

## CHAPTER XXVII.

	PAGE
Governor Culberson's Administrations; Campaigns of 1894 and 1896; Reduction of Public Expenses; General Progress and Prosperity of the State; Death of Distinguished Men . . . . .	409

## CHAPTER XXVIII.

General Review; Progress and Development of Texas in Population, Resources, Industry, Educational and Social Life; Growing Influence in Federal Affairs . . . . .	429
TABLE OF EXECUTIVES FROM 1691 TO 1897 . . . . .	460
TABLE OF ELECTIONS FROM 1836 TO 1896 . . . . .	461
TABLE SHOWING SPEAKERS OF THE SEVERAL LEGISLATURES FROM 1846 TO 1897 . . . . .	463
INDEX . . . . .	465



## KEY TO PRONUNCIATION.

The system of pronunciation of proper names adopted in this volume is the same as used in the "Century Dictionary" and the "Century Cyclopædia of Names," as follows :

a as in fat, man, pang.	oi as in oil, joint, boy.
ā as in fate, dale, mane.	ou as in pound, proud.
ä as in far, farther, guard.	H Spanish g before e and i, Spanish j, etc.
â as in fall, talk, naught.	TH as in then, though.
ã as in fare, hair, bare.	th as in thin, thought.
â as in ask, fast, ant.	~ under the consonants t, d, s, and z indicates that they are softened into ch, j, sh, and zh, as in nature, education, pressure, seizure.
e as in met, pen, bless.	ˈ is the primary accent on a syllable, and
ē as in meet, mete, meat.	˝ the secondary accent.
è as in her, fern, heard.	
i as in pin, it, biscuit.	
ī as in pine, file, fight.	
o as in not, on, frog.	
ō as in note, poke, floor.	
ö as in move, spoon, room.	
ô as in nor, song, off.	
u as in tub, son, blood.	
ū as in mute, acute, few.	
û as in pull, book, could.	





## INTRODUCTION.

**A** SCHOOL HISTORY, of necessity, can contain but a mere outline of important events. This is especially true when, as in the case of Texas, it extends over a period of three centuries,—beginning with the romantic but meagre chronicle of Spanish and French exploration ; traversing the scattered, confused, and often bewildering annals of missionary enterprise and frontier adventure ; including the exploits of a heroic revolution and an interesting career of national independence ; and finally issuing in the fast-coming and thick-crowding events of fifty years of active and marvellous progress as the largest State in the American Union.

Rightly understood and correctly comprehended, the History of Texas is unequalled for its variety of incident, its flavor of adventure, its lessons of endurance, patriotism, and valor, its heroic achievements in the crisis of battle and its splendid triumphs in the nobler arena of peaceful industry. Considered in its largest sense, it is a story in three chapters,—a drama in three acts, the last of which is yet moving before us on the stage of actual life. The first chapter of its wonderful story is laid in the age of Chivalry and Romance, and is filled with scenes and personages the like of which the world will never see again. It was the age of Spain's greatest power on land and sea. Her Catholic Majesty sent his cavaliers to explore and subdue the

The scope of  
Texas history

A drama in  
three acts

First Act

Spanish  
Conquest

The Province  
of Texas

Spanish  
tyranny

Mexican Inde-  
pendence

New World, while her Holy Church sent its priests in the conqueror's path to heal the wounds and repair the ruin the Conquest had wrought. A vast new empire was founded on the wrecks of Aztec civilization, and a Spanish Viceroy held sway in the palaces of Montezuma, while Spanish monks said mass in the temples of *Huitzilopochtli*. In the ever-widening search for gold and glory, the soldiers of Spain crossed the Great River of the North and traversed the mountains and prairies of a far-away province, where peaceful Indians fished and hunted along the banks of the Pashahono, the Tockanhono, and the Arcokisa. Side by side with military chieftains came missionary fathers, and among the wild tribes of this virgin wilderness were erected those first habitations of the white man in New Spain,—half castle, half cathedral,—sheltering alike rude soldiers, praying priests, and credulous red men,—the *Catholic Missions*, whose mouldering and dismantled ruins still keep the memories of those adventurous days. New names were given to the old familiar streams, new laws took the place of savage customs, new masters set their sway over the plains and valleys of this fertile province, and, in the names of a hundred saints whose shrines at intervals dotted its vast, unsettled expanse, TEXAS was baptized as another convert to the Spanish Crown. A century rolled away, a hundred years of alternate strife and serenity in this outpost of the Mexican viceroyalty. With the rapid changes of Old World politics the glory of Spain had departed, and her once proud prowess was humbled at the feet of that marvel of modern mysteries, the Corsican conqueror of Europe. Drained by foreign wars and harassed by domestic revolution, her kings and councils levied intolerable burdens upon her provinces in the New World, while her impoverished Church exacted from the wretched colonists all that the Crown left them in their misery. The oppression was past endurance, and the patriot-priest of Dolores raised the Mexican standard of revolt against Spanish tyranny, not to be lowered until the flag of independence floated over the ancient capital of Anahuac, and its message of liberty was welcomed on the San Antonio, the Colorado, the Brazos, and the Trinity. The first chapter had ended, and with it Castile's cavaliers faded from the soil of Texas. Alike mailed warrior and



cowled priest were gone, and in their stead came an era of hope and promise for Republican Mexico.

But with the opening of the second chapter of our history there appeared a new and potent element in the developing drama of Texan life :

“ Ha ! the breath of the Celt and the Saxon drifts  
Evermore to the West !”

With the growth of the mighty republic of the North and its acquisition of the wide territory of Louisiana, the stream of American conquest set towards the new fields beyond the Sabine. There came into this splendid domain a clear-headed, strong-handed, impatient population, whose nervous energy and pell-mell haste had no time for pageants and dreams and the quiet labors of a leisurely priesthood. Still less would its spirit of practical freedom and its inherited love of civil and religious liberty brook the fickle and vicious experiments of Mexican state-craft. The new-born independence of Mexico fell a speedy victim to the intrigues and ambitions of rival despots, and was swallowed up in the centralized tyranny of Santa Anna. The odious forms of foreign oppression were imposed upon the American colonists who had peopled the fertile valleys and conquered the spreading plains of Texas. Confronted with a savage foe all around them, harassed by the trials and struggles of pioneer life, they were further subjected to the unreasonable and burdensome despotism of Mexican chiefs and the insolent wrongs of a foreign soldiery. Protests were in vain, appeals to the constitution and laws were of no avail, and at last the spirit which had vindicated the freedom of their sires among the hills of New England and on the plains of Virginia asserted their unconquerable valor and patriotism at Concepcion, Bexar, and Goliad. A new nation was christened at San Felipe and started on its career of independence at San Jacinto. A decade of privations, reverses, and the ultimate triumph of wise and prudent counsels established and maintained the young Republic, and finally its heroic fathers yielded its separate sovereignty, and, with emotions of mingled sorrow and pride, saw the Single Star take its place on the ample folds of the banner of the Union. “ The second act in

Second Act

Anglo-American colonists

Texan Revolution and Independence

Annexation

the great drama had ended ; the Republic of Texas was no more."

Third Act

Her reception into the great American Confederacy opened fresh and fruitful fields of prosperity to the new State, and ushered in an era of steady progress and development. Fortunate in the possession of a landed domain imperial in size and resources, she was enabled to provide for a magnificent system of free public education for her children unto all time, and to secure the building of great railroad lines and other works of internal improvement. Retaining all that was wise and beneficent in the institutions of the Spanish law, she combined it with the approved principles of English and American jurisprudence, establishing a system of legal rights and remedies distinctively her own, while she shared the blessings of political freedom common to the Anglo-American race everywhere. Thus, for fifteen years, the current of her peaceful and prosperous life ran smooth and strong, until the great civil and military convulsion of the War between the States blended her fortunes in field and council with those of her sisters in the South.

Civil War

In that titanic conflict her sons were everywhere in the front of the fray, and the "Stars and Bars" floated over no knightlier band than those who rode down to death from the far-off plains of Texas, emulating in this later and mightier struggle the dauntless chivalry and debonair courage of the Alamo and the Coleta. And when it was all over, they came back to ruined homes and fallow farms and took up the burden of restoration with desperate but dauntless hearts, weary but unfaltering hands. The valor that failed not on fields of carnage was not subdued by the sterner trials of a sacrificial peace, and ere long the prostrate State was lifted to her feet and once more trod the sure paths of peaceful and progressive industry. For more than twenty years Texan Statehood, in its restored and rehabilitated splendor, has justified the prophetic eulogies of its original founders, challenged the admiring interest of alien and of kindred states, and received without stint the loyal and loving devotion of its own proud citizenship. The third act in the drama still moves in majestic measure across the stage of historical development, and if the future may be read from the past, some later historian will record

Reconstruction

Recent progress

its completion in yet loftier strain : "Time's noblest offspring is the last."

The arena upon which these fateful and inspiring scenes have been enacted, and on which coming events shall marshal their imposing array, is every way worthy the dignity of the drama and the heroism of its theme. Stretching through nearly eleven degrees of latitude and more than thirteen degrees of longitude, it comprises two hundred and sixty-four thousand two hundred and eleven (264,211) square miles of as varied, fertile, and beautiful country as "the sun in his all-seeing circuit" looks down upon. It is nearly twice as large as California, four times the size of Pennsylvania, and six times as large as New York ; capable of containing, if as thickly populated as the little State of New Jersey, more inhabitants than there are now in the entire Union of States. If it were possible to ascend in a balloon high enough to take in the complete view of this immense territory, and human vision was equal to the task, the spectacle presented would be that of a vast plain over seven hundred miles from east to west and more than nine hundred miles from north to south, —its northern and northwestern border elevated a mile above the sea level, and its surface sloping east, southeast, and south, until it dips beneath the "laughing tides" of the Gulf and fades away into the brown and cactus-covered regions of Northern Mexico.

Across its otherwise level expanse opens a great Central Basin formed by the valleys of the Red River, the Brazos, and the Colorado, and their many tributaries, with wooded slopes and fertile bottoms expanding into wide-stretching upland prairies of rolling verdure, dotted with the ranches, farms, towns, and cities of a thriving population ; while farther south the valley of the Nueces and allied streams carves out a similar depression in the lower part of this great table-land. Intermediate between these two principal basins, and following their general direction from northwest to southeast, there runs for a considerable distance a bold but broken rocky ridge, covered with groves of live-oaks and cedars, interspersed with luxuriant valleys, and ending on its southern and southwestern front in precipitous bluffs,—the *Balcones* of the Spaniards,—from whose stony lips there gush out great fountains of purest water, form-

The physiography of Texas

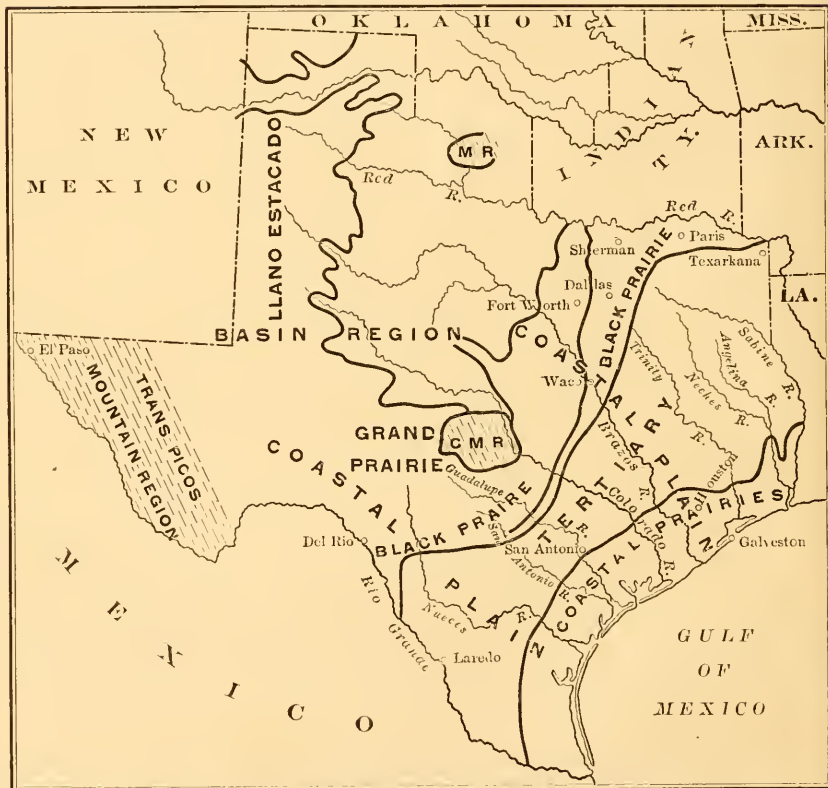
Central Basin

Nueces valley

The Balcones

ing at their very source the splendid streams of Western Texas, the San Marcos, the Comal, and the San Antonio, whose silvery windings lend life and beauty to the picturesque scenery through which they flow. On the eastern slope of the outspread plain, dense forests stretch along the coast and reach inland to the

The timber belt:



MAP SHOWING PHYSIOGRAPHY OF TEXAS.  
(M. R. and C. M. R. indicate "Mineral Region" and "Central Mineral Region.")

edge of the great prairies, furnishing timber for the homes of the millions who will one day people this fruitful land. Beyond the Pecos, in the great West, whose mysterious distances reach away to the Rio Grande and to the foot of the Staked Plains, there arise from the outstretched sandy level lofty peaks and

massy mountains of bare, gray granite, seamed with deep and rugged canyons, solitary, mystic, and melancholy in their isolated grandeur and gloom,—the connecting sentinels between the great Rockies of the north and the Mother Mountains of the south.

Western mountains

Within the limits of this immense territory are blended the products of many climes,—the *fauna* and *flora* of varied zones. In all that vast district lying east of the Pecos and north of the Colorado, there flourish all the varieties of animal and vegetable life that belong to any portion of the United States ; while beyond those lines to the south and west a sub-tropical climate produces its distinctive types in field and forest.

Fauna and flora

And all this splendid panorama of wood and stream and plain and mountain is canopied by skies as fair and soft as ever stooped above the sunny vales of Tempe and Tarentum. Down yonder—so near, we almost hear its waves as they break upon our shores—lies the second Mediterranean, upon whose bosom there shall yet be borne a commerce as vast and varied as gave glory to that elder sea ; while around its circumference there shall cluster cities and a civilization as superior to those of the classic nations of antiquity as modern institutions of liberty and law and social life are preferable

Climate

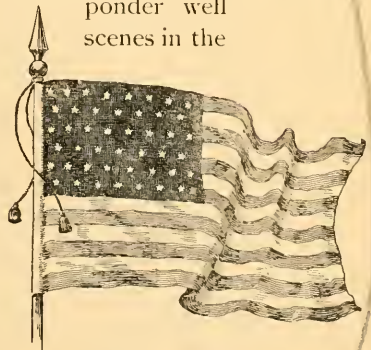
Second Mediterranean

“To the Glory that was Greece  
And the Grandeur that was Rome.”

Surely, the boys and girls, the men and women, of Texas, with such a history behind them, such a country around them, and such a destiny before them, should and often the successive steps and stirring growth of their great State. They should know well the lives and deeds of its heroic founders, the struggles and triumphs of its sturdy pioneers, the valor and patriotism of its illustrious defenders, the prudence, sagacity, and courage of its noble jurists and statesmen. An intelligent knowledge of what has been so nobly achieved in the past, and how, is the surest guarantee that it will not be undone nor dishonored in the future,

Importance of the subject

ponder well scenes in the



UNITED STATES FLAG,

### QUESTIONS.—Introduction.

VIEWING the history of Texas as a story or drama, how may it be divided? What were the surroundings and scene at the commencement of the First Act in the drama? What European country was at the height of its power? What American country did it conquer, and what form of government was established over the conquered empire? What was Texas originally, and how was it first explored and occupied by the Spaniards? What happened to Spain in the course of time? By whom was her power finally humbled? What were the methods and character of Spain's government of her American colonies? What was the result in Mexico? Who was the first leader of the revolution in that country? When was independence from Spain finally achieved? What event closed the First Act in the drama? What new influence appeared in the beginning of the Second Act? Whence did it come? What happened between Mexico and Texas? What did Texas do and become? What event ended the Second Act? What was the condition of Texas at the beginning of the Third Act in the drama? What wealth, resources, and institutions did she possess, and how did she employ them? What great event interrupted the peaceful progress of this act in the drama? When was it, and what part did Texas take in it? What were the immediate results to Texas? What has been the course of subsequent events to the present time? What does the completion of the Third Act promise for Texas?

Describe the general outlines and features of the territory of Texas. What is its general appearance? How is the surface of the country divided and broken? How large is it, and what is its present population? Name and locate the principal rivers. What is the character of the eastern, northern, central, and western parts of the State? Draw an outline map of Texas, showing the main features of its physical geography, streams, mountain ranges, harbors, etc. What varieties of animal and vegetable life flourish in Texas? What is the character of the climate? What great body of water lies on the east of the State, and what influence may be expected to result from it on the future civilization of Texas and her people, and why? Why should the youths of Texas study her history?

### Topical Analysis.

The student should study and read parallel histories on the following subjects, as classified under the Three Acts above suggested :

- |               |   |   |
|---------------|---|---|
| FIRST<br>ACT. | { | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Condition of Europe in 1521 ; Spain's power and position among the nations.</li> <li>2. The Spanish conquest of Mexico : its extent, character, and results.</li> </ol> |
|---------------|---|---|

- |                              |   |  |
|------------------------------|---|--|
| FIRST<br>ACT<br>(Continued). | { | <p>3. The Spanish colonial system: its general features and effects.</p> <p>4. The period of Catholic missions in Spanish America.</p> <p>5. The rise, progress, and success of the revolution of Mexico from Spain: its causes and results.</p>   |
| SECOND<br>ACT.               | { | <p>6. The spread of Anglo-American colonization in North America, and its contact and conflict with Spanish colonies in the southwest.</p> <p>7. The American colonization of Texas under Stephen F. Austin and the other <i>empresarios</i>; the growth of the Texan colonists in power and the spirit of freedom.</p> <p>8. The Texan Revolution, resulting from the inevitable conflict between Anglo-American ideas of liberty and Mexican despotism, ending in the establishment of Texan independence.</p> <p>9. The Republic of Texas,—its institutions, struggles, successes, and final annexation to the United States.</p> |
| THIRD<br>ACT.                | { | <p>10. Texas as one of the United States of North America, under which consider:</p> <p>(a) First period of Statehood, progress, and prosperity.</p> <p>(b) Period of the Civil War in the United States, and the part taken by Texas in that War.</p> <p>(c) Period of Reconstruction, disorders, and struggles incident to restoration of the State in the Union.</p> <p>(d) Second period of Statehood, increasing wealth and power of the State.</p>   |

### Parallel Readings.

Both teacher and student will find great assistance in the study of Texas history, and particularly the plan of study contemplated by this book, by consulting freely and often the following standard historical works, or as many of them as are accessible. In fact, they ought all to constitute part of every school library in Texas: Robertson's "History of the Reign of the Emperor Charles V.;" Prescott's "History of the Reign of Ferdinand and Isabella," "Reign of Philip II.," "Conquest of Mexico," and "Conquest of Peru;" Brantz Mayer's "Mexico: Aztec, Spanish, and Republican;" H. H. Bancroft's Works, the volumes on the History of Mexico, North Mexican States and Texas, and Arizona and New Mexico; Winsor's "Narrative and Critical History of America," various chapters on Spanish Colonies in America, Early Discoveries and Explorations, Las Casas (the Protector of the Indians), De Soto, and other notable explorers; Scarff's "Comprehensive History of Texas" (1897: a republication of Yoakum's "History of Texas," with much new matter and completed to date); Williams's "Sam Houston and the War

for 'Texan Independence ;' Foote's "Texas and the Texans ;" Ward's "Mexico ;" Kennedy's "Rise, Progress, and Prospects of the Texas Republic ;" General Wilcox's "History of the Mexican War ;" Kendall's "Texas Santa Fé Expedition ;" General Lew Wallace's "The Fair God."

### Geography.

The great and first object of the teacher should be to fix in the student's mind an accurate outline of the geography of Texas, the boundary on the Sabine and that on the Rio Grande, the principal streams, the location of all the early towns and missions, the old roads, the several harbors, and the general features of the topography of the country, especially near the coast, along the Mexican frontier, and on the Louisiana line. The general outlines of Mexican geography should also be fully and firmly impressed upon the mind of the student, and the location of the principal points in Northern Mexico should be fixed in advance.



RUINS AT MISSION SAN JOSÉ.



A COMPLETE  
HISTORY OF TEXAS.



ANALYSIS OF THE SUBJECT.

**T**HE History of Texas will be best understood by dividing it into Eight Periods, preceded by a Preliminary Period devoted to a General View of early Discovery and Exploration in the Western Hemisphere, so as to show the relative connection of Texas discoveries and settlement with those in other parts of the New World.

Preliminary  
Period

The Eight Periods of Texas History proper are as follows :

I. **The Period of Spanish Discovery and Domination in Texas**, during which Texas was first discovered and finally adopted as a Spanish province of New Spain or Mexico. This would extend from 1528 to 1821.

Eight Periods  
of Texas His-  
tory

II. **The Period of Mexican Rule**, during which Texas was one of the States of the Republic of Mexico after the independence of the latter from Spain. This period covers the years from 1821 to 1836.

III. **The Period of Revolution from Mexico**, extending from the first discontent and rebellion of the inhabitants of Texas against Mexican tyranny until the final independence of the Republic of Texas,—that is, from 1832 to 1836.

IV. **The Period of the Republic**, during which Texas was an independent nation, which was from 1836 to 1846.

V. **The First Period of Statehood**, after Texas was annexed to the United States, until



CARVED DOOR AT SAN JOSÉ  
MISSION.

Eight Periods  
of Texas His-  
tory

the beginning of the War between the States,—that is, from 1846 to 1861.

VI. **The Period of the Civil War, or Confederacy**, during which Texas was one of the Confederate States of America engaged in war with the United States. This includes the years from 1861 to 1865.

VII. **The Period of Reconstruction**, covering the time during which the State was endeavoring to re-establish her government and position as one of the United States, after the fall of the Confederacy. This embraces the years from 1865 to 1874.

VIII. **The Second Period of Statehood**, from 1874 to 1897, including the events since the State restored her own government until the present time.

Explanatory

As above divided, some of these Periods overlap each other a few years, which is unavoidable from the nature and variety of the events to be related. Also, under some of these Periods



THE WORLD, FIFTEENTH CENTURY.

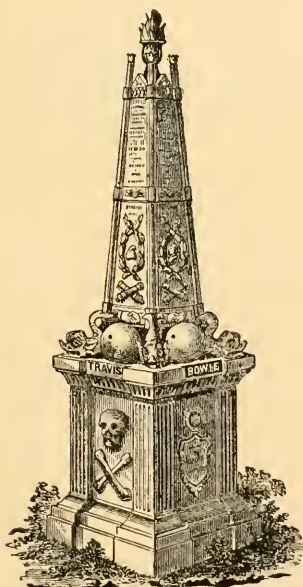
will be embraced important sub-divisions, amounting in themselves almost to independent epochs in our history ; for instance, the **Period of American Colonization**, from 1821 to 1830,

here to be discussed under the head of Mexican Rule. And farther back, the **Mission Period**, which is covered by that of Spanish Discovery and Domination.

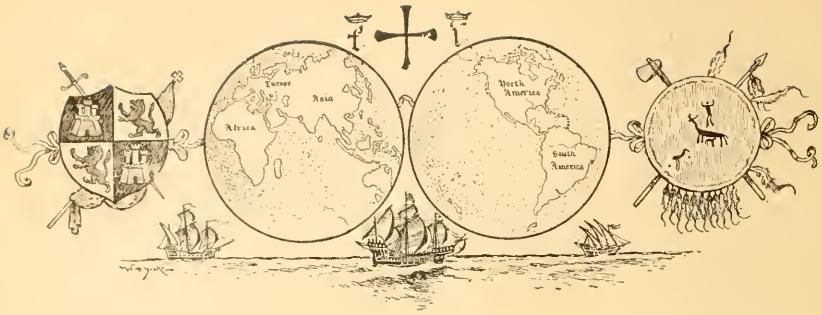
The Tables of **Contemporaneous Events** attached to the several chapters should be carefully studied and compared with the parallel events related in Texas history.

### QUESTIONS.

INTO how many periods may the history of Texas be divided for purposes of study? What general period should precede these? For what purpose? State the several periods, giving the dates and topics of each.



"THERMOPYLÆ HAD HER MESSENGER OF DEFEAT, BUT THE ALAMO HAD NONE." (Old Alamo Monument.)



## Preliminary Period.

GENERAL VIEW OF DISCOVERY AND EXPLORATION IN THE WESTERN HEMISPHERE.—1492-1687.



Voyages of  
Columbus

**A**FTER his discovery of the West India Islands, in October, 1492, Christopher Columbus made three other voyages to the Western World,—one in 1494, one in 1498, and one in 1502. On his third voyage he discovered the continent of South America, at a point near the mouth of the Orinoco River, thinking then that he had found the continent of Asia. On his fourth and last voyage he touched and explored the eastern coasts of Central America, hoping to find a strait which would lead him through to the Eastern Continent.



COLUMBUS.

In 1494, John and Sebastian Cabot (kăb'-ot), natives of Venice living at Bristol, England, sailed under the British flag, and discovered Cape Breton, off the coast of Labrador. This was the first authentic discovery of the continent of North America, and in 1498 the Cabots reached the main-land. The same year they sailed down the coast as far as Albemarle Sound, and claimed the adjacent country in the name of England.

Americus  
Vespucius,  
Pinzon, Cabral

Americus Vespucius discovered South America in 1499, the year after Columbus had landed on the same shores. It was to South America that the name of *New World* was first given. In 1499, Vicente Yañez Pinzon (vē-cen'-tā yān-yāz pēn-thōn')

discovered Brazil; and in 1500 Pedro Alvarez de Cabral (pādrō āl-vār-āz' dā kā-brāl') sailed along the coast of that country for some distance south of the Amazon River.

After these first discoveries, Spain, France, Portugal, England, and Holland fitted out many expeditions to the New World, and began to plant colonies in different parts of the country. The principal ones of these will be briefly noticed, leaving, however, the details of Spain's discoveries, as affecting Texas, to the next Period.

PRELIMINARY  
PERIOD  
1492  
TO  
1687

### I.—THE SPANISH IN AMERICA.

Spain was the first country to discover the New World, and, with the neighboring kingdom of Portugal, it was the leading power in the early explorations. Her expeditions were mostly directed towards the coasts of Central America, the Gulf of Mexico, the West Indies, and the eastern shore of North America as far north as Virginia.

Spanish discoveries and explorations



FERDINAND AND ISABELLA.

When Columbus returned from his first voyage, Pope Alexander VI. issued a "bull," or papal decree, dated May 4, 1493, by which he assumed to grant to Spain all the countries it might discover west of a certain line drawn around the earth from pole to pole, running one hundred leagues west of the Azores or Cape de Verde Islands, and to Portugal all lands east of that line. This was called "The Line of Demarcation," and it was changed by the convention of Torde-sillas (tôr-dā-sēl'-yās), on June 7, 1494, so that it should run three hundred and seventy leagues west of the Cape de Verde Islands. As can be seen by a reference to the map, or to a globe, this order of the Pope gave to Spain all of what are now the United States, except, perhaps, the eastern portion of New England, and all of the West Indies, Mexico, Central America, and South America, except Brazil and a small part of the continent south of that country. Hence it was that all explorations made by the Spaniards in the New World had

towards the  
tral America,  
Gulf of Mex-  
Indies, and the  
North America  
Virginia.

Line of De-  
marcation

PRELIMINARY  
PERIOD

1492  
TO  
1687

Honduras and  
Yucatan

Balboa



SPANISH  
EXPLORER.

Florida

Miruelo

for their object the discovery and settlement of the territory included in this extensive gift from the head of the Church of Rome.

In 1506, Vicente Yañez Pinzon, who had commanded one of the vessels in the first voyage of Columbus, and Juan Diaz de Solis (hwon dē'-áz dā sō'-lēś), sailed along the bay of Honduras and in sight of Yucatan. In 1510, a Spanish colony was planted on the Isthmus of Darien; and in 1513, Balboa (bal-bō'-ä) crossed that isthmus and discovered the Pacific Ocean, which he called the "South Sea."

The first mention of the main-land of North America near to Cuba occurs in a map made at Lisbon, Portugal, by one Cantino (can-tēn'-ō), in 1502. It was then thought to be an island, and was called by the natives of the Bahamas, "Bimini" (bē'-mē-nē). In 1511, Panfilo de Narvaez (pan-fē'-lō dā nār'-vā-äth) conquered the island of Cuba.

In 1512, Ponce de Leon (pōn'-thā dā lā'-ōn) was granted permission by the king of Spain "to proceed to discover and settle the island of Bimini." He sailed from Porto Rico (pōr'-tō rē'-cō) in March, 1513, and discovered the east coast of the peninsula on Easter Sunday, March 27, 1513. From which fact he called the country "Florida," the Spanish name for Easter Sunday being *pascua florida*. From that time the Spaniards named all the main-land north of Cuba and east of the Mississippi River, *Florida*.

Ponce de Leon landed on April 2, 1513, at a point near the mouth of the Saint John's River. He then sailed southward around the point of the peninsula, discovered and named the islands known as the *Martyrs* and *Dry Tortugas* (tōr-tō'-gäz), and finally landed in a bay on the western coast of Florida, which is called by his name to this day. He afterwards explored the Gulf coast as far probably as Cedar Keys and Appalachee Bay, and returned to Porto Rico in September, 1513, still believing that the land he had visited was an island, and that he had not really reached *Bimini*. In 1521, De Leon made a second voyage, but it was a failure, and he died without knowing that he had discovered the main-land. In 1516, a celebrated pilot, Diego Miruelo (dē-ä'-gō mēr-ö-ä'-lō), sailed along the western

coast of Florida to a bay which was long called by his name, and which is now known as Pensacola Bay.

In 1517, Francisco Hernandez de Cordova (ār-nān-dāth dā cōr'-dō-vā) attempted an expedition in the same direction, but was driven by storms to Yucatan, where he landed at a point to which he gave its present name of Cape Catoche (kā-tō'-chā).

In 1518, Juan de Grijalva (hwon da grē-hāl'-vā) sailed from Cuba and reached the island of Cozumel (koz-ō-mel'), whence he went to the main-land of Yucatan and explored its shores. He was told that it was an island, separated from the continent by a strait, and he called what he supposed to be the continent, *New Spain*. He reached and explored the coasts of Central America and Mexico; named two rivers,—one for himself, which is now the Tabasco River, and the other for his companion, Alvarado. He finally went up the coast as far as Vera Cruz, at the mouth of which harbor he named the two islands of San Juan de Ulua (ō-lō-a) and Sacrificios (sac-rē-fēc'-ē-ōz).

From thence he sailed still farther north to the mouth of the Panuco (pan-ō'-kō) River, near where the city of Tampico (tam-pē'-kō) now stands. He was the first Spaniard who landed in Mexico and opened trade with the natives. He returned to Cuba in 1519.

The same year Hernando Cortez (ār-nān'-dō kōr'-tez) sailed from Cuba and landed in Mexico. After two years of warfare and desperate adventures, he conquered the country in 1521, from which date it remained a Spanish province until 1821.

In 1519, also, Alonzo Alvarez de Pineda (pē-nā'-dā) was sent by Francis de Garay (gā-rāy'), Spanish governor of Jamaica, to discover and explore a passage through to the west; it still being the idea and desire to find a strait leading to India and "the land of sweet spices in the far east." Pineda struck the western coast of Florida near Ponce de Leon Bay, and tried to sail eastward around Cape Sable. The winds and waves prevented this, and he went northward and westward, exploring the eastern, northern, and western shores of the Gulf of Mexico, from Ponce de Leon Bay around to the mouth of the Panuco River, in Mexico, to which stream he gave its Spanish name.

PRELIMINARY PERIOD

1492  
TO  
1687

A MISSIONARY PRIEST.

Cortez

Pineda

PRELIMINARY  
PERIOD

1492  
TO  
1687

He landed at various points along the coast during this voyage, and laid claim formally to the adjoining country in the name of Spain. His voyage lasted nine months, and when he reached the Panuco River he was met by the troops of Cortez, who had in the meanwhile landed in Mexico and was engaged in subduing and exploring the country. Pineda turned back on his course,



MAP OF THE GULF OF MEXICO, 1520.

(From Winsor's "Narrative and Critical History of America," by permission of the publishers, Messrs. Houghton, Mifflin & Co.)

Discovers the  
mouth of the  
Mississippi

again coasting the Gulf shores. He discovered the mouth of the Mississippi River, and explored the stream for some distance, finding Indian villages on its banks. To this mighty stream Governor Garay gave the name of Rio del Espiritu Santo (rē'-o del es-pēr-ē-tū sän-tō), by which name it is designated on his map and all the early Spanish maps. He also called the country whose shores Pineda had traversed, Amichel (ä'-mēch-el'), and it is shown on his map, sent to Europe in 1521, as extending from the mouth of the Panuco River around the Gulf to Pensacola Bay.



In 1521, the emperor, Charles V., made a grant of this country to Garay, and in 1523 he fitted out a considerable fleet with which he sailed to the coast of Mexico. He reached the mouth of the Rio de las Palmas (läs pä'l-mäs), a small stream near the Panuco, now called Rio Santander, on July 25, 1523, but failed to establish his colony at that point. Proceeding southward to the Panuco, he was confronted with the forces of Cortez, to whom he was obliged to surrender. He died in Mexico, and with him vanished the so-called province of *Amichel*.

PRELIMINARY  
PERIOD

1492

TO

1687

Garay's expe-  
dition

While these events were happening in the south and along the Mexican Gulf, the Spaniards were not idle on the eastern coast of the continent. In 1520, Lucas Vasquez de Ayllon (lö'-käs väs'-käs dä il'-yön) secured permission to explore the Atlantic shores north of the St. John's River. He continued his efforts until 1526, examining by his officers and in person most of the coast as far north as Virginia, landing in South Carolina, and finally attempting to found a colony at a place which he called San Miguel de Guandape (sän mē-gel' dä gwän-däp'-ä). This point was at or very near the spot where the English afterwards located the colony of Jamestown. Ayllon died at this place on October 18, 1526.

On the Atlan-  
tic coast

Ayllon

In 1524, Stephen Gomez (gō-māz'), a native of Portugal, was sent out by the Spanish government to sail to Newfoundland and Labrador, with orders to examine the coast southward in search of a strait through to the west. He explored the whole coast from Cape Race to Florida, whence he proceeded to Cuba and thence home to Corunna, in Spain. Gomez saw, described, sketched on maps, and gave names to the most prominent features of the Atlantic sea-board, among which it is easy to recognize Massachusetts Bay, Cape Cod, and the Connecticut, Delaware, and Hudson Rivers. In spite of this well-established fact, as late as 1536 Sebastian Cabot said that it was still doubtful if the land south of Newfoundland was a continuous continent.

Gomez

In 1520, Magellan sailed around the southernmost point of South America into the Pacific Ocean, to which he gave its name on account of its freedom from storms. He returned to

Magellan

PRELIMINARY  
PERIOD

1492

TO

1687

De Narvaez

Spain through that ocean, being the first navigator to sail around the globe.

In 1527, Panfilo de Narvaez, the same who had conquered Cuba in 1511, and whom Cortez had so signally defeated in Mexico in 1520, was commissioned to explore and settle the country on the Gulf of Mexico from the Cape of Florida to the Rio de las Palmas in Mexico. He attempted the task, was shipwrecked near the mouth of the Mississippi in 1528, and the survivors of his expedition lived for six years on an island somewhere on the western shore of the Gulf. Four of them finally reached Mexico in 1536, having travelled by land across what is now the State of Texas. From 1527 to 1535, Pizarro (pē-zār'-rō) and his followers conquered Peru in South America, and in 1547 the conquest of Chili (chē'-lē) was completed by Valdivia (väl-dēv'-ē-ä).

Pizarro,

Valdivia

De Soto

In 1539, Ferdinand de Soto made the attempt to conquer the main-land of North America. His expedition led him through what are now the States of Alabama, Georgia, Tennessee, and Mississippi, and in 1542 he died on the banks of the "Father of Waters." His companions endeavored to reach Mexico by land, and in doing so travelled into Arkansas, the Indian Territory, and Northern Texas. Finally, in 1543, they returned to the Mississippi and sailed down the river to its mouth, whence they proceeded in boats to the mouth of the Panuco River in Mexico, coasting the shores of Texas in the journey.

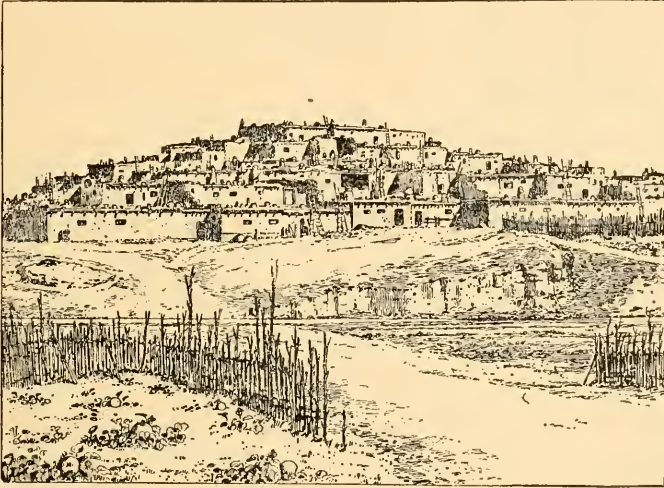
Cortez on the  
Pacific coast

After his conquest of Mexico, Cortez gradually explored the vast empire he had subdued, and extended his discoveries along the western coast of that country as far north as the Gulf of California, which was called the Vermilion Sea, or the Gulf of Cortez. He tried to establish a colony on that coast, at a place called Topolovampo, which failed. In 1540, the Viceroy of Mexico sent Coronado (ko-rō-nä'-FHo) to explore the country to the northward, in search of a land called "Cibola" (sē'-vō-lä), or "Ciguatan" (sē-gwä-tan'), where there were said to be Seven Great Cities and a civilized race of natives. Coronado travelled north into what are now Arizona and New Mexico, discovering the villages and dwellings of the Zuñi (zön-yē) and Moqui (mō'-kē) Indians, the ruins of which are now so interesting. He

Coronado

crossed the Grand Cañon of the Colorado River, spent the winter near where Albuquerque (âl-bū-kér'-kâ), New Mexico, now is, and heard of a distant, but highly civilized, country called "Quivira" (kē-vē'-râ). He spent many months trying to find these fabled regions, going as far north and east as the Platte

PRELIMINARY  
PERIOD  
—  
1492  
TO  
1687  
—



PUEBLO OF THE ZUÑIS.

and Missouri Rivers, and south into portions of northern and northwestern Texas. He found no such cities as had been described, and returned to Mexico in 1542.

In 1542-43, Cabrillo (kâ-brêl'-yō) explored the Pacific coast as far as Oregon. In 1582, Antonio de Espejo (es-pâ'-hō) made an expedition to New Mexico and spent several years in exploring that region. In 1583, Cristobal Martin (krēs'-tō-val' mâr-tên') also visited New Mexico.

Cabrillo and  
Espejo

In 1596, Sebastian Viscaino (vēs-câ'-ē-nō) sailed along the California coast nearly to Oregon. In 1598, Juan de Oñate (ōn-yâ'-tâ) made the first permanent settlements in New Mexico, founding the town of Santa Fé (san-tâ fâ).

Oñate

East of the Mississippi River, after Ayllon's attempt to establish a colony in 1526 and De Soto's expedition in 1541-42, the Spaniards continued their efforts to get a foothold in that region.

PRELIMINARY  
PERIOD

1492  
TO  
1687

These expeditions were usually sent out by the viceroys of Mexico, and were accompanied by Catholic missionaries. In 1561, one of these expeditions, under Villafañe (vēl-yā-fān'-yā), took possession of the country in the name of Spain, at Santa Elena (ā-lā'-nā), now Port Royal Sound, and sailed around Cape Hatteras into Chesapeake Bay. The next year the French *Huguenots* planted a colony at Santa Elena. In 1565, Pedro de Menendez (mān-en'-dāz) was made governor and captain-general of Florida, with orders from Philip II. of Spain to settle the country and to destroy the Protestant colony founded by the French. The colony at Port Royal had failed, and the *Huguenots* had established another on the St. John's River, in Florida.



GATE, SAN AUGUSTINE.

San Augustine

Menendez founded the town of San Augustine in September, 1565, it being the oldest European town in the United States. In the same



MAP BY RIBERO, 1529. (From Winsor's "America.")

month he captured the French fort on the St. John's and put its inhabitants to the sword. This was the first battle between

white men within the present limits of the United States. Menendez built Fort San Mateo (mä-tä'-ō) on the ruins of the French settlement. In 1570 and 1572 he tried to plant colonies on Chesapeake Bay, and explored the Potomac and Rappahannock Rivers, but his efforts came to nothing.

The foregoing outline of early Spanish discoveries and settlements sufficiently indicates the general features of their efforts to occupy the territory which they claimed by right of discovery and by the grant of Pope Alexander VI.

PRELIMINARY  
PERIOD  
1492  
TO  
1687

## II.—THE FRENCH IN AMERICA.

The French began their voyages to that portion of North America along the coasts of Newfoundland in 1503. In 1506, they explored the Gulf of St. Lawrence, and in 1524 Verazzani, an Italian in the service of the French, explored the coast from Nova Scotia to North Carolina, naming it *New France*. In 1534, Jacques Cartier (kär'-tyā) sailed up the St. Lawrence River and continued his explorations in that region for several years, founding the city of Quebec in 1541. In 1562, Admiral Coligny (kō-lēn'-ye) established a French colony, composed of *Huguenots*, in South Carolina, which failed and was removed to the St. John's River, in Florida, in 1564. It was destroyed by the Spaniard Menendez in 1565. In 1604, Sieur de Monts, a French *Huguenot*, founded *Acadia*, which first extended from Philadelphia to Cape Breton, but was afterwards confined to New Brunswick, Cape Breton, and the surrounding islands. In 1608 and 1609, the French explored the Great Lakes, and established hunting-posts and trappers' lodges all through the wild country along the St. Lawrence, giving to it the name of *Canada*. In 1669 and 1671, Sieur de La Salle (lä sāl') explored the Ohio and upper Mississippi Rivers.



CARTIER.

About the year 1670, the news derived from the Indians led the French voyagers in Canada to attempt to explore the Mississippi River and to find its mouth. In 1673, Joliet (zhō'-lyā) and Marquette (mär-ke't') got as far as the mouth of the Arkansas River. In 1680 La Salle built Fort Crevecoeur (krāv'-kēr) on the Illinois,

Joliet and  
Marquette

PRELIMINARY  
PERIOD

1492  
TO  
1687

La Salle

His expedition  
to the mouth  
of the Mis-  
sissippi

Loses one  
vessel

Is lost in the  
Gulf of Mexico

Lands in  
Texas, Feb-  
ruary 18, 1685

A second expedition under La Salle went to a point near the mouth of the Arkansas, and sailed down the Mississippi to its mouth. Ignorant of the fact that Pineda and De Soto's followers had visited the same spot nearly a century and a half before this, La Salle claimed all the country watered by the great river and its tributaries in the name of France, and named the territory *Louisiana*, in honor of his royal master, Louis XIV. He also conceived the desire to become with the country permanent colony the Mississippi. Frenchman was a



THE SIEUR DE LA SALLE.

in Normandy, and his full name was Robert Cavelier, Sieur de La Salle, although he is known in history by the latter title, or simply as La Salle. He was high in the royal favor, and on his return to France, with the aid and encouragement of Louis XIV., he fitted out a naval expedition of four ships, for the purpose of proceeding by sea to the mouth of the great river. In the command of this little fleet he was compelled to share his authority with one Beaujeu (bō'-zhè), between whom and La Salle there existed ill feeling from the first. They sailed from Rochelle (rō-shel') in July, 1684, with three hundred persons on board, consisting of soldiers, seamen, missionaries, girls, and workmen. As they approached America, one of the smaller vessels, with considerable stores on board, was captured by the Spaniards at sea, and La Salle was detained at Santo Domingo for three weeks by sickness, besides other delays. In his former visit to the mouth of the Mississippi, he had made a mistake in calculating the latitude of the place, and now, after he had entered the Gulf of Mexico, he was uncertain as to his proper course. He passed the mouth of the river, but thinking he was yet east of it, he continued to coast westwardly, until he reached a point beyond what is now called Corpus Christi (kris'-tē) Bay, on the coast of Texas, before he discovered his error. He then started back, and on February 18, 1685, he entered with one of his vessels

into what is now known as Matagorda Bay, where he landed. La Salle still thought he was on or near one of the mouths of the Mississippi, but he named the bay St. Bernard, or, as the Spaniards afterwards called it, San Bernardo. On February 20, 1685, in trying to get his large ship into the bay, it was run ashore and sunk, with nearly all the provisions and ammunition of the expedition, although some of the stores were afterwards recovered. La Salle proceeded to establish camps along the western shore of the bay, while he sent out exploring parties to find out, if possible, exactly where he had landed. They found the country full of all sorts of wild game, and the Indians they met at first seemed friendly; so that the wanderers felt much encouraged in spite of their mistakes and misfortunes. In a few days one of La Salle's men was killed by the Indians, as a consequence of his own rash conduct, and on March 12, 1685, Beaujeu sailed away to France with quite a number of men and all of the cannon-balls, leaving La Salle with eight useless cannon.

Discontent soon arose among those who were left in this strange land, and they began to quarrel among themselves and to rebel against La Salle's authority. He took sixty men and explored the surrounding country, discovering a river, which he named *L'Is Vâ'-chez* (the beeves), from the great number of buffaloes he found on its banks. The Spaniards afterwards retained this name in its Spanish form, *La Vaca* (*vâ'-kä*), which the river is called to this day.

Some miles up this stream, La Salle found a spot which seemed suitable for a permanent location for his little colony. This place was near what is now known as Dimmit's Point, and La Salle at once removed to it and began to erect houses and to lay out the lines of a fort. He called the settlement *Fort St. Louis*, in honor of the king. In July, 1685, sickness broke out among the colonists, and many of them died. Still, the little band remained successful to a certain extent. They had brought chickens, hogs, and cattle from Santo Domingo, and they planted crops of grain, all of which prospered. In October of that year, La Salle, with a small party, undertook another expedition inland, exploring as far east as the Colorado River, and satisfying himself finally that he was very far from the Mississippi.

PRELIMINARY  
PERIOD  
1492  
TO  
1687

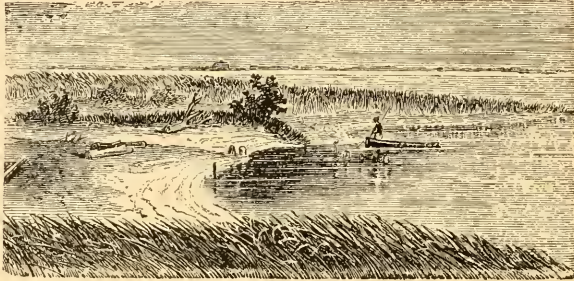
Difficulties of  
La Salle's  
colony

Fort St. Louis

Explores the  
country

PRELIMINARY  
PERIOD  
1492  
TO  
1687  
—

During his absence, his only remaining vessel, the *Belle*, disappeared, and he returned to find his settlement cut off from all communication with the world, alone in a savage wilderness, and two thousand miles from the nearest French post on the Illinois River. He at once determined to reach that post by land, as he



SITE OF LA SALLE'S FORT.

La Salle tries  
to reach the  
Illinois

knew that his old friend, De Tonti, was there. He left the colony at Fort St. Louis in charge of the faithful Joutel (zhö'tel), who was the historian of the expedition, and in April, 1686, with twenty men, set out for Fort Crevecœur, on the Illinois. The party travelled in a northeasterly direction, and, on the tenth day, reached the Colorado River, having met some Indians on the way, mounted on horses and wearing boots and spurs, which showed that they had been trading with the Spaniards in Mexico and New Mexico. La Salle's party had much difficulty in crossing the swollen streams which they encountered, two days being consumed in getting across the Brazos, near where the town of Columbia now stands. Continuing their journey, they were kindly treated by the Indians whom they met, one of these giving La Salle a horse. When they reached the Neches (nā'-chez) River, La Salle was stricken with fever and lay sick for two months. On his recovery it was discovered that the ammunition was nearly all gone, and they had to return to the Lavaca for a fresh supply. Only eight men reached the Fort in October, 1686, having been absent about six months. La Salle found the inhabitants of the Fort reduced in numbers, but still hopeful. It had been discovered that the *Belle* was wrecked

Returns to  
Fort St. Louis



at the lower end of the bay, her crew barely escaping. They were all now in the Fort, and the scene was enlivened by a wedding between one of the colonists and a French maiden.

On January 12, 1687, La Salle started again for the Illinois, taking with him twenty men, including his brother, two nephews, Father Anastase, Joutel, Duhaut (dū-hō), De Marne (dè mārñ), Heins (hinz), Lietot (lē-tō), Tessier (tes-syā'), Saget (säg'-ā), and Nika (nē'-kã), an Indian hunter from Canada. About twenty persons were left at the Fort, under command of Sieur Barbier (bär'-byā), the recently married man. La Salle carried with him about five thousand dollars in money and six thousand dollars' worth of goods. This second journey was more prosperous and rapid than the first; they found plenty of game, and were well treated by the Indians. Reaching the Neches, they camped in order to dry some buffalo meat, and La Salle heard of a Frenchman named Rutel, whom he had lost while on the Mississippi in 1682, and now sent for him. Rutel had been living among the Indians for five years, but he gladly joined the party of his countrymen in the hope of regaining his native land. La Salle sent some of his men to dig up some beans and corn he had buried near there on the former trip, and to attend to the drying of the meat. A quarrel arose among them, and at night Duhaut, Lietot, Heins, Tessier, and De Marne murdered Saget, Nika, and Moragnét (one of La Salle's nephews). Fearing punishment for the cowardly deed, they determined to kill La Salle, and when he came to inquire for them, two or three days afterwards, Duhaut lay in wait and shot him dead. This was March 20, 1687, and thus the founder of the first real European colony in Texas fell, assassinated by his own men, and was buried in the bosom of the wilderness on the banks of the Neches River.

La Salle was an able, ambitious, brave, and enterprising man, but he was proud, haughty, and obstinate, and his memory has never had the honor his merits and courage deserved. His murderers soon fell out among themselves, and Duhaut and Lietot were shot down. Heins assumed La Salle's uniform and put himself at the head of the Indians, whom he led in warlike attacks against the neighboring tribes, and doubtless he himself

PRELIMINARY  
PERIOD

1492

TO

1687

His second  
trip

Murdered by  
his own men

PRELIMINARY  
PERIOD

1492  
TO  
1687

fell in some savage battle. Joutel, Father Anastase, Tessier, De Marne, Barthelemy, and the brother and nephew of La Salle pursued their journey towards the Illinois, and at the mouth of the Arkansas they met a relief party sent out by De Tonti. De Marne was drowned in Red River, Barthelemy remained on the Arkansas, and the other five went back to France by way of Canada. The fate of those who remained at the Fort on the Lavaca is not certainly known. Some of them were killed by Indians, some died in camp, and the others were no doubt captured by the Spaniards or rescued by Spanish missionaries.

From this attempt by La Salle to colonize Texas—which was the result of a mistake—came the French claim to the country, and it was also afterwards claimed by France as part of *Louisiana*. But, as will be hereafter more fully shown, as well as from what has already been said, it is very clear that the French were by no means the first explorers on the lower Mississippi River, nor in Texas. A century and a half before La Salle's expedition, the Spaniards had visited the country, had explored its coast, and made maps of the Gulf shore and of the principal rivers, reasonably accurate, and easily recognizable at this time.

### III.—THE ENGLISH AND DUTCH IN AMERICA.

After the discoveries by the Cabots, in 1494 and 1498, England made no further efforts to explore or to colonize in the New World for many years. In 1579, Sir Francis Drake, a celebrated English navigator, sailed over the Pacific Ocean, touched the coasts of California, and anchored for a time in the bay of Old San Francisco. He called that country *New Albion*. Drake was the second person to sail entirely around the globe, as he returned to England around the Cape of Good Hope. In 1583, Sir Humphrey Gilbert, under the sanction of Queen Elizabeth, made an unsuccessful attempt to plant an English colony in Newfoundland. His half-brother, Sir Walter Raleigh, obtained royal patents to large quantities of land in America, and in 1584 he sent out two vessels, which explored Albemarle and Pamlico (pam-lē'-kō) Sounds, and named that

La Salle not  
the discoverer  
of Texas

The English  
in America



DRAKE

country *Virginia*. The three following years (1584-1587) Raleigh fitted out other ships and tried to establish settlements on Roanoke Island. In 1602, Bartholomew Grisnold sailed from England to the coast of Massachusetts, discovering and naming Cape Cod, Nantucket, Martha's Vineyard, and Elizabeth Islands.

PRELIMINARY  
PERIOD  
—  
1492  
TO  
1687  
—

The *London* and *Plymouth Companies* followed this up for several years, with trading voyages to the coasts of New England, and they organized movements for colonizing Virginia. The English king granted the country along the eastern part of North America, from North Carolina to Massachusetts, to these two companies, it being divided into *North* and *South Virginia*. In 1607 the first English colony was established at Jamestown, Virginia, and in 1620 the Plymouth Colony was founded in Massachusetts. From these centres of settlement, colonization spread, and in time developed the thirteen original English colonies, out of which the United States were formed in 1776.



RALEIGH.

In 1609, Sir Henry Hudson, an Englishman in the service of Henry Hudson Holland, explored the eastern coasts of North America, sailed



MAP SHOWING ROUTES OF EARLY NAVIGATORS.

PRELIMINARY

PERIOD

1492

TO

1687

into New York bay and up the Hudson River, which was named for him, and laid claim to the whole country from Delaware to Connecticut, under the name of the *New Netherlands*. Neither the English nor the Dutch ever explored in the region of Texas, and neither of those countries at any time asserted any claim to this territory. Even in those portions of North America where they did make their earliest discoveries, it is seen, from the dates given, that Spain had preceded both England and Holland in discovery, exploration, and attempted settlement.



### QUESTIONS.—Preliminary Period.

How many voyages did Columbus make to the Western Hemisphere? Give the dates of each. What did he discover on his second voyage? What on his first? What on his third? What coasts did he touch and explore on his fourth and last voyage? What was he searching for? Who were the Cabots? What discoveries did they make, and when? Who discovered South America, when, and what name was given to it? Who were the first explorers on the coasts of Brazil, and when? What European countries fitted out expeditions for the exploration and settlement of the Western Continent?

What country or countries were the first to discover and explore the New World? To what parts of the Western Continent were the expeditions mostly directed? What Pope issued a decree in regard to the ownership of the New World? What was the decree, and what "line" did it establish? What was the date of the decree, and when, where, and how was the "line" changed? Explain this papal decree and the effect of it as to the respective possessions of Spain and Portugal. Draw the "Line of Demarcation" on a globe or map.

What Spaniards first sailed near Honduras and Yucatan, and when? When and by whom was the first colony planted on the Isthmus of Darien? When and by whom was the Pacific Ocean discovered, and what was it called? When was the main-land of North America near Cuba first mentioned, how, and by whom? What was it supposed to be, and by what name was it called? Who conquered the island of Cuba, and when? Describe by whom, under what authority, when, and how Florida was discovered. How came it to be called "Florida," and to what extent of country was the name applied? When and where did Ponce de Leon first land? Describe his subsequent movements, the places he discovered and named, and where he next landed. How far did he explore before he returned, and what did he think of the country he had seen? When did he make his second voyage, and what was the result? Who discovered Pensacola Bay, and when? Describe the expedition of De Cordova and

its results. Who discovered the island of Cozumel, and when? To what was the name of *New Spain* first given, by whom, and why? How far did Grijalva explore, what rivers and islands did he discover and name, and to what point did he finally reach? Who was the first European to land in Mexico? When did Grijalva return to Cuba? Who conquered Mexico, when, and what was its position from then until 1821? What was the object of Pineda's expedition, by whom was it sent, when, and describe the route he took and the coasts he explored? What Mexican river did he name? When and by whom was the mouth of the Mississippi River first discovered, and what name was given to the river? What did Governor Garay call the country Pineda had explored on this voyage? What was the extent of the country? Describe Garay's expedition in 1523, the extent of it, and the fate of Garay. What efforts did the Spaniards make to settle on the Atlantic coast of North America? Give the names of the persons who made these efforts, the dates of the same, and the locations of their landings. Describe the expedition of Stephen Gomez in 1524, the coasts he traversed, the places he saw and described, and his return to Spain.

PRELIMINARY  
PERIOD  
—  
1492  
TO  
1687  
—

Who first gave the Pacific Ocean that name, when, and why? Who was Panfilo de Narvaez, and what was he commissioned to do in 1527? What became of him and his expedition? Where did the survivors of De Narvaez's expedition land, where did they finally go, and over what region of country? When and by whom were Peru and Chili conquered? When did De Soto attempt to conquer the main-land of North America? Describe the route he took, the fate of his expedition, and what became of him and his men. What efforts did Cortez make to explore and colonize Mexico? Describe the expedition of Coronado in 1540. What fabled land did he go in search of? What tribes of Indians did he encounter? What portions of the country did he traverse, how far did he go on his quest for *Quivira*, and what was the result of his expedition? Give the dates and localities of the several expeditions of Cabrillo, Espejo, Martin, and Viscaino. Who made the first settlement in New Mexico, when, and where? By whom were these expeditions sent out? When and where did the expedition of Villafañe make its explorations?

Who founded the town of San Augustine in Florida, and when? What did he do to the French colony on the St. John's River? What fort was built on the ruins of the Huguenot settlement? What explorations did Menendez afterwards make?

When and where did the French make their first explorations in North America? To what part of the country was the name of *New France* given, when, and by whom? When and by whom was the St. Lawrence River discovered and the city of Quebec founded? Who established a French Huguenot colony in America, when, and where? Where was *Acadia*, when and by whom explored and named? When were the Great Lakes explored by the French, and what did they call the adjoining country? Who first explored the Ohio and upper Mississippi Rivers, and

PRELIMINARY

PERIOD

1492

TO

1687

in what years? When and where did Marquette and Joliet make their explorations? Where did La Salle go in 1680, and what Fort did he establish? To the mouth of what river did he sail, and what did he name the adjacent territory? Who was La Salle, and from what place did he come? What expedition did he fit out in 1684, under the patronage of what king, and where did he sail to? Describe his voyage, where did he stop for a while? What mistake did he make, and to what did it lead? Where did he finally land, and on what date? Where did he think he was, and what name did he give to the bay on which he landed? What did he find in the country? What adventures followed? Describe his first attempt to explore the country. What river did he discover and name? Where did he locate his Fort, what did he call it? How did the colony fare for a time? What did La Salle determine to do, when did he set out on his journey, and what route did he pursue? Whom did he meet with, and where had they been? What rivers did he cross, and how far to the north did he go on that journey? When did he return to the Fort, and what did he find there? When did he start on his second journey, how many men and what means did he carry with him? How far did he travel, with whom did he meet on the Neches River? Describe the incidents leading to his death. What was the character of La Salle? What became of his men? On what do the French base their claim to prior discovery and ownership of Texas? What may be said of the validity of the claim?

When did the English make their first discoveries and explorations in America? When did Sir Francis Drake make his voyages to the New World, where did he land, and what course did he take on his return to England? Where did Sir Humphrey Gilbert attempt to found an English colony? Describe the voyages and adventures of Sir Walter Raleigh in America, what country did he attempt to settle, and what name did he give it? When did those events occur? When did Bartholomew Grisnold sail to America, what places did he discover and name? What two English companies made early settlements in North America, and in what parts of the country respectively did they found their colonies? When and where was the first English colony founded? When and where was the next one founded? Into what did these colonies develop in the course of time?

When and where did the Dutch make their first explorations and settlements in the New World? What connection did their colonies have with the region of Texas?

### Topical Analysis.

Study and investigate the following topics:

1. Priority of discovery and exploration among the several European nations that attempted the settlement of North America.
2. Priority between Spain and France in the region of Texas.
3. Characteristics of the Colonial Systems of the Spaniards, French, English, and Dutch.

4. Motives that prompted the several nations named, in their early expeditions to America.

5. The part that Religion played in the early discovery, exploration, and colonization of the New World.

6. The comparative success of the Spaniards, French, English, and Dutch as colonizers of a new country, as shown by their operations in America.

PRELIMINARY  
PERIOD  
1492  
TO  
1687

### Parallel Readings.

Prescott's "Conquest of Mexico;" H. H. Bancroft's "History of Mexico," "North Mexican States and Texas," "Arizona and New Mexico," and "California;" George Bancroft's "History of the United States;" Francis Parkman's "Pioneers of France in the New World," "Jesuits in North America," and "Discovery of the Great West;" Winsor's "Narrative and Critical History of America," Vols. I. to IV.; Irving's "Knickerbocker's History of New York."



SPANISH STANDARD.

### Geography.

The pupil should be required to locate clearly on the map of North America the respective localities of the earliest discoveries, explorations, and settlements by each of the nations mentioned in this period, and a contrast and comparison of their extent, duration, and subsequent changes should be instituted. Consider the relative size of the first Spanish, French, English, and Dutch settlements, their locations, their alterations by conquest or purchase since, and their present condition as to being owned by the same countries that originally founded them.



## CONTEMPORANEOUS EVENTS.—1450-1528.

### Preparatory and Parallel to Preliminary Period.

1450-1550.—Transition period from mediæval to modern history. Decline of feudalism. Rise of the great European monarchies. Establishment of standing armies. Beginning of wars of conquest and dynastic succession in Europe. Use of gunpowder in war. Doctrine of "Balance of Power" adopted. Revival of learning, and the beginning of the Reformation.

1450.—First metal type cast for printing.

1453.—Capture of Constantinople by the Ottoman Turks and the fall of the Byzantine Empire. Cannon first used in war.

1455-1485.—The "Wars of the Roses" in England between the houses of Lancaster and York.

1455.—First complete book printed by Gutenberg and Faust, at Mentz, being the Bible known as the "Mazarin Bible."

PRELIMINARY  
PERIOD1492  
TO  
1687

- 1453-1487.—Portuguese navigators explore the coasts of Africa, cross the equator and discover the Cape of Good Hope.
- 1474.—First book printed in England by Caxton, being "The Game and Playe of the Chesse."
- 1475-1564.—Michael Angelo flourishes in Italy under the patronage of the Medicis.
- 1477-1576.—Titian achieves his fame as a painter in Venice, where he lived and died.
- 1483-1520.—The period of Raphael's life-work in Italy.
- 1485.—Battle of Bosworth Field and death of Richard III.
- 1491.—Conquest of Granada and expulsion of the Moors from Spain. Kingdoms of Castile and Aragon united under Ferdinand and Isabella.
- 1498.—Vasco da Gama sails around Africa to India. Trade opened with the East Indies, and commerce is transferred to the Atlantic Ocean from the Mediterranean Sea.
- 1500.—Charles V. born at Ghent.
- 1509.—Henry VIII. ascends throne of England.
- 1511.—Rise of trade in Western Europe, and the foundation of the great navies of Europe.
- 1516.—Kingdom of Spain founded under Carlos I., afterwards the Emperor Charles V.
- 1517-1521.—Martin Luther denounces the corruptions of the Catholic clergy and the sale of indulgences by Pope Leo X. Beginning of the *Reformation* in Europe.
- 1519-1520.—Carlos I. of Spain elected Emperor of Germany as Charles V., defeating Henry VIII. of England and Francis I. of France.
- 1521.—Luther excommunicated by the Pope of Rome.
- 1525-1544.—Four great European wars are waged, participated in by Henry VIII. of England, Charles V. of Germany, Francis I. of France, the Pope of Rome, and Soliman, Sultan of Turkey.
- 1529.—"Diet of Spires" meets and forbids further religious discussions and changes, against which Luther and his followers protest, from which act came the name *Protestants*.
- 1530.—Fall of Cardinal Wolsey, Henry VIII.'s minister.







## Period II.

SPANISH DISCOVERY AND DOMINATION IN TEXAS.  
1528-1821.



### CHAPTER I.

#### Characteristics of the Spanish Colonial System.

**I**N order to properly understand the events to be related in this Period, the student should have a clear idea of the laws, government, institutions, and social conditions which existed in the Spanish colonies in the New World in the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries. Texas was a part of New Spain, being a province or state of Mexico, under Spanish rule, until 1821, and the history of both countries is the same until that date. Hence, before entering upon the details of Texas history, the reader should thoroughly understand the form of government and the state of society which prevailed in Spanish America during that time. Such knowledge will explain the course of events, and throw light upon the entire character and condition of the institutions and population of New Spain, and will also serve as a key to the solution of nearly all the social and political difficulties with which we shall have to deal in later times.

Importance of  
the subject

At the time of the discovery of the West Indies by Columbus,

PERIOD I.  
SPANISH  
DOMINATION

1528  
TO  
1821

Ferdinand and Isabella were king and queen of Spain, and under their wise and liberal rule that kingdom became the foremost power in Europe. Isabella died in 1504, and Ferdinand in 1516. Their daughter, Joanna, rightfully succeeded to the throne, but she was incapable of reigning because of mental weakness, and her son, Charles, became king. He is known in history as

Charles I., of Spain, and Charles V., Emperor of Germany. For several years after he came to the Spanish throne, his minister, Cardinal Ximenes (hē-mā'-nāz), governed affairs in Spain, as Charles was really a foreigner and not popular among the Spaniards. The Emperor resigned in 1556, and was succeeded by his son, Philip II., the husband of "Bloody" Mary, queen of England.



SPANISH SEAL.

Philip was a cruel, narrow-minded bigot and tyrant, involved his country in continual wars, and under his management Spain's glory and power rapidly declined.

On account of the fact that the first Spanish discoverers of America believed that they had really found a portion of India, all the Spanish possessions in the Western Hemisphere were called by the general name of *The Indies*, and in 1511 King Ferdinand established a board composed of eminent soldiers, statesmen, lawyers, and churchmen, for the government of all the Spanish-American colonies. This celebrated body of men was called the "Council of the Indies." It was composed of a president, who was supposed to be the king himself, four secretaries, and twenty-two councillors. In 1524 the Emperor Charles reorganized this board and enlarged its powers, until it became almost absolute in its authority, even to the exclusion of the king himself. It appointed all the officers in the colonies, made all the laws and regulations for the government of both the Spanish and native population, and exercised unlimited and arbitrary power over men and provinces in the Indies. From 1517 to 1547, the head of this Council, who was called "Patriarch of the Indies," was Juan Rodriguez de Fonseca (hwôn rod-rē'-gwāz dā fōn-sā'-kă), Bishop of Burgos, commonly referred to as Fonseca. This man was supposed to be a pious Catholic bishop, but his conduct shows him to have been a selfish, malicious, am-

Council of the  
Indies

Fonseca

bitious, and cruel tyrant, whose efforts were directed towards preventing the discoveries of those times, and he did all he could to thwart the generous humanity of such noble men as Las Casas (kä'-sä's), "the Universal Protector of the Indians."

The Council of the Indies professed to provide for the humane treatment and religious training of the Indians, but the regulations which it adopted for the colonies and for the collection of taxes and money from the natives, rendered it impossible to protect the people from cruelty, tyranny, and suffering. Its laws and ordinances were administered in the colonies by courts or commissions called *audiencias reales* (au-dē-en-sē'-äs rä-äl'-āz), or Royal Audiences, appointed by the Council upon nomination by the king. The Audience was both a court of justice and a body of civil and political authority, and its powers were supreme, subject only to the home Council. It was composed of a regent or president, three judges, two attorneys or *fiscales* (fēs-käl'-āz), a reporter, and a constable or *alguazil* (äl-gwä-zēl').

At first the Audiences were the direct representatives of the royal authority, but, on account of their frequent disputes and disagreements, it was concluded to establish a personal representative of the king as the head of the colonial government, whose court should in some degree contain all the features of regal authority and splendor, and take the place of the distant sovereignty of the Spanish monarch. This person was called the *Viceroy*, and he was the head of the Royal Audiences, whose members thus became his ministers and judges, constituting at once a viceregal cabinet and a supreme court for the colonies. The first viceroy of New Spain was appointed in 1535, and his government was finally established in 1537. His name was Antonio de Mendoza, and his residence was in the City of Mexico. The name of *New Spain* had first been given to Yucatan by Grijalva in 1518, and it was finally applied to all of the mainland from the Isthmus of Panama to Vancouver's Island on the Pacific coast, and around the Gulf of Mexico, including Central America, Mexico, Upper and Lower California, Texas, New Mexico, and even extending to Florida and the Spanish discoveries on the Atlantic coast of North America. Generally speaking, however, the name New Spain applied more particu-

PERIOD I.  
SPANISH  
DOMINATION  
1528  
TO  
1821

Royal  
Audiences

Viceroy's

Viceroy Men-  
doza

Extent of New  
Spain

PERIOD I.  
SPANISH  
DOMINATION

1528  
TO  
1821

Cabildos

larly to Mexico and its various states and provinces, from Panama on the south to Texas on the north, and its rulers were spoken of as the Viceroys of Mexico. Cortez had been called governor, captain-general, and chief-justice, but Mendoza was the first person to receive the title of Viceroy.

Next to the Royal Audiencies in authority came the *Cabildos* (kă-vĕl'-dōs), or town councils, whose members formed the municipal government of the various cities, towns, and villages. They were composed of *Regidores* (ră-zhĕ-dōr'-āz), or aldermen, and other persons appointed by the king or the Council



CATHEDRAL IN CITY OF MEXICO.

of the Indies, and they in turn elected every year two *Alcaldes* (al-kăl'-dăz), or magistrates, from among the people. These *Cabildos* had no power to make laws, but simply to execute those municipal and police regulations framed by the higher authority of the viceroys, the Audiencies, and the Council of the Indies. The *Alcaldes* were the local judges who administered justice among the people. The *Ayuntamiento* (ă-yōn'-tă-mĕ-en'-tō) was an assembly composed of the magistrates, *regidores*, and other officials of a municipality, generally including those of more than one town or city. The *Cabildo* was the term for the form of local municipal government, while the *Ayuntamiento*

Ayuntamiento

was the general council of the municipality. The latter term occurs frequently in the history of Texas.

As will be seen, all these offices were filled by native Spaniards, and they were disposed of by open bargain and sale under the most corrupt and unjust practices.

Besides these principal forms of colonial government, there was a perfect horde of petty officials,—constables, tax-gatherers, revenue officers, and agents,—and the whole system was further complicated by a mixture of military and church government, with the most arbitrary and unequal privileges to special classes and particular individuals. The great body of the laws was contained in Royal Decrees, Ordinances, and Regulations issued from Spain by the Council of the Indies, which were sometimes modified by the viceroys and local tribunals. As these laws appear in print now, they seem to be most exact, liberal, wise, and wholesome; but their administration was rendered cruel, corrupt, and ruinous by the character of the men who executed them, and by the very necessities of the system they were intended to support.

When the Romans conquered Spain, in the year 206 B. C., they established a system in that country under which, for three centuries or more, the inhabitants were reduced to a condition of slavery. They were forced to till the fields and work the mines, to furnish the supplies for Roman armies, and pay the expenses of Roman extravagance and luxury. The Spaniards repeated the system in the colonies of the Indies, in the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries. Charles V. and Philip II. and their successors were continually at war with foreign nations, and often involved in civil commotion, and these enormous expenses, added to the continual demands of the Catholic Church for funds to support its magnificent establishment, required an immense quantity of money which the American colonies were expected to furnish. The motive and object of the whole colonial system were the obtaining of gold and silver, and to furnish a market for Spanish productions. The native population were treated as so many slaves, to be worked in the mines underground, and in the fields above. Soon after the discovery of

PERIOD I.  
SPANISH  
DOMINATION  
—  
1528  
TO  
1821  
—

Character of  
laws

A Roman  
parallel

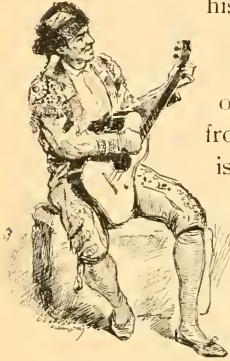


SPANISH BELLE.

Slavery of the  
Indians

PERIOD I.  
SPANISH  
DOMINATION

1528  
TO  
1821



SPANISH BEAU.

the West Indies, the system of *repartimientos* (rā-pār'-tē-mē-en'-tōz) and *encomiendas* (en-kō-mē-en'-dāz) was adopted, by which whole districts and villages were granted to certain Spanish officers and leaders, together with a certain number of Indians, who were owned with the land. This established the worst form of human slavery, and its abuses and cruelties render the history of those times a record of wretchedness and crime.

The mines were worked by natives under Spanish taskmasters, and nothing was allowed to be raised on the soil, or manufactured by native labor, that could be imported from Spain. This created an absolute monopoly for Spanish productions, and forced the inhabitants to buy all they consumed and used from the mother country. No other nation was allowed to trade with the Indies, and only certain Spanish ports were permitted to send out cargoes to America. Exorbitant prices and ruinous duties were charged for everything that came in, and the products of the mines, besides being taxed, were drained from the colonies to enrich the nobility, the crown, and

the church of Spain. Her supremacy as a naval power enabled her to enforce these laws during the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries, and it was not until late in the eighteenth century that they were somewhat modified.

All the offices in New Spain were filled by Spaniards, and the natives were simply forced to toil, to obey, and to pay taxes. The native Spaniards were called *Gachupins* (gātsh-ū'-pēns), and the prejudice against them runs through all the subsequent history of Spanish America. Being foreigners and masters, engaged in enriching themselves and gathering money for their royal master at home, their rule was corrupt, cruel, and unjust. There were also certain privileged classes, who were exempted from the general laws of the country by special charters, called *fueros* (fö-ā'-rōz). To these belonged the clergy, the professions, corporations, the military, revenue officers, engineers, marines, and many others, who were subject only to the rules of their own class.

Thus the whole country was a workhouse for Spain, ruled by foreign influences, without the right of local self-government,

Spanish  
monopoly

Foreign  
tyranny

Gachupins

Privileged  
classes

Fueros

Colonial  
servitude

and denied freedom of opinion, conduct, or business. Of the one hundred and seventy viceroys in the New World, all but four were Spaniards or foreigners ; of six hundred and ten captains-general and governors, all but fourteen were natives of Old Spain. This complete subjection to foreign tyranny, added to the monopoly by Spain of all trade, commerce, and manufactures, rendered the condition of the colonies well-nigh intolerable. Every species of expensive and vexatious tax was laid upon internal as well as external trade. The barest necessities of life were taxed out of all reason, and licenses at high rates were required for pursuing the commonest occupations of life and business. Only travellers, clergymen, and paupers were exempt. This promoted smuggling, cheating, and perjury among the people. The king demanded one-fifth of all the gold and silver produced in the colonies ; he claimed a monopoly in salt, gunpowder, and tobacco ; and he openly sold both civil and religious offices. By the decrees of Popes Alexander VI. and Julius II., the king of Spain was made the head of the Spanish Catholic Church, and he exercised independent, absolute authority over all church affairs, appointing all church officers, founding cathedrals, monasteries, hospitals, and other charitable and pious establishments, for which he demanded ample compensation. Tithes were collected upon everything, for they enabled the Church to pay the king for its privileges and to enrich itself ; until, when it was finally secularized in Mexico, in 1867, it owned one-third of the wealth of the entire Republic. Religious *indulgences* were freely sold for the privilege of doing certain things, —some trivial, some serious,—such as eating eggs in Lent, for a passport through purgatory, and for committing theft or murder. The *Holy Inquisition* was imported to the New World, and exerted its tyranny over the minds of men, so that they could only read and think what the Church permitted. At the close of the eighteenth century there were only three printing-presses in all Spanish America,—one in Mexico, one in Peru, and one at Cordova ; and they were all under government control. All books and papers were subjected to the inspection of the Inquisition, and occasionally a heretic was burned at the stake. A poll-tax of from four dollars to fifteen dollars was

PERIOD I.  
SPANISH  
DOMINATION

1528  
TO  
1821

Excessive  
taxes

Church cor-  
ruption and  
tyranny

Holy Inqui-  
sition

PERIOD I.  
SPANISH  
DOMINATION

1528

TO

1821

The system  
without  
remedy

levied upon every Indian, and, by a system which required him to buy only from certain persons, he was robbed by the authorities in everything he used, ate, and wore.

The justice and benevolence of kings and viceroys could not reach nor remedy these minor, but myriad, abuses, and the evils of the system once set in operation were beyond the control of the government; for they were concealed by the corruption that originated and extended them. It was the influence of all these things that made Spanish America what it was in 1800, and is



CHURCH AND SQUARE OF SANTO DOMINGO, CITY OF MEXICO.<sup>1</sup>

Its influence  
and results

even yet. Revolution and anarchy are the necessary results of injustice, cruelty, monopoly, and slavery continued through centuries of misgovernment and tyranny.

Its contact  
with American  
system

It was this system, as exhibited in the laws, institutions, and political temper of the Mexican people, that confronted the colonists who came to Texas from the United States in the early part of this century. Inspired with all the sentiments and traditions of American and English law and liberty, it could not be expected that they would submit to the exactions and injustice

<sup>1</sup> The place where the Holy Inquisition sat in Mexico.



of a government, which, though republican in name and form, was yet administered in the spirit of the Spanish colonial system of the three preceding centuries.

As soon as the Spaniards completed the conquest of Mexico, the country was divided, for the purposes of political and military government, into the three kingdoms of Mexico, New Galicia (including Zacatecas and Guadalajara), and New Leon; the colony of New Santander; and the provinces of Coahuila, Texas, New Biscay (which included Chihuahua and Durango), Sonora, New Mexico, and the two Californias. In 1776 this arrangement was abandoned, and the viceroyalty was divided into twelve *Intendancies*: Merida, Oajaca, Vera Cruz, Puebla, Mexico, Valladolid, Guanajuato, Guadalajara, Zacatecas, San Luis Potosi, New Biscay (including Chihuahua and Durango), and Sonora; and the three provinces of New Mexico, Lower and Upper California. The intendancy of San Luis Potosi embraced the state of that name and New Leon, New Santander (Tamaulipas), Coahuila, and Texas. Each intendancy was subdivided into *subdelegación-es*, governed by subdelegates.

A still broader division separated the country into New Spain proper and the Internal Provinces (*las provincias internas*), which last included all of that territory lying north and north-west of the old kingdom of New Galicia or the states of Zacatecas and Guadalajara. The Internal Provinces were again divided into the Eastern and the Western; Sonora, Durango, Chihuahua, New Mexico, and the two Californias constituting the Western Internal Provinces, while Coahuila, Texas, New Leon, and Tamaulipas formed the Eastern.

An intendancy was ruled over by an officer called the Intendant, whose powers were supreme in his jurisdiction, being both civil and military; but there was also usually a commandant, who exercised the duties of general-in-chief of the army while in operation in that intendancy, and there was a commandant-general for the Internal Provinces. The several states and provinces also had their governors or political chiefs, who had immediate supervision over their respective localities, subject to the superior authority of the intendant; and the whole system was governed by the viceregal court in the City of Mexico,

PERIOD I.  
SPANISH  
DOMINATION  
1528  
TO  
1821

Political divisions of Mexico

Intendancies, provinces, etc.

Internal Provinces

Intendants

PERIOD I.  
SPANISH  
DOMINATION

1528

TO

1821

Mixture of  
civil and mili-  
tary authority

which in turn was responsible to the Council of the Indies or the king in Spain.

It is difficult for one accustomed to the institutions of republican government to understand the curious mixture of the civil and military power, with the military in the ascendant, which prevailed in the Spanish possessions of America; but it should always be borne in mind as a constant and controlling factor in the history of Mexico, past and present.



## QUESTIONS.

Of what country was Texas a part until 1821? Under whose rule? What is important and necessary to understand in connection with Texas history? Who were the king and queen of Spain in 1492? When did they die? Who succeeded to the throne of Spain? What titles did he bear? What famous man was his prime minister? When did Charles V. resign the throne? Who succeeded him? What was the character of his successor? What did the Spaniards call their discoveries and possessions in the New World, and why? How were those possessions governed? When was the "Council of the Indies" established, and by whom? How and by whom was it afterwards changed? How was it composed, and what were its powers and duties? Who was its chief officer for many years, and what was he called? What was his character? Who was Las Casas? What were the methods of the government by the "Council of the Indies," and what was its character? Describe the various means employed by the "Council" for the government of the colonies in the New World. What were the "Royal Audiences," and how composed? What were their powers at first, and what officer afterwards presided over them? Who was the first viceroy of New Spain, and where did he reside? What was included in the term "New Spain"? What body was next in authority to the "Audiences"? How was it composed? What were its powers and duties? What was an *alcalde*? What was the *Ayuntamiento*? What was the difference between the *Ayuntamiento* and the *Cabildo*? How were the offices in New Spain held and disposed of? What other officers were there, and what was the character of the colonial government thus administered? What constituted the Laws of the Indies? What difference was there between the laws themselves and the manner in which they were administered? Draw a parallel between the manner in which Rome governed Spain after the conquest of that country and the manner in which Spain governed her colonies in the New World. What caused the oppressions laid upon the Spanish colonies in America, and what were the main motive and object of the whole Spanish colonial system? What was the system of *repartimientos* and *encomiendas*, and

PERIOD I.  
SPANISH  
DOMINATION  
1528  
TO  
1821  
—

what did it produce? What system of monopolies and taxation did Spain practise towards her colonists and the natives of New Spain? By whom were all offices in New Spain filled, and what were native Spaniards called? What were *fueiros*, and what privileged classes did they give rise to? What was the result of the Spanish colonial system upon the colonies? What proportion of offices were held by native Spaniards during the continuance of the system? Describe some of the excessive taxes levied upon the inhabitants of the colonies. What relation did the king of Spain bear to the Spanish Catholic Church, and by whose authority? What was the result? Describe some of the methods of corruption and tyranny employed by the king and the Church. What was the effect of the *Holy Inquisition* in America? Why did not the king and viceroys remedy the evils of the colonial government? What influence has the Spanish colonial system exerted upon the subsequent history of Spanish America? What did its influence have to do with the Texas revolution from Mexico?

After the conquest of Mexico by Cortez, how was the country at first divided? What change was afterwards made, and when? What was an *intendancy*? In what intendancy was Texas situated? How were the intendancies divided? What was the governor of a subdivision, or *subdelegacion*, called? How was the country further divided into two great divisions? How were the Internal Provinces divided, and in which of these divisions was Texas located? How was an intendancy governed? How were the several states and provinces governed? What was the supreme government of the entire system? In what important particular did this system of government differ from the republican institutions of the United States?

### Topical Analysis.

1. The motives and methods of the Spanish colonial system; its abuses, corruptions, and tyranny.
2. The relations of the Catholic Church to the Spanish conquest and colonization of New Spain.
3. The evils of a government in which the civil, military, and ecclesiastical authority are all concentrated in one hand.
4. The disastrous effects of the Spanish colonial system on the subsequent history of Spanish America, as shown in Mexico, Central and South America, and the West Indies.
5. The geographical division of New Spain into states and provinces.
6. The political divisions into kingdoms, intendancies, internal provinces, subdelegacions, and the methods of government in each.

### Parallel Readings.

Brantz Mayer's "Mexico: Aztec, Spanish, and Republican," Book I., Chaps. X., XIII., and XIV., and Book IV., Chap. I.; H. H. Bancroft's

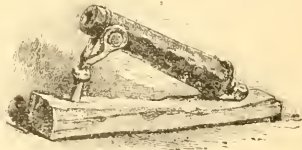
PERIOD I.  
SPANISH  
DOMINATION

1528  
TO  
1821

Works, "History of Mexico," Vols. I., II., and III. ; Winsor's "Narrative and Critical History of America," Vol. I., Chaps. III. and V. ; Prescott's "Conquest of Mexico."

### Geography.

Fix in the mind of the pupil the geographical division of Mexico into states and provinces as the territory existed at the time of the conquest and until the beginning of this century. Then the political divisions should be clearly defined, so as to understand the subsequent use of the terms *intendancies*, *intendants*, *subdelegates*, *commandants*, *internal provinces*, etc., as they so often recur in the history of Texas during its connection with Mexico.



SPANISH CANNON.

## CHAPTER II.

### Early Spanish Discovery and Exploration in Texas and Adjacent Territory.

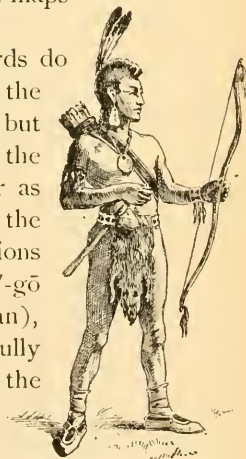
**W**E have already noted the expeditions of Grijalva, Pineda, and Garay, in 1518, 1519, and 1523; and also the conquest of Mexico by Cortez. When Pineda returned to Jamaica from his nine months' voyage around the shores of the Gulf of Mexico, he made a map of his route and of the coasts he had explored. This was sent by Governor Garay to Spain in 1521, and demonstrates the truth and accuracy of Pineda's observations, as the outline of the Gulf coast and its rivers is substantially the same as on the maps of the present day.

After Garay's unfortunate expedition, the Spaniards do not appear to have made further explorations along the coast north of the Panuco River for several years; but they were engaged in extending their settlements in the interior of Mexico and along the Pacific coast as far as Lower California, exploring the interior as far as the modern State of Sinaloa (sēn-ä-lō'-ä). These expeditions were undertaken by Cortez, Diego de Guzman (dē-ä'-gō dā göz'-man), Nuño de Guzman (nön'-yō dā göz'-man), and others, and were continued more or less successfully from 1521 to 1536. During these incursions towards the north, the Spaniards continually heard of a rich and populous country still farther north, which was said to contain inhabited and walled cities, civilized people, and much wealth in gold, silver, and precious stones.

This far-off country was sometimes called *Cibola* (sē'-vō-lä), sometimes *Quivira* (kē-vē-rä), sometimes *Ciguatan* (sē-gwä-tan'); and always the "Seven Great Cities" were the point of search.

PERIOD I.  
SPANISH  
DOMINATION  
1528  
TO  
1821

Grijalva,  
Pineda, Garay



AN INDIAN WARRIOR.

Cibola and  
the "Seven  
Great Cities"

PERIOD I.  
SPANISH  
DOMINATION

1528  
TO  
1821

"Straits of  
Anian"

Nuño de  
Guzman

First mention  
of Texas

Expedition of  
De Narvaez

His adven-  
tures

The stories of those fabled regions dazzled the imaginations of the adventurers with visions of untold wealth and splendor, to be found somewhere in the mystic north. In all of their explorations in the New World, the Spaniards were haunted by the idea of finding a passage by water through the continent from east to west, furnishing a short route to India. This delusion appears in all of the narratives of those and even later times, under the names of "the secret of the Strait," the "Northern Mystery," and the "Straits of Anian."

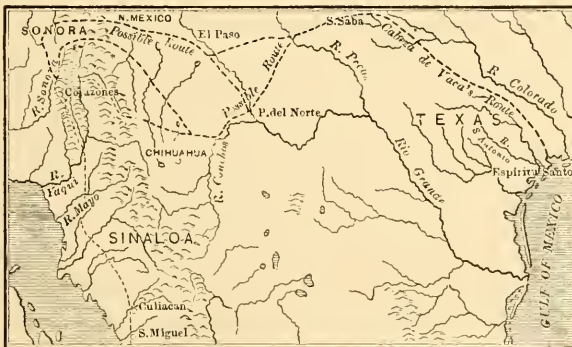
In 1527, Nuño de Guzman was governor of Panuco, and in his hunt for riches and slaves he claimed to have crossed the lower Rio Grande del Norte into what is now Texas. He speaks of having captured an Indian who belonged to a tribe called *Tejas* (tā-yās), living farther north. *Tejas* is the Spanish form of *Texas*, and this is the first mention of the name in history.

In June, 1527, Panfilo de Narvaez set sail from Spain, with authority from the emperor, Charles V., to conquer and colonize the country from the Cape of Florida to the mouth of the Rio de las Palmas, being the same land that Pineda and Garay had named *Amichel*. De Narvaez, it will be remembered, was the same man who had conquered Cuba in 1511, and whom Cortez had defeated, putting out his eye, at Zempoalla, in 1520. He now styled himself "Governor of Florida, las Palmas, and Espiritu Santo,"—the last name being the one by which Pineda and Garay had designated the Mississippi River. After many delays and difficulties, he landed at what some historians claim to have been Tampa Bay, others Appalachee Bay. Leaving his ships to follow the coast, he started with a large force of men and horses to explore the interior. He was very far mistaken in his calculations as to where he was at the time, thinking that he was near the mouth of the Panuco and las Palmas Rivers. After many weeks of suffering and adventure among the swamps and forests of Florida and Southern Alabama, he finally reached a bay somewhere on the northern coast of the Gulf, east of the Mississippi River. His ships were lost, and he constructed five rudely-built boats, into which he crowded his two hundred and fifty men and put to sea, with no knowledge of his whereabouts and no expe-

rienced sailor among his crew. This was in September, 1528. They encountered stormy weather and suffered greatly from hunger and thirst. After being at sea about thirty days, they passed the mouth of a mighty stream, whose current could be felt far out in the Gulf, and whose waters sweetened the brine of the sea, and which, from the description and all the circumstances, was, no doubt, the Mississippi. After being tossed about for a week longer, pursuing the same westerly course, the boats became scattered, that in which De Narvaez was commanding was lost, and the others were shipwrecked on an unknown coast, most of the men dying of hunger or being killed by Indians. Among the survivors was the celebrated Alvar Nuñez, Cabeza de Vaca (al-vär'

PERIOD I.  
SPANISH  
DOMINATION  
—  
1528  
TO  
1821  
—

Shipwrecked  
on the Texas  
coast



ROUTE OF CABEZA DE VACA ACROSS TEXAS (1535-36).  
(Dotted lines indicate two possible routes west of the Pecos River.)

nön'-āz, kä-bā'-thä dā vā'-kă), and several companions, who were stranded on an island which they named *Malhado*, from the miseries they endured while there. They were held captive by the Indians for six years, and underwent great cruelty and suffering. At last, Cabeza, Dorantes, Maldonado, and Estevanico (es-tā'-vān-ē'-kō), the last being a negro slave, escaped in November, 1535. They had previously wandered down the coast south from Malhado, and when they set out on their journey inland, it was from a point near Espiritu Santo Bay, if not actually from that place, which is at the mouth of the Guadalupe or the San Antonio River. The exact locality of *Malhado Island* will never be certainly known, but there is good reason for supposing it to

Cabeza de  
Vaca  
Escapes and  
travels inland

PERIOD I.  
SPANISH  
DOMINATION

1528  
TO  
1821

Traverses  
Texas

Reaches  
Mexico

De Soto's  
claims

De Nizza's  
expedition to  
Cibola

have been the same as Galveston Island, and it was certainly on the Texas coast.

Cabeza and his companions travelled westward and northward through Texas, spending eight months with a native tribe, crossing the Pecos River and western plains to the Rio Grande, which they struck near Presidio del Norte, or perhaps as high up as the neighborhood of El Paso. In their travels through Texas they met many Indian tribes, some of whom dwelt in houses and used clothing and buffalo robes, and by all of whom they were treated most kindly. They heard of cities in the far north, which were no doubt the towns of the *pueblo* tribes of Arizona and New Mexico, but they did not go in that direction, as has been supposed by some. After crossing the Rio Grande, they passed through what are now the States of Chihuahua (chē-wäh-wäh) and Sonora, reached the Yaqui (yā-kē) River, and finally found the Spanish settlements on the Rio Petatlan, now the Rio de Sinaloa, where they arrived in April, 1536, having been separated from their countrymen for eight years. The account of this remarkable expedition was at once reported by Cabeza de Vaca to the Audience and Viceroy in the City of Mexico, and he also prepared and published a narrative of it in Spain, in 1537. He himself was afterwards made governor of the province of La Plata in South America.

The return and account of their wanderings by these men served to still further excite the curiosity and desire of the Spaniards to explore and conquer the distant lands to the north and east, where fabled cities gleamed with unknown wealth and splendor. The interest excited by Cabeza de Vaca's report of his trip through Texas and Northern Mexico led indirectly to the expedition of De Soto to Florida, in 1539. With the then false notions of geographical locations, De Soto actually claimed that Cibola and Quivira, with their "Seven Cities," were included in his grant to conquer and colonize Florida; but this was too absurd, and but little attention was paid to his idea that those fabled localities were part of his rightful dominions as conqueror of Florida.

But on March 7, 1539, the Viceroy Mendoza sent a priest named Marcos de Nizza (mär-kōs dā nēz-zä), with the negro slave who had returned with Cabeza de Vaca and a large com-



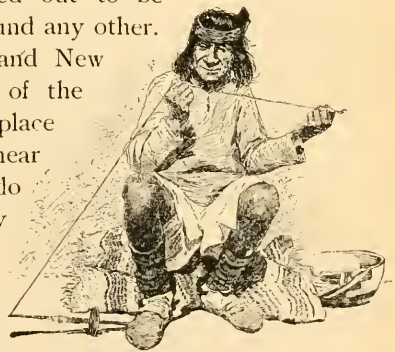
pany of Mexicans, to explore the country to the north of Sinaloa. The fabulous accounts given by Nizza on his return leave us in doubt as to what to believe about his journey into the unknown land. Starting from San Miguel they travelled north, keeping near the coast until they entered what are now probably Arizona and New Mexico, crossed mountains and deserts, found friendly tribes in rich and populous villages, and heard of the great country called Cibola in the far north. Nizza says they actually came in sight of the land and saw its large cities, with houses three stories high, but that the hostility of the natives prevented him from entering and possessing the country. He, however, laid formal claim to it in the name of Spain. It is evident that, if he really saw what he professed to have discovered, the district was that of the *pueblo* (pwā'-blō) tribes in Arizona and New Mexico, now known as the Zuñi (zōn'-yē) and Moqui (mō-kē) Indians. When Nizza returned with his wonderful account of his expedition, in September, 1539, Viceroy Mendoza at once ordered Francis Vasquez de Coronado, the then governor of New Galicia in Mexico, to set out and explore the country visited by the monk, while a fleet of ships was sent along the coast northward under command of Pedro de Alarcon (al-är'-kōn). Coronado started in February, 1540, and marched as far as the Little Colorado River, discovering the villages of the Zuñi and Moqui Indians, which turned out to be Cibola,—at least the Spaniards never found any other.

He explored a large part of Arizona and New Mexico, discovered the *Grand Cañon* of the Colorado, and spent the winter at a place called Tiguex, which was probably at or near the present site of Albuquerque. Coronado was greatly disappointed, for the country was arid and, by no means what Nizza had represented it to be. In April, 1541, he started from Cicuye (sē-cō'-yā), now Old Pecos (pā-kōs), New Mexico, to find a wonderful land called *Quivira*, which was said to be in the east. His expedition travelled east and northeast, encountering many and vast herds of buffalo with In-

PERIOD I.  
SPANISH  
DOMINATION

1528  
TO  
1821

Coronado  
visits Arizona  
and New  
Mexico



ZUÑI SPINNING.

PERIOD I.  
SPANISH  
DOMINATION

1528

TO

1821



ZUÑI WEAVING.

dians hunting them. The Indians lived in tents made of skins and had many dogs. At one time he travelled into the *Panhandle* of Texas and traversed portions of northwestern and northern Texas, where he met Indians who told him of having seen and heard of Cabeza de Vaca and his companions. He fell in with a tribe called *Tejas* (tā-hās) or *Tēyās*, who had a village named *Cona* (kō-nā), and was told that *Quivira* lay forty days' march to the north. Returning, he struck the Pecos River below Cicuye, and crossed salt marshes and lakes in the land of the *Tejas*. These, from the description, may have been the salt lakes of San Elisario and that region. Coronado then changed his route, going again east and north, probably traversing the Indian Territory and Kansas, and finally reaching a large stream, which was either the Platte or the Missouri River. Here he found *Quivira*, or a place by that name, which proved to be a collection of mud huts thatched with straw, whose inhabitants were nomadic savages. He returned to Tiguex in August, 1541. The following autumn and winter he spent in New Mexico and Arizona, exploring all the *pueblos* in that region and endeavoring to pacify and colonize the country. Coronado finally returned to Mexico in the summer of 1542, a disappointed and discredited man.

Further Span-  
ish explora-  
tion

After Coronado's and Alarcon's expeditions, Cabrillo explored the Pacific coast as far as Oregon, in 1542-43, and in 1596 Viscaino sailed on the same coast as far as Cape Mendocino. In 1582, Espejo went to New Mexico and succeeded in establishing permanent colonies there in 1599. Oñate likewise figured extensively in the early settlement of New Mexico, founding Santa Fé in 1598. There were continual expeditions to and from New Mexico and Arizona in the years following Coronado's first visit there, and most of these crossed into Texas at different times, El Paso del Norte (nor'-tā) being the usual place for crossing the Rio Grande. It is a mistake, however, to suppose that the old town of Isleta or *Ysleta* (ēs-lā'-tā) in Texas existed or was visited in the time of Coronado. There was a town by that name in New Mexico, Isleta del Norte, at a very early date, and

Isleta or  
Ysleta

is perhaps mentioned in the accounts of Coronado's expedition. But Isleta in Texas was founded in 1682, by Otermin, as a refuge for the Tiguex Indians, who were driven out of New Mexico by the great Indian war prevailing there among the *pueblo* tribes.

In the meantime, the internal settlement of Mexico progressed with more or less success. From 1542 to the end of the century, mines were opened, towns built, convents and missions established, and the beginnings of agricultural life laid through-

PERIOD I.  
SPANISH  
DOMINATION  
1528  
TO  
1821

Progress of  
settlement of  
Mexico



MAP OF THE NORTH MEXICAN STATES IN THE SIXTEENTH AND SEVENTEENTH CENTURIES.

out the northern States of New Spain. At that time the present States of Durango, Chihuahua, Sinaloa, Sonora, and Coahuila (*kō-ä-wē-lä*) constituted what was called the kingdom of Nueva Viscaya (*nwäv-ä vēs-ky-ä*) or New Biscay, and these, together with the provinces of New Leon, San Luis Potosi (*lö-ēs pō-tō-sē'*), and Tamaulipas (*tä-mau-lē'-päs*) or New Santander, in Mexico proper, and Texas, New Mexico, and Upper and Lower California, beyond the Rio Grande del Norte, made up the por-

PERIOD I.  
SPANISH  
DOMINATION

1528

TO

1821

Catholic  
missions

tions of New Spain whose histories are more particularly connected with each other.

The principal feature in the settlement of all this country was the spread of the *Catholic Missions*, and the history of the North Mexican States and Texas during the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries is composed almost exclusively of the annals of the missions and their accompanying garrisons and villages ; so that it will be well to understand that great system of religious work in New Spain. It was a well-organized system for evangelizing the savages and for laying the foundations of colonization, and its relics, as seen in the ruins of its ancient temples, constitute one of the most romantic and interesting features of Spanish America.

## QUESTIONS.

WHAT expeditions on the Gulf coast of Mexico and Texas occurred in 1518, 1519, and 1523? When was the first map of the Gulf of Mexico made, and by whom? How did it compare in accuracy with modern maps of the same region? What explorations did the Spaniards conduct in Mexico from 1521 to 1536? Who were the principal explorers in this field? What country did they hear of in the north? What was the country called, and what were the current ideas about it? What was meant by the "secret of the Strait," the "Northern Mystery," and the "Straits of Anian"? When and by whom was the first expedition into Texas said to have been made? What tribe of Indians did he encounter? What name is derived from those Indians, and when did it first occur in history? When and whence did De Narvaez sail, with what authority, and to conquer what country? Who was De Narvaez, and what titles did he assume? At what point did he first land in America? Give an account of his route and adventures on the main-land. Also, give an account of his last voyage, in attempting to reach the Rio de las Palmas. When, where, and how did he finally perish? What became of his men? Where was Malhado Island? What celebrated man was among the survivors of the Narvaez expedition? Give an account of his adventures on the coast of Texas. When did he escape to the interior, and who were his companions? From what point on the Gulf coast did they probably start inland, and through what regions did they subsequently travel? Describe what they saw and heard during their travels. Where did they finally reach the Rio Grande, and what route did they follow from there? When and where did they finally reach the Spaniards in Mexico? When and by whom was a narrative of this expedition and adventure written and published? To what did that account lead? Give an account of the

expedition of Marcos de Nizza. When was it made, through what country did he pass, and what did he claim to have seen and heard? What region and people did he probably see or hear of? When was the expedition under Coronado started, and who was to aid him, and how? How far did he proceed northward, what did he discover, and where did he spend the winter? Where did he go in the following spring, and what did he see and hear? What tribe of Indians did he meet? Give the probable route of his march in search of Quivira. What did he find? On his return from Quivira, what did Coronado do? At what dates and by whom were subsequent explorations made on the Pacific coast and in New Mexico and Arizona? Did any of these expeditions cross Texas at any point, and, if so, where and to what extent? What mistake is often made concerning the town of Isleta? Who founded Isleta, Texas, when, and for what purpose? What was done in Mexico during the last half of the sixteenth century? Name the principal divisions, states, and provinces of New Spain at that time. Which of them are most nearly connected with the history of Texas? Draw an outline map of Northern Mexico and Texas, New Mexico, and the Californias, as they were known at the close of the sixteenth century. What was a prominent and controlling feature in the settlement of New Spain during the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries?

### Topical Analysis.

1. The exploration of New Spain by Cortez, the Guzmans, Coronado, Espejo, Cabrillo, and Oñate during the sixteenth century.
2. The extent to which Mexico was settled, and the states of that country that were then established by the Spaniards.
3. The early exploration of the Gulf of Mexico, the extent to which its geography was known at that time, and the first European exploration in Texas by Cabeza de Vaca and his companions.
4. The origin of the name of *Texas*, and when it was first used.
5. The civilization of the *Pueblo* Indians in New Mexico and Arizona, and its first discovery by the Spaniards.
6. The legendary accounts of Cibola, the "Seven Cities," and Quivira.
7. The delusion among the early explorers and navigators as to a passage by water through the American continent to India, as shown by the continual search for the "secret of the Strait," the "Northern Mystery," or the "Straits of Anian."

### Parallel Readings.

Winsor's "Narrative and Critical History," Vol. II., "The Early Cartography of the Gulf of Mexico and Adjacent Parts," page 217, Chapter VII., "Early Explorations of New Mexico;" H. H. Bancroft's Works, "Arizona and New Mexico," and "North Mexican States and Texas."

PERIOD I.  
SPANISH  
DOMINATION

1528  
TO  
1821

### Geography.

Compare the map of Mexico, Texas, and New Mexico in the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries with that of the present time. Study the extent to which explorations had been made to the north of the Rio Grande, and the states and provinces that were then claimed by the Spaniards and considered to be under the government of the viceroyalty. Fix intelligently in the mind the location and extent of the regions inhabited by what are called the *Pueblo* Indians in Arizona and New Mexico. Locate the region traversed by Coronado, and the points at which the expeditions from Mexico crossed the Rio Grande into Texas at that early date.



INDIAN GIRLS WITH WATER-JARS.

## CHAPTER III.

### The Catholic Missions of New Spain.

**S**PAIN'S conquests in the New World were professedly made for the extension of the Christian religion, and the Crown itself was considered as exercising its power for the glory and strength of the Church. So that, wherever the arms of the Spaniard were carried, they were accompanied by the missionaries of the Catholic faith, and the occupation of a country was not deemed complete or beneficial unless it was founded on the prosperity of the priesthood, in saving souls and civilizing the habits of the natives. Hence, we find everywhere the missionaries and their establishments at first constituting the pioneers in the work of colonization. While a district of country was in process of being subdued, so as to admit of the residence and labors of the priesthood in the conversion of the natives, it was said to be a land of war (*tierra de guerra*), and the government of such a territory was in the hands of the military authorities, who directed their efforts to the protection of the missionaries and the gradual subjection of the Indians. When things had progressed to the point of settling the native population in villages and converting them to Christianity, so as to make them

PERIOD I.  
SPANISH  
DOMINATION  
—  
1528  
TO  
1821  
—

Methods of  
Spanish colo-  
nization



SPANISH MISSIONARIES FOUNDING A MISSION.

PERIOD I.  
SPANISH  
DOMINATION

1528

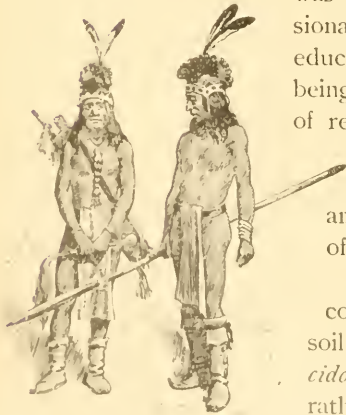
TO

1821

Objections to  
the system of  
the Spanish  
Catholics

in some degree a stable and peaceable community, the country was said to be a land of peace (*tierra de paz*), and the ordinary forms of colonial government under civil rules were supposed to take the place of the military government of the earlier times.

This condition of affairs led to several bad results. In the first place, the gentle rule of religion is not well suited to the harsh methods of war, and the strange mixture of gospel mercy with the cruel conduct of military authority could not fail to confuse and disgust the Indians. Then the priests themselves could not always reconcile their consciences to the necessity of warfare, which was actually required to keep the natives in subjection. The missionaries were seeking to save souls and to convert the savage to the gospel of peace, while the soldiers were bent on breaking the spirits of a fierce and warlike people by force and fear. The two policies were naturally inconsistent, and the history of those times shows that there was a continual clash between the religious teachers at the missions and the rude officers of the garrisons as to the proper course to be pursued in subduing the natives. The Spanish system of evangelization was the reverse of that of the intelligent missionaries of the present time. Now, we seek to educate and civilize the heathen to the point of being able to understand and accept the truths of religion; then, they demanded his religious conversion first and educated him afterwards. The true character of the system and its results are shown in the very language of the times.



INDIOS BRAVOS.

The Indians who had been converted and compelled to stay in villages, or to till the soil, were called *reduced* Indians (*Indios reducidos*), signifying that they were conquered rather than converted; while the tribes who maintained their native freedom and refused the yoke of the Church, were styled *brave* or wild

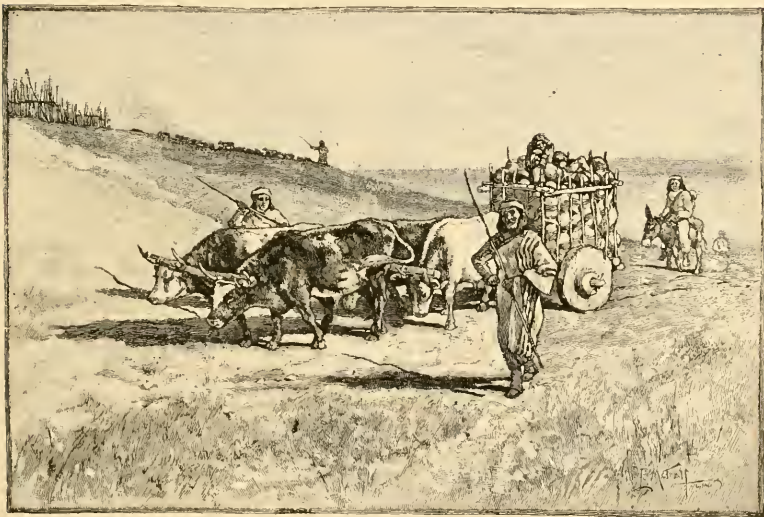
Indians (*Indios bravos*). Another serious trouble arising from this method of settling and governing the country was the inevitable power which the military obtained over the civil and

Evils of military and ecclesiastical power



PERIOD I.  
SPANISH  
DOMINATION  
—  
1528  
TO  
1821  
—

political institutions of the land. The army having been educated to know and exercise its authority in the conquest of the territory, and having been used to support the Church in its missionary labors, never surrendered its authority to the civil government of the colonies. It was this mixture of the military, ecclesiastical, and civil power, with the balance in favor of the military, that renders the history of the Spanish possessions in America so confusing and unsatisfactory, and its dangerous influence on political and personal liberty has been demonstrated



INDIOS REDUCIDOS.

throughout all the subsequent experience of New Spain. In fact, we have here demonstrated, in the rude society of those early days, the operation of those two forces which are a curse to the liberties and prosperity of any country when allowed to dominate its institutions, and which have been more than all things else the cause of the political and social misfortunes of both Old and New Spain,—the Army and the Church.

The monks of the Order of St. Francis, or *Franciscans* as they were called, were the first missionaries of New Spain. After the conquest of Mexico in 1521, until 1590, these holy friars

The work of  
the Franciscan  
monks

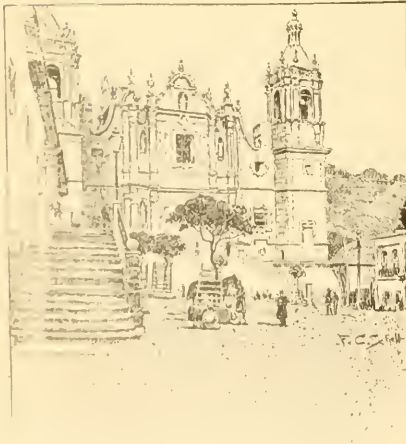
PERIOD I.  
SPANISH  
DOMINATION

1528  
TO  
1821

founded the convents and stations which became the centres of colonization and the sources of civilization among the natives. They accompanied every expedition, and amid the cruelties of savage warfare, their churches and chapels were the only redeeming features in the otherwise wretched picture of Spanish conquest and tyranny. Some of them were hard, grasping, and worldly ambitious, and beneath many a cowl and cassock breathed a warrior's spirit and a miser's greed. But in the main they were pious and kindly men, whose earnest desire was the conversion of the heathen, and whose lonely lives were devoted to healing the wounds inflicted by the Spanish conquerors' cruelty and injustice.

From 1554 to 1590 the Franciscans labored earnestly in New Biscay, and extended their establishments through Durango, Sinaloa, Sonora, Chihuahua, New Leon, Tamaulipas, and Coahuila. Their headquarters were at Zacatecas (zac-ä-tä'-käs) and Durango, and during the period named they established ten stations east of the Sierra Madre mountains. These were the beginnings, though not part, of the extensive system of Catholic missions which afterwards prevailed throughout all the provinces of Northern Mexico and the Californias.

It was in the year 1590 that the members of the Society of Jesus, called *Jesuits*, first appeared in the missionary field of Northern Mexico. They were at first supported by the patronage and authority of the government, and with great zeal they began to improve on the humble start which the Franciscan monks had made towards Christianizing and civilizing the native tribes. It was under their management that the *mission* system was first organized and mainly extended. Their principal colleges and convents were

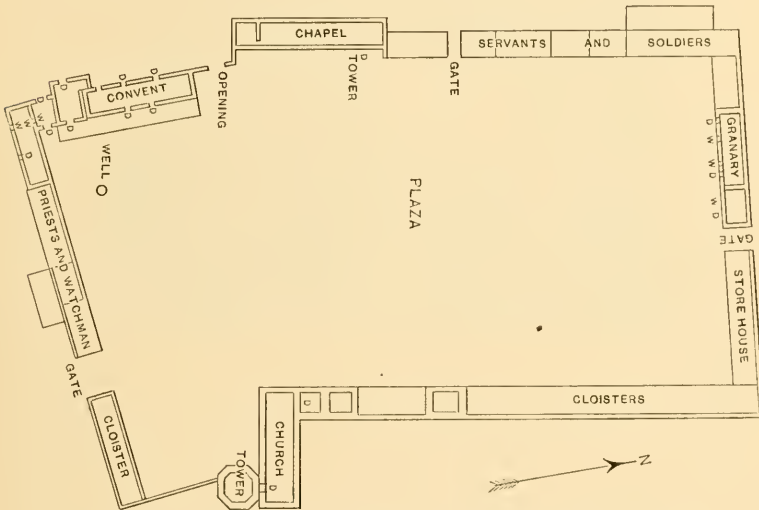


CATHEDRAL OF ZACATECAS.

PERIOD I.  
SPANISH  
DOMINATION  
—  
1528  
TO  
1821  
—

at Gvadiana (gwä'-dē-än-ä), and later at Guadalajara (gwä-dä-lä-här'-ä), Zacatecas, Durango, and San Luis Potosi. From these centres of missionary life were sent out the men who dared the perils of an unknown wilderness, and the warfare of savages excited to hostility by the ravages and cruelty of the Spanish soldiers.

The first object of the missionaries was, of course, the conversion of the Indians to Christianity, and then it was sought to teach them to dwell in houses and villages and to till the soil.



GROUND PLAN OF AN OLD MISSION. (D stands for door, W for window.)  
(Being the actual plan of the Mission San Juan Capristan, San Antonio, Texas.)

In this work the aid of the soldiery was needed, both for the subjection of the mission Indians and for protection against wild tribes. Hence, the mission system was partly religious and patriarchal, and partly military. A *mission* usually consisted of a church or chapel for worship, and a collection of cloisters and cells for the monks, out-buildings for stock and storage, and a considerable quantity of irrigated land for farms and vineyards. The buildings were of stone and *adobe* (ä-dōb'-ā) or sun-dried bricks, and the church itself was often of an imposing and beautiful architecture, its statuary and ornamental finishings frequently

Plan and  
buildings of an  
old mission

PERIOD I.  
SPANISH  
DOMINATION

1528  
TO  
1821

being the work of Spanish artists brought from beyond the seas. The various buildings were generally arranged around a hollow square or quadrangle, facing inward, with the church in one corner or in the centre of one side and facing outward—all enclosed by a high, massive wall, which enabled the establishment to resist all ordinary hostile attacks when the inhabitants were housed and the gates closed. Connected with each mission, or sometimes within its walls, was a garrison of soldiers (*presidio*), and near by was usually a village or town (*villa*), composed of Spanish colonists and such Indians as had consented to adopt a permanent abode and submit to the regulations of municipal government. Around such establishments was a more or less extended tract of mission lands, which were allotted to the Indians as they became sufficiently *reduced* to consent to cultivate the soil; and the holy fathers themselves generally had a choice spot of ground cultivated as garden, orchard, and vineyard. The mission lands were usually irrigated and often brought to a high state of cultivation, as the remains of the ancient *acquiás* (*ä-sä'-quē-äs*) or ditches and drains attest to this day.

The methods of missionary work performed by these establishments consisted in allotting to each a more or less extended district of country, and throughout this the priests founded *stations*, where the Indians were collected into native settlements (*pueblos*), and visited regularly by their religious teachers. These visitations made up the labor of the various missions, and the whole system was governed according to a well-organized plan administered by the ecclesiastical authorities, aided and protected by the military, as has been before explained. It should be borne in mind that the name of one of these establishments was sometimes susceptible of several variations. The *mission* proper was usually designated by some sacred name or invocation, as some saint or religious hero; the village (*villa*) attached to it was often known by another name; while the military post (*presidio*) maintained for the protection of both mission and village would, perhaps, have still a different name. This mixture of titles is liable to cause confusion, especially when taken into consideration with the further fact that a mission might be founded at one place and be afterwards aban-

Methods of  
mission labor

Confusion in  
the names of  
missions

done and removed elsewhere, still retaining the original name of its sacred invocation.

*New Biscay*, during the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries, included the several states before named, but it gradually came to signify more particularly Chihuahua and Durango, with the city of Durango as its capital. Coahuila, in the seventeenth century and before, extended from the Bolson de Mapimi (bōl'-sōn dā mā-pē'-mē) to the Rio Grande, and late in the eighteenth

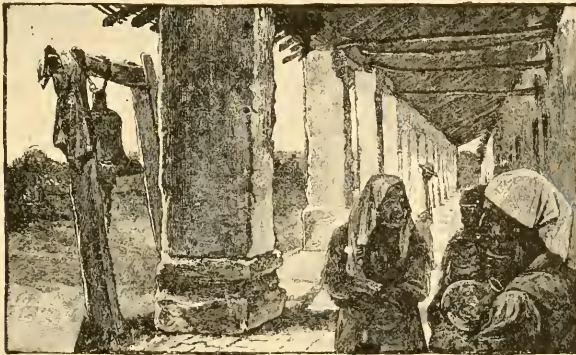
PERIOD I.  
SPANISH  
DOMINATION

1528

TO

1821

Coahuila



CORRIDOR AND CLOISTERS OF AN OLD MISSION.

century (1785) the districts of Parras (pär-räs') and Saltillo (sä-l-tēl'-yō) were attached to it.

In 1582, the Franciscan friars established a convent at Saltillo in the present State of Coahuila, *padre* (pä'-drā) Lorenzo Gavira (gä-vē'-rä) being at the head of it. In 1586, the village (*villa*) of Saltillo was founded under a regular municipal government. Soon afterwards the natives rose in revolt against the missionaries, and in 1592 the latter called on the viceroy for aid. An expedition under Captain Urdinola, with a large command of Tlaxcaltecs (the tribe who had so bravely resisted and afterwards aided Cortez), came to the rescue and founded a town near by. From these Tlaxcaltecs came many of the leading families of Coahuila and New Leon.

Missions at  
Saltillo and  
Parras

In 1598, the Jesuits founded a mission at Parras, in what is now called Coahuila, which prospered for a time, but was almost broken up by a trouble between the Indians and certain Span-

PERIOD I.  
SPANISH  
DOMINATION

1528

TO

1821

Troubles in  
Durango and  
Chihuahua

Jesuit  
missions  
destroyed

iards who tried to monopolize the land and water in the vicinity. Nothing of importance occurred at Saltillo or Parras from 1600 to 1640, as the natives were mild and life peaceable there. In the west, however, there were serious revolts and severe fighting near Durango. These troubles arose in the mission districts of the Jesuits, while the Franciscans fared better; which difference probably occurred from the fact that the latter depended more on individual piety and Christian labor, and less on the support of the military force.

In 1645-46, the missions were taken from the Jesuits by the bishop and given to the common clergy. This was said to have been done by the influence of certain wealthy Spaniards, who hated the Jesuits because the latter had befriended the Indians against the monopoly of water and other oppressive acts. The movement resulted in the abandonment of many *pueblos* and the loss of much that had been accomplished. By the year 1700 the mission Indians had been dispersed in the Parras district, except the Tlaxcaltecs who came in 1592.

On all the old maps of New Spain or Mexico, there is to be noticed a wide and indefinite tract of country extending from below the Rio Grande, north and east, as far as New Mexico, and including a good portion of what is now Texas. To this vague territory was given the title of *Apacheria* (ä-päch-ér-ē'-ä),—that is, *the land of the Apaches*. That country was the refuge and hunting-ground of the various wild tribes of Indians who inhabited the mountain fastnesses of Northern Mexico, New Mexico, and Arizona,

and whom the Spaniards designated by the general name of the largest and most warlike band,—the Apaches. Near the middle of the seventeenth century these Indians began to show signs of a general and fierce hostility towards the Spanish soldiers and settlements. The priests of the missions claimed that all the trouble arose from the cupidity and cruelty of the



INDIAN WARRIOR OF THE APACHERIA.

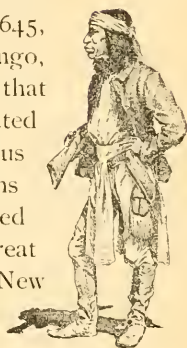
Beginning of  
Ind an wars

secular officials and their desire to make slaves of the natives, which was probably true. At any rate, once aroused, the hostility grew and did not spare the missions in the general warfare upon everything Spanish. In 1644, the *Tobosos* attacked the missionary establishments in Coahuila, and were driven out and across the Rio Grande by the troops. Thus began the Apache wars on the Rio Grande, which have continued for two centuries and have scarcely yet been entirely subdued. In 1645, the *Conchos* (kôn'-chōz) rebelled in Chihuahua and Durango, and drove out the missionaries. In fact, the remainder of that century in Chihuahua was little else but the record of repeated Indian outbreaks, resulting in the establishment of numerous garrisons on and near the Rio Grande to check the invasions and revolts. El Paso, on the Rio Grande, was thus founded in 1663, by Captain Andres Garcia (gär-sē'-ä). Two great uprisings occurred in Durango, in 1680 and 1690. In New Mexico, since the conquest of that country in 1599, the missions had greatly prospered, and many native *pueblos* were converted. But in 1680, under Governor Otermin, a great Indian revolt began, nearly all the Spaniards and Franciscans were murdered and driven south to El Paso. It was at this time that the old Texas town of Isleta was founded. The reconquest of the country was begun in 1692, by Governor Vargas, and completed in 1696, after which New Mexico remained submissive to Spain.

In the meanwhile, in spite of savage raids and the general terror of the times, the holy fathers faltered not in their pious work. In 1660, missionaries established a station at the Junta de los Rios (hün'-tä dā lōs rē'-ōs), or junction of the Conchos and Rio Grande, which was broken up two years later. In 1683, when the Spaniards had taken refuge at El Paso from the Indian rebellion in New Mexico, a native of the *Jumanas* (hū-män'-äs) tribe came to El Paso and asked for a friar to convert his people. He told of the province of the *Tejas*, which he described as a very fertile and beautiful country. In the same year a mission called Guadalupe (gwä-dä-lō'-pā) was established on the river below El Paso, but it was broken up by the natives the next year. In 1684, three Franciscan monks were sent down the river from El

PERIOD I.  
SPANISH  
DOMINATION

1528  
TO  
1821



APACHE.

Indian revolt  
in New Mexico

Missions on  
the Rio Grande

Missionary  
tour in Texas

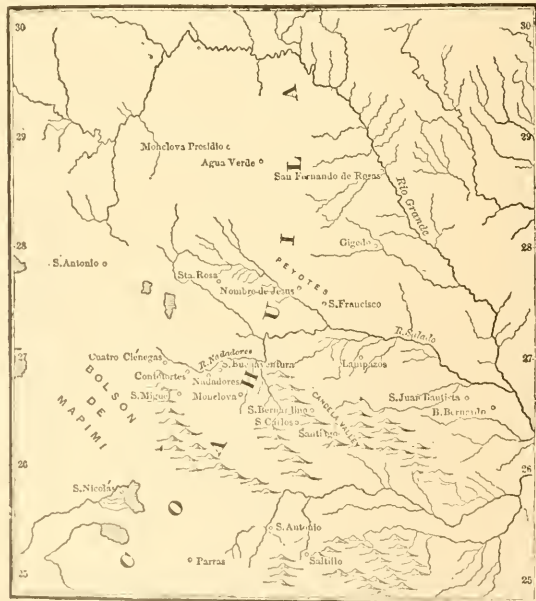
PERIOD I.  
SPANISH  
DOMINATION

 1528  
TO  
1821

Paso by Governor Jironza (hē-rōn'-zā), and they revived the mission at the mouth of the Conchos. *Padre* Antonio Acebedo (ä-sā-bā'-dō) remained there to teach, while the other two,—Nicolas Lopez and Juan de Zavaleta,—with an escort of soldiers, went east into the plains of Texas and across the Pecos River, then called the Salado (sä-lä'-THō or sä-lä'-ō), many days' journey, and, as they claimed, within twenty leagues of the Tejas Indians.

In 1697, the mission *Nombre de Dios* (dē'-ōs) was founded about one league from the present city of Chihuahua, at first called San Felipe de Chihuahua.

Turning now to Coahuila, where the Franciscans mainly operated, we find that from 1670 to 1675 *padre* Juan Larios and

 Missions in  
New Leon and  
Coahuila


MAP OF COAHUILA IN THE SEVENTEENTH AND EIGHTEENTH CENTURIES.

other Franciscans founded the mission of San Miguel de Aguayo (ä-gwi'-yō), near Nadadorés, and the mission at Nadadorés was founded in 1676. These were continued for several years, and



in 1687 the viceroy established the villa (vēl'-yā) and presidio (prā-sēd'-ē-ō) of Santiago de Monclova, often called in those days Villa de Coahuila, or simply Coahuila, being the modern Monclova,—half a league from San Miguel. In 1688, Father Manzanet (män'-zan-ā) established a mission near Monclova, and Francisco Hidalgo (ē-dāl'-gō), Francisco Estevez, and Father Escaray joined him. They also founded the Mission Dolores (dō-lō'-rāz) at Boca de Leones (lā-ōn'-āz), near Lampazos, in New Leon. Manzanet's mission was called San Salvador, or Santiago, and it was in the *Candéla* valley. In 1688, *padre* Francisco Penasco founded the Mission Nombre de Jesus (hē-sūs') Peyotes (pā-yō'-tāz), forty or fifty leagues from Monclova, at a point called San Ildefonso, which was broken up and revived in Texas under the same invocation. Other missions near there were the San Bernardino, the San Buenaventura (bwā-nā-ven-tō'-rā), besides San Miguel and Nadadorés, already mentioned.

In 1691, Manzanet and Hidalgo came to Texas. San Juan Bautista (bau-tēs'-tā) was founded near the Sabinas (sā-bēn'-ās) in 1699, but was abandoned. In 1700, Hidalgo, with the assistance of Fathers Antonio Olivares (ō-lē-vār'-āz) and Marcos Guereña (gwā-rān'-yā), re-established it near the Rio Grande, and it is usually classed as a Texas mission. Olivares then came on to the Rio Frio (frē'-ō), in Texas, where he engaged in active work. Bishop Galindo (gä-lēn'-dō) came to cheer them on, in December, 1700.

This lengthy and somewhat tedious account of the labor, names, and locations of the Mexican missions may seem unimportant, but it will be found to serve two useful purposes: it indicates the extent of Spanish exploration at the close of the seventeenth century; and it throws valuable and indispensable light on the operation of the same character of missionary establishments in Texas, whose annals constitute almost the entire record of Texas history during the eighteenth century.

PERIOD I.  
SPANISH  
DOMINATION

1528  
TO  
1821

Father  
Manzanet

San Ildefonso

San Juan  
Bautista

Father Oli-  
vares

Value of this  
outline of  
missions

PERIOD I.  
SPANISH  
DOMINATION

1528

TO

1821

---

## QUESTIONS.

WHAT was the professed object of Spanish conquest in the New World? Who were pioneers in the work of Spanish colonization in America? What was the relation between the Army and the Church in the work of exploration and settlement? What was meant by a "land of war," and by a "land of peace"? Give the Spanish words for each. Describe the methods of governing each. What bad results flowed from this method of colonizing the country? What was the difference between the methods of colonizing and Christianizing the heathen employed by the Spanish missionaries, and those used by modern missionaries? What was meant by *reduced* Indians, and by *brave* Indians? Give the Spanish words for each. What other evil results, politically and socially, did this mixture of military and religious power produce? What two powers or influences have always predominated in Spanish America, and with what effect upon the country and people? Who were the Franciscans? What did they do in New Spain? What were the general character and services of these missionaries? When and in what portions of New Spain did they first labor? Where were their headquarters, and of what system were they the forerunners? Who were the Jesuits? When did they first appear in Northern Mexico? What great system did they found and organize? Where were their principal colleges and convents? What was the first object of the missions? What next? What was the character of the mission system? Describe the usual location, arrangement, and buildings of an old Spanish mission. What was the *presidio*? What was the *villa*? What relations did these bear to the mission? What about the mission lands and their cultivation? What was an *acequia*? Describe the usual methods of missionary labor. What were "stations" and "pueblos"? How were the various missions, *presidios* and *villas*, named, and to what did this often lead? What territory was included in the Mexican kingdom of New Biscay (Nueva Viscaya)? What were the limits of Coahuila in the seventeenth and eighteenth centuries? When and by whom was the first convent established at Saltillo? When was the villa of Saltillo founded? Describe what soon happened, and what celebrated native tribe sent colonists to Saltillo. When and by whom was the mission at Parras established? What occurred in that district for the next forty years? What troubles arose in Durango, and why? What was done with the missions in 1645-46? With what results? What was meant by the *Apacheria*, and where was it? What occurred among the Indians about the middle of the seventeenth century, and what caused it? Describe the progress and effects of the Indian wars in Northern Mexico during the latter half of the seventeenth century. When, by whom, and for what purpose was El Paso del Norte founded? What occurred in New Mexico in 1680? When and how was Isleta founded? What error is often made in regard to that place? When and by whom was New Mexico

reconquered? What missionary stations were established on the upper Rio Grande in the seventeenth century? Give the names, dates, and location of each of these stations and missions. Who were the Jumanas, and what message did they send to El Paso in 1683? What was then told of the Tejas Indians and their country? When and by whom was the first missionary tour made into Texas, and how far did it go? Describe the locations, and give the names and dates of founding of the several missions in Coahuila in the latter half of the seventeenth century. By whom were they respectively founded? What celebrated missionary fathers came to Texas at the close of the seventeenth century? What missions did they establish, when and where?

### Topical Analysis.

1. The military and religious elements in the conquest and colonization of the New World by the Spaniards.
2. The evils of the blending of military and religious policies in the government of the country, and its effects then and since upon the country and people.
3. Disagreements between the priests and soldiers as to the treatment of the Indians.
4. The Spanish methods of Christianizing and civilizing the natives, by first compelling them to accept the Christian creed and then teaching them the arts of civilized life, contrasted with modern methods of missionary work.
5. Division of the country into *land of war* and *land of peace*, and of the natives into *Indios bravos* and *Indios reducidos*; meaning of the terms, and the light they throw on the system practised by the Spaniards.
6. The Franciscans and the Jesuits: contrast their character and methods of labor, and the results upon the Indians; their respective influence and fields of usefulness in the Mission Period.
7. The territory covered by the mission system at the close of the seventeenth century; States of Northern Mexico embraced in its field of labor.
8. The names, locations, and dates of founding of the first missions on the Rio Grande and in Texas.
9. Names and character of the early missionary fathers in Mexico and Texas.

### Geography.

Trace on the map of Mexico the limits of Spanish occupation and settlement in New Spain in the seventeenth century; outline the kingdom of New Biscay and the provinces lying north of it; locate the various early missions in Chihuahua, Coahuila, Texas, and New Mexico, and trace the routes and stations of the first missionary labor along the Rio Grande and into Texas.

PERIOD I.  
SPANISH  
DOMINATION

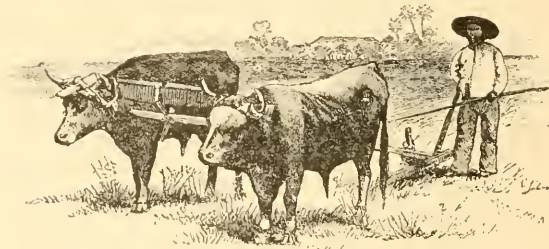
1528

TO

1821

### Parallel Readings.

Brantz Mayer's "Mexico: Aztec, Spanish, and Republican;" Winsor's "Narrative and Critical History of America," Vol. II., Chap. V., "Las Casas and the Relations of the Spaniards to the Indians," Vol. VIII., Chap. IV., "Spanish North America;" H. H. Bancroft's Works, Vol. XV., "North Mexican States and Texas."



A MEXICAN FARMER.

## CHAPTER IV.

### The Spanish Occupation of Texas.

**R**EVIEWING the prominent events of early Spanish exploration, it is seen that, at the date of La Salle's tragic death on the Neches, in 1687, the facts regarding the preceding history of Texas were briefly the following: Pineda, Cabeza de Vaca, and perhaps Nuño de Guzman, were the first Europeans to visit Texas,—the first coasting and mapping its shores in 1518, the second traversing its territory from the Gulf to the Rio Grande in 1535. Coronado and the followers of De Soto had entered its boundaries, one from the west and the others from the east, in 1540 to 1542. At that time the country had no fixed name, ascertained boundaries, or practical interest for the Spaniards, nor did it acquire such until about the close of the seventeenth century. From 1581 to 1598 the Spaniards frequently crossed Texas soil on their trips to and from New Mexico, while Espejo, Sosa, and Humaña (ö-man'-yä) travelled east and northeast to the buffalo plains and along the Pecos River. Oñate, in his search for *Quivira*, entered the territory, and from that time until 1654 many expeditions of priests and officers were made from New Mexico into portions of Texas, some of which met, traded, and fought with native tribes and entered the land of the Tejas Indians. The country had given no indications of mineral wealth, and that alone was sufficient to render its immediate or permanent occupation a matter of indifference to the gold-hunting Spaniards. But Spanish missionaries had founded stations and preached Christianity as far as the Pecos and beyond, while Spanish troopers had hunted along its streams and chased the buffalo on its prairies long before 1685. In that very year, Peñalosa (pän'-yälö'-sä), the late governor of New Mexico, was in London and Paris, trying to organize an expedition to explore and conquer

PERIOD I.  
SPANISH  
DOMINATION  
—  
1528  
TO  
1821  
—

Review of the  
principal inci-  
dents of early  
Spanish ex-  
ploration in  
Texas

PERIOD I.  
SPANISH  
DOMINATION

1528

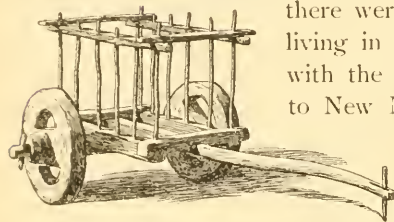
TO

1821

Father Paredes's account  
of Texas, 1686

the wonderful country he claimed to have discovered, and which included the fertile domain of the Tejas Indians.

In 1686, Viceroy Laguna called upon Father Alonzo Paredes (pär-ā'-dāz), for many years a missionary in New Mexico, for a report as to the region where Texas lies. Paredes's report is the first and most authentic account of the notions which then prevailed in regard to this country. He denounced as false and delusive the ideas about the wealth, magnificence, and civilization of the regions to the east and northeast. His idea was that



A MEXICAN CART.

there were Indian tribes, engaged in agriculture, living in a strip fifty leagues wide along the Gulf, with the wild Apaches farther west and reaching to New Mexico; that between the two, from the Rio Grande or the Colorado northward, there were superior tribes, including the Tejas. His descriptions are so confused as to distances and the names and locations of streams, that but little

can be made of them; but he locates the Tejas (the same as, or a kindred tribe to, the *Cenis* or *Asinais*) between the Brazos or Colorado and the Trinity Rivers, the *Jumanas*, *Apaches*, and other tribes, west and northwest, and Quivira immediately north of these, perhaps in the region of the present Indian Territory.

Origin of the  
name "Texas"

There have been many fanciful and fictitious accounts of the origin of the name *Texas*. It is plainly derived from the Tejas (tā-hās, tā-yas, or tex-as) Indians, that being the name applied by the Spaniards to what appeared to be the most influential and civilized tribe dwelling within the limits of this province. They lived in the east, between the Trinity and Sabine Rivers; but they were the first with whom the Spaniards had peaceable dealings, and gradually their name was given to the entire province. Whether *Tejas* was the name by which those Indians called themselves, or was given them for some incident or trait connected with the tribe, is not known; but the derivation of the word cannot remain in doubt when the facts are considered.

New  
Philippines

On the old maps of the Mexican States, the region known as the province of Texas appears to be a part of what was designated as Nueva Filipinas (nwā'-vā fā-lip-ēn'-ās), or *New*

*Philippines*, just as Coahuila was called *New Estrémadura*, and Tamaulipas was laid down as *New Santander*; but these were Spanish fancies borrowed from their European home, and soon gave way to the local names of the several native provinces.

The next hundred years of the history of this territory is little more than an account of the missionary labors of Spanish priests, and the efforts of the military garrisons to protect them in the work of converting the native tribes. It is usually called the "Mission Period," and is of great romantic interest, although its practical results are not great.

In 1684, it will be remembered that the Spaniards captured one of La Salle's vessels as he was on his way to plant a colony at the mouth of the Mississippi. When he started on his first journey from Fort St. Louis to find the Illinois, in 1686, he met with Indians on the Colorado, whose accoutrements indicated clearly their communication with the Spanish occupants of Mexico. Then, a short time after the founding of his fort on the Lavaca, one of his men, afterwards known as Juan Enríque (en-rē'-quā), deserted and escaped to Mexico, where he told the tale of the French expedition. From these several sources the Spaniards became acquainted with the threatened occupancy of Texas by another power. The country had not before seemed especially desirable; but when it appeared that a foreign invasion of the territory was on foot, the viceroy of New Spain considered it time to assert his ownership in the soil.

He ordered Governor Alonzo de Leon, of Coahuila, to march to Espiritu Santo Bay; and on March 23, 1689, De Leon set out from Mexico, with the Frenchman Enrique and one hundred men, accompanied by Father Manzanet and other friars. He crossed the Rio Grande above the mouth of the Salado, traversed and gave names to the Nueces (nū-ā'-sāz), Hondo, Medina, and Guadalupe Rivers, and arrived at Fort St. Louis on April 22, 1689. He was told that four of the survivors had gone north to the land of the Tejas Indians, and he found the Fort in ruins, with the dead bodies of some of its inmates. He proceeded farther north to the Colorado and explored it to near its mouth. Word was sent for the absent Frenchmen, and L'Archevêque and Grollet, of La Salle's men, appeared, were seized and sent

PERIOD I.  
SPANISH  
DOMINATION  
1528  
TO  
1821  
—

The Mission  
Period

Spaniards  
hear of  
La Salle's  
expedition

De Leon's first  
expedition to  
Texas

PERIOD I.  
SPANISH  
DOMINATION

1528  
TO  
1821

De Leon's sec-  
ond expedition



MISSION SAN FRANCISCO DE LA ESPADA.  
(Formerly San Francisco de los Tejas.)

The first Texas  
mission, San  
Francisco de  
los Tejas

Domingo  
Teran, first  
governor of  
Texas

Missions in  
East Texas  
unfortunate  
and aban-  
doned

as prisoners to Spain. De Leon returned to Coahuila by the same route he had come, reaching there in May, 1689. On the day before he left for his return, the chief of the Tejas Indians visited the camp and acted in a friendly manner. When the viceroy received a report of this journey, he ordered another to be made at once, for the purpose of a regular missionary occupation of the country in the usual way. De Leon set out on this second trip from Monclova, in March, 1690, accompanied again by Father Manzanet and three friars from Queretaro (kā-rā'tār-ō), and they travelled by the same route as before, reaching Espiritu Santo Bay safely. In May the Tejas chief came again

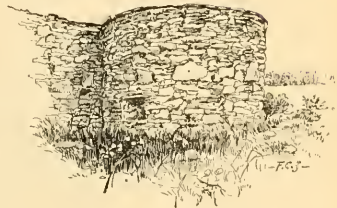
and persuaded De Leon to go with him to the land of the tribe on the Trinity River, which the Spaniards accordingly did, leaving a camp on the Guadalupe at the Bay. The visit was most kindly received by the Tejas, and they seemed anxious for missionaries. Thereupon De Leon and Father Manzanet founded among them the first Spanish mission in the interior of Texas, calling it *San Francisco de los Tejas*. This was June 1,

1690, and the conversion of the province was thereafter by royal decree committed to the Franciscans. De Leon left Father Foncuberta in charge of the newly-founded mission, with priests to aid him and a small garrison to protect them, and some horses and cattle for the support of the establishment. While there he captured five Frenchmen and one woman, and heard of others among the Indians. He then returned to Mexico and gave a most favorable report of the fertility and beauty of the country and its desirability as a missionary field. On January 1, 1691, Don Domingo Teran de los Rios was appointed governor of Coahuila and Texas, with instructions to explore and conquer the country and to found eight missions.

Teran set out May 16, with Manzanet and nine Franciscan friars, and marched to the Colorado River. An expedition was also sent by sea to meet him at Espiritu Santo Bay. Teran went first to the mission San Francisco de los Tejas, where he



found matters not in a very flourishing condition. There had been sickness, and the inmates had suffered from "freshets and snow-storms." He and the priests founded a new mission near there, called Jesus Maria y José, or usually simply Santa Maria. In September he met the sea expedition at Espiritu Santo, where it had been waiting since July, whence he sailed for Vera Cruz. He left behind a force of soldiers and fifteen missionaries to sustain the missions in Eastern Texas, but matters went wrong there for several years. The crops failed, sickness prevailed, the Indians were superstitious and claimed that the baptismal water made them die, and the missionaries became greatly discouraged. Finally, in October, 1693, being refused proper aid from home and losing heart in this wilderness of savages, the friars buried



BULWARK AT ESPADA MISSION.

their mission-bells, and other property not transportable, and turned their faces towards Coahuila. For the next twenty-two years nothing was done in Texas, except that the older missions on the Rio Grande were still maintained. Both Spain and France seem to have suspended any efforts to claim and colonize the country, but the French in Louisiana did prosecute some trade with the Indians in this province. Spain had acquired a foothold in Florida, at Pensacola, and France had settled Louisiana and founded New Orleans under D'Iberville, and trading parties from the French posts along the western boundary of Louisiana began to make expeditions into Texas. It was said that one such party travelled across the country to the Rio Grande in 1705.

In 1713, Governor Cadillac, of Louisiana, ordered Louis St. Denis (dā-nē) to organize an expedition to the old Spanish missions in Texas, for the purpose of buying horses and cattle, but this was a mere pretext for exploring the territory and establishing trade with the natives. St. Denis, leaving Mobile with a force of Canadians in the following year, entered the country of the Tejas, where he found great numbers of cattle; and the natives, learning that he was going beyond to the Rio Grande, asked him to tell the priest Hidalgo and

PERIOD I.  
SPANISH  
DOMINATION  
—  
1528  
TO  
1821  
—

Interval of in-  
activity

French in  
Louisiana

St. Denis

PERIOD I.  
SPANISH  
DOMINATION

1528  
TO  
1821

Colonel Urantia to come back again, as the Indians wanted the missions restored.

St. Denis reached the Presidio del Rio Grande, where was the mission San Juan Bautista, in 1715, being accompanied by a company of Tejas Indians. On the way they fought a bloody battle with Lipan Apaches, on the San Marcos River. Captain



COUNTRY STORE ON THE RIO GRANDE.

Diego Ramon (ră-môn'), in command at the presidio on the Rio Grande, received St. Denis kindly, and in a short time the latter went on to the City of Mexico to report his purposes to the viceroy. He had stayed long enough, however, at the Spanish fort to fall in love with Ramon's daughter, and for a while at least he became a very good Spaniard. Upon St. Denis's representations, the authorities determined upon another expedition to occupy Texas, and it set out from Saltillo in February, 1716, with Domingo Ramon in command and St. Denis as his assistant. On their arrival at San Juan Bautista, St. Denis was married to the commandant's daughter, and on April 24, 1716, the expedition marched from the Rio Grande to the interior. There were with them a number of Franciscans, including the celebrated *padres* Felix Espinósa and Antonio Margil'.

Reaching the land of the Tejas in July, they established four missions and a presidio on or near the Sabine and Neches Rivers, and two others the next year. These were: a revival

Fourth expedi-  
tion to Texas

Six missions  
on the Neches  
and Sabine

of the old foundation of San Francisco de los Tejas, near the same spot; La Purissima Concepcion, among the Asinais Indians; the mission of Our Lady of Guadalupe, near Nacogdoches; San José Mission; the mission Dolores, among the Aes; and the mission San Miguel Cuellar de los Adaes;—around which we are told there were congregated more than five thousand people “speaking the same idiom.”

These establishments all began prosperously, the Indians were friendly and seemed disposed to yield to teaching. But from the first the tribes in Texas did not submit successfully to the system of dwelling in *pueblos* or villages. They were nomadic and fickle in their habits, fond of the chase and the horseback raid over the plains, and the orderly and permanent life of a settled habitation did not suit them. To curb this roving disposition and properly *reduce* the Indians of Texas, the missionaries were constantly demanding increased military support, and in turn the excesses and cruelties of the class of soldiers who came provoked the unmanageable temper of the natives; so that the old priests were in trouble on all sides.

St. Denis had been reared in contact with the Indians, was of an amiable disposition towards them, and understood their peculiar habits, so that he was of great assistance in enabling the Spaniards to gain a peaceable start among the tribes along the Sabine and adjacent rivers. In a short time, however, he was suspected of treachery and accused of smuggling, and was arrested and carried to Mexico for trial, which resulted in his banishment to Guatemala. He escaped from there, returned to Louisiana, and was placed in command of the French fort at Natchitoches.

Martin de Alarcon, governor of Coahuila, was made governor of Texas also, and he entered the province early in 1718. His instructions contemplated that he should introduce a good class of colonists, and should bring with him mechanics and

PERIOD I.  
SPANISH  
DOMINATION  
—  
1528  
TO  
1821  
—

Fickleness of  
Texas tribes



A MEXICAN HORSE TRADER.

St. Denis ban-  
ished

Governor  
Alarcon

PERIOD I.  
SPANISH  
DOMINATION

1528

TO

1821

others capable of instructing and improving the Indians. He established the presidio of San Antonio de Bejar (bā'-hār), on the San Antonio River, being the first settlement at the location of the modern city of San Antonio. The missionaries claimed that Alarcon did not fulfil his instructions, but that he had brought a worthless and turbulent class of settlers with him,

and had done more harm than good. At this time, also, the mission of San Antonio de Valéro was established near the presidio of Bejar, under the ministrition of Father Olivares, who brought some of his converts from the mission of San Francisco Solano on the Rio Grande.



CATHEDRAL DE SAN FERNANDO (BEXAR).

During Alarcon's governorship Bejar was recognized as the capital, and it practically remained so ever afterwards, although nominally for a time the capital was located at the presidio on the eastern limits of the province, known as Pilar de los Adaes.

In 1719, the Frenchman La Harpe founded a small settlement among the Nassonite Indians, in what is now Red River County. In that year, war having broken out in Europe between France and Spain, the French in Louisiana assumed a hostile attitude towards both Florida and Texas. In June, a force of French and Indians, under St. Denis, seized the mission of San Miguel Cuellar de los Adaes, and the priests and soldiers retired to Bejar, where for the next two years the Spaniards held their only station in Texas. In 1719, La Harpe made a feeble attempt to land a French colony at Galveston or Espiritu Santo Bay, but was driven off by the natives.

In 1720, the Marquis San Miguel de Aguayo was appointed governor of Coahuila and Texas, and he was a man of wisdom, skill, and firmness. In 1721, he marched from the Rio Grande to the vicinity of the abandoned missions on the Neches and Sabine, where he re-established five of them, and founded the

French attack  
and drive the  
Spaniards  
from the east

Marquis de  
Aguayo in  
Texas

presidio of Tejas among the Asinais, near the mission Concepcion. He rebuilt los Adaes and established the mission of Our Lady of Pilar de los Adaes in the same neighborhood. Aguayo returned to Bejar in January, 1722, and very much strengthened that post.

In April, he founded a presidio on the site of La Salle's old Fort St. Louis, calling it Santa Maria de Loreto de la Bahía del



MISSION LA BAHÍA DEL ESPÍRITU SANTO.  
(Present site.)

*La Bahía*, as it was generally known; and, also, a mission near by known as Espíritu Santo de Zuniga, or simply Espíritu Santo. Aguayo went back to Coahuila in May, 1722, leaving General Almazan' in command in Texas as lieutenant-governor. Aguayo had greatly improved things in the province. He revived the mission work everywhere, started the cultivation of the soil by

PERIOD I.  
SPANISH  
DOMINATION

1528

TO

1821

La Bahía and  
Espíritu Santo



MISSION SAN JOSÉ DE AGUAYO.

irrigation around the missions at Bejar, and left the garrisons and missions much fortified and encouraged. In 1720, there had been established at Bejar, or near by in the valley, a new mission, called San José de Aguayo, in honor of the Marquis.

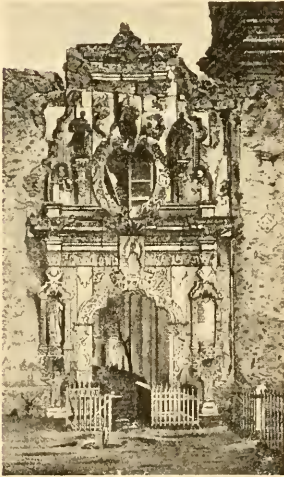
San José

PERIOD I.  
SPANISH  
DOMINATION  
—  
1528  
TO  
1821  
—

Removals of  
La Bahia and  
Espiritu Santo

Almazan' was governor from 1722 to 1726, but the country did not continue to prosper. The Indian wars began to harass the settlers and to make missionary life dangerous and uncertain. The establishments on Espiritu Santo Bay were abandoned and removed to the interior in 1725, the presidio of La Bahia and the mission of Espiritu Santo being then located in the valley of the Guadalupe above Victoria, where their ruins may yet be seen. Again, in 1749, these two noted establishments were

transferred to the San Antonio River, near the present town of Goliad, where the old church of the fort is still used for worship, and the mission is occupied as a tenant house on a farm.



PORTAL OF SAN JOSÉ MISSION.

Melchor de Mediavilla succeeded Almazan', from 1727 to 1730. In Aguayo's time he had recommended that two hundred families of Tlaxcaltecs and four hundred families from the Canary Islands should be brought to Bejar, and his suggestion was approved as to the immigrants from the Canaries, but great delays had occurred in the matter. Finally, in 1730, the villa or town of San Fernando, being part of the subsequent

city of San Antonio, was founded, fifteen families from the Canaries were imported, and a regular settlement began at that point. In 1727-28, General Rivera visited and inspected the missions and garrisons of the province. He found things in a reasonably prosperous condition, but recommended a reduction of the military posts and the abandonment of some stations. This met with violent protests from the priests, and it was the beginning of a long and bitter contest between the missionaries and the military, which produced no end of trouble, and greatly crippled the labors of the priests among the Indians.

The presidio of Tejas was abandoned in 1727, and all the others were reduced. Thus deprived of adequate protection,

Villa of San  
Fernando es-  
tablished

Reduction of  
forts.

the friars in Eastern Texas transferred three of their missions—San Francisco de los Tejas, La Purissima Concepcion, and San José de los Nazonis—to Bejar, where the last named became San Juan Capristano, to distinguish it from San José de Aguayo, while San Francisco de los Tejas became San Francisco de l'Espada. The priests of the other missions in the east still maintained for a while a precarious existence along the Trinity, Neches, and Sabine, under the protection of the small garrison at Pilar.

PERIOD I.  
SPANISH  
DOMINATION  
—  
1528  
TO  
1821  
—



MISSION LA PURISSIMA CONCEPCION DE ACUNA.

The Apaches were very fierce and warlike in those years, and under the governorship of Sandoval, in 1734, there was continual war with the bands of that tribe. In 1735, the French removed their fort of Natchitoches from its former location to the west bank of the Red River, which provoked loud protests from the Spaniards, who claimed that river as the boundary.

Apache wars

From 1736 to 1760 there was a succession of governors,—Franquiz', Oróbio, Wintuis'sen, Bonéo, Lários, Espriélla, Barrios,—all of whom had trouble with the missionaries, owing to the insolence of the soldiers, the reduction of military protection, and the generally worthless character of the men who were sent to govern the country.

PERIOD I.  
SPANISH  
DOMINATION

1528

TO

1821

Mission San  
Saba

San Javier  
missions

In 1740, the Marquis de Altamira (al-tä-mē-rä) was sent to visit and inspect the condition of affairs in Texas, which he did, giving a very satisfactory history of all the events that had occurred to that date. In the mean time the Apaches, who were the hereditary foes of the Comanches (kō-man'-chāz), being threatened with destruction by the latter, proposed peace and missionary residence as a protection. After much discussion as to the location of the proposed Apache mission, it was finally established on the San Saba River, and called the mission San Saba, in 1756. In 1744, a mission called San Ildefonso was founded on the San Javier (hä'-vē-ār or zäv'-i-ër) River, the exact location of which is not known, but believed to have been

some one of the upper tributaries of the Nueces or the Colorado. Near it were also established Candelaria and San Javier. These were unfortunate and involved in disaster from the first, until, becoming very feeble, they were removed to the San Marcos River, in 1753, and in 1756 they failed altogether.



MISSION SAN JUAN CAPRISTANO.

Arcoquisac  
and San Au-  
gustin de Ahu-  
mada

Louisiana  
ceded to Spain

Mission San  
Saba de-  
stroyed

Contraband trade was carried on extensively between Texas and Mexico and Louisiana, and frequent disputes arose as to the boundary. In 1755, a mission called Arcoquisac (är-kō-kē'-sac), with the accompanying presidio of San Augustin de Ahumada, was established on the Trinity River, southwest of Nacogdoches. In 1763, the *Seven Years' War* in Europe was concluded, one of the results being that France ceded to Spain the city of New Orleans, on the east side of the Mississippi River, and all of the territory of Louisiana lying west of that stream, which extended indefinitely to the north and west. This ended the boundary dispute for nearly twenty years.

In 1758, the Comanches attacked the mission San Saba and destroyed it, murdering most of the inmates. To punish this outrage, Colonel Diego Ortiz Parilla (pä-r-ël'-yä), in 1759, at the



head of five hundred men and a large force of Apache allies, undertook a campaign against the Indians. He came upon the

PERIOD I -  
SPANISH  
DOMINATION  
1528  
TO  
1821



MAPS SHOWING CHANGES IN TERRITORY OWNED BY DIFFERENT EUROPEAN NATIONS DURING EIGHTEENTH CENTURY.

hostile camp in the San Teodoro region on the upper Red River, where the Indians were gathered to the number of six thousand, armed with guns, lances, and sabres, and floating the French flag. They at once sallied out to meet Parilla's army, and the Spaniards fled in a panic, leaving their artillery behind them, and completely terrorized by the Indians. This success made the wild tribes bolder than ever, and for several years they raided the whole country. Parilla's expedition had cost sixty thou-



PERIOD I.  
SPANISH  
DOMINATION

1528

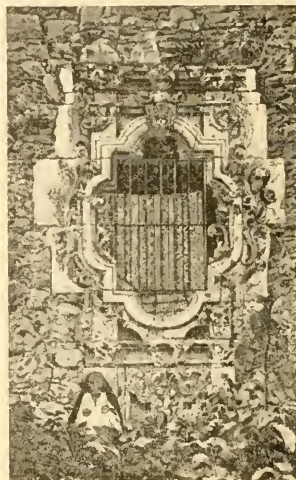
TO

1821

Marquis de  
Rubi

Governor  
O'Conor

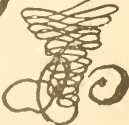
sand dollars. Governor Martos came in 1760, and Felipe de Ravago succeeded Parilla in the military command. After repeated disasters and growing discontent, all the missions in the west were abandoned a few years later. In 1765, Hugo O'Conor became governor, and in 1767 the Marquis de Rubi (rö-bē) visited all the northern provinces of Mexico on a tour of inspection, reaching Texas in August of that year. His report was exhaustive and intelligent, and his recommendations were bold and reasonable. He advocated unrelenting war upon the wild Indians, the abandonment of Arcōqui'sac, los Adaes, and the missions among the Aes and at Nacogdoches, and the establishment of a line of forts, with La Bahia and Bejar as the base of operations. Governor O'Conor adopted as far as possible these ideas, fortifying Bejar and pacifying the Indians by fear, they calling him the "Red Captain." He travelled extensively over the province and was very popular, showing the good sense, tact, and ready courage of his Celtic origin. He retired from office in 1770, being succeeded by the Baron de Ripperdä', who also recommended vigorous measures and a warlike policy. But the home government did not respond to these suggestions, and, on account of the continued Indian wars and the general insecurity of affairs, there was a strong disposition at this time among the colonists to



WINDOW OF MISSION SAN JOSÉ.

abandon the province altogether. As it was, the government seems to have decided to practically abandon its establishments in Eastern Texas and confine its aid to La Bahia and Bejar.

*J. M. Barro de Ripperda*  
1776



FAC-SIMILE OF RIPPERDÄ'S SIGNATURE.

In 1770, De Mezières, the Spanish commander in Louisiana, made an effort to reduce the Indians along the Sabine and Red Rivers, and visited Texas to confer with the authorities here on the subject. He reported the number, names, and characteristics of the various tribes with whom he had come in contact in that region, but the names and localities are so confused and vague as to be almost unintelligible.

Between 1772 and 1778, all the missions and presidios in the east, except at Nacogdoches, were practically suspended and their inhabitants removed to Bejar and La Bahia. In 1778, General Croix, the commander of the Internal Provinces of Northern Mexico, came to Texas and made a thorough inspection of affairs here, and Father Lopez, the president of the Texas missions, in 1783, prepared a report of their condition at that date. In 1772, Don Antonio Bonilla (bō-nēl'-yā), an officer in the Spanish army of Mexico, wrote a brief summary or *compend* of the events in Texas from 1689 to 1772, compiled from official sources. In the hurrying events of those times, Father Juan Augustin Morfi kept historical memoirs of the progress of affairs in Texas, to the date of his death in 1783. From these sources, together with the Marquis de Altamira's report of Texas history during the years preceding 1740, the facts related in this chapter have been mainly collected.

According to all the authorities, there were in Texas, at the close of the century, the following Spanish settlements, being composed of the missions and presidios and attached villages: The presidio of San Antonio de Bejar, with the neighboring villa of San Fernando, and, near by, the missions of San Antonio de Valéro, San José de Aguayo, La Purissima Concepcion de Acuna, San Juan Capristano, and San Francisco de l'Espada, the three last named having been originally founded in Eastern Texas and removed to Bejar, the mission Espada being the old mission of San Francisco de los Tejas. In addition to the Bejar establishments, were these: Presidio of La Bahia, originally founded at

PERIOD I.  
SPANISH  
DOMINATION  
—  
1528  
TO  
1821  
—

Removal of  
eastern mis-  
sions and pre-  
sidios



OLD STONE FORT AT NACOGDOCHES.  
(Built in 1778.)

Sources of in-  
formation on  
those days

State of Span-  
ish occupation  
of Texas at the  
end of century

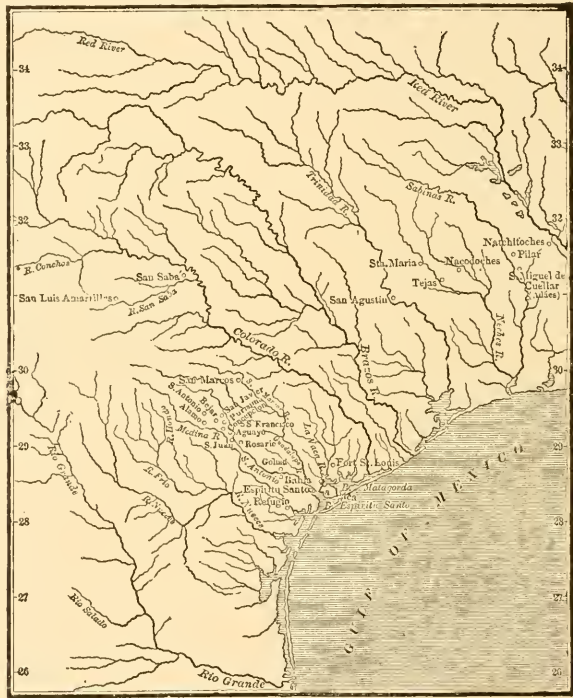
PERIOD I.  
SPANISH  
DOMINATION

1528

TO

1821

old Fort St. Louis and removed twice, the last time to the San Antonio near Goliad ; and attached to it, the mission of Espiritu Santo, also removed from its original location on the bay of that name ; the mission Rosario, near to La Bahia ; the mission Refugio, the last of the Texas missions, established in 1791 ; the mission at Nacogdoches, being the original mission of Our Lady



MAP OF TEXAS IN EIGHTEENTH CENTURY. (Showing location of Spanish missions and presidios.)

of Guadalupe, founded in 1716, and combined with that of Bucaréli. All the others had been suppressed or abandoned, and the century's labor in the missionary field seemed to have been a mournful failure. The number of natives converted since 1690 was ten thousand, and at no one time had there been over two thousand *reduced* Indians. In 1783, there were about four hundred and sixty mission Indians in the several establishments named,

Failure of the  
missions

while the total number of Spanish soldiers and settlers in the province was about two thousand six hundred. The missions were all *secularized*—that is, deprived of government aid and protection—in 1794, by Pedro de Nava, and the country passed entirely into the hands of the civil and military rulers of Mexico. The *Mission Period* had ended, and little remained to attest the long years of suffering and sacrifice, save the noble lives of many of the priests, and the stately and enduring temples they erected in this far-off wilderness, whose melancholy but imposing ruins still preserve their memories.

It will be observed that in the foregoing account and list of the early missions, no notice is made of the historic *Alamo*

PERIOD I.  
SPANISH  
DOMINATION

1528  
TO  
1821



CHURCH OF MISSION DEL ALAMO.

(al'ä-mō), so dear and sacred to Texans. The origin and mutations of that establishment are involved in some confusion and doubt. The Alamo was originally not properly speaking a *mission*, but was rather a chapel or parish church attached to the missionary foundation of some larger establishment. It appears to have had at one time some connection with the mission San Antonio de Valéro, and was probably built by Father Olivares to accommodate the converts he brought from San Francisco Solano. It also appears to have had some attachment with San José de Aguayo, and the solution of the matter would seem to be that this church was a sort of independent or overflow chapel

The origin of  
the Alamo  
Church

PERIOD I.  
SPANISH  
DOMINATION

1528

TO

1821

for the missions near Bejar, being used in connection with any one or all of them in labor outside the missions themselves, and perhaps as an auxiliary to the latter. It did not always stand where its interesting ruins are now ; it was at one time located near San Pedro Springs, then removed to the military plaza of the villa de San Fernando, and finally to its present place on the Alamo plaza, outside the limits of the village. A tablet in the front wall of the chapel as it now stands bears the date 1754, but the removal occurred in 1744. The word *Alamo* means in Spanish, *poplar*, and hence the name of the establishment in English would be the *Poplar Church*. It ceased to be used as a parish church in 1793, and the outer walls, stockade, and other buildings were destroyed after or during the siege in 1836, the chapel proper being all that is left.

The last years of the eighteenth century were barren of important events in Texas. The culmination of momentous policies and transactions in Europe was hastening a crisis for Spain, that was destined ere long to leave her helpless at home and shorn of all her possessions abroad. The formation of an independent and powerful confederacy of free states in the regions north of Texas, animated by the hereditary traditions and principles of English liberty and law, reinforced by a new doctrine of popular sovereignty, soon set in operation a train of influences that were to exert a controlling weight in the future development of this thinly settled, outlying province of Mexico, and eventually to enroll it among the co-equal States of the great Union of the North.

Coming events



THE GRANARY AT MISSION SAN JOSÉ.

## QUESTIONS.

PERIOD I.  
SPANISH  
DOMINATION

1528

TO

1821

AT the time of La Salle's death, by whom and to what extent had the Spaniards explored the region of Texas? Give the names of the explorers, and the dates of the various explorations that had been made in that region, prior to 1685. What name, if any, was then given to Texas, and what was known of the country? Why was it not permanently occupied by the Spaniards at an earlier date? Who made a report in regard to Texas in 1686, and by what authority? What was the substance of his report? What Indian tribes did he locate, and where? What is the true origin of the name *Texas*? Where did the Tejas Indians live? What was the region of Texas called on the old maps of Mexico or New Spain? In what did the history of the country consist for the next hundred years after La Salle's death? What is that period usually called? How did the Spaniards learn of La Salle's visit to Texas? What did the viceroy of New Spain then do? When did the first Spanish expedition for the occupation of Texas set out, from what place, under whose command, and who accompanied the expedition? Where did De Leon cross the Rio Grande, and what Texas rivers did he cross and name? When did he reach the location of La Salle's fort on Lavaca or Espiritu Santo Bay? Whither did he go from there? Whom did he send for, and what did he do with them? Who visited De Leon before his return to Mexico? When did De Leon make his second expedition to Texas, for what purpose, and with what companions? Where did he first go on that expedition? Who came to see him there, and what did he do in consequence? When, where, and by whom was the first Spanish mission in the interior of Texas founded, and what was it called? Describe what was done in regard to that mission. Whom did De Leon capture while among the Tejas Indians? What did he report on his return to Mexico? Who was the first Spanish governor of Coahuila and Texas? When was he appointed, and with what instructions? Describe his coming to Texas. What did he find at the Tejas mission? What new mission did he found near there, and what did Teran then do? What became of these missions on the Trinity? What occurred during the next twenty-two years? What portions of the country were then claimed by the Spanish and French? To what extent did the French explore Texas? By whose authority, when, and under whose command was a French expedition fitted out to Texas? Describe the route and adventures of St. Denis. What point did he finally reach, and what occurred there? Where did he go from there? With what results? Describe the Spanish expedition to Texas under St. Denis and Ramon. When did it enter Texas, and who accompanied it? How many missions did they establish? Give the names, locations, and dates of the founding of each. What were the character and habits of the Indians of Texas, and what was the consequence? What can you say of St. Denis's influence among the Indians? What

PERIOD I.  
SPANISH  
DOMINATION

1528  
TO  
1821

happened to him? Who was the next Spanish governor of Texas, and when did he come? What were his instructions? What noted presidio did he establish, and when? What did the priests say about this governor? What mission was at this time established at Bejar, and by whom? What places were the first capitals of Texas? Who was La Harpe, and when and where did he first attempt a settlement in Texas? What occurred in 1719 between France and Spain, and what happened in Texas as the result? When and where did La Harpe attempt another settlement? Who was the next governor of Coahuila and Texas, when was he appointed, and what was his character? Describe his administration and labors in Texas. What important garrisons and missions did he establish and restore? What presidio and mission did he establish at and near the location of old Fort St. Louis? What noted mission was founded and named for him, when, and where was it located? When did Aguayo return to Coahuila, and in what condition did he leave Texas? Who succeeded him, and for how long? What was the condition of Texas during that time? Describe the changes that occurred in the locations of the presidio and mission on Espiritu Santo Bay, with dates of changes. Who succeeded Almazan, and how long was he governor? What had Aguayo recommended in regard to colonists? What town or villa was founded in 1730, and who were its first inhabitants? Who visited the missions in 1727-28, what did he find and recommend, and what ensued? What occurred in 1727? What missions were transferred from Eastern Texas in that year, to what place, and what were their new names after the transfer? What troubles with Indians occurred during those years? What did the French do in 1735? What governors ruled in Texas from 1736 to 1760, and what was the condition of things among the missionaries? Who visited Texas in 1740, and what did he do? When, where, and for what purpose was the San Saba Mission established? When and where was the San Ildefonso Mission founded, and what other missions were located near it? What were the history and fate of those missions? What sort of trade was carried on between Texas and Louisiana, and what dispute then arose? When and where was the mission of Arcoquisac founded? What presidio was established near to it? What occurred in Europe in 1763, and with what results in America? When and how was the San Saba Mission destroyed? What expedition was undertaken to punish the Indians, with what experience and results? Describe what occurred in Texas in 1760 and the few following years. Who became governor in 1765? What celebrated man visited Texas in 1767, and what did he do and recommend to the government of New Spain? Describe the character and administration of Governor O'Connor. Who succeeded him, and when? What was the conduct of the home government, and its effects in Texas? Who was De Mezières, and what did he do? What occurred to the missions in Eastern Texas between 1772 and 1778? Who visited Texas in 1778 and 1783? What did they do? Who was Bonilla, and when and what did he write? Who



else wrote an account of those times in Texas? At the close of the eighteenth century, what Spanish settlements were there at and near Bejar? Give the names and locations of the other missions and presidios in Texas at that time. When and where was the last mission founded in Texas? How many Indians were converted since the first mission was founded in 1690? How many *reduced* Indians were there in and around the missions at any one date during that period? In 1783, how many mission Indians were there in Texas, and how many Spaniards? When and how did the Mission Period end? What was meant by *secularizing* the missions? What can you say of the general results of the Mission Period? What mission is peculiarly dear to Texans? What was the *Alamo* originally, properly speaking? How, when, and by whom was it probably built? In connection with what missions was it at first used, and how? Describe its location at different times. When was it removed to its present location? What, if anything, is there to indicate when the present chapel was built? What does the word "Alamo" mean in English? When did the Alamo cease to be used as a church? When and how were the original mission buildings destroyed, and what is the building that still stands? What occurred in Texas during the last years of the eighteenth century? What were the condition and prospects of Spain at that time? What important events had occurred in other portions of North America, and what influence did they have on the future destiny of Texas?

### Topical Analysis.

1. Extent of knowledge of Texas at the beginning of Spanish occupation in 1690; why it had not been more thoroughly explored and occupied; causes of the effort by the Spaniards to occupy it in 1690.
2. The Mission Period, how inaugurated; date and location of the first Texas mission; subsequent missions and their difficulties; early missions first established in Eastern Texas among the Tejas and allied tribes.
3. Beginning of Indian wars, troubles between priests and soldiers as to management of Indians.
4. Founding of the presidio and town of Bejar, and the subsequent establishment of the capital of Texas there; removal of missions from Eastern Texas to that point.
5. Contraband trade with French in Louisiana and expedition of St. Denis to Texas; beginning of the dispute between Spain and France as to the eastern boundary of Texas.
6. Territorial changes in North America caused by European and Indian wars; Louisiana acquired by Spain in 1763, and gradual growth of trade across Texas to Mexico from New Orleans and Mobile.
7. Feeble and unsuccessful attempts to colonize and civilize Texas during eighteenth century; gradual reduction of garrisons and concentration of missions around Bejar and in Western Texas.

PERIOD I.  
SPANISH  
DOMINATION

1528

TO

1821

8. The practical failure of the Mission Period as a means of converting the natives, or of settling the country; contrast the results of the Spanish methods of colonization with those of the English, in North America.

9. Influence of the American Revolution upon the future destiny of Mexico and Texas, beginning to show itself at the end of the eighteenth century.

### Geography.

The map of Texas during the eighteenth century should be thoroughly studied, and all missions, presidios, and towns founded during that period should be located on that map and compared with the map of Texas at the present time. The student should be required to make an outline map of the province of Texas, and to locate thereon every Spanish settlement and missionary station mentioned in this chapter, showing its relative position in connection with the modern geography of the State.

### Parallel Readings.

H. H. Bancroft's "North Mexican States and Texas;" Winsor's "Narrative and Critical History," Vol. VIII., Chap. IV., "Spanish North America;" Scarff's "Comprehensive History of Texas" (1897); Parkman's "Jesuits in America."



AQUEDUCT AT MISSION SAN JUAN.

## CHAPTER V.

### The Indian Tribes of Spanish Texas.

**C**ERTAIN errors that have obtained in regard to the American Indians should be corrected. It has been customary to write and think of them as *nomadic*,—without fixed homes and wandering at will over the face of the country. This is a mistake. There may have been a time when such a condition existed as to the whole Indian race in North America ; but it was before the white man discovered this continent. There have been times in the history of single tribes, and of groups of tribes, when such a condition existed, since the Europeans came ; but it was always temporary and unusual,—produced by tribal wars and revolutions, or by the contact and conquest of the white man. The Indians, as a rule, had fixed homes and a permanent territory within which each tribe, family of tribes, or portions of a tribal family customarily dwelt. This district was often extensive and indefinite in its boundaries, and within its limits the natives were accustomed to wander widely and frequently. Sometimes it was necessary to change the residence of the tribe at different seasons of the year in order to find water and game, and for other necessary reasons ; and there was an annual or semi-annual migration for that purpose. With the introduction of horses by the Europeans, the means and the inducements for travelling great distances were multiplied, and the tribal movements became correspondingly more frequent and extensive. The knowledge and use of fire-arms, likewise, rendered the Indians more restless and movable, by offering temptations to war and the chase. These two influences—the horse and the gun—were very powerful among the tribes of the west and southwest, where contact with the Spaniards brought them into use among the Indians very soon after the conquest of Mexico. But these facts were exceptional. The Indian tribes

PERIOD I.  
SPANISH  
DOMINATION  
—  
1528  
TO  
1821  
—

Popular errors  
about Indians

Sedentary, not  
nomadic

PERIOD I.  
SPANISH  
DOMINATION

1528

TO

1821

Not numerous

were generally *sedentary*, and not nomadic; or, rather, most of them were *migratory*, that is, nomadic within certain customary limits.

Another error is, that the Indians were very numerous. In proportion to the territory occupied, this was not true. Their permanent homes were usually in desirable spots, along the streams, in fertile valleys, where fishing and hunting were good, and when all were gathered there in their villages, the numbers seemed large. The white settlers generally sought the same localities for the same reasons, and, seeing many Indians there, they assumed that the whole country was populated to the same extent. Again, the colonists would frequently meet members of the same tribe in different parts of the country at different times, and, not distinguishing them, the same Indians were counted two or three times.

Other traits

Other important facts to be observed are, that the several American tribes, instead of speaking kindred dialects of one common language, really spoke entirely distinct tongues, which are evidences of their distinct family origin; that among all these tribes, property, including land, was owned and held in common for the whole tribe, and not in severalty among the individuals composing it; and that, when first discovered by the white men, none of the tribes had progressed far enough in agriculture to have abandoned the hunter state.

These general observations apply to the Indians of Texas, as well as to all others found on this continent.

Classification  
of tribes

Recent research into the history and traits of the American Indians has led to many modifications in their naming and classification. *Language* has come to be recognized as the only sure basis for a correct scientific test of race kinship, and upon real identities of speech the arrangement into tribes, groups, and families is founded. Tried by this standard, the present state of knowledge divides the tribes of North America, north of Mexico, into *fifty-eight distinct linguistic families*. Of these, the following *fourteen* were represented among the Indians found in Texas at the time of its first exploration and settlement, or who came here soon afterwards: the Adaizan, Algonquian, Atha-

Linguistic  
families of  
American  
Indians

pascan, Attakapan, Caddoan, Coahuiltecan, Iroquoian, Karankawan, Kiowan, Muskogean, Shoshonean, Siouan, Tañon, and Tonkawan.

It will be understood that these families of tribes are grouped according to the identity or constant similarity of dialect prevailing among the several tribes composing the family, however widely scattered. Some of the families are represented by a single tribe, while others include a great variety and number of

PERIOD I.  
SPANISH  
DOMINATION

1528  
TO  
1821



MAP OF INDIAN TRIBES OF TEXAS.

bands, living in different parts of the country, called by different names and popularly supposed to be distinct divisions or nations of Indians. Besides the regular family groups of native tribes above named, there were originally located in Texas several tribes which became extinct so early that they were not classified, and they should be first disposed of, as *independent tribes*; although, no doubt, they bore a family relationship to some one of the great family groups, as above arranged by the students of the subject.

Independent  
Texas tribes

Chief among these independent tribes were the Ceniz (sā'-nēs) or Asinais, the Tejas, the Aes (ä'-āz), the Bedais (bē-dā'-īz),

Ceniz, Tejas,  
and Acs

PERIOD I.  
SPANISH  
DOMINATION

1528  
TO  
1821

and some other smaller bands. They probably belonged to the Adaizan or Caddoan family, but the traces of their languages are so completely lost that it is impossible to speak with certainty in regard to them. Of these the Cenís or Asinaís had villages along the Neches and Trinity Rivers, where La Salle found them in 1685 and 1686. They appear to have been a gentle, hospitable, kindly race, engaged to some extent in agriculture and comparatively permanent in their settlements. In 1689, De Leon met with them in his visit to the Tejas, who lived in the same vicinity and were the same or a kindred tribe. D'Iberville mentions them in his list of tribes in 1699, and as late as 1714 St. Denis visited among them and was kindly treated. They were included in the missionary district of the missions of San Francisco de los Tejas, Nacogdoches, Adaes, and Aes. Nasonites, Neches, Senais, and Nasonies are but variations of the same name as Cenís or Asinaís. This tribe disappeared in the eighteenth century, and with it the neighboring and kindred ones of the Aes, Bédais, and the Tejas.

Recurring to the several regular linguistic groups or families of Indians in Texas, both in early and later times, we may consider them in alphabetical order.

Adaizan  
family

Adaes

1. *The Adaizan Family.*—This was represented by the single small tribe of the Adaes (ä-dä'-āz), located between the Neches and the Trinity Rivers, in the neighborhood of the mission named for them. The name of this tribe came from a Caddo word meaning "brushwood," which sufficiently indicates that they were accustomed to dwell in the timbered sections of the country. The same Indians were seen by Cabeza de Vaca in 1530, during his captivity on the Texas coast, and he called them "Atayos." The mission *de los Adaes* was founded in 1715, and, with certain interruptions, continued until 1790, when all the eastern missions were moved to Bejar. At this time fourteen families of the Adaes were carried to San Antonio and given a quantity of irrigated mission land, known for many years as the field of the *Adaesceños*. These families were absorbed among other tribes around Bejar, while the remnant on the Sabine had dwindled to thirty persons in 1820, and is doubtless entirely extinct.

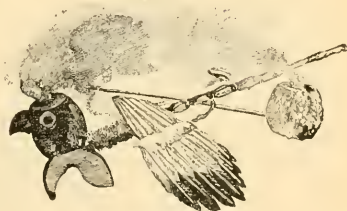
2. *The Algonquian Family.*—As is well known, the Algonquin tribes constituted one of the most powerful and extensive groups of American Indians, and their history in their old homes along the St. Lawrence and through the eastern and middle portions of the Union is full of romance, tragedy, and adventure. None of this family were originally found in Texas by the Europeans ; but the two tribes of the Kickapoo and Delaware came later, as the result of the general westward movement of the Indians, caused by the spreading settlements of the whites and consequent disturbances among the natives. This probably occurred in the eighteenth century or about the close of that period, as neither the Kickapoos nor Delawares are mentioned until 1813. Austin's colonists in 1822 found the Kickapoos

PERIOD I.  
SPANISH  
DOMINATION  
1528  
TO  
1821

Algonquian  
family

Kickapoos

on the Trinity, living in villages, with their hunting-parties scattered from the coast to Red River. They were at first friendly, and some of the bands remained so ; but their chiefs seemed to act independently of any tribal responsibility, and many bloody battles occurred in after times between the Texans and Kickapoo warriors. The Delawares, on the other hand, were always friendly, and their services as guides, peacemakers, interpreters, and rescuers of captives among the hostile tribes, were invaluable to the colonists in Texas, to the army of the revolution in its campaigns, and to the Rangers in their frequent Indian battles. The tribe was usually found with the kindred Kickapoos and the Cherokees, along the Trinity and Neches, and later on the Brazos and Colorado.



INDIAN PIPES.

Delawares

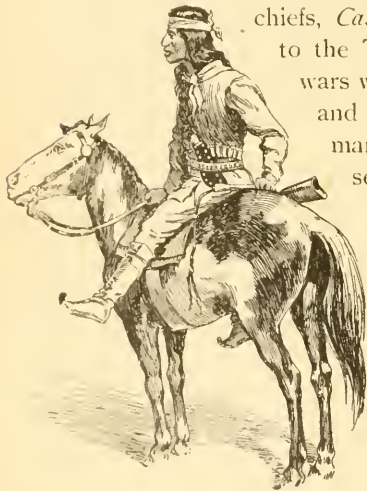
3. *The Athapascan Family.*—The Texan branch of this family was widely separated from its kindred, the home of the other portion of the group being in the northeastern part of the Dominion of Canada, along the Mackenzie River, and extending to the borders of Alaska. When this remote separation occurred is not known. The great representative of the family in Texas was the Apache, under which name were often included other distinct tribes of the same stock, as Lipan (lĕ-pān') Apaches, Mescaléro Apaches, Chiricahua (chĕ-rĕ-kā'-wā) Apaches, etc. ;

Athapascan  
family

Apaches

PERIOD I.  
SPANISH  
DOMINATION  
—  
1528  
TO  
1821  
—

Lipans



AN APACHE INDIAN.

the Lipans, Mescaléros, and Chiricahuas being really separate tribes belonging to the same great confederacy, of which the Apaches were the leading spirits. The Apaches and Lipans originally inhabited from Central Texas to the Colorado River in Arizona; the Lipans occupying the eastern portion of this district, from the Comanche country along Red River to the Rio Grande on the south, and to the Gulf on the east, their central locality being near Bandera Pass, fifty miles northwest of San

Antonio. In after times the Lipans, under their chiefs, *Castro* and *Flacco*, rendered distinguished aid to the Texans as scouts, trailers, and allies in the wars with other tribes. Owing to the treacherous and cruel murder of their chief *Flacco* by a white

man, they became desperate foes, and their subsequent history is full of tragic interest to the frontier. The Apaches ranged from the

Pecos to the Rio Grande, their real home being in the mountains of Mexico, New Mexico, and Arizona. They were a fierce and warlike tribe, and almost incessantly at war, with Mexico first and afterwards with Texas and the United States. The

Comanches were the hereditary foes of both the Lipans and Apaches, and it will be remembered that the Apache mission of San Saba was destroyed by the Comanches

in 1758. The tribe of the Apaches at times professed a disposition for peace and civilization, but invariably relapsed into savagery, and their later history is a bloody and ferocious record, as well in Texas as in Mexico and the United States.

Attakapan  
family

4. *The Attak'apan' Family.*—The name of this linguistic group is from a Choctaw word meaning "man-eater." They were located in early times along the Louisiana and Texas boundary, very few of them living or coming into Texas. They seem to have had some connection with the Karankawas, who lived farther down the coast, and the tribe is now extinct.

Caddoan  
family

5. *The Caddoan Family.*—This was a large and powerful group, including the Pawnees, of Nebraska, and the Ricarees or



Arícaras, of Dakota and Montana. In Texas it was represented by the Iónies or Tachies, Nabadáchés or Nacogdóchés, Wichitäs, Kéchais or Keéchies, the Caddos proper, Wacos, Towash, Anadarkos, and Tawákanas or Tehuácanas. The name Caddo meant "chiefs" or "chief men." In Texas, the Caddoan tribes occupied the northeast and most of the eastern part of the province, while some of them, like the Wichitäs, extended westward to the country along the mountains and rivers of the upper Cross-Timbers. The Caddos proper were in Louisiana and just across the line in Texas. The Keechies were located on the Trinity and east to Red River; the Wacos on the Brazos near the city which preserves their memory; the Tawakanas farther east, where the Spanish form of their name is perpetuated in the Tehuacana Hills and Springs; the Towash had a village high up the Brazos; the Ionies or Tachies roamed the upper Trinity, with the Anadarkos in the same locality; and the Nabadáchés or Nacogdóchés dwelt around their famous mission in Eastern Texas.

PERIOD I.  
SPANISH  
DOMINATION  
1528  
TO  
1821  
---

Location

The Caddo tribes thus covered all Texas east of the Brazos, except near the coast, and they figured early in the history of the country. They were closely associated with the Delawares, Kickapoos, and Cherokees, after the latter came to Texas, and many of them were often engaged in war against the whites. One band of them was friendly until the cowardly murder of their chief, *Canoma*, by the white men, converted them into enemies.

6. *The Coahuiltecan* (cō-ä-wēl'-tā-kan) *Family*.—This group is named for the State of Coahuila, in which they originally partly lived, and sometimes they are spoken of as Tejanos (tā-hä'-nōs). There were many of these tribes in southwestern Texas, along the Rio Grande and in the neighborhood of Bejar and La Bahia, extending into Tamaulipas, New Leon, and Coahuila. Among them may be mentioned the Jaranámas (här-an-ä'-mas) or Aranámas, who were mission Indians of Espiritu Santo and La Bahia, Anä'quas, Tacómas, Patacä'lés, Pajal'átés, Tamáquez, Cotonámés, Venä'dos, and many others, some of whom were probably merely *totem* clans.

Coahuiltecan  
family

Aranamas

7. *The Iroquoian Family*.—Of this formidable and historic group, the only representative in Texas was the Cherokee tribe,

Iroquoian  
family

PERIOD I.  
SPANISH  
DOMINATION

1528

TO

1821

Cherokees

Karankawan  
family

Karankawas

—perhaps the most interesting and civilized, as it has been the most important single tribe, in American history. When, in consequence of treaties and cessions between the United States and the Cherokee Nation, the latter was largely removed west of the Mississippi River, from 1818 to 1833, bands of Cherokees came into Texas, and the relations of the Republic and State of Texas with them constitute an important chapter in our subsequent history.

8. *The Karankawan Family.*—This family was composed of the single tribe of the Karan'kawas in Texas, who dwelt on San Bernard or Matagorda Bay and the adjacent coast. They were a ferocious, brutal, and degraded tribe, said to be cannibals, and it was with them La Salle first came in contact when he landed at the mouth of the Guadalupe River. They were physically very large, armed with long bows, and hideously decorated with painting and tattooing. There were but a few hundred of them, but they were a terror to the early settlers, and committed many murders among the colonists. By reason of their ferocity and isolated position on the coast, they remained in existence until 1847, when the remnant of the tribe crossed the Rio Grande and disappeared into Mexico. The missions of Espiritu Santo, Refugio, and Rosario labored in vain to convert the Karan'kawas, but they remained to the end savages and brutes.

9. *The Ki'owan Family.*—The Kiowas (kī-ō-wās') really had no fixed abode in Texas, their home being on the Platte and Arkansas Rivers. They were the common allies of the Comanches, and were always found associated with the latter in Texas and elsewhere; so that the history of the one tribe is practically the history of the other.

10. *The Muskhógean Family,* which takes its name from its principal tribe, the Muskhógee or Creek, was represented in Texas by the Alibä'mu and

the Cshät'ta or Koásati tribes, with perhaps a few Seminoles. The Alibä'mu were in Eastern Texas, on the Neches and extending to the Trinity, and but little is known of them in history, as they bore no conspicuous part. There is a remnant of the tribe



KIOWA CHIEF

Muskhogean  
family

Alibamus and  
Cshattas

living in Polk County. The Cushät'tas lived on the lower Trinity, and the mission and presidio of Arcoqui'sac were built among them. They laid out the old "Cushät'ta Trace," or road, from East Texas to La Bahia, which was a great highway for trade between Louisiana and Mexico in the earlier years of this century and the close of the last. The Cushät'tas were brave allies of the Americans and Mexicans in the revolutionary expeditions which occurred in Texas from 1811 to 1820, and they were always a friendly race. A remnant of them still survives in San Jacinto County.

PERIOD I.  
SPANISH  
DOMINATION  
—  
1528  
TO  
1821  
—

11. *The Shoshon'ean Family.*—To this linguistic group belong the Bannocks, Utes, and Shoshon'ees proper, from New Mexico to Oregon, and in Texas they were represented by that most warlike and indomitable of all our Indian foes,—the Comanches. The Comanches extended from the head waters of the Arkansas and Red Rivers east and south into Texas.

Shoshonean  
family

The tribe was a confederacy of hostile bands, having separate chiefs and called by different names. They had no general name for the whole tribe, but preferred to be called *Nauni*—"live people,"—and their depredations for a hundred years certainly entitle them to that description. The Comanches had lived in the location where they were first discovered for many years, perhaps centuries. When they became possessed of horses and fire-arms, their roving and warlike disposition made them dangerous to the whole frontier, and, perhaps, for rapid marauding, skilful manœuvring on the plains, and expert horseback fighting, they have had no equals in the annals of savage warfare. We shall meet with them often in the subsequent history of Texas.

Comanches



A COMANCHE INDIAN.

12. *The Siou'an Family,* which includes the Sioux (sō) proper, Dakótahs, Winnebágoes, Osages, and other great tribes of the east and north, had in Texas a small representative in the Biloxis, who were located on the Louisiana line, reaching over into Eastern Texas. They were unimportant, their influence

Siouan family

Biloxis

PERIOD I.  
SPANISH  
DOMINATION  
—  
1528  
TO  
1821  
—

being blended with that of the other small tribes in that locality. Their powerful kindred, the Osages, in the north towards Missouri, had considerable influence on the conduct and disposition of the Indians in Louisiana and Texas.

13. *The Tañean Family* were what are known as *pueblo* Indians,—that is, they dwelt in permanent villages (*pueblos*) built of stone and adobe, and pursued agriculture and other peaceful occupations. These tribes were originally located in New Mexico and Arizona, but in the great Indian revolt of 1680–82 some of them were driven south into Texas and remained here. Among these were the Teguas (*tā'-wāz*) or Tiguex (*tē'-gwāz*), who founded the old village of Isleta, near El Paso, and the Carizos (*kā-rē'-sōz*) or Kerí'sas, who located on the lower Rio Grande in what are now Zapáta and adjoining counties. These tribes were peaceable and industrious, and a few of them are still left along the Rio Grande, retaining the traits of their Zuñi and Moqui brethren in the north.

14. *The Ton'kawan' Family*.—This family in Texas was conspicuous in the single interesting tribe of the Ton'kāwās', a name signifying, in the Caddo language, "they all stay together." They are first mentioned in 1719, as roaming over Western and Southern Texas, and the white people found them camped on the old road from Bejar to Nacogdoches. There were about five hundred of them, and they were always friendly and serviceable to the white settlers, although they would steal horses and commit small offences. Their great chief, *Placido* (*plä-sē'-dō*) was a noble specimen of Indian manhood,—brave, wise, and faithful,—and his many services and heroic death deserve to be remembered by all Texans, as a redeeming figure in the long and bloody array of Indian celebrities of our early history.

The foregoing outline sufficiently exhibits the names, localities, and traits of the principal Indian tribes whose history is blended with the settlement and development of Texas. Most of them passed away with the advent of the American colonists, and their "short and simple annals"



PLACIDO, CHIEF OF THE  
TONKAWAS

Fate of Texas  
Indians

faded into the momentous chronicle of the white man's conquest and supremacy over the land of their fathers. Those who remained to contest the victory and harass the victors, will further appear in the history of the frontier struggles and Indian hostilities of later Texas.

PERIOD I.  
SPANISH  
DOMINATION  
—  
1528  
TO  
1821  
—

## QUESTIONS.

WHAT error generally prevails as to the American Indians being nomadic in their habits? What were the real facts in this regard? What is the distinction between nomadic, migratory, and sedentary? Under which head did the Indians come, and explain why? How did the use of horses and fire-arms affect the habits of the Indians in this respect? What, if any, difference was there between the Indians of the west and southwest and those of the eastern part of the continent in this regard? What error has existed, and how did it arise, as to the numbers of the original Indians of the country? What were the true facts? What important facts are to be noted in regard to all the Indians in the matters of language, rights of property, and pursuits of the various tribes? What is the true test of kinship among the Indian tribes? Tried by this test, how many groups or families of American Indians north of Mexico have been classified? Give their names. How many of these are represented in the history of Texas, and which were they? How many tribes does it take to constitute a linguistic family? What can you say of certain early tribes in Texas that did not belong to any of the families named? Who were the Ceniz or Asinais, where did they live, and what was their character? By what early explorers and at what dates were they met with? What became of them? Name the other independent tribes of Texas, where did they live, and what became of them? By what tribe was the Adaizan family of Indian tribes represented in Texas? What did the name signify, and where did they live, and what became of them? At what early date and by what explorer were they seen, and what did he call them? What mission was founded among this tribe, and when? What can you say of the Algonquian family? What tribes of that family once lived in Texas, and when did they come here? Where did they originally settle in Texas, and what were their habits? What relations did the Kickapoos bear to the white men in the subsequent history of the tribe? Where did the Delawares live, and what were their character and relations to the white men? What can you say of the Athapascan family and its separation? What principal tribe of this family roamed in Texas? How were the Apaches divided? Where did the Lipans and Apaches originally live in Texas? What two noted Lipan chiefs figured in Texas history? What event made the Lipans hostile to whites in Texas? Where was the real

PERIOD I.  
SPANISH  
DOMINATION

1528

TO

1821

home of the Apaches, and what has been their character since known to the white race? With what tribe were they always at war? What tragic event resulted from this? What has been the record of the Apaches in Texas history? What is the origin of the name of the Attakapan family? Where did the principal tribes of this group live? What powerful tribes are embraced in the Caddoan family of Indians? What does the word "Caddo" mean? What tribes of that linguistic group lived in Texas? What localities still preserve the names of tribes of the Caddoans in Texas? In what parts of the State did these tribes live? With what other tribes were they always closely associated? What caused them to become enemies of the white men? What is the origin of the name of the Coahuiltecan family? Where did they live and what tribes did they include? Of what linguistic family were the Cherokees the only representative in Texas? When and under what circumstances did they first come to Texas? What importance have they had in our history? Who composed the Karankawan family and where did they live? What were their habits and character? What relations existed between them and the whites, and when did they begin? What became of the Karankawas? To what family did the Kiowas belong? What can you say of them? What tribe gives its name to the Muskogean family of tribes? What two tribes of that family lived in Texas, and in what part of the State? What mission and presidio were built among the Cushattas by the Spaniards? What famous road did they lay out? What valuable aid did they render the Texans? What has become of them and the Alibamus? What famous tribe represented the Shoshonean family in Texas? Where did they live? What can you say of their character and history? What tribes are included in the Siouan family or group? How were they represented in Texas? Who constituted the Tañean family, and to what class of Indians do they belong? Where did they live and what was their character? What historic town did they found? Who were the Tonkawas? What does the name mean? What were their relations to the whites in Texas? What noted chief belonged to this tribe, and what can you say of him? What has become of most of the Indians of Texas?

### Topical Analysis.

1. The general character, habits, and mode of living of the North American Indians; effect produced upon them by the advent of the white man, as modifying their pursuits and traits of character.
2. Language as the basis for classifying them into families or groups of kindred tribes, although often widely separated; the error of supposing that tribes speaking different dialects and living widely apart belong to different nations or races of Indians.
3. The Indians of the plains as horsemen and warriors, and their great dissimilarity to the tribes of the Atlantic coast; the western Indian was and is very unlike his brethren of the east. Causes of this.

4. The original independent tribes of Texas, now extinct, but who constituted the first inhabitants of the country; their peaceful and hospitable disposition, and comparative advancement in settled life.

5. The various tribes and bands of Indians who once roamed over Texas, their wars and gradual extinction. Consider their relations to their kindred tribes in other parts of the continent, and discuss the causes of the extinction of the American Indian, even under favorable surroundings.

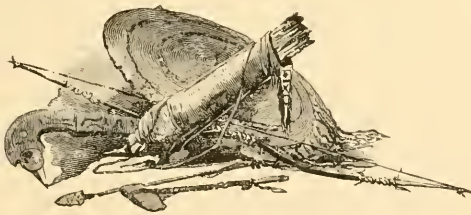
PERIOD I.  
SPANISH  
DOMINATION  
—  
1528  
TO  
1821  
—

**Geography.**

Study closely the Indian map of Texas, and compare it with the modern maps of the State, so as to locate the original homes of the Indians. An interesting study can be made of the various rivers, creeks, mountains, lakes, cities, and towns in Texas whose names preserve the memories of the early Indian inhabitants. Also, study on the map of North America the distribution of the several linguistic families or groups of tribes, so as to observe their wide separation in many cases.

**Parallel Readings.**

Annual Report of Bureau of Ethnology, 1885-6, Paper by Director of the Bureau on "Indian Linguistic Families of America north of Mexico;" Scarff's "Comprehensive History of Texas" (1897), Vol. I., Chap. XXVIII., "Indian Tribes of Texas," by M. M. Kenney.



INDIAN WEAPONS.

## CHAPTER VI.

### Events in Texas and Mexico resulting in the Revolution of 1821.

PERIOD I.  
SPANISH  
DOMINATION  
—  
1528  
TO  
1821  
—

Napoleonic  
wars

France  
regains  
Louisiana

United States  
buys the terri-  
tory

Texas in-  
cluded

THE opening of the new century witnessed rapid and radical changes in the map of Europe, extending in their results to the possessions of the European powers in the New World. Napoleon was in the first stage of his magnificent career. During the year 1800, the lightning-like successes of the French armies, signalized by the crossing of the Alps, the recovery of Italy, the victory of Marengo, and the final triumph of Hohenlinden, humbled the Bourbons at the feet of the First Consul. In 1763 the weak and wretched Louis XV. had surrendered to Spain the last foot of French territory in North America. On October 1, 1800, by the treaty of San Ildefonso, the prowess of Napoleon regained from Charles IV. the splendid domain of *Louisiana*, "with the same limits it originally had in the hands of France or might have acquired in the hands of Spain." But it was not for long that this extensive territory was to be owned by the ambitious Corsican. Pressed by the combined powers of Europe, and plunged into deadly conflict with Great Britain, he must have money, and on April 30, 1803, he sold it to the United States for fifteen millions of dollars. It was a bold and patriotic act of Mr. Jefferson to acquire this valuable property for the then young and struggling republic, for it gave to the United States the control of the Mississippi River, and by subsequent construction it included the vast extent of country lying to the north and northwest, now forming ten States in the Union. In fact, it was considered by Mr. Jefferson and many eminent statesmen that the Louisiana purchase included Texas, by virtue of France's original claim resulting from the discovery of La Salle and the explorations of La Harpe and St. Denis. The boundaries of the territory had not been defined,



PERIOD I.  
SPANISH  
DOMINATION  
—  
1528  
TO  
1821  
—

and their uncertainty has returned to plague succeeding governments, even to very recent times.

The acquisition of Louisiana brought the government and people of the United States face to face with the Spaniards in that district and on the border of Texas. Having owned the



MAP SHOWING CHANGES IN TERRITORY OF NORTH AMERICA CAUSED BY TREATY OF SAN ILDEFONSO AND PURCHASE OF LOUISIANA.

country for nearly forty years, and not having been entirely dispossessed during the three years France had regained it, the Spanish officials were reluctant to surrender their power east of the Sabine. Some trouble arose, requiring United States troops to be posted along the Texas boundary, under the command of Generals Wilkinson and Gaines. As always happens where

Boundary troubles

PERIOD I.  
SPANISH  
DOMINATION

1528

TO

1821

---

new territory is added and forbidden regions are opened up, there was a great movement of all sorts of desperate, ambitious, and often lawless characters from every part of the United States to the Sabine frontier. The presence of this element, confronted as it was by the haughty and domineering spirit of the Spanish soldiery across the line, rendered the Texas border a very troublesome locality to both countries for several years.

Early expedi-  
tions to Texas

Philip Nolan

In the meanwhile some adventurous Americans crossed into Texas on various expeditions, and a few no doubt settled at the trading-posts and among the Indians. In 1797, Philip Nolan, an intelligent and daring pioneer from the United States, came to the country in search of cavalry horses; and he made a second trip in 1800, exploring much of Eastern and Central Texas, ostensibly on the same errand, but really, it was said, at the instigation of Mr. Jefferson, who was anxious to ascertain the character and resources of the country. "Nolan's Expedition" was terminated by his treacherous murder by the Spaniards, at a point near Tehuacana Hills in what is now Limestone County. The celebrated Ellis P. Bean, whose romantic adventures and varied history read like the tale of *Monte Cristo*, was one of Nolan's men, and was captured and carried to Mexico, whence, after many years, he returned to the United States.

Ellis P. Bean

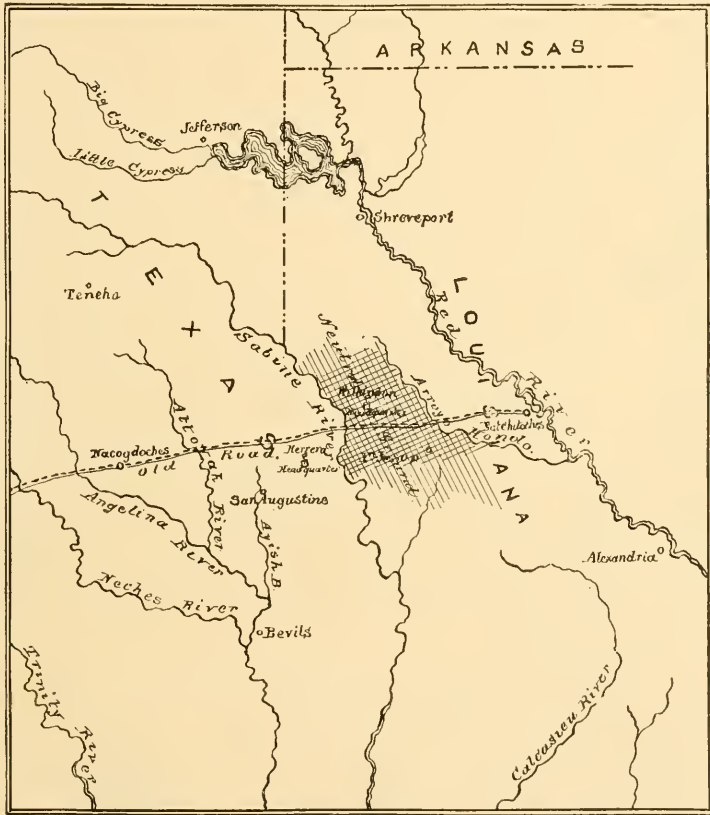
Neutral  
ground

During the years 1804 and 1805, negotiations were conducted between the United States and Spain, looking to the establishment of a *neutral ground*, until such time as the definite boundary could be decided, but nothing satisfactory was accomplished. While Louisiana had belonged to France, certain settlements had been made by the French in Texas,—along Red River in the county of that name, and at other points west of the Sabine. When the United States acquired the territory, it was desired that those settlements should not be disturbed by the Spaniards until the question of boundary was determined; but Spain persisted in disregarding all rights but her own west of the Sabine River. Troops were sent forward from San Antonio and Mexico to support the Spanish claim, and it was even threatened to cross the Sabine and invade the territory of the United States. The old road from San Antonio was put in order, the various posts were fortified, renewed effort at the

Spain's  
attitude

settlement of Texas was made, and Spain clearly evinced her purpose to hold the province as her own. These preparations were conducted by Antonio Córdéro, the new governor of Texas, and General Simon D. Herrera was in command of the military. Corresponding preparations to repel hostilities and to maintain

PERIOD I.  
SPANISH  
DOMINATION  
1528  
TO  
1821



MAP SHOWING THE "NEUTRAL GROUND" AS AGREED UPON IN 1806.

the boundary at the Sabine were made by the United States authorities. Finally, Generals Wilkinson and Herrera, representing their respective governments, agreed that, until the real boundary was fixed, the strip of territory between the Sabine and the Arroyo Hondo should be neutral ground, not to be

PERIOD I.  
SPANISH  
DOMINATION

1528

TO

1821

occupied by either party. This was in August, 1806. In the fall of the same year, the mad plan of Aaron Burr for the invasion of Texas and other Spanish provinces of Mexico was exposed, and produced great excitement throughout the West, drawing fresh attention to the Louisiana frontier, and bringing thither new recruits of adventurous and enterprising men.



AMERICAN PIONEER TYPE.

All these things had combined to produce a feeling of hostility between Spain and the United States, which was not lessened by the depredations committed upon American commerce by Spanish ships. The Spanish government was practically ruled by Manuel Godoy, the "prince of peace," as he was called, and he, in turn, was controlled by Napoleon, who encouraged Spain's unfriendly attitude towards the United States in the hope of eventually securing all the Spanish possessions in America for France. Of course, whatever of irritation and hostility existed was greater along the Texas border, and the swarm of adventurers, filibusters, and determined pioneers

who were gathering along the neutral ground, only wanted an opportunity to pour into Texas. The opportunity was offered by the progress of events in Mexico, hastened by influences from Europe and America. At the close of 1806, Texas was in a fairly prosperous condition, brought about by the activity of the times; but the seeds of approaching revolution had been planted in Mexico.

Since 1535, when the first viceroy of Mexico, Antonio de Mendóza, assumed control of that country, until 1808, fifty-seven viceroys ruled over its government. The land had prospered and developed to some extent, but the curse of the Spanish colonial system, rendered ever heavier by the declining fortunes and accumulating distresses of the mother country, had rested upon and blighted its happiness, its liberties, and its progress. When Spain was involved in the Napoleonic wars, the burdens of taxation were laid with increasing severity upon her possessions in the New World, and the tyranny of the viceroyalty was redoubled to sustain the failing strength of the royalty beyond the Atlantic.



MEXICAN PRIEST TYPE.

Charles IV., his corrupt queen, and more corrupt minister, Godoy, laid the foundations of Mexican independence by their excesses, cruelties, exactions, and petty despotism.

Yet for a long time the distant colonists were loyal and patriotic, and plundered themselves to protect and uphold their unfortunate sovereigns. Even when Charles abdicated in 1808 in favor of his son, Ferdinand VII., who, in turn, was deposed by Napoleon in favor of his brother, Joseph Bonaparte, the loyalists of Mexico were firm in their allegiance to their fallen monarch and refused to recognize the French usurper. But the revolutionary spirit had reached the great body of the natives. The example of the North American colonies in asserting their liberties and forming a great and free republic, the downfall of European dynasties and systems of kingly tyranny, and the final spirit of revolt against the oppression of more than two centuries of misrule and suffering, all contributed to arouse the inhabitants of Mexico to the vindication of their rights and freedom.

Like the great Reformation in Europe in the sixteenth century, this movement began with an humble priest. In the little Indian village of Dolores, in the State of Guanajuato, there dwelt a country curate named Miguel Hidalgo y Costilla (mĕ-gel' ē-dal'-gō ē kos-til'-yă), whose heart was quickened by the suffering and slavery of his people. On September 16, 1810, he proclaimed a revolt against Spanish tyranny. Rapidly the natives gathered to his standard, and his army marched on the capital, under a banner whose motto was "Death to the Gachupins." The sword and the cross were once more united, and the rebel priest swept all before him. Capturing Guanajuato, he defeated the viceroy's army at Las Cruces, and advanced to within fifteen miles of the City of Mexico. Here he was seized with a panic, retreated, was followed by the regular troops under Calléja (kal-ă'-yă), lost all he had gained, and was finally defeated in

PERIOD I.  
SPANISH  
DOMINATION

1528  
TO  
1821



FRENCH PIONEER TYPE.



MIGUEL HIDALGO.

Miguel  
Hidalgo

PERIOD I.  
SPANISH  
DOMINATION

1528

TO

1821



JOSÉ MARIA MORÉLOS.

a pitched battle at the Bridge of Caldéron', January 11, 1811. Hidalgo resigned and fled, but was captured and shot at Chihuahua in July, and a war of extermination was waged against the rebellious natives. But once begun, the revolutionary movement could not be subdued. Another patriotic priest in the person of José Maria Morélos took up the cause of liberty, and the contest was renewed with varying success for the next two years. During this struggle, the distinguished leaders Bravo, Teran', Matamóros, Guerréro (gwā-rā'-rō), and Guadalupe Victoria first came to the front in the army of the patriots. On November 13, 1813, the *Congress of Chilpanzingo* declared the absolute independence of Mexico from Spain. Morélos fought against fearful odds, and steadily lost ground; was finally captured and shot in the City of Mexico, December 22, 1815.

For a time the revolution was stayed, but the republican feeling was still alive. Suddenly appeared Xavier Mina (mē-nā), an exile from Old Spain, who landed at Soto la Marina with a force of North Americans and began war against the government, in April, 1817. He advanced to the interior and prosecuted a vigorous and daring warfare, but was defeated on all sides, and finally captured and shot in November, 1817. The revolutionary chiefs were scattered throughout the country, and the cause seemed hopeless; but it was mainly for want of a competent leader to organize the insurrection.

This leader appeared in the person of Agustin de Iturbide (ē'-tör-bē'-dā), a native Mexican and a former royalist, who rebelled against the viceroy Apodaca's attempt to restore the arbitrary authority of the king in Mexico, which had been limited by the Spanish constitution of 1812. Iturbide seems to have realized the deep-seated love of liberty and independence which had taken hold of his countrymen, and to have responded for a time to the feeling himself.

Xavier Mina



XAVIER MINA.

Agustin de  
Iturbide

It should be explained that among the Spanish and Mexican republicans, when a movement towards insurrection or revolution was undertaken, it usually began with some great popular outcry or motto of rebellion, which was called the *grito* (grē-tō), or *clamor*. When the leaders of the movement decided to raise the standard of open revolt, they issued a *pronunciamien'to*, or proclamation of grievances and demand for redress; and this was followed by an outline of the measures and laws by which it was proposed to reform abuses and reorganize the government, which was called the *Plan*, and usually took its name from the place from which it was issued. These were familiar terms in the history of Mexico for the next fifty years.

On February 14, 1821, Iturbide, being in command of a considerable force at a little town called Iguala (ē-gwä'-lä), on the road to Acapulco, issued his proclamation of rebellion and the celebrated *Plan of Iguala*, under which he proposed to establish Mexican liberty. This plan contained the three general principles of "Independence, the maintenance of Roman Catholicity, and Union," whence it was called the plan of the "Three Guaranties." Among other things, it provided for the independence of Mexico from Spain and every other nation; the maintenance of the Catholic religion; no distinction between Americans and Europeans; a government by a constitutional monarchy; a *Junta* (hūn-tä), or assembly of leading men of all parties, which should call a congress to frame a constitution that should be the supreme law, and the emperor must swear to obey it; the throne should be offered to Ferdinand VII., and, in case of his refusal, to his brothers in succession, and if they all refused, the nation might invite any prince of the reigning houses of Europe; abolition of all castes and absolute equality before the law; an army to enforce the "Three Guaranties;" all officials loyal to the *Plan* to remain in office; and death by military trial or order of commandants was prohibited.

The proclamation of the *Plan of Iguala* revived the revolutionary spirit everywhere, and the old chiefs, who had been in hiding, rallied to the new leader. The viceroy Apodaca was

PERIOD I.  
SPANISH  
DOMINATION

1528  
TO  
1821

Methods of  
Mexican revo-  
lution



AGUSTIN DE ITURBIDE.

Plan of Iguala

Last viceroy  
of Mexico

PERIOD I.  
SPANISH  
DOMINATION

1528  
TO  
1821

Political parties

Iturbide made emperor

deposed by his own followers because of his weakness, and was succeeded by Don Juan O'Donoju (don'-ō-hū), the last of the Mexican viceroys. Iturbide met O'Donoju at the coast, and by the *treaty of Cordova*, on September 27, 1821, the latter, in the name of Spain, recognized the independence of Mexico; a *regency*, of which Iturbide was president, was formed, and the first Mexican Congress met on February 24, 1822. At once three parties were discovered in that body: the *Bourbonists*, who demanded the empire for Ferdinand or some European prince; the *Republicans*, who favored a pure republic, without an emperor; and the friends of Iturbide, who desired to place him on the new throne. Spain refused to ratify the viceroy's recognition of Mexican independence, which destroyed the hopes of the *Bourbonists* and left the contest between the *Republicans* and *Iturbidists*. The latter prevailed, and on May 18, 1822, Iturbide was proclaimed emperor of Mexico, as Agustin I. But his reign was short and disastrous. He overrode all restraints, demanded arbitrary power, and violated every promise of his famous *Plan*. The *Republicans* rose in arms throughout the empire, the old leaders were furious at the failure of the fruits of independence, and a new leader suddenly assumed the cham-

pionship of the popular cause, destined himself ere long to repeat the weakness and perfidy of Iturbide. General Antonio Lopez de Santa Anna put himself at the head of the republican armies, and, supported by Guerréro, Bravo, and Negrété (nā-grā'-tā), he entered the capital in triumph. On March 8, 1823, Iturbide abdicated the throne, and the era of federal republican government was inaugurated in Mexico.



MEXICAN TRADER.

While these exciting events were occurring beyond the Rio Grande, Texas was not quiet. In 1811, Colonel Bernardo Gutiérrez, who was one of Hidalgo's followers, escaped from the slaughter of the patriots in Mexico and arrived at Natchitoches on the Louisiana frontier. Here he formed an intimacy with



Augustus W. Magee, a lieutenant in the United States army, who was already considering plans for the invasion of Texas. The two men organized what was called the "Republican Army of the North," composed of freebooters from the neutral ground, allies from among the Cushatta and other Indian tribes, some native Mexicans, and a number of volunteers from the United States. This mixed and desperate force, numbering about one hundred and sixty white men, set out from the Sabine under Gutiérrez, in June, 1812, and marched into Texas. They drove the Spaniards from their outposts, captured Nacogdoches, and finally occupied Spanish Bluff on the Trinity. Magee had remained behind to forward supplies and recruits, but, having resigned his position in the army, he joined the expedition at Spanish Bluff during the summer. The Spaniards, meanwhile, under the command of Manuel de Salcádo (säl-sä'-thō), governor of Texas, and Generals Herréra and Arredondo, collected troops from Mexico and fortified La Bahia and Bejar, or San Antonio as the latter place was now beginning to be known.

The "Republican Army of the North" was organized by electing Magee colonel and real commander-in-chief, although Gutiérrez, with the title of general, still nominally held command; Kemper was made major, and other officers were chosen. Captain James Gaines came on with reinforcements, and the force was increased to between four and five hundred men, exclusive of Indians. In October they left Spanish Bluff, travelling the road to La Bahia, which they reached on November 14, and captured the fort, the garrison under Salcádo having gone out to meet the Americans by another route. Salcádo returned with his force, fourteen hundred strong, and laid siege to the fort. During a two weeks' siege the Spaniards were reinforced, and finally they made a desperate assault, but were driven off. During this time Magee died under peculiar and mysterious circumstances. After another prolonged delay, in March, 1813, the Spanish troops abandoned the siege and retreated to San Antonio. At Magee's death, Kemper succeeded to the command, Ross was made major, and the expedition was increased by Mexican volunteers, and Lipan, Tawakana, and Cushatta allies, besides some additional Americans. The whole force

PERIOD I.  
SPANISH  
DOMINATION  
1528  
TO  
1821  
—

Magee's "Re-  
publican Army  
of the North"  
invades Texas

Captures La  
Bahia

Magee's death

PERIOD I.  
SPANISH  
DOMINATION

1528  
TO  
1821

moved on San Antonio, and reached the Salado River the latter part of March. Here they were met by a large body of Spanish troops, and a desperate battle ensued, in which nearly a thousand of the Spaniards were killed and wounded, and the invading army was victorious. This was known as *the battle of Rosillo* (rō-sēl'-yō). They marched next day to San Antonio, which place was surrendered to them by Governor Salcédó, with all its stores, troops, and military funds.

Army enters  
San Antonio

After the capture of San Antonio, Governor Salcédó, General Herrera, Ex-Governor Cordéro, and their staffs were paroled; but Gutiérrez, under pretence of sending them out of the country, put them in charge of one Captain Delgádo, whose father (a follower of Hidalgo) had been executed at San Antonio by Salcédó and his head exhibited on a pole. Delgádo took the fourteen prisoners out of town and cut their throats. This brutal and cowardly murder so disgusted the Americans that Colonel Kemper, Major Ross, and others resigned and left the army. The success of the expedition, however, rallied new recruits, and the American force was gradually increased.

Murder of  
Spanish  
officers

Elisondo  
comes to dis-  
lodge them

An army from Mexico, under command of General Elisondo, about three thousand strong, arrived near San Antonio about June 1, 1813, for the purpose of driving out the invaders. Captain Perry had succeeded to the command of the Republican army, and he was assisted by Gutiérrez and Mancháca, a very capable and patriotic Mexican. Elisondo camped with his force at the *A'lazan'*, a small ditch or creek emptying into the San Pédro, about half a mile from town. At daybreak, June 5, the Americans attacked the Spaniards, and, after several hours of bloody and determined fighting, Elisondo was routed, losing nearly a thousand men in dead, wounded, and captured, and with the remnant of his army he fled to the Rio Grande. After this Bernardo Gutiérrez was deposed and dismissed from the American command. General Tolédo, a distinguished Spanish republican, came on from Louisiana in July, 1813, and took charge of the army at San Antonio. He endeavored to restore order and to re-establish civil government in that place, and was for a few days successful. But another army from Mexico, under General Arredondo, consisting of four thousand well-

Battle of the  
Alazan

General  
Tolédo

ordered troops, arrived at the Medina (mā-dē'-nä) River, where they threw up breastworks and laid plans for a battle. General Tolédo marched out his smaller force, the Americans under command of Captains Perry and Taylor, and the Mexicans under Mancháca. The *battle of the Medina* was fought on August 18, 1813, and the "Republican Army of the North" was almost destroyed. Elisondo, in memory of his former defeat, pursued the fugitives to the Sabine, shooting all captives without mercy, and only ninety-three of them lived to reach Natchitoches, among whom were Captains Perry, Taylor, and Bullard. This ended the republican campaign of 1812-13 in Texas. All republicans and foreigners, as far as the vigilance and vengeance of the Spanish could discover them, were killed or driven out of the country, and the neutral ground became once more the lurking-place for desperadoes, smugglers, and expectant revolutionists.

Plans for a second invasion of Texas, however, were still entertained by adventurous spirits in the United States. Chief among these was Colonel Henry Perry, who had escaped the battle of the Medina. His efforts were instrumental in the first permanent occupation of Galveston Island. Since that island was, perhaps, first occupied by Cabeza de Vaca and his shipwrecked companions, under the name of *Malhado*, in 1528, and afterwards noted by the followers of De Soto in their voyage to Panuco, under the name of *San Luis*, in 1543, it had not been visited except by Karan'kawa Indians and occasional piratical crews, by whom it was called *Is'la de Calábras*, or the island of snakes. It was named *Galveston* Island for José de Galvez, the Spanish governor of Louisiana in 1777. During the progress of the Mexican revolution, in 1816, the island seemed a favorable point for the republicans to rally and conduct outside operations. So Herréra and Don Luis Aury, known as Commodore Aury, occupied it in September of that year. A civil government was organized, Aury assumed the title of "Governor of Galveston and Texas," and privateering expeditions were sent out against Spanish vessels. Xavier Mina, in his revolutionary attacks upon Mexico, also made Galveston one

PERIOD I.  
SPANISH  
DOMINATION  
—  
1528  
TO  
1821  
—

Battle of the  
Medina

Colonel Perry

Galveston  
Island



DON JOSÉ GALVEZ.

Commodore  
Aury

Mina

PERIOD I.  
SPANISH  
DOMINATION

1528  
TO  
1821

Perry

of his points of supply. The privateers of Aury captured some Spanish slave-ships, and thus a secret slave-trade was conducted between the island and Louisiana. Colonel Perry joined these republicans at Galveston, and took part in Mina's expedition to Soto la Marina; but, becoming dissatisfied, he left the command with fifty men and marched towards Texas. Reaching La Bahia, he was surrounded by the pursuing Spaniards and others from the fort, and, when all his men were killed, he blew out his brains with his own hand.

Lafitte

Jean Lafitte (lä-fēt'), a French adventurer and pirate, after operating in the West Indies and on the Louisiana coast



LAFITTE.

for several years, finally made Galveston Island his headquarters, in April, 1817, after Aury had left. Lafitte established a sort of primitive government and code of laws suited to his piratical band, and he professed fidelity to the republican cause in Mexico, by whose authority he claimed to be a privateer. He called his colony *Campeachy*, and by the close of the year 1817 the island had become the resort and asylum of nearly a thousand desperate characters of every grade and nationality,

and their depredations on Spanish commerce were extensive and ruinous.

Piratical  
exploits

Champs de  
Asile

It was about this time that Generals Lallemand and Rigaud, exiled officers of the fallen Napoleon, came to Texas with a number of French, and endeavored to found a colony at a point on the Trinity River not far from Galveston Bay, called *Champs d'Asile* (ä-sël'). They were not satisfied and returned to Galveston, where they were guests of Lafitte until the leaders left the country. Lafitte had some trouble with the Karan'kawa Indians, ending in a battle on the island, in which the latter were badly whipped.

Treaty of 1819,  
establishing  
Spanish  
boundary

In 1819, the long troublesome question of boundary was settled by the treaty of February 22, between Spain and the United States, by the terms of which the boundary between the two countries was fixed as follows: Beginning at the mouth of

the Sabine, continuing along its western bank to the thirty-second degree of north latitude, thence by a line due north to Red River, thence up the Red River to the one-hundredth meridian west from Greenwich, or thirty-second west from Washington, thence due north to the Arkansas, thence following the Arkansas to its source in latitude forty-two degrees, and thence by that parallel to the Pacific Ocean; should the Arkansas fall short of the forty-second degree, a due north line was to be taken to that parallel. Thus the United States renounced all claim to Texas, in order to settle the grave troubles growing out of the Florida question and other boundary disputes.

During the years since 1813, the interior of Texas had remained quiet and the province made no advance. But in spite of the treaty of 1819, there were still ideas of invasion among many Americans in the West. These took shape at Natchez on the Mississippi, in a public meeting where was organized the expedition of Dr. James Long, which set out from that place in the spring of 1819, with a force of seventy-five men. They reached Nacogdoches, where they were joined by many Texan refugees, including Bernardo Gutiérrez and Samuel Davenport. A council was formed, a provisional government organized, and Texas was declared to be a free and independent state, on June 23, 1819.

Horatio Bigelow, one of the councilmen, at this time established a printing-office and newspaper of which he was editor,—the first in Texas. Trading-posts were established on the Trinity and the Brazos, and a fort was built near old Washington on the Brazos. Long then sought the aid of Lafitte, and for that purpose visited Galveston. He met with no success there, and, returning, found his newly established posts threatened by a royalist force from Mexico, under Colonel Pérez. The trading-post and fort on the Brazos were captured, and the Spaniards advanced to the Trinity, where they drove out the settlers. A battle occurred near the Cushatta village, in which the republicans were defeated, and they fled to Bolivar Point, where they were joined by General Long, and a fort was built, aided by Colonel Tréspalacios, a Spanish patriot.

In the meanwhile, Lafitte had been appointed republican

PERIOD I.  
SPANISH  
DOMINATION

1528  
TO  
1821

Expedition of  
James Long to  
Texas

First Texas  
newspaper

Bolivar Point

PERIOD I.  
SPANISH  
DOMINATION

1528

TO

1821

governor of Galveston by that party in Mexico, but his piratical depredations continuing, the United States compelled him to break up his establishment at Galveston and leave the Texas coast, which he did early in 1821. General Long went to Galveston a few days before Lafitte left, whence, in a short time, he marched on La Bahia and captured it, but he and his men were taken prisoners and sent to Mexico, where he was assassinated in 1822, while on parole in the capital. His heroic wife waited his return at Bolivar Point, enduring the lonely grief and despair, often threatened by the fierce and brutal Karan'kawas, and subjected to every privation and exposure. After many months the news of her husband's death came, and she returned to her friends in the United States, not, however, to abandon the attempt to discover and punish his murderers, which she prosecuted for many years.

The second hostile attempt to settle Texas by Americans had failed as signally as the first, and we shall next have to consider the successful results of peaceful and orderly colonization, conducted with prudence, wisdom, and patriotic zeal.



MRS. JANE LONG.

## QUESTIONS.

WHAT occurred in Europe in the opening of the nineteenth century? Who was then in the first stage of his brilliant career? What successes marked this period of his campaigns? When did France lose all her American possessions, and to whom? When, by what treaty, and by whose efforts did she regain a part of them? What part of them did she regain, and with what limits of territory? On what account, when, and to whom did she sell this newly regained territory? How much was the price paid? What can you say of this purchase by the American government, what advantages did it bring with it, and what extent of country did it involve? What President made the purchase? What was thought to be included in the Louisiana purchase, by eminent statesmen of the United States, and why? What resulted from the acquisition of Louisiana by the United States, as affecting the Texas border? What did the United States do in regard to troops there, and under whose command

were the troops placed? What class of men soon collected along the border between Texas and Louisiana, and with what results? Had any Americans previously come to Texas, and if so what became of them? Who was Philip Nolan, how many trips did he make to Texas, when, for what purpose, and what became of him and his last expedition? What celebrated person was with him in the last expedition, and what can you say of him? What was the *neutral ground*, when was it first sought to be established, and for what purpose? What settlements had been made in Texas under French rule, and what was desired by the United States in regard to them? What was Spain's conduct in the matter? What efforts did Spain make towards occupying and holding Texas and disputing the boundary-line with the United States? Who conducted these movements on the part of Spain? What did the United States do? What agreement was finally made, and by whom? When did that occur, and what event occurred in the fall of the same year, and with what result? What state of feeling grew up between Spain and the United States on account of these things? Who was then in control of the Spanish government, and under whose influence was he? What was the condition of affairs along the neutral ground at that time? What was the condition of Texas in 1806? What was approaching in Mexico, and from what causes? When was the first viceroy of Mexico appointed, and who was he? How many viceroys were there between that date and 1808? What had been the condition and progress of the country during that period, and explain the causes that produced this condition of affairs in New Spain? In spite of these things, what was the feeling of the colonists in New Spain towards the mother country? What revolution occurred in Spain in 1808, and what did the Mexicans do under the circumstances? What spirit had nevertheless gained power among the mass of the natives, and what had caused it? Who was the leader of the first effort for Mexican freedom and independence, where did he live, what was his calling, and when did he proclaim the revolution? What occurred as the result of this proclamation, and under what banner did the army of Hidalgo march? What was meant by the Gachupins? Describe the career of Hidalgo, his successes, capture, and fate. Who succeeded him in the leadership of the revolution, and what were his career and fate? When, by what body, and where was the first declaration of Mexican independence made public? What occurred for a while in regard to the revolution? Who was Xavier Mina, when and where did he invade Mexico, and what became of his expedition? What did the revolutionists need? Who was Agustin Iturbide, what did he do, and why? By what feelings was he for a time influenced? What is meant by the *grito*? What is meant by a *pronunciamiento*? What by a *Plan*? Explain the use of these terms in the history of Mexican revolutions.

When and by whom was the *Plan of Iguala* proclaimed? What three general principles did it contain, and what was it called in consequence of this? Explain the leading features of the *Plan of Iguala* as

PERIOD I.  
SPANISH  
DOMINATION  
—  
1528  
TO  
1821  
—

PERIOD I.  
SPANISH  
DOMINATION

1528

TO

1821

affecting the new government which Iturbide proposed to establish. As soon as this *Plan* was proposed, what occurred among the revolutionists? Who was the last viceroy of Mexico, whom did he succeed, and how long did he rule? What important treaty did he make with Iturbide? When did this occur? What kind of government was then established, and who was at the head of it? When did the first Mexican Congress meet? What three parties appeared in it? What did Spain do with reference to the independence of Mexico, and what was the result? When did Iturbide become emperor of Mexico, and with what title? What was his conduct, and what ensued? What new leader then arose, and who aided him? What became of the emperor, and what kind of government was then instituted? When did this occur? While these things were happening in Mexico, what happened in Texas? Who was Bernardo Gutiérrez, and who was Augustus W. Magee? What did these two men do, and when? When did the "Republican Army of the North" invade Texas? Describe the movements of the army in its first organization. What did the Spaniards do to meet this expedition? Who were the officers of the "Republican Army of the North"? When did it march from Spanish Bluff to La Bahía? What occurred at the latter place? What became of Magee? Who was the Spanish commander at this time in resisting the army of Gutiérrez and Magee? When did the Spaniards abandon the siege of La Bahía, and what followed? Who then commanded the army of invasion? What desperate battle was fought between the invading army and the Spaniards, and with what results? When was this? What terrible butchery occurred after the capture of San Antonio by the army of Gutiérrez? What did the American officers do in consequence of this? What Spanish army marched to Texas from Mexico to drive out the invaders? When was this, and describe the movements of the two sides until the armies met? Where did the battle occur, and when, and with what results? What general assumed command of the Republican army after this, and what became of Gutiérrez? Describe the second effort made from Mexico to drive out the Republican army. What bloody battle ensued, when, and with what results? Describe the conduct of the Spanish-Mexican army after their victory over the invaders of Texas. What was done with all foreigners in Texas? By whom and when was a second invasion of Texas attempted? What island was he instrumental in permanently occupying? By what names had it been formerly called, and why? For whom did the island receive its present name? How had it been occupied prior to 1816? For whom did it become a rallying point in that year? Describe by whom and what kind of government was then established on the island. When and under what circumstances did Colonel Perry visit the island? Give an account of his subsequent movements and final fate. Who was Jean Lafitte? When and for what purposes did he first come to Galveston Island? What did he call his colony there, and what were its character and occupation? What French settlement was attempted in Texas at this time? Who were the settlers,



and where did they attempt to settle? What name did they give their colony, and what became of it? What battle did Lafitte fight on Galveston Island? When was the boundary question settled between Spain and the United States? Describe the boundary as then fixed by the treaty between the two countries, tracing it on the map. What motive influenced the United States to make this treaty? What was the condition of Texas from 1813 to 1819? What movement took shape in 1819 for the invasion of Texas from the United States? Who was the leader of it, and from what point did it start? Who joined it at Nacogdoches, and what was done there? When, where, and by whom were the first printing-office and newspaper established in Texas? What trading-posts and fort were then established? Where did Long then go, and for what purpose? What was the result of his visit there? What occurred between Long's men and the Spaniards in Texas? What fort did Long then build, and what Mexican patriot joined him there? What happened to Lafitte at this time? When did he leave Galveston Island, and why? When did Long march to La Bahia, and with what result? What became of him? What can you say of the heroic conduct of his wife? How many invasions of Texas had thus occurred from the United States, and with what results? What was the nature of the next attempt to settle it by Americans?

PERIOD I.  
SPANISH  
DOMINATION  
—  
1528  
TO  
1821  
—

### Topical Analysis.

1. The wars of Napoleon in Europe, resulting in the treaty of San Ildefonso in 1800, by which France regained Louisiana from Spain, and caused great territorial changes in North America.
2. The purchase of Louisiana by the United States in 1803, and the changes thereby made in the American possessions of the various nations. Consider the importance of this event to the United States, the size and extent of the territory acquired, and whether it included Texas.
3. The relations between the United States and Spain growing out of the Louisiana purchase, and the beginning of the troubles between the two countries on the Louisiana border.
4. The first expeditions from the United States into Texas, by Philip Nolan, in 1797 and 1800.
5. Continued trouble along the Louisiana frontier, resulting in the establishment of the *neutral ground* between the Sabine River and the Arroyo Hondo; Aaron Burr's conspiracy, increased hostility between the United States and Spain, and the gathering of filibusters in the neutral ground.
6. The symptoms of approaching revolution in Mexico, caused by bad government of that country by Spain, and the influence of the French and American Revolutions.
7. The first effort towards revolution in 1810, by Hidalgo, followed by that under Morélos, in 1811-1815.

PERIOD I.  
SPANISH  
DOMINATION  
1528  
TO  
1821

8. Xavier Mina's invasion of Mexico in 1817; its defeat, and the temporary breaking up of the revolution in that country.

9. The peculiarities of political revolutions in Mexico and Spanish America; meaning of *gritos*, *pronunciamientos*, and *Plans*.

10. The Mexican revolution of 1821, under Iturbide; *Plan of Iguala*; success of the movement; downfall of the Spanish viceroyalty; defeat of the Republicans, and the establishment of the empire under Iturbide.

11. A second revolution under Santa Anna and the Mexican Republicans, in 1823, resulting in the overthrow of the Emperor Iturbide, and the establishment of the Republic of Mexico under the "Constitution of 1824."

12. Early filibustering expeditions from the United States into Texas, as follows:

(a) The expedition under Augustus W. Magee and Bernardo Gutiérrez, commanding what was called the "Republican Army of the North," in 1812; its success for a time, resulting in the capture of La Bahía and Bexar, and the victories at the *Rosillo* and the *Atazan*; but finally defeated at the battle of the *Medina*, in 1813, and the survivors are driven out of Texas.

(b) Attempted expedition under Colonel Perry, who joined Mina's invasion of Mexico, but left the latter, and was finally forced to commit suicide to prevent capture near La Bahía, 1816-1817.

(c) The expedition under Dr. James Long, from Natchez, Mississippi, in 1819, who established forts and trading-posts in Texas on the Trinity and Brazos, but failed in his purpose of conquering Texas. First printing-office and newspaper in Texas established by Horatio Bigelow in 1819.

13. The *treaty of 1819* between Spain and the United States, establishing the boundary between Texas and the United States, giving Texas to Spain.

## Geography.

Locate and trace on the map the following:

1. The territory in North America claimed by the several nations, *before* and *after* the treaty of Ildefonso in 1800.

2. The territorial changes made by the purchase of Louisiana in 1803.

3. The disputed territory between the United States and Spain, along the border between Louisiana and Texas, and the limits of the *neutral ground*.

4. The boundary between the United States and Spain as fixed by the treaty of 1819.

Locate or trace the following points in Texas:

1. The route of Philip Nolan's second expedition in 1800, and the place where he was killed.

2. The route of Magee's expedition from Nacogdoches to La Bahia and Bexar.
3. Natchitoches, Nacogdoches, Spanish Bluff, La Bahia, Bexar, and the scene of the battles of the Rosillo, Alazan, and Medina.
4. Colonel Perry's route in his effort to invade Texas.
5. The route of Dr. James Long's expedition, the points where he established forts and trading-posts, and where he fought with Spaniards and Indians.
6. Points of interest on Galveston Island connected with its occupation by the Spanish revolutionists and by Lafitte's settlement.
7. The location of the *Champs d'Asile*, or the French colony of General Lallemand.

PERIOD I.  
SPANISH  
DOMINATION  
—  
1528  
TO  
1821  
—

Locate the following in Mexico :

1. Routes of Hidalgo, Morélos, Mina, Iturbide, and Santa Anna in their revolutionary campaigns.
2. Guanajuato, Las Cruces, City of Mexico, Bridge of Caldéron, Chihuahua, Chilpanzingo, Soto la Marina, Iguala, Acapulco, and Cordova.

### Parallel Readings.

Brantz Mayer's "Mexico : Aztec, Spanish, and Republican ;" H. H. Bancroft's Works, "History of Mexico," Vol. IV., "North Mexican States and Texas," Vol. II. ; Scarff's "Comprehensive History of Texas" (1897 : including a republication of Yoakum's "History") ; Brown's "History of Texas," Vol. I. ; Winsor's "Narrative and Critical History of America," Vol. VIII., Chap. IV., "Spanish North America ;" Gayarré's "History of Louisiana," "Louisiana as a French Province," and "Louisiana under Spanish Domination."

MANCHACA'S SIGNATURE.

## CONTEMPORANEOUS EVENTS.—1530—1821.

PERIOD I.  
SPANISH  
DOMINATION

1528  
TO  
1821

## Parallel to Period I.

## AMERICA.

- 1607.—Colony at Jamestown, Virginia, founded by the London Company.
- 1609.—Samuel Champlain discovers lake named for him.
- 1619.—Colonial Assembly, the first representative assembly of British colonists, meets at Jamestown, Virginia. Negro slaves first brought to Virginia by Dutch vessels.
- 1620.—Plymouth Colony founded in Massachusetts.
- 1621.—The Virginia Colony secures representative government.
- 1622.—Dutch West India Company takes possession of *New Netherlands*.
- 1623.—First settlement of New Hampshire.
- 1624.—Dissolution of the London Company. Virginia placed under the Crown.
- 1625.—The Jesuits in Canada.
- 1626.—The Dutch buy Manhattan Island from the Indians for twenty-four dollars.
- 1628.—Salem settled by the Massachusetts Bay Company.
- 1629.—Viceroyalty of Buenos Ayres, South America, created.
- 1630.—Boston founded while Winthrop was governor of Massachusetts.
- 1631.—First settlement in Maryland, by William Clayborne.
- 1632.—Cecilius Calvert, second Lord Baltimore, receives a charter for Maryland. Canada restored to France by England.
- 1636.—Connecticut settled by the English.
- 1637.—The Pequots conquered by the English.
- 1638.—Harvard College founded. Swedes and Finns settle in Delaware.
- 1643.—Confederation of New England colonies.
- 1644.—Roger Williams secures patent to settle Rhode Island.
- 1654.—English begin to explore Mississippi Valley.
- 1655.—Peter Stuyvesant, director-general of New Netherlands.
- 1656.—The Blue Laws of Connecticut.
- 1663.—Colonists settle in Carolina.
- 1664.—English take possession of New Amsterdam and New Netherlands, naming them *New York*. First mention of slavery in Maryland.
- 1668.—Mission Sault Ste. Marie founded by Marquette.
- 1669.—Constitution for Carolina drawn up by Locke. Mohawk and Mohegan War.

- 1670.—Hudson Bay Company chartered. Charleston, South Carolina, founded.
- 1676.—Bacon's Rebellion in Virginia.
- 1682.—William Penn settles colonists in New Jersey, Pennsylvania, and Delaware.
- 1689-1697.—King William's war in America.
- 1690.—First issue of paper money in Massachusetts.
- 1692.—Massachusetts and Plymouth colonies unite. The witchcraft frenzy begins.
- 1692-1700.—New Mexico reconquered by Diego de Vargas.
- 1693.—William and Mary College chartered in Virginia.
- 1698.—Settlement of Louisiana by the French begun.
- 1712.—France claims the whole Mississippi Valley.
- 1713.—Division of territory between England and France under treaty of Utrecht.
- 1733.—Settlement of Georgia by General Oglethorpe.
- 1746.—Princeton College founded in New Jersey.
- 1749.—French and Indian War.
- 1754.—Colonial congress at Albany. Franklin proposes union.
- 1755.—Braddock's defeat, July 9.
- 1760.—Beginning of trouble between the Colonies and England.
- 1763.—Canada, Newfoundland, Louisiana, and Florida ceded to England by France and Spain. *Mason and Dixon's Line* run, but not completed until 1767.
- 1765.—The *Stamp Act* passed by England. The Colonies protest.
- 1767.—Jesuits expelled from Spain and South America.
- 1768.—British troops quartered in Boston. Stamp Act repealed.
- 1770.—The Boston Massacre.
- 1773.—Tea thrown overboard at Boston. Virginia takes the lead towards securing united action among the Colonies.
- 1774.—First Continental Congress meets in Philadelphia, September 5.
- 1775.—*American Revolution* begins with battles of Lexington, April 19, and Bunker Hill, June 17. Washington takes command, July 2.
- 1776.—July 4, *Declaration of Independence* adopted by the English colonies in America.
- 1781.—*Articles of Confederation* adopted. Cornwallis surrenders at Yorktown, Virginia, October 19.
- 1782-1783.—Peace negotiated and concluded.
- 1784.—First daily newspaper published in America, at Philadelphia,—the *American Daily Advertiser*.

PERIOD I.  
SPANISH  
DOMINATION  
—  
1528  
TO  
1821  
—

PERIOD I.  
SPANISH  
DOMINATION

1528  
TO  
1821

- 1787.—*Constitution of the United States* framed by the Convention.  
First steamboat built by John Fitch.
- 1789.—Washington elected first President of the United States. Inaugurated in New York, April 30.
- 1790.—First census of the United States shows a population of 3,929,827.
- 1791.—City of Washington founded.
- 1793.—Washington's second term begins, March 4. Formation of the *Federalist* and *Republican* parties, under the respective leadership of Hamilton and Jefferson.
- 1794.—Whiskey insurrection in Pennsylvania.
- 1797.—Washington's *Farewell Address*. John Adams takes his seat as the second President, March 4.
- 1799.—Washington died, December 14.
- 1800.—Capital of the United States removed to Washington. Jefferson elected third President. Second census shows population of 5,305,937.
- 1801.—Jefferson's first administration begins March 4.
- 1803.—Louisiana purchased by the United States from France.
- 1804.—Jefferson re-elected President. Alexander Hamilton killed in a duel by Aaron Burr.
- 1805.—Jefferson inaugurated second time, March 4.
- 1806.—Aaron Burr's expedition and trial.
- 1807.—Abolition of African slave-trade. Embargo on American ships. Fulton's steamboat ascends the Hudson River.
- 1809.—James Madison inaugurated President, March 4.
- 1810.—Third census shows population of 7,215,791.
- 1812.—War declared against England.
- 1813.—Madison inaugurated for his second term as President. General Andrew Jackson's campaign against the British.
- 1814.—Washington captured by the British. Treaty of Peace at Ghent, December 24.
- 1815.—Battle of New Orleans, January 8. Brazil made part of the kingdom of Portugal.
- 1817.—James Monroe inaugurated President, March 4. Simon Bolivar in Venezuela. Territory of Alabama created. Mississippi admitted to the Union. Seminole War begins.
- 1818.—Independence of Chile proclaimed. Illinois admitted to the Union.
- 1819.—Treaty between the United States and Spain establishing boundary of Florida and Louisiana.

- 1820.—Missouri admitted to the Union under Clay's compromise. Beginning of the slavery and sectional agitation. Also, the question of internal improvements and protective tariff. Fourth census showed population of 9,633,822.
- 1821.—Monroe inaugurated for his second term as President, March 4. "Era of good feeling." Peru declared independent. Revolution in Mexico under Iturbide.

## ENGLAND.

- 1533.—Birth of Queen Elizabeth.
- 1533-1534.—Henry VIII. divorces Catherine of Aragon, is excommunicated by the Pope, and declares England to be independent of the Church of Rome. This led to the founding of the Church of England.
- 1536.—Anne Boleyn beheaded.
- 1547.—Death of Henry VIII. Succeeded by his son Edward VI., under the protectorate of the Earl of Somerset.
- 1553-1558.—Reign of "Bloody" Mary, who married Philip II., of Spain. Persecution of Protestants.
- 1558-1603.—Reign of Queen Elizabeth. The greatest era in English history. The Queen is opposed by the Catholics at home and abroad. Rise of the *Puritans*, who opposed the Church of England.
- 1564.—Birth of William Shakespeare, April 23.
- 1567.—James VI., King of Scotland, in the place of his mother, Queen Mary.
- 1568.—Elizabeth imprisons Mary, Queen of Scots, for eighteen years, and finally beheads her in 1587.
- 1588.—English fleet, under Howard, Drake, and Seymour, defeats and destroys the Spanish *Armada*. English supremacy on the seas is established, followed by great prosperity in commerce and manufactures, growth of architecture, and the rise of the drama, literature, and general culture. The age of Shakespeare, Spenser, Sidney, Raleigh, Drake, Cavendish, Hooker, Bacon, Hawkins, and other great men.
- 1599.—Rebellion in Ireland, under Hugh O'Neal, Earl of Tyrone.
- 1600.—East India Company first chartered.
- 1601.—Earl of Essex beheaded.
- 1603.—Death of Queen Elizabeth, succeeded by James I., who was James VI. of Scotland, the English and Scotch crowns being then united. He was the first king of the house of Stuart, and translated the Bible (1611) known as *King James's Bible*, or the *Authorized Version*. Asserted the *Divine* right to rule.
- 1605.—Guy Fawkes and the gunpowder plot.

PERIOD I.  
SPANISH  
DOMINATION

1528

TO

1821

- 1606-1607.—Charter granted to found colony in Virginia.
- 1614.—Parliament refuses supplies to the king until grievances are remedied. Beginning of struggle between King and Commons.
- 1617.—Sir Edward Coke supplanted by Francis Bacon for upholding the law against the Crown.
- 1618.—Sir Walter Raleigh beheaded.
- 1620.—Sailing of the *Pilgrim Fathers* to America. Founding of England's colonial empire in America and India.
- 1621.—Parliament attacks monopolies, impeaches Lord Bacon, and resists Popery and kingly prerogative. Struggle for constitutional government grows more earnest.
- 1625.—Death of James I., and accession of his son, Charles I. The parliamentary struggle continues. Pym, Coke, Hampden, Selden, Eliot, and Wentworth are the leaders against the king's attempt to coerce Parliament.
- 1628.—Parliament adopts the *Petition of Right*, called the second *Magna Charta*.
- 1629-1640.—King refuses to convene the Parliament, and attempts to govern by *Star Chamber* and *High Commission*. Persecution of the *Puritans*. English Church is thoroughly Romanized.
- 1638.—The Scotch *Covenanters* resist the Episcopal practices of the English Church.
- 1640-1660.—The *Long Parliament* in session. *First English Revolution*, under which Parliament assumes the government and proclaims that "treason against the people is treason against the king and constitution."
- 1641.—Catholic rebellion in Ireland, in Ulster, in which forty thousand English and Protestants were killed. Contest between *Roundheads* and *Cavaliers*.
- 1642-1647.—Civil war in England, between King, Cavaliers, and Church on one side, and the people, Parliament, and Puritans on the other. Oliver Cromwell leads the Puritan side, aided by the writings and influence of John Milton. Battles of Edgehill (1642), Marston Moor (1644), and Naseby (1645). Popular party divided into *Presbyterians* and *Independents*. War ends in victory for the people. *Whigs* and *Tories* first known.
- 1649.—Trial and execution of King Charles I.
- 1649-1660.—The *Commonwealth*. King and Lords abolished, and country governed by executive council. Cromwell conquers Ireland.
- 1652-1653.—Parliament dispersed by Cromwell.
- 1653-1654.—*Barebones Parliament* proclaims Cromwell *Lord High Protector*.



- 1660.—*Restoration* of the monarchy, under Charles II. Followed by great immorality, but general progress and prosperity. Royal Society established.
- 1664.—American colonies brought under the Crown.
- 1665.—The plague in London.
- 1666.—Great fire in London. *Paradise Lost* published.
- 1685.—Death of Charles II., succeeded by James II. He undertook to make Catholicism the national religion. At this time the *Whigs* and *Tories* became the recognized political parties of England.
- 1688.—*Second English Revolution*, resulting in the exile of James II. and the establishment of William, Prince of Orange, on the throne of England. The *Bill of Rights* adopted, which settled the political institutions of the country and laid a sure basis for its future prosperity and liberty.
- 1689-1702.—Reigns of William and Mary and William III.
- 1702-1714.—Reign of Queen Anne. Age of Marlborough as a military hero, and of parliamentary contest between Whigs and Tories. At this time flourished Addison, Pope, Swift, and other great authors.
- 1707.—Union of England and Scotland under name of *Great Britain*.
- 1714-1727.—Reign of George I., the first king of the *Guelf* line, or *house of Brunswick*.
- 1715.—Jacobite uprising under son of James II., called the *Pretender*.
- 1720.—The *South Sea bubble*, under the famous John Law.
- 1727-1760.—Reign of George II. During the first part of this reign, Sir Robert Walpole was Prime Minister, and during the latter part William Pitt, Earl of Chatham. Under their leadership England assumed great power at home and abroad.
- 1733.—Growth of cotton-weaving industry.
- 1739.—War with Spain.
- 1741.—War of the Austrian succession.
- 1743.—Founding of British Empire in India by Clive.
- 1745.—War for the Young Pretender, Charles Edward, ended by the battle of Culloden (1746), in which he was defeated.
- 1756.—War with France in America, which ended in 1763 by the peace of Paris, Canada being surrendered to the British (*Seven Years' War*).
- 1760.—George III. ascends the throne. England was then the first nation in the world, Chatham at the summit of his glory, and Britain at the height of her colonial power.
- 1765.—Passage of the Stamp Act, which produced the first trouble with American colonies. *Letters of Junius* (1767-1772).

PERIOD I.  
SPANISH  
DOMINATION

1528  
TO  
1821

- 1776-1783.—War with American colonies, resulting in the independence of the latter. Ended in 1783 by treaty of Paris.
- 1780.—War with France, Spain, and Holland.
- 1788.—Trial of Warren Hastings. Final establishment of English power in India. Age of Pitt, Fox, Sheridan, and Burke.
- 1793.—War with France, growing out of the *French Revolution*. At this time the younger Pitt was at the head of affairs.
- 1798.—The *Battle of the Nile* won by Lord Nelson, August 1. England entered into a European coalition against France, which was continued at intervals until the final overthrow of Napoleon in 1815.
- 1800.—The United Kingdom of Great Britain and Ireland formed, to take effect January 1, 1801.
- 1805.—*Battle of Trafalgar*, October 21, where Nelson defeated the French fleet.
- 1811-1820.—*Regency* under the Prince of Wales, George III. being mentally unfit to reign.
- 1812-1814.—Wellington's victories in the *Peninsular War*, in Portugal and Spain. War with the United States, ended by *Peace of Ghent*.
- 1815.—*Battle of Waterloo*, won by English, Prussians, and other allies, June 18.
- 1820.—Death of George III., and his son, the Prince Regent, ascends the throne as George IV.

## FRANCE.

- 1547-1574.—Reigns of Henry II., Francis II., and Charles IX. The Age of Catherine de Médicis and the Guises. French Protestants were followers of Calvin rather than Luther, and called *Huguenots*. Persecuted by the Catholics. Mary, Queen of Scots, was the wife of Francis II.
- 1562-1570.—Religious wars between Protestants and Catholics.
- 1572.—Massacre of St. Bartholomew's day, August 24, in which sixty thousand Huguenots were slaughtered. It was ordered by Charles IX. at the instigation of Catherine de Médicis.
- 1574-1589.—Henry III. on the throne. Continued religious wars.
- 1590.—Henry Bourbon, of Navarre, comes to the throne as Henry IV. (*Henri Quatre*), after winning the battle of Ivry. He was the first of the *Bourbons*.
- 1598.—*Edict of Nantes*, proclaiming toleration and protection of Protestants. Sully is Prime Minister, and France prosperous.
- 1610.—Henry IV. assassinated. Marie de Médicis appointed regent, her son, Louis XIII., being under age.

- 1614.—Louis XIII. assumes the throne, banishes his mother, and is involved in civil war with her. At this time Richelieu appears on the scene.
- 1624.—Cardinal Richelieu in power, and building up the power of France. The *Huguenots* resist his power and establish their capital at La Rochelle. Civil war ensues.
- 1626.—Richelieu captures La Rochelle, crushes the Huguenots, and ends the civil war. He then aids Gustavus Adolphus in the *Thirty Years' War* against Austria.
- 1642.—Death of Richelieu. He had founded the French Academy, and greatly glorified France. Louis XIII. died a few months later.
- 1643-1715.—Reign of Louis XIV., known as *The Age of Louis XIV.* During his minority, until 1652, his mother, Anne of Austria, was regent. Cardinal Mazarin was his great minister, and his reign is the most illustrious in French history.
- 1648.—*Treaty of Westphalia*, closing the Thirty Years' War.
- 1685.—Revocation of the Edict of Nantes.
- 1698.—French colonization in Louisiana.
- 1715-1774.—Reign of Louis XV.
- 1769.—Birth of Napoleon Bonaparte, August 15.
- 1774-1793.—Reign of Louis XVI.
- 1780.—France aids the American Revolution, and becomes involved in war with England.
- 1789.—Meeting of States-General and National Assembly. Beginning of French Revolution. Age of Mirabeau, Robespierre, Danton, and Marat.
- 1792-1794.—*The Reign of Terror.*
- 1794.—Napoleon's first campaign in Italy.
- 1796.—Marriage of Napoleon and Josephine.
- 1798.—Napoleon in Egypt.
- 1799.—Napoleon First Consul.
- 1801.—Peace of Lunéville, February 9.
- 1802.—Peace of Amiens, March 27.
- 1803.—Napoleon sells Louisiana to the United States, April 30.
- 1804.—Napoleon crowned Emperor, May 18.
- 1805.—Battle of Austerlitz, December 2.
- 1806.—Battles of Jena and Friedland.
- 1807.—Talleyrand turns against Napoleon.
- 1810.—Marriage of Napoleon and Maria Louisa.
- 1812.—Retreat from Moscow.

PERIOD I.  
SPANISH  
DOMINATION  
—  
1528  
TO  
1821  
—

- 1814.—The Allies invade France. Abdication of Napoleon, his banishment to Elba, and Louis XVIII. placed on the throne.
- 1815.—Napoleon returns from Elba, and, after the *Hundred Days*, is defeated at Waterloo, June 18, and finally banished to St. Helena.
- 1821.—Death of Napoleon, at St. Helena, May 5.

### GERMANY AND THE NETHERLANDS.

- 1534.—Luther publishes his translation of the Bible.
- 1546.—Death of Martin Luther.
- 1556.—Charles V. abdicates as Emperor of Germany. Succeeded by Philip II. in Spain, and Ferdinand in Germany.
- 1556–1566.—Growth of the *Netherlands*. Become great navigators and manufacturers. Protestants in religion.
- 1566.—Philip II., of Spain, attempts to subject the *Netherlands* to the Inquisition, and they rebel.
- 1567–1574.—The Dutch, under William of Orange, called William the Silent, defend themselves against the Spanish under the Duke of Alva.
- 1579.—The *Dutch Republic* formed by the union of seven of the Netherland provinces, with William of Orange as president. War with Spain until 1609.
- 1586.—Queen Elizabeth aids the Dutch. Battle of Zutphen, in which Sir Philip Sidney is killed.
- 1618.—Beginning of the *Thirty Years' War*.
- 1620.—Battle of Prague, in which the Protestants were defeated and driven out of Bohemia and Southern Germany by the Spaniards and Austrians.
- 1625.—Wallenstein creates an army.
- 1632.—Gustavus Adolphus killed at the battle of Lützen.
- 1643.—Condé at the battle of Rocroi.
- 1648.—Treaty of Westphalia ends the *Thirty Years' War*.
- 1654.—Abdication of Queen Christina, of Sweden.
- 1686.—League of Augsburg against Louis XIV.
- 1702.—*War of the Spanish Succession* begins.
- 1704.—Battle of Blenheim, August 13.
- 1713.—Peace of Utrecht concluded.
- 1718.—Death of Charles XII. of Sweden.
- 1740.—Frederick the Great ascends the throne of Germany. Maria Theresa becomes Queen of Hungary.
- 1756.—*The Seven Years' War* begins.

- 1763.—Peace of Hubertsberg, February 15, ends the war.
- 1765.—Joseph II. becomes Emperor of Germany.
- 1792.—War with revolutionary France.
- 1794.—Kosciusko and the fall of Poland. French victories on the Rhine. Napoleon in Italy.
- 1800.—French victories at Marengo and Hohenlinden.
- 1805.—Battle of Austerlitz. Peace of Pressburg.
- 1806.—“Confederation of the Rhine,” formed by Napoleon. End of the “Holy Roman Empire.” Napoleon invades Prussia.
- 1807.—Napoleon invades Russia, victorious at Friedland, and dictates the treaty of Tilsit.
- 1808.—Rapid decline of Prussia.
- 1809-1810.—Napoleon’s campaign against Austria, ending in victory of Wagram. Hanse towns attached to France.
- 1812.—Teutonic Union against Napoleon.
- 1813.—Prussia joins Russia in the war to liberate Europe from Napoleon.
- 1814.—The Allies in Paris. Congress of Vienna. Napoleon banished to Elba. Germanic Confederation formed.
- 1815.—Blücher at the battle of Waterloo. *Holy Alliance* formed.
- 1819.—The *Zollverein* formed.

### SPAIN AND PORTUGAL.

- 1556.—Carlos I. (Charles V., Emperor of Germany) resigns the throne of Spain. Succeeded by Philip II., who married Queen Mary of England.
- 1566.—Philip II. attempts to subdue the *Netherlands*, which began a series of wars that lasted until 1648.
- 1580.—Philip II. of Spain becomes King of Portugal, as Philip I. of that kingdom.
- 1588.—Destruction of the Spanish *Armada* by the English.
- 1598.—Philip III. ascends the throne of Spain, being Philip II. of Portugal.
- 1605.—Cervantes publishes *Don Quixote*.
- 1610.—Expulsion of the Moors from Spain.
- 1621-1665.—Reign of Philip IV. of Spain, Philip III. of Portugal. This reign was the most disastrous in the annals of Spain.
- 1640.—Portugal is separated from Spain, and comes under the rule of the house of Braganza, Joam IV. being the first king of this line.
- 1648.—Spain recognizes independence of the Netherlands by the treaty of Westphalia.

PERIOD I.  
SPANISH  
DOMINATION

1528  
TO  
1821

- 1665-1700.—Reign of Carlos II. The Spanish monarchy rapidly declines. He was the last king of the house of Austria.
- 1700-1746.—Reign of Philip V. of the House of Bourbon.
- 1701.—The “War of the Spanish Succession” begins, being an attempt of European nations to place the Archduke Charles of Austria on the Spanish throne. In the war, Marlborough made his great name as a general.
- 1704.—Gibraltar captured by England, from which time it has been an English fortress.
- 1712.—The *Salic law* introduced in Spain.
- 1714.—End of the “War of Succession.” The Allies recognize Philip as king.
- 1746-1759.—Reign of Ferdinand VI. in Spain.
- 1755.—Great earthquake at Lisbon, Portugal.
- 1759-1788.—Reign of Carlos III. Spain’s prosperity and power revived.
- 1760-1763.—War with England, which resulted in the cession of *Florida* to England.
- 1788-1808.—Reign of Carlos IV. War with England and France.
- 1807.—Napoleon expels the house of Braganza from Portugal, and they go to Brazil.
- 1808.—Ferdinand VII. succeeds to the Spanish throne. Napoleon forces him to abdicate, and Joseph Bonaparte is made King of Spain. A revolution broke out, and the “Peninsular War” ensued.
- 1809.—Wellington victorious in Portugal and Spain.
- 1814.—French expelled from Spain, and Ferdinand VII. restored to the throne, which he occupied until 1833.
- 1820-1823.—Revolution in Spain, finally suppressed with the aid of England.

#### OTHER COUNTRIES.

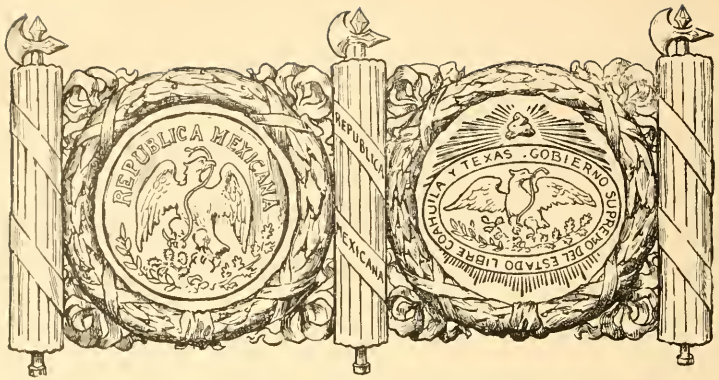
- 1533.—Galileo before the Inquisition.
- 1545.—Council of Trent.
- 1547.—Title of *Czar* first used by Ivan the Terrible, under whom Russia threw off the Tartar yoke and began to take her place among the nations.
- 1575.—Tasso imprisoned.
- 1600.—East India Company formed, and begins operations in India.
- 1672.—Mahratta rule in India.
- 1689.—Peter the Great ascends the throne of Russia.
- 1709.—Charles XII. defeated at Pultowa.

- 1725.—Catherine I. ascends the throne of Russia.  
 1741.—War of the Austrian Succession.  
 1756.—Clive victorious over the French in India. *Black Hole* of Calcutta.  
 1761.—Accession of Peter III. of Russia.  
 1763.—Peter III. deposed and killed by his wife, who succeeded him as Catherine II. of Russia.  
 1793.—The partition of Poland.  
 1796.—Death of Catherine II. of Russia, succeeded by Emperor Paul.  
 1799.—Expulsion of the French from Italy. French conquest of Egypt by Bonaparte.  
 1800.—Russian alliance with Napoleon. Papacy re-established by Napoleon.  
 1801.—Assassination of Paul and accession of Alexander I. in Russia.  
 1802.—French expelled from Egypt by the English. Bonaparte president of the Italian republic.  
 1803.—Victory of Assaye in India, by Sir Arthur Wellesley, afterwards Duke of Wellington.  
 1808.—Murat made King of Naples.  
 1809.—Napoleon imprisons the Pope of Rome, Papal States attached to France.  
 1812.—Napoleon invades Russia.  
 1813.—Spanish *Cortes* abolishes the *Inquisition*. Papal *Concordat* with Napoleon.  
 1814.—Pope Pius VII. returns to Rome.  
 1819.—Overthrow of the Mahrattas in India.

PERIOD I.  
 SPANISH  
 DOMINATION

1528  
 TO  
 1821





## Period III.

MEXICAN RULE.—1821-1836.



### CHAPTER VII.

#### Colonization Enterprises of Moses and Stephen F. Austin.

Condition of  
Texas in 1821

**T**HE year 1821 marks a new and critical era in the history of Texas. Two hundred and ninety years had elapsed since the survivors of the Narvaez expedition landed on her shores and traversed her territory. One hundred and thirty years had passed away since the first mission-bell tolled its invitation to the Tejas Indians on the Trinity. Monks had come and gone, and their labors and sacrifices appeared to have left no trace in the wilderness. Spanish troopers, French traders, and American filibusters had marched and fought and died on her soil, yet, from the Rio Grande to the Sabine, the country was practically a trackless and unsettled waste. The entire population, exclusive of the wild Indian tribes, did not reach ten thousand souls. There was no trade, in the proper sense of the word. Agriculture was unknown, except in small irrigated areas near the old missions and presidios. Some flocks and herds there were in certain localities, but they roamed at will and grew without man's aid or attention. The principal



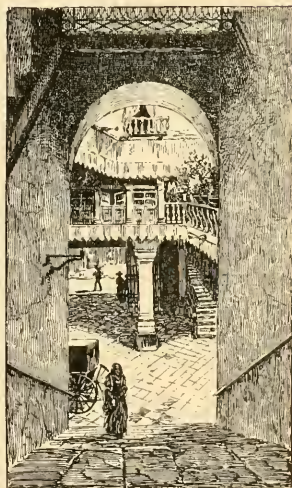
PERIOD II.  
 MEXICAN RULE  
 ———  
 1821  
 TO  
 1836  
 ———

towns were Nacogdoches, La Bahía, San Antonio, and El Paso, where a few Spanish families maintained some degree of social state, surrounded by a filthy and degraded community of worthless soldiers, idle Indians, and *half-caste* creoles. It was at this juncture that the touch of Anglo-American industry and enterprise awoke the dormant possibilities of this virgin province, and nursed them into the potent progress of a free and fruitful commonwealth.

Even under the Spanish system, grants to persons desiring to settle colonies were permitted by special concession and under strict conditions. But immigration from the United States was at no time favored, and was positively prohibited in 1819. Edmund Keene, the English statesman, attempted to secure a colony in Texas, but was deterred by the restrictions imposed by the viceroys, especially in the matter of requiring his colonists to be Roman Catholics; and the socialist, Robert Dale Owen, also abandoned a similar scheme for the same reasons.

Spanish colonies

In 1820, Moses Austin conceived the idea of settling an American colony in Texas. Austin was born in Connecticut, at Durham, in 1767. He married in Philadelphia, was a merchant at Richmond, Virginia, then engaged in lead-mining in the same State, in Wythe County, where his son Stephen F. Austin was born, November 3, 1793. In 1799, the elder Austin became a Spanish subject by removal to Missouri, which, as part of Louisiana, then belonged to Spain. He there opened lead mines at what is now Potosi, and prospered for many years, until changed conditions led him to look for a new home in the southwest. Preparatory to this, he sent his son Stephen to Long Prairie, in Hempstead County, Arkansas, on Red River, to establish a farm for the purpose of furnishing supplies and as a stopping-place on the way to Texas. The information gained by the son convinced him that the preferable route was by way of New Orleans or Natchitoches, and



COURT AND STAIRWAY OF A MEXICAN HOUSE.

Moses Austin

His preparation to visit Texas

he abandoned the farm project to meet his father at Little Rock, where it was agreed that the latter should go on to Texas, while Stephen proceeded to New Orleans to make preparations for the intended colony.

Moses Austin reached San Antonio de Bexar in December, 1820. Antonio Martinez was then governor of Texas, and upon Austin's presenting himself and his errand, he ordered the

PERIOD II.  
MEXICAN RULE  
1821  
TO  
1836  
Visits San Antonio de Bexar



MEXICAN JACAL OR HUT.

American in no very courteous terms to leave the town and the province at once. Austin prepared to obey, but accidentally met the Baron de Bastrop, an influential citizen, with whom he had some previous acquaintance in the United States, and to whom he explained the situation; and also mentioned the fact of his passport and citizenship in Missouri in Spanish times. Bastrop at once visited the governor with this information; a second interview with Martinez was granted, the *cabildo* was consulted, the usual Spanish formality and delay ensued, and finally Mr. Austin was notified to present his application in due form. He did so, requesting permission to settle three hundred families in Texas; his memorial was forwarded to Monterey, to General Arredondo, the commandant and superior political chief of the eastern

Baron de Bastrop aids him

*El Baron de Bastrop*  
BASTROP'S SIGNATURE

internal provinces, and he himself set out for his home in Missouri, in January, 1821. The exposure of his long journey through the wilderness seriously affected his health, and he died in Missouri very soon after his return from Texas; not, however, before he received the news that his request to the Spanish government had been granted on January 17, 1821. His last desire was that his son should carry out the enterprise, and Stephen F. Austin, then twenty-seven years old, immediately entered upon the work.

The grant of permission by the Spanish government to Moses Austin authorized him to introduce three hundred families into Texas, and appointed Don Erasmo Seguin to convey the intelligence to Mr. Austin and to conduct the colonists into the country.

This was what was called an *empresario* grant. *Emprésa* in Spanish means an enterprise, undertaking, or contract, and an *empresario* was a contractor for lands to be settled by colonists introduced according to the terms of the contract with the government. Strictly speaking, the Austins were the only *empresarios*, their first colony being introduced under an express contract, while all subsequent ones were governed by the colonization laws, which contained the provisions applicable to all colonial grants. However, all heads of colonies founded from 1823 to 1835 are generally spoken of as *empresarios*.

Stephen F. Austin was in New Orleans when notified that Seguin was at Natchitoches waiting to execute the commission of the government. He at once went thither, and there first learned of his father's death and dying request to him. He accompanied the commissioner to Bexar, leaving Natchitoches, July 5, 1821, with seventeen companions, and reached the Texas capital on August 10, having travelled what was called the Upper San Antonio Road. Governor Martinez received him kindly, and authorized him to explore the Colorado valley, sound the river and its harbor, and select such location for the

PERIOD II.  
MEXICAN RULE  
1821  
TO  
1836

His death



MOSES AUSTIN'S GRAVE.

Stephen F. Austin succeeds him

Empresarios

Stephen F. Austin in Texas

Authority given him

colony as he should choose. He also requested Austin to furnish a plan for the distribution of the lands, and directed him to take charge of the local government of the colony until otherwise organized. Austin's plan for giving lands to the colonists, which was approved by the governor, was to give six hundred and forty acres to each head of a family and single man over age; three hundred and twenty acres additional for the wife; one hundred and sixty acres for each child; and eighty acres for each slave. He at once explored the Guadalupe, Lavaca, Colorado, and Brazos Rivers, and was satisfied that their fertile

PERIOD II.  
MEXICAN RULE

1821  
TO  
1836

His plan



MEXICAN WOMEN OF THE LOWER CLASS.

valleys—especially of the two last named—would furnish prosperous homes for his three hundred families. He then returned to Louisiana and circulated throughout the Mississippi Valley printed statements of his colonial enterprise and a description of Texas and its advantages. In these circulars he distinctly stated the terms of acquiring lands in his colony. Each settler was required to pay twelve and a half cents per acre for his portion of land, and Austin was to defray all expenses of surveying, fees for titles, and charges of every kind. It was considered that the price charged for the land would furnish a fund for conducting the local government of the colony, defence against Indians, aid to poor immigrants, and to reimburse the outlays

Prices and  
distribution  
of lands

and losses he and his father had sustained in founding the enterprise, to say nothing of reward for their labor. The price was payable in produce of the country in easy instalments, and no part of it was due until the title to the land was received by the settler. It will be seen that there was a very small, if any, margin for speculation to the *empresario*, in this fund. He was to receive under his contract a certain quantity of land, amounting to three *haciendas* and two *lábors'* (sixty-six thousand seven hundred and eighty acres) for each two hundred families actually introduced ; but his contract did not require him to perform all the labors of securing titles, surveying the lands, paying the fees and acting as the governor, judge, and military chief of the colony, all of which Austin did, as we shall see, for many years, and without salary or pay of any kind.

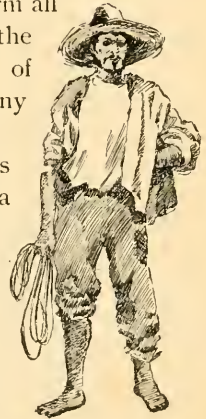
In November, 1821, Austin left New Orleans with his first colonists, and arrived on the Brazos at the La Bahia Crossing in December ; he crossed to the west side and, on January 1, 1822, camped on a creek in what is now Washington County, which he named New Year's Creek, the name it still bears. He had previously shipped some supplies by the steamer *Lively* from New Orleans, which were landed at the mouth of the Brazos and buried to await the coming of the colony ; and in November the *Lively* started with a second cargo of provisions, seed corn, and other necessary articles, but was lost in the Gulf. As soon as Austin had conducted the families to the Brazos, he went to meet the *Lively* and secure the concealed supplies, but the one never came and the other had been discovered by the Karankawa Indians. Additions to the colony continued to arrive, some coming across the Gulf to Galveston and Velasco, and others by way of Nacogdoches and the land route. The first settlements were on the Brazos, and others proceeded to the Colorado. It was the beginning of Anglo-American civilization in Texas, and, in spite of hardships and privations, the little colony was hopeful and helpful from the start.

Before leaving Texas in the previous August, Austin had heard of the revolution of February 24, 1821, in Mexico, the *Plan of Iguala*, and the successful establishment of Mexican

PERIOD II.  
MEXICAN RULE

1821  
TO  
1836

Empresario's  
compensation



A GREASER, OR LOWER  
TYPE OF MEXICAN.

First colonists  
introduced

First troubles

First settle-  
ments

Revolution in  
Mexico

PERIOD II.  
MEXICAN RULE

1821

TO  
1836

Austin com-  
pelled to visit  
Mexico

independence by Iturbide ; but it does not seem to have occurred to him or to Governor Martinez that those transactions affected the colonial enterprise in Texas.

When in March, 1822, he went to San Antonio to report to the governor the progress of his colony, he learned with surprise and dismay that the changes wrought by the revolution would require him to go to the City of Mexico, in order to secure a confirmation of his rights and authority as a colonial contractor. It was twelve hundred miles in a strange land, but he left his colonists in charge of Josiah H. Bell and at once set out for the capital, travelling in disguise as a poor man to avoid robbery. He reached the city on April 29, 1822, and found the political condition most critical and disturbed. Congress had been in session since February, endeavoring to establish the government on the Plan of Iguala. On May 18, after Austin's arrival, Iturbide was proclaimed emperor, and affairs were in such confusion that it was a long time before anything definite was accomplished by the visit. Other Americans were in the capital on the same errand, and intrigue was rife on all sides. But Austin was indefatigable, intelligent, and prudent, and success was attained. He found that Governor Martinez had no authority to agree to the quantity of land the colonists should receive, and that a colonization law would have to be passed, regulating that and other questions. Mainly by Austin's labor and patience, a general colonization law was framed and in the act of being adopted, when the emperor, in October, 1822, violently dispersed the congress and established a *Junta*, or royal council, to act as a legislature. The work had to be all done over again, but on January 4, 1823, a general law, known as the Imperial Colonization Law, was adopted by the *Junta* and approved by the emperor. At last, by the aid of Herrera and Quintana, the ministers of Iturbide, he procured all necessary papers under the new law, and was ready to return to Texas, when another serious delay arose. The republicans of Mexico, under the leadership of Santa Anna, rebelled against the emperor's despotic acts and a fresh revolution broke out, and this of course threatened the validity of all legislation under the imperial government. Austin must wait the result.

Iturbide

Austin's ef-  
forts to secure  
his contract

Imperial colo-  
nization law

Another revo-  
lution

In March, 1823, Iturbide was deposed, the congress reassembled, and the government was placed in the hands of an executive power composed of Bravo, Victoria, and Negrete. All acts done under the empire were declared void, so that Austin had to apply to the new government for a renewal of his contract. This was granted on April 11, 1823, and by the same act of congress the Imperial Colonization Law of January 4 was suspended, so that there was no colonization law in force in Mexico until the National Colonization Law of August 18, 1824, and the state colonization law of Coahuila and Texas, of March 25, 1825, were adopted. During the intervening period Austin was and could be the only *empresario* in Texas.

The success and influence of Stephen F. Austin during his year's stay in the Mexican capital were astonishing. It was then that he first exhibited those qualities of diplomacy, statesmanship, and practical wisdom which so eminently fitted him to become, as he was recognized and declared to be by General Houston, "The Father of Texas." A stranger among a people who instinctively distrusted and secretly despised him, he conciliated their favor, disarmed their prejudices, and actually enlisted their interest and assistance. Ignorant of the language and laws of the empire, he acquired the one and shaped the other to serve the great objects of his undertaking. In the midst of revolutionary tumult, where defeated royalists, disappointed republicans, and scheming imperialists were struggling for supremacy, he moulded the policy and actually inspired the legislation that laid the foundations of the future greatness of his adopted state. He even materially shaped the institutions of the new republic of Mexico. To his friend Ramos Arispe, who was chairman of the committee on constitution in the Constituent Congress of 1823-24, he furnished a draft for a constitution for the federal republic, which draft was the basis for the Constitution of 1824. to which Austin, as a loyal patriot in his adopted country, was faithful and true until its provisions were disregarded and its authority was defied by military usurpation.

While in the capital, Austin met General James Wilkinson, Hayden Edwards, Robert Leftwich, Green Dewitt, and other Americans, who were there seeking colonial grants, but none of

PERIOD II.  
MEXICAN RULE  
1821  
TO  
1836

Mexican  
republic

Austin's suc-  
cess

His talents  
and influence  
in Mexico

His plan for  
the Mexican  
Constitution

Other Ameri-  
cans in Mexico

whom succeeded at that time. There were also there the Cherokee chiefs, Bowles, Fields, and Nicollet, who were seeking permission to locate bands of their tribe in Texas, having been driven from their extensive possessions east of the Mississippi. Iturbide gave them a qualified consent to settle in Texas.

Austin left Mexico for his return on April 28, 1823, clothed with full power over his colony—legislative, executive, judicial, and military—until it should be otherwise ordered. By the terms of his modified contract under the Imperial Colonization Law, his colonists were to receive a greater quantity of land than under the first grant to Moses Austin and the distribution agreed upon by Governor Martinez. The land measurements were as follows :

1 *varā* = 3 geometrical feet =  $33\frac{1}{3}$  inches.

1 *lābōr'* = 1,000,000 square *varās* = 177 $\frac{1}{8}$  acres.

1 *lineal league* = 5000 *varās* = 4629 yards, 1 foot, 10 $\frac{1}{4}$  inches = 2 miles, 201 rods, 12 feet, 4 $\frac{2}{3}$  inches.

1 *square league*, called a *sitio* (*sē-zhēō*), = 25,000,000 square *varās* = 4428 $\frac{40}{1000}$  acres.

1 *hā'ciēndā* = 5 *sitios*, or 5 *square leagues*.

Land, for purposes of distribution, was divided into pasture or grazing lands and farming lands ; it was provided that no colonist pursuing farming should receive less than a *lābōr'* of land, and those pursuing stock-raising should receive not less than one *sitio* ; and those quantities could be increased to suit the circumstances of the colonists. Large tracts of land in the hands of individuals or corporations were prohibited, and the same could be taken away by the government upon paying the owner a fair price. Provisions were made for the organization of towns and cities and the government thereof, and one principal town was required to be established in the colony. The *empresario* was to receive three *hāciēndās* and two *lābōr's* for each two hundred families introduced, but in no case to exceed three times that quantity, and he was required to settle and cultivate his lands within twelve years, and to sell two-thirds of them after twenty years. Each colonist was required to occupy and cultivate his land within two years, or forfeit his right to it ; all taxes, tithes, and duties of any description were abolished for

PERIOD II  
MEXICAN RULE

1821

TO

1836

Austin's re-  
turn to Texas

Mexican land  
measurements

Method of dis-  
tributing land  
to colonists

Rules and  
terms of the  
contract of  
colonization



six years, and for the next six years the colonists were to pay only one-half the regular taxes and duties. The sale and purchase of slaves were forbidden, and the children of slaves born in the empire were free. All the colonists were required to be Roman Catholics and to come from Louisiana, by which was meant the extensive territory formerly known by that name. These last two provisions were never rigidly enforced. The foregoing regulations were substantially the same that were contained in all the subsequent colonization laws of Mexico, under which Texas was settled.

Austin reached Texas in the early summer, and in July, 1823, the new Mexican governor, Luciano Garcia (*gär-sé'-ä*), appointed Baron de Bastrop as the commissioner to survey and distribute the lands to the colonists. Owing to delays no titles were issued that year, but in 1824 two hundred and forty-seven grants were perfected.

During his long absence, Austin's colony had become much disheartened, and suffered great privation. They were almost destitute of provisions and clothing, seed for planting was hard to get and expensive, the men and women wore buckskin garments and lived in the rudest simplicity. Prowling Indians

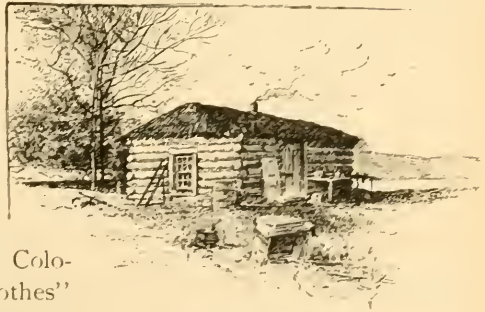
committed frequent murders, and life in the wilderness was burdened with cares and sufferings sometimes almost unendurable. Game was almost the only source of meat-supply, and the scarcity of that forced the colonists to live on the fat *mustangs* or wild horses that roamed the prairie valleys of the Colorado and the Brazos. "Store-clothes" were unknown, and a travelling peddler was welcomed as a vision of light and beauty by the tired, anxious, and poorly clad women of the log-cabin homes of those pioneer days. But through it all there was a gleam of that heroic patience and fortitude that have made the Anglo-Saxon and Anglo-American race the dominant

PERIOD II.  
MEXICAN RULE

1821  
TO  
1836

Baron de Bastrop, surveyor of Austin's colony

Destitution and suffering of the first colonists



A COLONIST'S CABIN.

Their heroic spirit and hopefulness

PERIOD II.  
MEXICAN RULE

1821  
TO  
1836

Settlements in  
East Texas

and permanent factor in peopling and subduing the Western world. There was even a spirit of good cheer, hospitality, homely pride, and individual freedom, that made those early times sweeter and better than any that have followed the artificial luxuries and refinements of later years.

The uncertainty attending Austin's colony during his long delay in Mexico had caused many families to stop in Eastern Texas, near Nacogdoches and along the lower Trinity, and thus began the American settlement of that region. The exact limits of Austin's first colony were not defined, but as finally developed it covered the district between the Lavaca and San Jacinto Rivers, extending from the Gulf to the interior as far as what is now Burleson County, including the best portions of the Colorado and Brazos valleys.

San Felipe de  
Austin

On July 26, 1823, the town of San Felipe de Austin was established by order of the governor, named for the patron saint of the governor, and the American *empresario*. It was laid off at a beautiful spot on the Brazos River in what is now Austin County, and was the capital and political centre of the American colonies until 1836. New additions to the colony were constantly arriving, and they were of the better class,—honest, thrifty, strong, and determined to succeed. Austin organized his government, appointed *alcaldes*, published a code of civil and criminal laws for his colony, provided for a military force to repel Indians, and all the while was laborious in surveying lands, issuing titles, and exercising the responsible duties of his position as the practical dictator of the new settlements. Samuel M. Williams was appointed secretary of the local government in 1824, and Horatio Chriesman was the surveyor; a land office was opened, and the colony was rapidly filled up to the requisite number of families. The members of this first colony are known as "the Original Three Hundred," and they and their descendants have always felt a certain degree of superiority to the "new-comers" who followed in after years. If there be any ground for distinctions among those whose labor and sacrifice founded Texas civilization, the old "Three Hundred" are certainly entitled to the first rank.

Government of  
the colony

"The Original  
Three Hun-  
dred"

Austin's colonists had some bloody experiences with Indians,

especially the Karan'kawas, but by dint of courage, vigilance, and skill they gradually drove off the savages and established a reasonable security for their settlements.

On November 6, 1824, Austin forwarded a petition to Mexico, asking for permission to introduce two or three hundred additional families, and that Galveston be made a port of entry. On February 4, 1825, he sent substantially the same application to the governor of the state; and, hearing nothing from these petitions, he sent a third to the governor, asking permission to colonize five hundred families. The second petition was granted by the authorities before the last one was received, but when the request to introduce five hundred families came it was also granted, to include the three hundred already granted; which made Austin's second colony five hundred families, and the date of the contract June 4, 1825. The new colonists were to be settled on the vacant lands in the old colony, not within the ten leagues reserved along the coast; and the exact limits were afterwards defined as lying between the San Jacinto River and the old San Antonio Road, to the south of that road. Gaspar Flores was appointed the Mexican commissioner to distribute lands to the second colony. This contract was to be completed in six years.

On November 20, 1827, Austin secured another contract to locate one hundred families on the east side of the Colorado River, above the San Antonio road; also to expire in six years. On July 29, 1828, he made a fourth contract, for six years, to locate three hundred families in the ten leagues coast reserve, between the Lavaca and the San Jacinto Rivers. This made a total of twelve hundred families contracted for by Stephen F. Austin. His last three contracts were made under the general colonization laws of Mexico and of Coahuila and Texas. He was appointed commissioner to issue the titles in the last colony.

The American colonists in the district selected by Austin were now firmly established, and their vigor rapidly developed the country. New families came every week, and among them many men afterwards distinguished in Texas. In 1826-27

PERIOD II.  
MEXICAN RULE  
—  
1821  
TO  
1836  
—

Austin's second colony

The image shows a handwritten signature in cursive script that reads "Gaspar Flores" with the year "1825" written below it. To the right of the signature is a large, decorative flourish consisting of several loops and a long tail.

SIGNATURE OF GASPAR FLORES.

Third colony

Fourth colony

Prosperity of the colonies

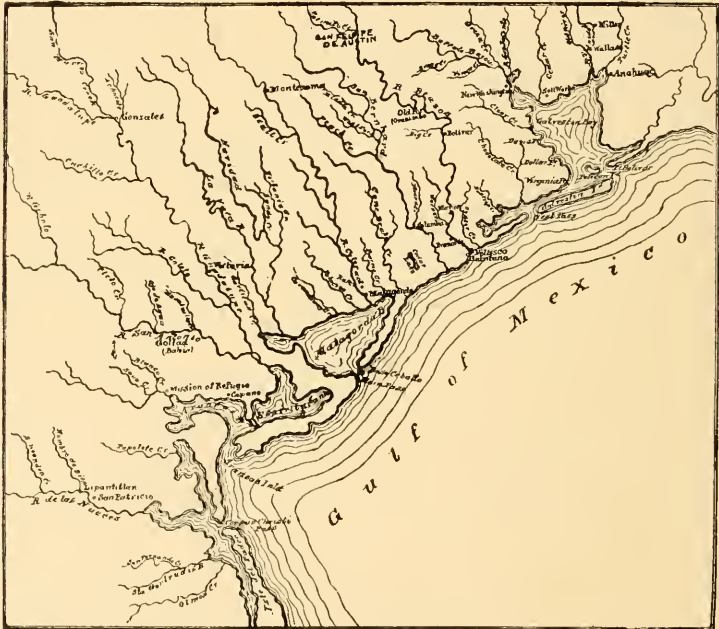
PERIOD II.  
MEXICAN RULE

1821  
TO  
1836

Change in  
Austin's  
powers

among the immigrants were William H. Wharton, Robert M. Williamson, Francis W. Johnson, David G. Burnet, John H. Moore, Jesse Grimes, William I. Russell, and Henry Smith.

In 1828, the State of Coahuila and Texas had adopted a constitution and organized its government over the territory including the American colonies in Texas; so that on February 1 of that year Austin's powers and duties as legislator, judge, and execu-



AUSTIN'S MAP OF TEXAS.

tive in his colonies ceased, and he became like any other *empresario*.

End of  
empresario  
system

After the adoption of the national and state colonization laws, and the successful establishment of Austin's and other colonies, immigrants began to come to Texas on their own account; the *empresario* system ceased, and, although many other colonial contracts were entered into until 1833, few of them were carried out, and some of them did the country more harm than good.

To gain a complete view of the colonial period, however, it is proper that the other colonial enterprises should be noticed, and their part in the general settlement of Mexican Texas be correctly estimated.

PERIOD II.  
MEXICAN RULE  
1821  
TO  
1836

## QUESTIONS.

WHAT year marked a new era in the history of Texas? How long had it been since the first Europeans landed in Texas? How long since the first mission was founded in Texas? By whom had the country been visited during all these years, and for what purpose? What were the condition, population, and pursuits of the province of Texas in 1821? What were the principal towns, and by whom inhabited? What new influence appeared at this time? What had been the attitude of the Spanish government towards foreign immigration, and what was it in 1819? What foreigners had previously attempted to plant colonies in Texas? When did Moses Austin conceive the idea of founding an American colony in Texas? Who was Moses Austin, and give a short sketch of his life previous to that time? What preparations did he make for coming to Texas? Who assisted him in these preparations? When did Moses Austin reach San Antonio de Bexar? Describe what happened to him there. Who assisted him in dealing with the Spanish authorities, and with what result? What did Austin then do, and what became of him? When was permission to found the colony granted by the Spanish government? Who succeeded Moses Austin in his colonial enterprise? By the terms of the permission granted to Austin, how many families were allowed to be introduced, and who was appointed to notify him and to conduct the colonists to Texas? Explain the Spanish name for this kind of a contract to found a colony. Who were the only real *empresarios*, and explain why? Where was Stephen F. Austin when he was notified of the colonial permit, and describe his subsequent movements? When did he reach Bexar? How was he received by the Spanish governor, and what authority and instructions were given him? What plan did Austin form for giving lands to his colonists? What regions did he explore and select for his colony? What did he then do? Explain the terms of his proposition to the colonists in regard to acquiring lands. What compensation was he to receive, and what were his duties as the head of the colony? From what place and on what date did Austin set out with his first colonists? When did he reach and cross the Brazos River? When and where did he camp, and what stream did he name in honor of that event? What provisions had he made for supplies for his colony, and what happened to them? What additions were made to his colony, how did they come, and where were the early settlements made? When did Austin first hear of the Mexican Revolution of 1821? When

PERIOD II.  
MEXICAN RULE

1821

TO

1836

did he first learn of the fact that this revolution required a change in his plans? What did it become necessary for him to do, and why? What did he do? Who was left in charge of his colony? When did he reach the City of Mexico? Describe the condition of Mexican affairs at the time he reached there, and for some time afterwards. What was Austin's conduct, and what difficulties did he meet with? What law had to be passed in order to permit his colony to proceed, and describe the various delays that occurred before the law was finally passed? What was the first general colonization law called? By whom and when was it adopted and approved? What did Austin do under that law, and what event suddenly occurred to again delay him? What was the result of the second Mexican revolution, and how did it affect Austin? When did he finally secure a renewal of his contract by the new government? Explain the exact condition of the colonization laws of Mexico during 1823, 1824, and 1825. What can you say of Austin's conduct and influence in Mexico at this time? What qualities of mind and character did he display? What important laws did he secure? What connection did he have with the formation of the Mexican Constitution of 1824? What persons from the United States were in the City of Mexico while Austin was there, for what purpose, and with what success? When did Austin leave the capital on his return to Texas, and with what authority? Under his new contract, what changes were made in the distribution of lands? Give the table of Spanish measurements for land rendered into English measures. How was the land divided for purposes of distribution? How much land could a farmer receive? How much could a stock-raiser receive? What provisions were made in regard to large tracts of land in the hands of individuals or corporations? What, in regard to towns and cities? What quantity of land was the *embresario* to receive, and upon what conditions? What were the rules as to colonists occupying their land? What about taxes, tithes, and duties? What was the law as to slaves? What, as to religion? When did Austin reach Texas on his return? Who was appointed land commissioner for Austin's colony, and when? Who was then governor of Texas? How many land titles were issued in 1823? How many in 1824? Describe the condition of the colonists at this time, —their mode of dress, living, food, privations, and dangers, and how they bore it all. How came Eastern Texas to be first settled by Americans? What were the territorial limits of Austin's first colony? When, by whom, where, and with what name was the first town laid off in Austin's colony? What was the character of the new settlers who constantly came in? Describe Austin's duties and labors in the government of his colonists. Who was the secretary of the local government, and when was he appointed? Who was the colony surveyor? What were the members of this first colony called, and what may be said of them? What experiences had the colonists with the Indians? Describe the manner in which Austin obtained permission to introduce his second colony, giving the dates, number of families, and the location of the colony.

What period was allowed for introducing this colony, and who was the land commissioner? When and for what number of families was Austin's third colony granted? Where was it located, and how many years were allowed for fulfilling the contract? When was his fourth colony contracted for, for what number of families, and where was it located? How many families in all did Austin contract to introduce? Under what law were his last three contracts made? Describe the growth and prosperity of his colonies. What distinguished men came in the years 1826 and 1827? When did the State of Coahuila and Texas adopt a constitution and establish government over Texas? What effect did this have on Austin's powers and duties? When and how did the *empresario* system of colonization cease, and what system succeeded it?

PERIOD II.
MEXICAN RULE
—
1821
TO
1836
—

### Topical Analysis.

1. The condition of Texas in 1821; its slow and feeble growth during the preceding two hundred years, so that it was still practically an unsettled wilderness. Consider the reasons for this.

2. The appearance of a new influence, in the shape of immigration from the United States, bringing the more vigorous, liberal, and progressive spirit of English and American civilization.

3. The colonial enterprises of Moses Austin and Stephen F. Austin, begun by the former in 1820, and carried out by the latter in 1821-1823.

4. Revolutionary movements in Mexico in 1821 and 1823, as affecting the American colonization of Texas. Stephen F. Austin's influence in Mexico in securing laws favorable to colonization, and in framing a republican government for Mexico. His great abilities as a statesman, diplomat, and man of affairs, as shown at that time.

5. The location, extent, and character of Austin's several colonies, his management and authority as the head of the colonial system. The methods of distributing lands, and the habits, struggles, and dangers of the early settlers.

6. The success of these first attempts at American settlement of Texas, and the causes of the prosperity and peaceful progress of Austin's colonies, as influenced by the character of the colonists and by the peculiar qualities of the *empresario* Austin.

7. The early colonization laws of Mexico and of Coahuila and Texas. Point out their special features, provisions, and distinguish between the *empresario* system and that which afterwards prevailed.

### Geography.

1. Study the map of the North American continent in the year 1800, so as to be able to point out the territory claimed by the several European nations before the treaty of San Ildefonso; then trace and point out the changes made by that treaty.

PERIOD II.  
 MEXICAN RULE  
 1821  
 TO  
 1836

2. Trace on the map the changes made by the purchase of Louisiana by the United States in 1803, especially as affecting the boundary of Texas and Louisiana along the Sabine and Red Rivers.

3. Study the location of the *neutral ground* between the Sabine and Red Rivers, and trace the boundary of Spanish territory as laid down in the treaty between Spain and the United States in 1819.

4. Locate and trace the limits of Austin's first, second, third, and fourth colonies, and point out the places where the first settlements were made by American colonists. Locate San Felipe de Austin.

Note the fact that about this time the Spanish form of spelling *Bejar* began to be changed to the English form, *Bexar*, but the pronunciation, *Bā-hūr* or *Bā-yār*, was retained. Gradually, too, the place began to be called simply San Antonio, instead of the full name, San Antonio de Bexar.

### Parallel Readings.

Scarff's "Comprehensive History of Texas" (1897), especially Parts I. and II., Yoakum's original text, and chapters on the Colonial Enterprises of the Austins, and on the Texas Land System; Brown's "History of Texas;" Gayarré's "History of Louisiana," "Louisiana as a French Province," and "Louisiana under Spanish Domination."



A PERIL OF THE PLAINS.



## CHAPTER VIII.

### Other Colonies in Texas.

IT has been mentioned that while Austin was in the City of Mexico, in 1822-23, he met other Americans who were seeking permission to establish colonies in Texas. Some of these afterwards succeeded in securing the necessary contracts.

PERIOD II.  
MEXICAN RULE  
1821  
TO  
1836

But Martin de Leon, a native of Tamaulipas, in 1823, procured the informal consent of the commander of the eastern internal provinces to found a colony on the Gaudalupe River, and in 1824 he actually brought some families to that locality. After the adoption of the national and state colonization laws, on October 6, 1825, the grant was confirmed for forty-one families; and in 1829 he secured an additional grant for one hundred and fifty families, whom he introduced. His colony was on the lower Guadalupe, and its capital he named Guadalupe Victoria, being the modern town of Victoria.

Martin de  
Leon

On April 15, 1825, Green Dewitt, of Missouri, secured a contract to locate four hundred families in the district bounded on the east by the Lavaca River and Austin's colony, on the north by the old San Antonio Road, on the south by De Leon's colony, and on the west by a line between the San Antonio and Guadalupe Rivers. He was assisted by James Kerr, and the settlement was begun by establishing the town of Gonzales in August, 1825. Lands were surveyed for the colonists as rapidly as possible, but no families came in 1825. It was the only American settlement west of the Colorado at that time, and suffered greatly from Indian massacres in its early history, so that it was moved to the Lavaca River for several years, at a point called "Old Station."

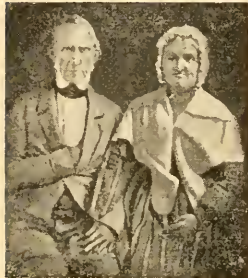


JAMES KERR.

PERIOD II.  
MEXICAN RULE

1821  
TO  
1836

Hayden Ed-  
wards



HAYDEN EDWARDS AND  
WIFE.

"Heroes of  
the neutral  
ground"

On April 18, 1825, permission was granted Hayden Edwards to settle eight hundred families in Eastern Texas, embracing in his grant the town of Nacogdoches. This was a peculiarly unfortunate location, for several reasons. It was a district early occupied by the Spaniards, and many old Spanish land titles existed there,—some real and some forged,—and this rendered its settlement by new colonists rather dangerous. Then, many

Americans had come into Texas in the past three years, some of them with no definite purpose in view, but most of them intending to go to Austin's colony on the Brazos, which they did not do owing to his absence in Mexico and the uncertainty about his contract. These people had stopped near Nacogdoches and were occupying lands to which they had no titles, and they themselves really had no legal right to be in Texas at all. In addition to these facts, that section lying on the Louisiana border and adjoining the *neutral ground* had been for years the resort of the most desperate charac-

ters in the West. Filibusters, fugitives from justice, adventurers, Indian traders, globe-trotters, and every kind and grade of desperadoes and outlaws had congregated in that region. Some of them were men of experience, talents, and courage, but the best of them were reckless and contemptuous of all restraint, especially from Spanish or Mexican authority. The Indians were near by, and among them were many white leaders and half-breeds whose influence was not salutary upon the savage tribes. Among the most prominent and respectable of this class were Martin Parmer, John Dunn Hunter, Fields, James Gaines, and the noted Ellis P. Bean. It was in such a locality and with such a population to begin with, that Edwards sought to establish his colony.

Beginning of  
the troubles

The first trouble arose with the holders or forgers of Spanish land titles, and then Edwards attempted to exercise unwarranted authority in the selection of *alcaldes* in the municipality. He was quick-tempered, and did not understand, or despised, the methods of Mexican government, and became involved in a bitter controversy with the political chief, Saucedo. Edwards was

called away to the United States and left his brother, B. W. Edwards, in charge. The latter consulted with Stephen F. Austin and Baron de Bastrop, and upon their advice wrote to Governor Victor Blanco, explaining the troubles and the cause of them. Blanco took offence at the letter, and was no doubt prejudiced by false information. He declared Edwards's contract void and commanded his expulsion from Texas; neither of which he had any authority to do. Hayden Edwards returned at this time, and the excitement assumed dangerous proportions. In this moment of rage and resentment, Edwards conceived the idea of organizing an open rebellion against Mexico. He made an alliance with the Cherokees through John D. Hunter and Fields, two of their chiefs; visited and aroused the Americans on both sides of the Louisiana border; and finally declared for a new republic to be called "Fredonia." The basis and purpose of this revolution were declared to be to divide Texas between the Americans and the Indians, and to wage war against Mexico until independence was gained. Whatever injustice had been done to Edwards, this movement was absolutely foolhardy and without the hope of support from the peaceful and conservative Americans in the other colonies. Austin at once denounced it, and called out the militia of his colony to aid the Mexican government in suppressing it. After some violence and a few lives lost, the insurrection was quelled. Hunter and Fields were both killed by the Indians, for insisting upon the treaty to help Edwards. This occurred in 1826-27, and was known as the "Fredonian War."

It greatly injured the peaceable settlement of Texas, and served to hasten the hostility between Mexico and her American colonists.

From 1825 to 1832, eighteen different *empresario* grants were made by the government of Coahuila and Texas for colonies in Texas, but of that number the following were the only ones in which any success was attained in complying with the contracts. Robert Leftwich, of Nashville, Tennessee, on April 15, 1825, secured a contract for eight hundred families, which was afterwards carried out by Sterling C. Robertson and Alexander Thompson.

PERIOD II.  
MEXICAN RULE

1821  
TO  
1836

He starts re-  
bellion

Fredonia



STERLING C. ROBERTSON.

PERIOD II.  
MEXICAN RULE

1821  
TO  
1836

Power and  
Hewitson

McMullen and  
McGloin

Austin and  
Williams

Zavala

Joseph Vehlein

David G.  
Burnet

Galveston Bay  
and Texas  
Land Com-  
pany

Increase in  
population  
and prosperity

It was known as the Nashville colony, or Robertson's Colony, and was situated on the Navasota River between the San Antonio road and the Brazos and Colorado Rivers. James Power and James Hewitson, two Irishmen, by contract of June 11, 1828, had permission to settle two hundred families on Aransas Bay, in what is now Refugio County. This grant embraced the ten *shore leagues*. They secured a second contract in 1830, for settling families in the territory between the Nueces and Guadalupe Rivers. John McMullen and Patrick McGloin, also Irishmen, had a contract dated August 17, 1828, for two hundred families on the Nueces, and their patriotism and piety are preserved in the name of San Patricio County.

In 1831, Stephen F. Austin and Samuel M. Williams obtained a concession to settle eight hundred families in the territory east and north of Austin's former colonies. There was great confusion about the boundaries of this colony, creating trouble as late as 1853. Lorenzo de Zavala, on March 12, 1829, was granted a contract to colonize five hundred families near Nacogdoches and along the Sabine westwardly to the Gulf, thence on the Gulf coast for twenty leagues, and back to Nacogdoches. Joseph Vehlein contracted for three hundred families, on December 22, 1826, and for one hundred families on November 17, 1828, to be located in Eastern Texas adjoining Zavala's colony, and both his and Zavala's contracts covered a part of Hayden Edwards's old grant. David G. Burnet procured a colonial contract on December 26, 1826, to settle three hundred families on a tract of territory lying beside Vehlein's colony, along the Navasota and Trinity Rivers and the old San Antonio Road. In 1830, Zavala, Vehlein, and Burnet assigned their contracts to a company in New York, called the Galveston Bay and Texas Land Company, which issued a great deal of worthless land scrip, damaging Texas and scandalizing the original *empresarios*. Besides the above-mentioned colonies, partial settlements were also made, between 1825 and 1835, under the colonial contracts of Cameron, Beale, Grant and Beale, Padillo and Chambers, Thorn, Wavel, Woodbury, and Wilson.

The activity of the colonial period rapidly increased the population and developed the resources of Texas, and but for

the political troubles brought on by Mexican tyranny and revolution, the prosperity of the colonies would in a very few years have converted the entire province into a peaceable, wealthy,

PERIOD II.  
MEXICAN RULE

1821  
TO  
1836



and progressive community. As it was, there intervened nearly a decade of civil commotion, revolutionary excitement, and finally bloodshed, before the Americans could follow their appointed destiny.

### QUESTIONS.

Who was Martin de Leon? When and how did he secure his contracts to colonize in Texas? How many families did he introduce, where was his colony located, and what town was its capital? When was Green Dewitt's colonial contract granted? Where was his colony located, and when and how was it begun? Who assisted him in planting the colony? Describe its early troubles and situation, and what occurred in consequence. When was permission to found a colony granted to Hayden Edwards, how many families did it include, and where was it to be established? Describe its location and surroundings, and what difficulties did it encounter in consequence of these things? What was the character of

PERIOD II.  
MEXICAN RULE

1821

TO

1836

the people living there and in the country near there? Give the names of the more prominent men who were connected with the early settlement and difficulties of that colony. How did the first trouble arise in Edwards's colony? What mistakes did Edwards make in his dealings with the Mexican authorities? Who acted for him while he was absent, and what happened while he was gone? What did Governor Blanco do? What did Hayden Edwards do on his return, and what resulted from his conduct? What sort of revolution and agreement did Edwards and the Indians organize, and what did they propose to do? What can you say of this movement? What course did Austin and the other American colonies in Texas pursue towards this war? What was the revolution called, and what became of it and its principal leaders? What effect did this trouble have on the settlement of Texas? How many colonial contracts were made between the years 1826 and 1832? By what government were they made? Were they all successful? Give an account of the colonial enterprise of Robert Leftwich,—when granted, how known, by whom carried out, and where located. Who were James Power and James Hewitson? Give an account of their colony, with date of founding, location, etc. Describe McMullen and McGloin's colonial contract and settlement. What county was named by them, and why was it so named? When was Austin and Williams's colony founded, where was it located, and what occurred in reference to it? When did Lorenzo de Zavala secure a colonial grant, for how many families, and where was it located? When, where, and for how many families did Joseph Vehlein have a colony grant? When was David G. Burnet's colony contracted for? Where was it located, and how many families did it include? What became of Zavala's, Vehlein's, and Burnet's colonial grants, and what evil resulted therefrom? When and by whom were other partial settlements in Texas made? What effect did these various colonial enterprises have on Texas? What prevented the rapid progress and prosperity of the country? What occurred before American colonization finally succeeded in Texas?

### Topical Analysis.

1. The founding of colonies in Western and Southern Texas, by De Leon, Dewitt, Leftwich, Sterling C. Robertson, Power and Hewitson, and McMullen and McGloin, from 1825 to 1830.

2. Colonization in Eastern Texas, under Hayden Edwards, Zavala, Vehlein, and Burnet, during the same period.

3. Contrast the success of the western and the eastern colonies. In the main the former were prosperous and peaceful, except for outside troubles, such as Indian raids; while the latter were involved in difficulties with the Mexican authorities, domestic quarrels, and bad management of various kinds. Inquire the causes of this difference. Was it due to the location of the colonies, or to the character of their founders, or to the disposition of the colonists themselves?

4. Irregular and partial colonization by various other contractors. These were mostly prompted by desire for speculations in lands, rather than by the purpose to permanently and peacefully occupy and improve the country. Hence they were generally failures.

5. The gradual approach of a conflict between American and Mexican ideas of life, liberty, and law, brought about by the rapid introduction of colonists from the United States.

PERIOD II.  
MEXICAN RULE

1821

TO

1836

### Geography.

Locate on the map the various colonies and colonial grants mentioned in the chapter. The student should be required to trace on a modern county map of the State of Texas the exact location and boundaries of the several colonies above described.

### Parallel Readings.

Scarff's "Comprehensive History of Texas" (1897), especially Parts I. and II., being the original text of Yoakum's "History," and chapters on the Colonial Period, Fredonian War, and the Texas Land System; Brown's "History of Texas."



SEAL ON AN OLD MEXICAN LAND GRANT.

## CHAPTER IX.

### Political Affairs in Mexico, Coahuila, and Texas.

PERIOD II  
MEXICAN RULE

1821  
TO  
1836

Progress of  
events in  
Mexico

Constituent  
Congress

Federal republic  
created

Coahuila and  
Texas

WE have seen that the Emperor Iturbide was deposed by a revolution led by Santa Anna, Guerrero, Bravo, Negrétë, Guadalüpë Victoria, and other republican chiefs. This occurred in March, 1823, under a plan of reformation in the government known as the "Act of Cäsä Mätä." Victoria, Bravo, and Negrétë were constituted a triumvirate, or supreme executive power, and the congress which had been dispersed by Iturbide was reassembled. A new congress was called, which met in August, 1823, and was known as the *Constituent Congress*, being the body by which the Federal Constitution of 1824 was afterwards formed. All its acts of a general nature, and which pertained to the form of government preceding the adoption of the constitution itself, were called *constitutive* acts; and the same terms were applied in describing the acts of the congress or legislature of Coahuila and Texas, afterwards held in that state.

On January 31, 1824, the Mexican Congress adopted a constitutive act, by which a republican government, federative in form and very similar to that of the United States, was outlined. By this act the provinces of Coahuila, Texas, and New Leon were united as one federal state in the Mexican Union, with its capital at Leona Vicario or Saltillo. It was declared that as soon as any one of the provinces thus consolidated should be capable of forming a separate state, and should notify the general government of that fact, it should have the right to be organized as a free and independent federal state in the Mexican federation. Accordingly, in May, 1824, New Leon was separated and admitted into the Union as an independent state; while in August of that year, the legislature of Coahuila and Texas organized a provisional government for those two prov-



inces, as one federal state, and declared it to be an integral part of the confederacy as such. The legislature at the same time declared that the state so formed was free, independent, and sovereign in whatever related exclusively to its internal administration and government, agreeable to the constitutive act of the Mexican Congress of January 31, 1824, and to the constitution which should be finally adopted by the United States of Mexico.

The Federal Constitution was finally adopted on October 4, 1824, and it contained the same provisions as to the rights and sovereignty of Coahuila and Texas as had been declared in the previous acts. On March 11, 1827, the State of Coahuila and Texas adopted a state constitution, which also contained the same provisions. As has been before noted, on January 4, 1823, the *imperial* government had adopted a *general colonization law*, which was declared void by the succeeding republican government, and was also suspended by the Act of Congress of April 11, 1823, which confirmed to Stephen F. Austin his first colonial contract. On August 18, 1824, the Mexican Congress passed a *national colonization law*, and on March 24, 1825, the legislature of Coahuila and Texas passed a *state colonization law*. Under these two acts all the colonies, except Austin's first contract, were settled in Texas prior to 1836. The provisions of those laws are in the main the same, and they were very just, liberal, and wise.

Antonio Martinez was the last governor of Texas under Spanish rule. When the revolution came, Colonel Tréspalacios was governor for a time, and under Iturbide's brief reign Texas was attached to the captaincy-general of the eastern internal provinces, with headquarters at Chihuahua. Luciano Garcia and Rafael Gonzales were the acting republican governors during 1823 and 1824, until Coahuila and Texas were united; after which there was one governor of the whole state, residing at the capital, which was usually at Saltillo, or Leona Vicario as it was then called. From 1824 to 1835, the successive governors were Victor Blanco, José Maria Viesca, José Maria Letona, Francisco Vidauri y Villaseñor, José Maria Goribar and Juan José Elguezabal' (contesting with each other), Au-

PERIOD II.  
MEXICAN RULE

1821

TO

1836

Provisions as to the rights of Coahuila and Texas

Sovereign right of Texas under Mexican Constitution

National colonization law

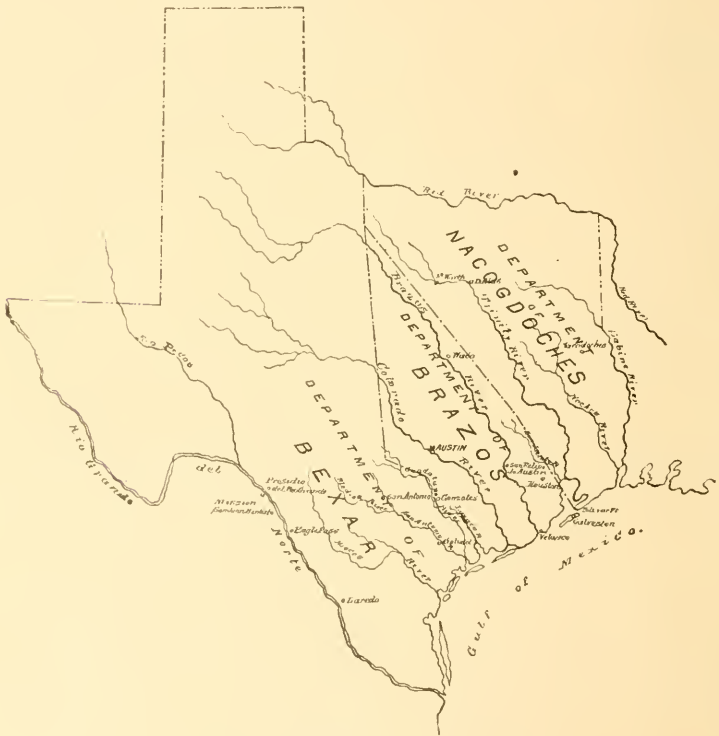
Spanish and Mexican governors of Texas

Mexican government in Texas

PERIOD II.  
MEXICAN RULE

1821  
TO  
1836

gustin Viesca, and then came the revolutionary councils and provisional government of Texas while engaged in the struggle for independence. After the union of Coahuila and Texas as one state, on February 1, 1825, Texas was made a *political department* with a local officer, who was called the "Political



POLITICAL DEPARTMENTS OF TEXAS.

Chief of the Department of Texas," and was appointed by the governor. He was required to reside at Bexar, and had general political, judicial, and military supervision over the country, subject to the governor of the state. José Antonio Saucedo was the first political chief in Texas, and he was a malignant Mexican whose rule was very distasteful to the American colonists.

In 1832, Texas was separated into *two* political departments or districts, with the dividing ridge between the Trinity and the Brazos and San Jacinto Rivers as the line. The eastern district was called that of *Nacogdoches*, with its capital at that town, while the western was that of *Bexar*; and each had a political chief. In 1833, a *third* district was created, known as the political department of the *Brazos*. Besides these larger political divi-

PERIOD II.  
MEXICAN RULE.  
1821  
TO  
1836  
Political de-  
partments



ORIGINAL MUNICIPALITIES OF TEXAS.

sions, the inhabitants were divided into *municipalities* for local purposes. These were governed by *alcaldes*, or municipal magistrates, and by common councils in each municipality, called *ayuntamientos*. In the beginning of Austin's colonies he had control of the formation of the municipalities in his territory, and was the general head of the entire system. The principal municipalities in Texas, prior to the revolution of 1835, were

Municipalities

PERIOD II.  
MEXICAN RULE

1821  
TO  
1836

Judicial dis-  
tricts



THOMAS J. CHAMBERS.

Population of  
Texas in 1834

those of Bexar or San Antonio, Goliad, Nacogdoches, San Felipe de Austin, Brazoria, Mina or Bastrop, Liberty, Matagorda, Gonzales, San Augustine, San Patricio, Victoria, Columbia, and Jonesborough. The names and limits of these municipal organizations varied at times, but they constituted the basis of the local self-government of the country. Under a law of the legislature of Coahuila and Texas, passed in 1833, Texas was divided into three judicial districts, corresponding to the three political departments, with a judge in each and a supreme judge for the whole territory. Thomas J. Chambers was appointed the supreme judge, and David G. Burnet was the district judge of the department of Brazos, but the system was never put in operation. In the state congress or legislature at Saltillo, Texas at first had two representatives and Coahuila ten, which was afterwards changed to Texas three and Coahuila nine representatives.

In 1834, Colonel Juan N. Almonté, an intelligent Mexican officer, the natural son of the patriot priest Morélos, was sent to Texas to examine and report upon the condition and resources of the country. He reported a total population of twenty-one thousand three hundred (21,300) whites and negroes, and fifteen thousand three hundred (15,300) Indians. The population, excluding Indians, was distributed as follows: In the district of the Brazos there were eight thousand inhabitants, including one thousand negroes, divided among the municipalities as follows: San Felipe de Austin, twenty-five hundred; Columbia, twenty-one hundred; Matagorda, fourteen hundred; Mina, eleven hundred. In the Nacogdoches department there were nine thousand nine hundred persons, of whom Nacogdoches had thirty-five hundred; San Augustine, twenty-five hundred; Liberty, one thousand; Jonesborough, two thousand; Anahuac, fifty; Bevil, one hundred and forty; Tencha, one hundred; and some at smaller settlements. In the Bexar district there was a population of three thousand four hundred, which was exclusively Mexican except in San Patricio. This was a falling off, since 1806, of three thousand. These inhabitants were distributed as follows: At San Antonio, twenty-four hundred; at San Patricio, six hun-

dred ; at Victoria, three hundred ; at Goliad, seven hundred. The resources and commerce showed the following results : Brazos district exported, during the year 1834, five thousand bales of cotton, worth at New Orleans two hundred and twenty-five thousand (\$225,000) dollars ; fifty thousand skins worth fifty thousand (\$50,000) dollars ; large herds of beeves and live stock to Natchitoches, whose value was not estimated ; and good crops of the cereals were raised and consumed at home. In the Nacogdoches district the annual exports were four hundred and seventy thousand (\$470,000) dollars, including two thousand bales of cotton, forty thousand skins, and fifty thousand head of cattle ; while the imports were two hundred and sixty-five thousand (\$265,000) dollars. The Bexar district had little or no trade, there being annually from eight thousand to ten thousand skins exported, and some supplies imported from New Orleans in exchange. These figures strikingly exhibit the difference between the section colonized by the Americans and the region inhabited by the Mexicans and Spaniards. The total exports and imports of Texas for 1834 amounted to one million four hundred thousand (\$1,400,000) dollars, and there was a contraband trade of two hundred and seventy thousand (\$270,000) dollars additional. Almonté reported one school of forty pupils at Brazoria, a small parochial school at San Antonio, and one or two schools at Nacogdoches and San Augustine. The colonists who were able sent their children to the United States to be educated. On the whole, affairs were progressing in Texas peaceably enough, until the government and officials of Mexico began a policy of unfriendly legislation, military interference, and general hostility towards the American colonists ; ultimately denying them their constitutional rights, and threatening them with the most odious and intolerable tyranny.

The course of events in Mexico was one of constant and increasing turbulence. Revolution followed revolution, and political factions vied with each other in their disregard of the republican constitution of 1824. After the establishment of a republic under that instrument, Guadalupe Victoria was elected the first president, and assumed office April 15, 1825. From

PERIOD II.  
MEXICAN RULE

1821  
TO  
1836

Resources and  
commerce

Hostility of  
Mexico

Revolutions in  
Mexico

PERIOD II.  
MEXICAN RULE

1821

TO

1836

Centralists  
and Federal-  
ists

the first there were two political parties : the *Centralists*, in favor of a centralized despotism or a monarchy ; and the *Federalists* or *Republicans*, in favor of the constitution of 1824 and its republican principles. There were several attempts at revolution under Victoria's administration, but they were subdued. Gomez Pedr  z  , a Centralist, succeeded Victoria in the presidency, defeating Guerr  ro, one of the strongest Republicans in Mexico. Guerr  ro, aided by Lorenzo de Zav  la and Santa Anna, resisted Pedr  z  's election as fraudulent and illegal, a revolution broke out, and congress reversed its decision and declared Guerr  ro the constitutional president, with Bustamente as vice-president. This was on January 1, 1829. Guerr  ro assumed the authority of a dictator, as he claimed in order to crush the power of the Centralists ; but his tyrannical conduct produced another revolution led by Bustamente (b  s-t  -men'-t  '), which resulted in the latter assuming power in the capital, while Guerr  ro fled to Valladolid and was finally captured and shot. In this struggle Santa Anna betrayed Guerr  ro and supported Bustamente.

Spanish inva-  
sion of Mexico

In 1829, encouraged by the unsettled condition of Mexico, Spain made a last attempt to reconquer the country. A Spanish army of four thousand men, under General B  rrad  s', was landed at Tampico. Santa Anna met him with a resisting force by land and sea, and, after a brilliant campaign, surrounded and captured the whole invading army. They were permitted to embark for Spain upon promise that all further claims to Mexico were abandoned forever. This success made Santa Anna the hero of Mexico, and his popularity became greater than that of any man in the republic.

GENERAL ANTONIO L  PEZ  
DE SANTA ANNA.Laws against  
American  
colonists

Bustamente came into power about the first of the year 1830, and on April 6, 1830, he evidenced his hostility to Texas and to American colonists by the famous *Decree* of that date. In that act it was provided that no foreigner should enter any Mexican territory "by the frontier of the north,"—which clearly meant colonists from the United States,—unless he could exhibit "a passport signed by an agent of Mexico in the country from which the individual may

come." As the Mexican republic had no such agents in the United States, the decree amounted to a positive prohibition to any American to enter Texas, regardless of all colonial contracts, financial investments, or principles of international justice and friendship. To make the matter plainer, the decree declared that no colonist from "any country adjacent to Mexican territory" shall be permitted to enter the adjoining Mexican states and provinces; and "all contracts of colonization, the terms of which are opposed to this decree, are consequently suspended." Another article of the decree provided for shipping Mexican convicts to the colonies, which was intended to convert Texas into a penal settlement for the criminal classes of Mexico. There had been, for the last two or three years, signs of growing hostility of the Mexican government towards Texas; but this decree of Bustamente's rendered it impossible that the American colonists should remain quiet any longer in the face of the plain purpose to degrade and ruin them. The decree of April 6, 1830, was to the Texas Revolution what the Stamp Act was to the American Revolution of 1776, and it was a far greater provocation than the British tax law. The secret of this extreme measure was perhaps to be found in the fact that, in 1827 and again in 1829, the government of the United States had offered to buy Texas from Mexico; and to the further fact that the inherited freedom and republican spirit of the American colonists along the Trinity, Brazos, and Colorado were a perpetual menace to the corrupt and tyrannical government of the Mexican Republic, falsely so named.

Bustamente followed up his decree by establishing garrisons in Texas, closing all the ports but Anahuac, and by other acts of petty annoyance and substantial injury to the Texans, all of which led to the first conflicts and hastened the final outbreak between Texas and Mexico. His tyranny was not confined to the American colonists, however, and gradually the whole nation grew rebellious at his conduct. Santa Anna's hour had come, and he proclaimed a revolt against Bustamente, on January 2, 1832. The latter at first repulsed the forces of the hero of Tampico, and Santa Anna changed his plans, by announcing in favor of the exiled president Pedraza, whom he himself had helped

PERIOD II.  
MEXICAN RULE

1821  
TO  
1836

Increasing  
Mexican op-  
pression

Jealousy of  
Mexico to-  
wards the  
United States

Santa Anna  
leads a revo-  
lution

PERIOD II.  
MEXICAN RULE

1821  
TO  
1836

Is elected  
president

to depose in favor of Guerréro, three years before. Bustamente realized that his power had failed, and he agreed to the recall of Pedraza, who returned and served out the remaining three months of his administration. Pedraza, it will be remembered, was a Centralist, and Santa Anna, himself a professed Republican, had thus won favor with his political foes. The result of his treachery, deceit, and skilful planning was his elevation to the presidency, May 16, 1833, Gomez Farias, who was a sincere republican, being elected vice-president.

No sooner was Santa Anna firmly seated in the executive chair than he threw off the mask of republicanism, united with the centralists and church party, deposed Farias from the vice-presidency, dissolved congress by force, disarmed the militia, consolidated and strengthened the army as his sole and willing instrument of power, declared himself military dictator, and in the beginning of the year 1836 he abolished the constitution of 1824, substituting therefor the *Plan of Toluca*, by which a consolidated central government was established in Mexico. But 1836 was a fateful year for Santa Anna. Against his increasing despotism, Puebla, Jalisco, Oajaca, and Zacatecas had risen in arms, and had been successively crushed by his brutal soldiery. At last he came to subdue the revolted colonists of Texas,—men whose ancestors had braved royal tyranny and humbled royal pride since the days of Runnymede. At San Jacinto he paid the penalty of his perfidy to the republicans of Mexico, while he but partially expiated the cruel butcheries of Goliad and Bexar. The story of the rise, progress, and success of that memorable struggle will conclude the history of Texas as a part of the Mexican federation.

His despotic  
conduct

## QUESTIONS.

AFTER the Emperor Iturbide was deposed in Mexico, what kind of government was established? What body was assembled to make laws, and when did it meet? Explain the use of the words *constituent* and *constitutive* as applied to this body and its acts. When did the Mexican Congress adopt a republican form of government, and what was it like? What was done in regard to the provinces of Coahuila, Texas, and New Leon? What provision was made as to their future government? When did New



Leon become a separate state, and what was then done in regard to Coahuila and Texas? What declaration was made in regard to the independence of the State of Coahuila and Texas? When was the Federal Constitution of Mexico finally adopted, and what provisions did it contain as to Coahuila and Texas? When did Coahuila and Texas adopt a state constitution, and what provisions did it contain on the same subject? When was the general colonization law of the imperial government of Mexico adopted, and when and how was it suspended? When did the Mexican Congress adopt the national colonization law? On what date was the state colonization law of Coahuila and Texas adopted? What Texas colonies were settled under these last two laws? What can you say of the provisions of those laws? Who was the last Spanish governor of Texas? Who succeeded him during the Mexican revolution? How was Texas governed during Iturbide's reign? Who were the republican governors of Texas, and in what years did they govern? When did Coahuila and Texas begin to have one governor for the whole state? Where was the state capital? Give the names of the governors of Coahuila and Texas from 1824 to 1835. When was Texas made a political department, and what was the head of the department called? What were his powers and duties? Who was the first political chief of Texas, and what was his character? When was Texas divided into two political districts or departments, and where was the dividing line? What were the two districts called? When was a third district or department created, and what was it called? What other political divisions of the country and government were there? How were they governed? Who was originally at the head of the municipal government of the colonies in Texas? Give the names and location of the several *municipalities* of Texas prior to 1835. When was Texas divided into judicial districts, and into how many districts? Who were the first judges under that system, and how did it operate? What was the representation of Texas in the state congress or legislature, as compared with Coahuila? When and by whom was Texas visited for the purpose of reporting on its condition and resources? What did he report the population of Texas to be in 1834? How was this population distributed among the several municipalities? What was the condition of the Bexar district as compared with its population in 1806? What were the commerce and resources of Texas by districts? What were the total exports and imports of Texas for the year 1834? What was the condition of the schools? What can you say of the general condition of the country at that time? What was the course of events in Mexico at this period? Who was the first president of the Mexican Republic, and when did he take his seat? What political parties existed in Mexico at this time, and what did they each favor? Who succeeded President Victoria, and whom did he defeat? What followed this election? When was this? What did Guerréro do, and what occurred in consequence? What part did Santa Anna play in these revolutions? What did Spain do in 1829, and what was the result? Who became famous in consequence of this affair? When

PERIOD II.  
MEXICAN RULE

1821

TO

1836

did Bustamente come into power, and what did he do in regard to the colonists in Texas and Mexico? Give the terms of the Decree of April 6, 1830. Against whom in particular was this law directed? What unjust provision did the law contain as to colonial contracts? What provision did it contain about Mexican convicts? What can you say of the Decree of April 6, 1830, in its influence and effects upon the American colonies in Texas? What was the real secret of the hostility of the Mexican government towards the Texan colonists? What further tyrannical acts did Bustamente commit towards Texas and the country at large? What followed these oppressions, and who took part in the movement? When was this? What came of this revolution in Mexico, and how did Santa Anna act? What did Bustamente do, and who succeeded him? When was Santa Anna elected president of Mexico, and who was elected vice-president at the same time? As soon as he got in office, what did Santa Anna do? When and by what celebrated *Plan* did he abolish the constitution of 1824? What did he substitute for it? What Mexican states rose in rebellion against Santa Anna's tyranny? What success did they meet with, and what state alone held out against him? What can you say of the result to Santa Anna, and the causes of his final failure to subdue the Texans?

### Topical Analysis.

1. The formation of a republican government in Mexico modelled after that of the United States. Consider the reasons why it did not succeed, and why revolutions ensued among the people, as brought about by the fact that the Mexican people and their leaders were not educated to the support of free republican government. Contrast the history of the Mexican Republic with that of the American Republic during the early years of both.

2. Study the provisions in the various constitutional acts of Mexico and of the State of Coahuila and Texas, as to the right of Texas to be formed into a separate, independent state when her population and position should justify it. This was the constitutional right upon which Texas based her subsequent demand to be allowed to establish her own local self-government.

3. The growing hostility of the Mexican authorities towards Americans, and especially towards the colonists in Texas, as shown by the laws and decrees of Bustamente. This was due to the jealousy of the Mexicans towards the United States, whom they suspected of wanting to take Texas from Mexico; and also to the necessary conflict between American ideas of liberty and republican institutions and those of the Mexican people and politicians.

4. The first direct attacks upon the rights and liberties of the Texans in the Decree of April 6, 1830, the law making Texas a penal colony, establishment of garrisons in Texas, and the blockading of Texas ports.

5. The revolution in Mexico led by Santa Anna, his temporary defeat, his final election to the presidency, his overthrow of the Federal Constitution of 1824, and the establishment of a consolidated despotic government. This rendered it certain that no relief would be granted the Texans against Mexican tyranny.

6. The peaceful and progressive growth of Texas in population, trade, resources, and foreign commerce. The methods of government in early Texas by political chiefs, municipalities, etc. The country was rapidly developing into a strong and prosperous community, but the mistaken and oppressive conduct of Mexico towards it checked its growth and brought on a revolution.

PERIOD II.  
MEXICAN RULE  
1821  
TO  
1836

### Geography.

Trace the boundaries and location of the political departments and municipalities of Texas as they existed from 1825 to 1835. Compare those early divisions with the geography of modern Texas.

### Parallel Readings.

Scarff's "Comprehensive History of Texas," Vol. I.; Brown's "History of Texas," Vol. I.; Brantz Mayer's "Mexico: Aztec, Spanish, and Republican;" H. H. Bancroft's "North Mexican States and Texas;" Winsor's "Narrative and Critical History of America."



### CONTEMPORANEOUS EVENTS.—1821—1832.

#### Parallel to Period II.

#### AMERICA.

- 1821.—President Monroe inaugurated (second term), March 4.
- 1822.—Dom Pedro declared perpetual protector of Brazil, and later emperor. United States boundary with Canada established. Iturbide declared emperor of Mexico.
- 1823.—Iturbide abdicates as emperor. Mexican National Assembly establishes *Junta*, and Guadalupe Victoria elected President. Joseph Smith originates *Mormonism*. The "Monroe doctrine" proclaimed by President Monroe.
- 1824.—Lafayette visits United States. United States and Great Britain discuss the slave trade.

PERIOD II.  
MEXICAN RULE1821  
TO  
1836

- 1825.—John Quincy Adams (National Republican) inaugurated President, March 4. *National Republican* and *Democratic Republican* parties formed in United States. These were afterwards known respectively as the *Whig* and *Democratic* parties.
- 1826.—Dom Pedro, of Brazil, becomes King of Portugal. John Adams and Thomas Jefferson die same day, July 4. The Panama Conference. Georgia expels the Cherokees.
- 1827.—Mexico declines to sell Texas to the United States. Oregon boundary discussed with Great Britain.
- 1828.—High protective tariff law passed by Congress. Southern States protest, and South Carolina legislature adopts Mr. Calhoun's State sovereignty views, known as the *Nullification* doctrine. Boundary between Spain and United States confirmed.
- 1829.—Spain sends fleet against Mexico. Andrew Jackson (Democrat) inaugurated President, March 4. Henry Clay becomes the leader of his party. William Lloyd Garrison founds *Abolition* party in United States. Jackson sends in his message against United States Bank.
- 1830.—Great debate between Webster and Hayne in United States Senate. Doctrine of "nullification" proclaimed by Hayne. The idea that "to the victor belong the spoils" first announced in American politics. Fifth census shows population of 12,866,020. Death of Simon Bolivar, the Liberator of South America.
- 1831.—Dom Pedro II. ascends throne of Brazil. Disruption of President Jackson's Cabinet. First national nominating political convention held in United States. Treaty between United States and Mexico.
- 1832.—President Jackson vetoes recharter of United States Bank. New tariff bill. South Carolina passes the *Nullification ordinance*. United States possesses Oregon by settlement. New England Anti-Slavery Society formed. Anti-Mason Society in New York and Pennsylvania. Salt Lake Basin explored by Bonneville. *Black Hawk War*.

## GREAT BRITAIN.

- 1821.—Death of Queen Caroline, wife of George IV.
- 1822.—Peel, Canning, and Brougham become prominent as statesmen. Parliamentary Reform and Catholic Emancipation leading issues in English politics. Great emigration to Canada and Australia.
- 1823.—British Anti-Slavery Society formed.
- 1824.—Death of Lord Byron. *Westminster Review* established. Daniel O'Connell organizes the "Catholic Association."
- 1825.—Commercial panic in England. Continued agitation of the reform measures and Catholic Emancipation.

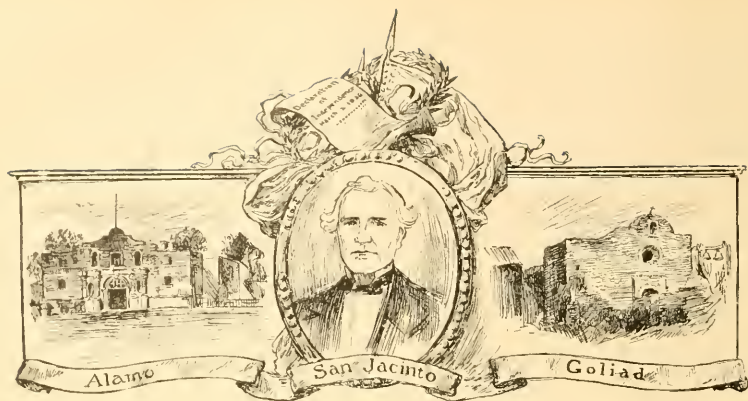
- 1827.—Frederick, Duke of York, died January 5. George Canning's administration.
- 1828.—Ministry of the Duke of Wellington. New Corn Law.
- 1829.—Act passed by Parliament removing disabilities of Roman Catholics and Protestant Dissenters. This act, however, excluded Jews from office.
- 1830.—Death of George IV. and accession of William IV. to the throne, June 26.
- 1831.—*Reform Bill*, introduced by Lord John Russell, produces great agitation. Asiatic cholera breaks out in England.
- 1832.—*Reform Bill* passed by Parliament, intended to abolish "rotten boroughs" and extend right of voting to the middle and laboring classes.

PERIOD II.  
MEXICAN RULE  
—  
1821  
TO  
1836  
—

## OTHER COUNTRIES.

- 1822.—*Congress of Verona*, held to determine what Europe should do with the troubles in Spain, and to promote the *Holy Alliance*. Greece declares her independence.
- 1823.—French invade Spain. Leo XII., Pope of Rome.
- 1824.—Charles X. succeeds Louis XVIII. as King of France. He attempts to re establish despotic government.
- 1825.—Nicholas I., Emperor of Russia. First voyage by steam from England to India.
- 1826.—Ottoman Empire at war with Russia.
- 1827.—Charles X. begins to render the government of France an absolute despotism. *Battle of Navarino*, in which England, France, and Russia defeated the Turkish-Egyptian fleet, and secured the independence of Greece.
- 1828.—Leo XII. dies, and Pius VIII. succeeds as Pope.
- 1829.—Peace or Treaty of Adrianople, between Russia and Turkey, by which mutual rights and relations of the two countries were established, and independence of Greece was recognized.
- 1830.—*Revolution in France*. Charles X. attempts to destroy liberty of the press and abolish the chamber of deputies. The people rebel, Charles is forced to resign, and Louis Philippe, the "Citizen King," is chosen his successor. Pope Pius VIII. dies.
- 1831.—Gregory XVI. becomes Pope. Mazzini begins his attempt to organize "Young Italy."
- 1832.—Uprising of "Young Italy" under leadership of Mazzini, but it fails. Death of Goethe and Sir Walter Scott.





## Period III.

THE REVOLUTION.—1832-1836.



### CHAPTER X.

#### Events leading to the Texas Revolution.

Causes of the  
Texas revolution

**T**HE causes which produced the revolution of Texas from Mexico were many and fundamental. Outside the district of Bexar, the inhabitants of this province were mainly from the United States of America, who had inherited the traditions, temper, and political principles of a people naturally tenacious of their own laws and institutions, and educated by centuries of experience to the highest standards of personal freedom and civil liberty. They were engaged in the peaceful pursuits of agriculture, stock-raising, and general industry, animated by the orderly instincts of their race, and thoroughly loyal to the great doctrine of local self-government. Above all things, they had the Anglo-American hatred of a government in which the civil was subordinated to the military power, or in which religious faith was permitted to influence political administration. In all these respects the Texans were radically different from the mixed population beyond the Rio Grande, to whom they were made subject by the unequal alliance

Character of  
American col-  
onists

with Coahuila. It must also be confessed that among the colonists there were some lawless and desperate characters, who were ready to embrace every opportunity, however slight, for hostility against the Spanish-Mexican authorities. And there were others—good and patriotic men—who were impatient of the connection with Mexico, who heartily despised the Mexican system of government, and who, in their zeal for the independence of Texas, were unmindful of the real duties and obligations of the colonists to the constitution under which they had assumed citizenship in the new republic.

The constitution of 1824 itself, although modelled after that of the United States, was far from realizing the well-recognized safeguards of justice and equality to which Anglo-Americans are devoted. It entirely omitted those two most sacred institutions of Anglican law and liberty,—trial by jury and the writ of *habeas corpus*. It provided for the perpetual union of church and state, by requiring every loyal citizen to be a Roman Catholic in religion. It contained provisions for the organization and use of the army, which rendered the military power the leading and supreme department of the government. And it preserved and perpetuated the most odious feature of the Spanish colonial system,—the *fueros*, or special charters, by which the military, ecclesiastical, and other classes of citizens were exempted from the operation of the general laws, and were permitted to have their rights determined by special laws of their own making, in tribunals selected from their own members. Even had Texas been granted her rights under that constitution, it is impossible that her citizens could long have submitted to its provisions in matters like those above mentioned.

At first, however, the colonists did not feel these evils. They were too far away and too much absorbed in their own immediate affairs. They had new fortunes to build in the wilderness ; fields to clear and cultivate ; Indian foes to fight ; families to bring out from the States and to settle and support in the log-cabin homes along the Trinity, Brazos, Colorado, and Gaudalupe. Then, too, for several years they practically had their own government. Under the extensive and liberal terms of his first contract, Austin organized and controlled all the details of his

PERIOD III.  
THE  
REVOLUTION  
—  
1832  
TO  
1836  
—

The constitution of 1824 ;  
its defects

Colonists at  
first contented  
and peaceful

PERIOD III.  
THE  
REVOLUTION

1832  
TO  
1836

colonial administration, appointing officers, framing laws, and dispensing justice among his people ; and the other *empresarios* had somewhat similar authority in their territory. The Mexican government had all it could do to manage its own affairs, amid the contending factions of revolutionary politics, and for a time the Texans were left to themselves.

The first example of Mexican injustice was exhibited in the arbitrary acts of Saucedo and Victor Blanco towards Hayden Edwards, which led to the *Fredonian War*, in 1827. The colonists did not forget this, but Edwards's own conduct was so rash and ill-advised that the lesson of danger was not fully realized. As the colonists grew in numbers and strength, their essential antagonism to the principles and practices of Mexican politics attracted the attention of the central government, and provoked the hostility of the military and political chiefs who were directing its affairs. When, in 1827, the state constitution of Coahuila and Texas was adopted, and the state laws took the place of the former local self-government of the Texan colonists, which was early in the year 1828, the occasions for conflicts arose and multiplied.

It was Bustamente's tyrannical Decree of April 6, 1830, before noted, that rapidly brought on open rupture with the Mexican authorities. To enforce the prohibition against Americans, contained in that law, he sent troops to Texas and opened custom-houses at Bexar, Nacogdoches, Anahuac, Copano, and the mouth of the Brazos, where duties were collected to support the army of occupation, and other levies were made upon the colonists for the same purpose. This movement on the part of Mexico was due not only to jealousy of the growing power and freedom of the Texan colonists, but to a real fear that the province would be absorbed or seized by the United States. The expeditions of Magee and Long were not forgotten, and, even since the boundary had been settled by the treaty of 1819, efforts had been made by the United States to extend their limits farther west and south. In 1825 the American minister was instructed to offer a new boundary. In 1827 he was authorized to offer \$1,000,000 for the territory to the Rio Grande, or half that sum to the Colorado. In 1829 the United States again offered

Injustice to  
Hayden  
Edwards's  
colony

The state  
constitution of  
Coahuila and  
Texas

Bustamente's  
odious Decree,  
April 6, 1830

Jealousy of  
Mexico to-  
wards the  
United States;  
its causes



\$4,000,000 for the country bounded by a line midway between the Nueces and Rio Grande, or a proportional sum for the Lavaca, the Colorado, or the Brazos as a boundary. These propositions naturally excited the fears of the Mexican government, especially when coupled with the fact that leading statesmen in the United States had always contended that Texas properly belonged to the Union as a part of Louisiana.

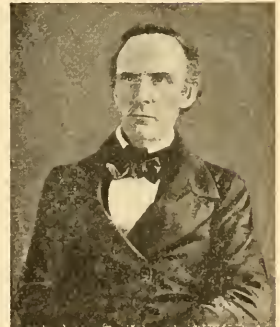
As steps towards the military occupation of Texas, in 1831 troops were placed at San Antonio and Goliad (La Bahia); Colonel Piedras was stationed at Nacogdoches with three hundred and fifty men; Colonel John D. Bradburn at Anahuac with one hundred and fifty; and Colonel Domingo Ugartachéa established the fort of Velasco at the mouth of the Brazos, with one hundred and thirty men. Ellis P. Bean, with a small force, occupied Fort Teran on the Neches. General Mier y Teran, a most arbitrary tyrant, was in command of the whole department, with headquarters at Monclova. Of these, Bradburn, a traitorous American, was the most troublesome. He began by declaring martial law, violating the persons and property of citizens, and finally he closed all the Texas ports except Anahuac. This would ruin Austin's, Dewitt's, and Robertson's colonies, as it left them without the means of exporting or importing anything in their territory. During the previous year, in order to settle the land titles of colonists who had continued to come to East Texas in spite of Bustamente's decree, the government of Coahuila and Texas had sent its officials, Madéro and Carbajal (kär-vä-hal'), to survey and allot the lands; and Madéro established the municipality of *Liberty*, with its proper civil government. Bradburn dissolved that municipality by military order, instigated, no doubt, by the same influences that controlled Saucedo and Blanco against Hayden Edwards in 1827.

On December 16, 1831, a meeting of the colonists was held at Brazoria, and Branch T. Archer and George B. McKinstry were sent to Anahuac to induce Bradburn to reopen the ports. They convinced him of their determination to have the desired

PERIOD III.  
THE  
REVOLUTION  
—  
1832  
TO  
1836  
—

Military occupa-  
tion of  
Texas

Bradburn's  
illegal acts



BRANCH T. ARCHER.

PERIOD III.  
THE  
REVOLUTION

1832

TO

1836

Imprisons  
distinguished  
Texans

Uprising of  
the people

relief, and he finally acceded. But in the spring of 1832, on account of their resistance to his arbitrary acts, he arrested and imprisoned at Anahuac, William B. Travis, Patrick C. Jack, Sam T. Allen, Monroe Edwards, and other citizens, and threatened to send them to Mexico for military trial. William H. Jack sought the release of his brother and companions, was refused, and at once raised a force to rescue the prisoners. Francis W. Johnson commanded this relief party, aided by Warren D. C. Hall and Thomas H. Bradley. They were soon joined by another force under Captains John Austin, H. S. Brown, George B. McKinstry, and William I. Russell. Marching to Anahuac, they demanded the release of the captive citizens; Bradburn promised to comply, violated his agreement, and a violent conflict ensued. While this was in progress, Piedras came from Nacogdoches to aid Bradburn, but, on arriving at Anahuac and learning the facts, he released the prisoners and sent Bradburn to Mexico under arrest.

Battle and  
capture of Ve-  
lasco, June 26,  
1832

In the meanwhile the news spread, and Brown, McKinstry, John Austin, Charles B. Stewart, and others went to Brazoria, where they raised volunteers to go to Anahuac and deliver the men from custody. This force prepared to sail from Velasco, when they were forbidden to do so by Ugartachéa, who was in command there. They determined to capture the Mexican fort at that point, and on June 26, 1832, the first preliminary battle of the Revolution was fought at Velasco. It resulted in a victory for the colonists, there being a loss on their side of seven killed and twenty-seven wounded, while the Mexicans lost fifty-two dead and seventy wounded. Ugartachéa and his men were permitted to return to Mexico.

Texans loyal  
to Constitu-  
tion of 1824

And yet these were not the acts of revolutionists. The news of Santa Anna's revolt against the tyranny of Bustamente, and his defence of the Constitution of 1824, had reached Texas, and during the trouble at Anahuac, on June 13, 1832, the assembled force of Texans held a meeting and adopted resolutions drawn by Robert M. Williamson, in which they declared their devotion to the Federal Constitution of 1824, their opposition to Bustamente's despotic violation of its provisions, and their allegiance to Santa Anna as its defender and champion, which he then

claimed to be. In July, 1832, General Mexia (mā-hē'-ä) visited Velasco, bringing with him Stephen F. Austin, who was returning from the legislature at Saltillo. Mexia was the trusted lieutenant of Santa Anna, and the cause of the recent events was explained to him. At the same time the citizens and *ayuntamientos* of Brazoria and San Felipe de Austin adopted resolutions expressive of their loyalty to the constitutional government of Mexico, and Mexia returned apparently well satisfied with the Texans.

The last of July, 1832, a meeting was held at Nacogdoches for the purpose of compelling Colonel Piedras to declare in favor of Santa Anna and the constitution. Among those who took part in the movement were Phil. A. Sublett, Isaac W. Burton, Henry W. Augustin, John W. Bullock, Asa M. Edwards, Hayden H. Edwards, Almazon Huston, Alexander Horton, Asa Jarman, Isaac D. Thomas, William Y. Lacy, Thomas S. McFarland, and James Bowie. Piedras refused their demands, and on August 1, with three hundred men, they attacked his garrison in Nacogdoches and drove him out. He retreated towards San Antonio, was intercepted by Bowie and forced to surrender, when he and three hundred prisoners were sent out of the country. Thus it seemed the Texans were victorious everywhere. But the course of events was not encouraging.

Since the establishment of the State of Coahuila and Texas, the Mexican part of the state, by its majority in the legislature, had controlled all legislation, and the policy adopted was not friendly to the American colonies in Texas. In 1830, Letona was elected governor of the state, while Juan Martin Veramendi was made vice-governor. The latter was a Texan, being a citizen of San Antonio, and the father-in-law of James Bowie. This seemed favorable to Texas. Then, Austin's influence in the legislature was most prudent and concilia-

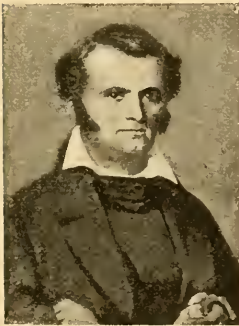
PERIOD III.  
THE  
REVOLUTION  
—  
1832  
TO  
1836  
—



ROBERT M. WILLIAMSON.  
("Three-legged Willie.")

Piedras driven  
out

The state  
legislature



JAMES BOWIE.

PERIOD III.  
THE  
REVOLUTION

1832  
TO  
1836

Texas seeks  
separation

SIGNATURE OF JUAN MARTIN VERAMENDI.

But on April 28, 1832, the legislature at Saltillo repealed the state colonization law of 1825, and enacted one that contained Bustamente's Decree of 1830, limiting all colonial contracts to Mexicans. It, however, contained a few liberal provisions as to existing contracts, secured by Austin's influence. It was evident to all observing men, from the recent troubles in Texas, that a separation must be had from the Mexican government beyond the Rio Grande, and if the Constitution of 1824 was adhered to, this could be easily and peaceably effected. By Austin's influence in 1823, it will be remembered that a proviso had been inserted in the constitutive act of January 4,

1824, passed by the Mexican Congress, by which Texas might establish a separate state government when her citizens saw fit to do so, and should notify Congress of that fact. This provision was repeated in the Constitution of 1824, in the constitutive act of the state legislature of Coahuila and Texas, of August,

1824, and in the state constitution of 1827. To this, then, the colonists turned for relief from the difficulties that threatened them.

First popular  
convention,  
October 1, 1832

On September 14, 1832, the *alcaldes* of the municipality of Austin issued a call for the election of delegates by all the people of Texas, to meet at San Felipe de Austin on October 1, 1832. This, the first popular convention held in Texas, met and elected Stephen F. Austin president over William H. Wharton. There were fifty-six delegates, representing sixteen districts and covering the then inhabited portion of the province, except San Antonio. Committees were appointed to prepare memorials to the national and state governments on the following subjects: to secure repeal of the Decree of April 6, 1830, prohibiting colonists from the United States, and expressing loyalty to the constitution; to secure reduction of customs duties on necessary articles of merchandise; to secure a proper settlement of land titles in

Memorial to  
Mexican  
government

Eastern Texas ; to provide for the protection of the frontier against Indians ; to secure a donation of land for establishing and supporting primary public schools ; to secure the use of the English language except in official communications to the Mexican government ; to provide for the granting of lands to Indians from the United States ; for the organization of the militia ; and to petition for a separate state government for Texas. On the last-named proposition the vote stood thirty-six yeas, twelve nays. William H. Wharton and Don Rafael Manchola were appointed delegates to convey the several important memorials to Saltillo, but were unable to go in person.

The effects of this meeting were not favorable on the Mexican authorities. They were not accustomed to such proceedings, and to their minds such a popular demonstration was treasonable and seditious. The political chief of Bexar resented it, and the home government of Mexico regarded it as another evidence of the rebellious character of the Texans, so little did it understand the true principles of republican institutions. Santa Anna himself, to whom the Texans had rallied so loyally, viewed matters differently at that time, and recommended moderation and justice to the colonists. In a letter written by Stephen F. Austin to Ramon Musquiz, political chief of Bexar, on November 15, 1832, the former very plainly rebukes this display of hostility on the part of the Mexican authorities, and he tells Musquiz significantly : "I give it as my deliberate judgment that Texas is lost if she takes no measure of her own for her own welfare." The spirit of antagonism with which their action was viewed in Mexico, however, was not known to the colonists at large, and they for a time dwelt in peace and hope.

The memorials of the first convention were unheeded by the state and central governments, but another convention was called to meet at San Felipe de Austin on April 1, 1833, to frame a state constitution. It met, and William H. Wharton was elected president, there being the same number of delegates and very much the same delegates, among whom were many of the men

PERIOD III.  
THE  
REVOLUTION  
—  
1832  
TO  
1836  
—

Provokes the  
resentment of  
Mexican  
authorities

Second con-  
vention, April  
1, 1833

SIGNATURE OF SAM HOUSTON.

PERIOD III.  
THE  
REVOLUTION  
1832  
TO  
1836

who figured prominently in the subsequent history of the revolution. A new and notable character in the assembly was Sam Houston, a delegate from Nacogdoches, who was made chairman of the committee to frame a state constitution, while David G. Burnet was at the head of the committee to frame a memorial to the Mexican government. The convention was in session two weeks, adopted a constitution for the proposed state of Texas, a memorial setting forth their motives and purposes, and appointed Stephen F. Austin, Dr. James B. Miller, and Don Erasmo Seguin commissioners to lay both instruments before the Mexican government at the capital.

Of the commissioners appointed, Austin alone went to the City of Mexico, leaving Texas soon after the convention. In the capital he found matters in almost as much confusion as on his former visit. Santa Anna had been elected president, and was planning for the overthrow of the constitution; revolution was rife, cholera was raging in the city, and he was confronted on all sides with danger and delay. He finally, on November 25, 1833, secured the repeal of the odious portion of the colonization decree of 1830; but, despairing of success in securing further concessions, he started home and wrote a letter to the municipality of Bexar, recommending that the Texans form a separate state government in anticipation of the refusal of their memorial by the central authorities. This letter was forwarded to the capital, and, being considered treasonable, Austin was arrested at Saltillo and carried back to Mexico as a prisoner. He was imprisoned on February 13, 1834, and kept in close confinement for three months. He was released from strict confinement in May, but kept a prisoner until October, when Santa Anna heard his memorials from Texas and refused them all, except the repeal of the colonization decree of Bustamente. He was detained at the capital, however, and Santa Anna deceived him with a pretence of finally agreeing to the separation of Texas from Coahuila.

The legislature of Coahuila and Texas which met in January, 1833, declared its allegiance to the federal constitution, but its acts were themselves violative of all principles of free government. Among other things a law was passed denying the right of peti-

Memorial  
and commis-  
sioners sent to  
Mexico

Stephen F.  
Austin alone  
goes

Is arrested  
and im-  
prisoned

Santa Anna  
refuses the  
memorial

Unconstitu-  
tional and cor-  
rupt acts of the  
state legisla-  
ture

tion to citizens. In March, 1833, the legislature changed the capital from Saltillo to Monclova, which provoked a revolution in Coahuila. During the same session the most reckless and corrupt laws were passed, disposing of the public lands,—eleven hundred leagues being granted to one person and four hundred leagues to another. These lands were all in Texas, and it seemed to be the purpose to plunder the Texans before they succeeded in separating themselves from Coahuila. When the next legislature met in January, 1834, at Monclova, the people of Saltillo had revolted against the change of capital, and organized another legislature at that point, appointing José Maria Goribar' governor of the state. The Monclova party appointed as their governor Juan José Elguézabal', and civil war was threatened between the two factions. The matter was finally referred to Santa Anna, who decided in favor of Monclova as the capital and that a new election must be held, which resulted in the election of Augustin Viesca, the last governor of the state. But these disputes had practically destroyed the

constitution and government of the state, and the Texans considered themselves released from the union with Coahuila by the revolutionary conduct of the latter.

During the year 1834, by the *Plan of Cuernavaca*, Santa Anna established his despotic power; several of the states revolted against him, and he subdued them by force, Zacatecas being the last to surrender. General Martin Perfecto de Cos was placed in command of the eastern internal provinces, revolution again broke out in Coahuila, the army was marched thither, the legislature was

dispersed by troops, and Governor Viesca fled to Texas. On April 21, 1835, the government of Coahuila and Texas ceased

PERIOD III.  
THE  
REVOLUTION  
—  
1832  
TO  
1836  
—



GAIL BORDEN.



JOHN P. BORDEN.

End of the  
government of  
Coahuila and  
Texas

PERIOD III.  
THE  
REVOLUTION

1832

TO

1836

Able men  
among early  
Texan patriots

Branch T.  
Archer

Other dis-  
tinguished  
leaders

Travis, Bowie,  
and Milam

Sam Houston

forever. Coahuila was conquered by Santa Anna and Cos, and there remained in all Mexico no territory free from the tyranny of the sword except Texas, to whose subjugation the attention of the government was now to be directed.

During the exciting and rapid developments of the past three years, many able and remarkable men had appeared upon the arena of public action in Texas. Perhaps in no country and at no time was there ever displayed such a collection of talented, versatile, and vigorous characters as figured in the rise and progress of the Texas Revolution. All of those who took part in the stirring transactions of the times were notable men, but some of them should be especially mentioned. Branch T. Archer should probably receive the name of the "Father of the Revolution," as to his efforts, more than to any one man, was due the first impulse that awakened the colonists to the danger of their situation and the necessity for their firm and united action. He was a native of Virginia, quick, fiery, determined, and brave, and his tireless zeal inspired the co-operation of all who fell within its influence. Then there were the Whartons, William H. and John A., both men of commanding abilities, ready resources, and large ambitions; the Jacks, Patrick C. and William H.; the Bordens, Gail, Gail, Jr., Thomas H., P. P., and John P.; David G. Burnet, Thomas J. Chambers, S. Rhoades Fisher, Robert M. Williamson, Adolphus Sterne, Henry Smith, Sterling C. Robertson, Jesse White, James B. Miller, Robert R. Peebles, Thomas and William Menefee, Claiborne West, W. D. C. Hall, Abner Kuykendall, Samuel Highsmith, Oliver Jones, Bartlett Sims, Francis W. Johnson, Henry S. Brown, George B. McKinstry, James B. Patrick, Collin McKinney, Rezin P. Bowie, John Caldwell, and an innumerable array of their patriotic followers. There was that triumvirate of heroes—William B. Travis, Ben R. Milam, and James Bowie—whose matchless courage has made old Bexar immortal. Others there were whose services became conspicuous as the drama developed; and there was one, but lately come, whose name is identified with all that followed. Sam Houston was a native of Virginia, born in 1793,—the same year with Stephen F. Austin,—reared in Alabama and Tennessee, spending part of his boy-



hood among the Cherokee Indians ; he was afterwards distinguished as a brave soldier under General Jackson. He became successively adjutant-general, congressman, and governor of Tennessee, retired to voluntary exile among the Cherokees at Fort Gibson, in 1829, where he lived and loved an Indian wife, until he came to Texas in December, 1832, settling first at Nacogdoches, where he at once became a leader by the commanding qualities of his natural ability and the valuable attainments of his varied experience.

On August 31, 1835, after two years and a half of captivity in Mexico, Stephen F. Austin returned to Texas. During his absence many and important events had transpired, new and ambitious men had come to the front, and some there were who were not

always mindful of his sufferings, sacrifices, and labors for Texas. He returned to find the Revolution rapidly approaching maturity, and to realize that the state he had founded by wisdom and courage was soon to take her place among the independent nations of the earth, although many who now so valiantly espoused her cause were strangers to her birth in the wilderness.



SAM HOUSTON (aged thirty-five).  
In Indian costume, with sword  
of San Jacinto.

PERIOD III.  
THE  
REVOLUTION  
—  
1832  
TO  
1836  
—

Austin's re-  
turn to Texas

## QUESTIONS.

WHAT can you say of the causes that produced the Texas Revolution? What was the general character of the population of Texas in 1832? What of their political and social habits and traditions? How about the population of Mexico in these respects? Describe the several classes of people in Texas whose inclinations were in the direction of revolution from Mexico. What fundamental defects existed in the Mexican Constitution of 1824, as compared with that of the United States? Why did not the Texans become sooner dissatisfied with Mexican rule?

PERIOD III.  
THE  
REVOLUTION.

1832  
TO  
1836

What were the powers and duties of Austin and the early *empresarios*? What was the first example of Mexican injustice towards the Texas colonists, and what did it produce? What followed upon the growth and strength of the American colonists in Texas? When and how did the Mexican system of laws and institutions first begin to bear upon the Texans? What brought on the open rupture with the Mexican authorities? What steps did Bustamente adopt to enforce his decree? What motive besides hostility to Texans prompted Mexico's tyrannical conduct? Describe how this was brought about. Give an account of the acts of the United States in reference to Texas. What steps were taken by Mexico towards the military occupation of Texas? What persons figured most prominently in these movements? Describe the acts of Bradburn, and their effect on the colonies. What occurred in Eastern Texas at this time, in the municipality of *Liberty*? When and where did the colonists hold their first meeting to protest against Bradburn's conduct? What did it do, and with what result? What occurred in the spring of 1832? Describe what was done by the colonists to relieve the prisoners. What followed at Anahuac? Describe what movement this affair caused among the other colonists, giving the names of the persons concerned. When and where was the first conflict of the Texas Revolution had, and with what result? Explain exactly the feelings and attitude of the Texans at this time towards the Mexican government. When and where was a meeting held by the colonists to declare their position, what resolutions were adopted, and who drew them up? What distinguished Mexican officer visited Texas at this time, and who came with him? What action was taken by the Texans while he was in Texas? Describe what occurred at Nacogdoches in July, 1832. Who took part in this movement? What followed? What had been the policy and conduct of the state legislature of Coahuila and Texas towards the colonists in Texas since the establishment of the state government? What occurred in 1830 that seemed favorable to Texas? What influence did Austin exert in the legislature? Describe the important acts of the legislature in 1832. What became evident to all thinking men at this time? What provisions existed for accomplishing this peaceably? When, where, and how was the *first popular convention* of the Texas colonists called to meet, and for what purpose? Describe this convention, who presided over it, how many delegates were present, and what did they do? Give the substance of the *Memorial* to the Mexican government adopted at this meeting. Who were appointed to carry the *Memorial* to Mexico, and with what result? What effect did this meeting have on the Mexican authorities, and why? What was Santa Anna's advice at this time? What were Austin's views on the subject, and when and how did he express them? How was this first *Memorial* treated by the government? When and where was the *second convention* of colonists called to meet, and for what purpose? Who was elected president of it, and how was it composed? What new and notable man appeared in this convention,

and from what municipality did he come? At the head of what committee was he placed? What man, afterwards distinguished, was chairman of the committee to frame a *Memorial*? How long did the convention sit, and what did it do? Who were appointed commissioners to Mexico? Of these, which one actually went to Mexico? Describe the condition of affairs in the Mexican capital when he arrived there. What did he succeed in securing, and what did he then do? What letter did he write, what became of it, and what happened in consequence? Describe Austin's imprisonment in Mexico. What did Santa Anna do with the Texas Memorials? What course did he pursue towards Austin? What did the legislature of Coahuila and Texas do in 1833? What can you say of its acts? What occurred in reference to the state capital? What character of legislation was passed in regard to the public lands, and for what purpose? When did the next legislature meet? Describe what occurred as the result of the dispute between Saltillo and Monclova. What became of this controversy? Who was the last governor of Coahuila and Texas? What was the result of the disputes that had arisen in regard to the capital, and how did the Texans feel in reference to the state government? When and how did Santa Anna establish his despotic power? What occurred among the Mexican states? What occurred in Coahuila? Who was placed in command of the eastern internal provinces? When and how did the government of Coahuila and Texas come to an end? What became of Governor Viesca? What was the situation then in Mexico, and what position did Texas occupy? What can you say of the early public men of Texas who came to the front during these events? Who was the "Father of the Revolution"? What can you tell about him? Name some of the other distinguished and influential men of those days. Who was Sam Houston? When did he come to Texas? Give a sketch of his life prior to this. When did Stephen F. Austin return from his captivity in Mexico? What had occurred in his absence? What condition of affairs did he find in Texas on his return?

PERIOD III.  
THE  
REVOLUTION  
—  
1832  
TO  
1836  
—

### Topical Analysis.

1. Consider the necessary and fundamental causes of the Texas Revolution, as follows :

(a) The essential difference between the American colonists in Texas and the Mexican population beyond the Rio Grande, as found in their respective social and political instincts, traditions, and institutions. The former were the product of Anglo-American civilization as worked out through centuries of liberty regulated by law ; the latter was the result of the Spanish colonial system, with its tyrannical and arbitrary decrees, its mixture of church, state, and army, and its violent disposition to resort to lawless revolutions for remedies against existing evils.

(b) The radical defects of the Mexican Constitution of 1824, which, though republican in form and name, was without the customary safe-

PERIOD III.  
THE  
REVOLUTION

1832  
TO  
1836

guards of political and personal liberty as known to the English and American constitutions. The Constitution of 1824 was framed by the central government, and the several states of the Mexican federation derived their existence and powers from the federal authority; while that of the United States was framed by the States or the people, and the federal government derives all its powers from the States, or from the body of the people composing them in severalty.

(c) The rapid growth and strength of the American colonies in Texas, with their fundamental hostility to the Mexican system, excited the fear and jealousy of Mexico, and provoked the government to acts of tyranny which the colonists could not endure.

(d) The several invasions from the United States, beginning with Magee's expedition; the fact that the Texas colonies were composed of former citizens of the American Union; and the repeated attempts of the United States to buy all or a part of Texas,—all created a violent jealousy on the part of Mexico, and a real fear that Texas would be seized by the United States. This led to unfriendly acts towards the colonists.

2. The open and actual causes of the Revolution, as shown:

(a) By the Decree of April 6, 1830, prohibiting further immigration from the United States, and practically violating and annulling all the colonial contracts in Texas.

(b) By making Texas a penal colony for Mexican convicts, requiring the colonists to be disarmed, closing the ports on the Gulf, so as to destroy the trade of the colonies, quartering troops in Texas and levying taxes on the people to support them, and arbitrarily arresting citizens of Texas for protesting against these wrongs.

(c) By discriminating against Texas in not allowing her proper representation in the state legislature of Coahuila and Texas, so that her people were placed at the mercy of the Mexicans beyond the Rio Grande.

(d) By the acts of the state legislature in denying the right of petition, in squandering the public lands, and in requiring all persons charged with offences to be carried to Mexico for trial.

(e) By refusing Texas her constitutional right to have a separate government, which was guaranteed to her by repeated provisions of the federal and state constitutions, and which right had been freely given to New Leon at an early date.

(f) By imprisoning for three years the commissioner from Texas, who went to Mexico to present her Memorial and request for constitutional rights.

3. As long as the *empresario* system existed, under which the colonists enjoyed local self-government, these influences tending to a rupture with the government were not felt. But when the state government was established, in 1828, matters rapidly approached a crisis.

4. The first meetings and declarations of the colonies were strictly in favor of the Constitution of 1824, and they simply demanded their rights under that instrument. It was only when that Constitution was violated

and overthrown, that they assumed the attitude of revolution and resistance.

5. The first revolutionary meetings in Texas,—their members, proceedings, and character.

6. The public leaders of the Texas Revolution,—their ability, firmness, and courageous devotion to freedom.

7. Stephen F. Austin's relations to the events of those times. He was a sincere patriot and lover of liberty, but his long and intimate intercourse with Mexican affairs led him to seek a peaceable rather than a revolutionary solution of the difficulty, until he was convinced that revolution was inevitable.

PERIOD III.  
THE  
REVOLUTION  
—  
1832  
TO  
1836  
—

### Parallel Readings.

Scarff's "Comprehensive History of Texas" (1897), Vol. I. ; Brown's "History of Texas," Vol. I. ; Williams's "Sam Houston and the War for Texas Independence."

SIGNATURE OF BEN R. MILAM.

## CHAPTER XI.

### The Outbreak of the Revolution; Consultation called; The Campaign of 1835.

PERIOD III.  
THE  
REVOLUTION  
—  
1832  
TO  
1836  
—

**S**ANTA ANNA'S detention of Austin in Mexico for so long had two motives. It deprived the colonists of his patriotic aid and counsel in their difficulties; and it operated to hold the great *empresario* as a hostage for the good behavior of the Texans. Austin in his absence had been elected to the legislature, in 1834, with Oliver Jones and Vasquez as his colleagues, and no doubt his presence during the troubles in Coahuila would have been valuable. But his captivity was a far greater incumbrance to the struggling patriots, by reason of the fact that fear for his safety prevented them from taking any decisive step towards declaring their liberties or securing their independence. In all the halting counsels and timid temper displayed during the trying events of 1834 and until the summer of 1835, we may read the anxiety of the colonists for their imprisoned chief.

During the discussions and plans that preceded actual revolution, there were two parties in Texas, known as the *war party* and the *peace party*. The former was led by such men as the Whartons, Henry Smith, Branch T. Archer, William B. Travis, Bowie, Williamson, Edward Burluson, J. B. Patrick, Asa Hoxey, and Alexander Horton. They were in favor of active and aggressive measures, looking to separation and independence from Mexico. The conservative or peace party was in favor of deliberation, caution, and constitutional remedies for existing evils, at least until relief failed to be thus attained, and the colonies were in a position to act justly on the defensive.



OLIVER JONES.

All thinking men had come to the conclusion that war was inevitable, and it was simply a question of how best to proceed, in order to be prepared for it when it came, and having due regard always for the safety of Colonel Austin in Mexico. There was a very small faction in favor of absolute submission to Mexican tyranny.

The plans of Santa Anna towards Texas were by this time matured and pretty well understood. He had created a centralized despotism beyond the Rio Grande, and it was his purpose to invade Texas, disarm her citizens, establish an army of occupation, expel all Americans, annul all colonial contracts, and reduce the country to a military dependency of Mexico. To accomplish these ends General Cos was placed in command at Matamoros, as military and civil governor of Coahuila and Texas, and a large force was prepared to march into Texas.

To resist the threatened invasion and secure their freedom, the Texans, early in 1835, began to organize *Committees of Safety* in the several municipalities. This movement was started in Mina (Bastrop), imitated by Gonzales and Robertson's colony, and during the summer it spread to all the other municipalities. On June 22, a meeting was held at San Felipe, and Captain W. B. Travis with a small force was sent to drive the Mexicans under Tenorio out of Anahuac, where excessive duties were being collected to support the army of invasion. The expedition was successful, and Tenorio and his men were sent out of the country with their arms and effects. Public meetings were held everywhere to discuss the situation and to prepare for defence. Even in Bexar, such men as Navarro, Cassiano, Seguín, Zambrano, and other patriotic Mexicans, joined in the general movement to uphold the rights and liberties of Texas. In all such assemblies the uniform expression was that all the Texans asked was their rights under the Constitution of 1824, to which every municipality declared its allegiance.

At San Felipe, on July 14, 1835, the political chief of Brazos, J. B. Miller, held a joint meeting of the delegates from

PERIOD III.  
THE  
REVOLUTION  
—  
1832  
TO  
1836  
—

Santa Anna's  
plans to con-  
quer Texas

Texans organ-  
ize to resist  
the invasion



JOSÉ ANTONIO NAVARRO.

Texas Mexi-  
cans join the  
revolution

Calls for a gen-  
eral consulta-  
tion

PERIOD III.  
THE  
REVOLUTION

1832  
TO  
1836

the jurisdictions of Austin and Columbia, at which resolutions were passed in favor of calling a general consultation of delegates from all Texas, to consider the state and necessities of the country, and a committee was appointed to arrange for such a convention. In the same month a similar meeting, with the same action, was held on the Lavaca and Navidad. During the first half of 1835, the colonists suffered much from Indian hostilities, and the anxiety and loss from this source added to their distress and deepened the general gloom.

The peace conference

On July 17, three days after the meeting which had declared for a general consultation, another conference was held at San Felipe, in which only eleven men took part. It was intended to be conciliatory, and appointed D. C. Barrett and Edward Gritton as messengers of peace to Colonel Ugartachea at San Antonio; but nothing came of the mission. The meeting was self-constituted, and represented nobody but the individuals composing it.



LORENZO DE ZAVALA.

Order for the  
arrest of lead-  
ing Texans

At this time there came to Texas a noble exile from Mexico, whose subsequent services identified him with the cause of independence. Lorenzo de Zavala, who had been the friend of Santa Anna and governor of the State of Mexico, had become dissatisfied with the course of events under his former companion in arms, was appointed Minister to France, and instead sought refuge in Texas, where he had lands on the San Jacinto River. Being specially desirous of capturing Zavala, Santa Anna, in July, sent Tenorio to Texas to seize and bring him to Mexico, including in the order of arrest Travis, Johnson, Williamson, Mosely Baker, Carbajal, and Zambrano, all of whom had been conspicuous in the recent movements among the colonists. It was this order and the attempt to execute it that aroused the Texans to their real danger. In July, also, Ugartachea occupied San Antonio with five hundred troops, and the Mexican vessel *El Correo* attacked Anahuac, was captured by the Texas schooner *San Felipe*, and the crew sent to New Orleans as pirates. In August a large meeting was held at Columbia, which reiterated the call for a general consultation, and Zavala issued a spirited address to the



same effect. From these various efforts it was decided to hold an election on October 5, for delegates to attend a *General Consultation* of Texas, to be assembled at San Felipe on October 16. In the meanwhile, James B. Miller and Henry Rueg, the political chiefs of Brazos and Nacogdoches, began to organize the militia in their departments, and men's minds hardened into the conviction that a desperate struggle was approaching. Sam Houston was elected commander of the troops at Nacogdoches, companies originally organized and experienced in Indian warfare were recruited for more regular service, and both Mexico and Texas were gathering strength for the coming shock.

The 1st of September, Austin returned from his enforced exile, was enthusiastically and affectionately received, joined in the appeal for a consultation, was elected chairman of the committee of safety at San Felipe, and entered into the great enterprise of defending with warlike valor what he had established by peaceful toil.

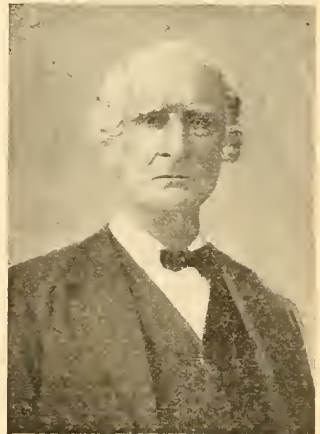
Renewed demands were made by the Mexicans for the delivery of the leaders of what they termed treasonable rebellion, and such delivery was made the condition of peace and security to the colonists. Of course, peace at such a price was indignantly rejected.

In September, Ugartachea sent a force under Castinado to Gonzales, to take by force a cannon belonging to the citizens. News of the threatened seizure was sent to the nearest neighbors, while Captains Albert Martin and George W. Cottle organized and led the citizens of Gonzales to the defence of their property. Castinado arrived on September 28, and camped near town. Very soon Edward Burleson from Bastrop, Robert M. Coleman and John H. Moore from the Colorado and Lavaca, Ben Fort Smith from Columbia, Allen, Goheen, Williamson, and John J. Linn, were marching from different points with men to aid Gonzales in her resistance. On October 2, 1835, the Texans attacked Castinado in his camp, defeated him and drove his command towards

PERIOD III.  
THE  
REVOLUTION  
—  
1832  
TO  
1836  
—

Militia  
organized

Austin takes  
part in the  
general move-  
ment



JOHN J. LINN.

PERIOD III.  
THE  
REVOLUTION  
1832  
TO  
1836

San Antonio. In this action Colonel John H. Moore commanded the Texans, with J. W. E. Wallace as lieutenant-colonel. This was the first battle of the actual revolution, and war was at last upon the country.

Six hundred additional Mexican troops were marched into San Antonio in October, to reinforce the garrison there. Goliad had already been occupied by the Mexicans, and early in October, George M. Collingsworth organized a company on the lower Colorado and moved on that historic fort to dislodge the enemy. When nearing the place, they met Ben Milam, who had escaped from Saltillo after the dissolution of the government there, and was endeavoring to reach his friends in Texas. He at once joined their ranks. Captains Smith and Allen joined the command, coming from Gonzales, and on the night of October 9

they seized the old fort of *La Bahia* which controlled the town of Goliad, capturing the small garrison in charge, with a large quantity of military stores, arms, and some artillery. The capture of *La Bahia* broke the communication between Bexar and the Gulf, which the Mexicans were never able afterwards to restore, and the attempt to do so lost Santa Anna the battle of San Jacinto. Up to this time it had been the policy of the leaders, under Austin's advice, to act on the defensive. *Independence*, although in every man's mind, was not yet definitely proposed. But to make a proper defence of Texas it was necessary to control the

principal points of military value. It was therefore considered of first importance to occupy San Antonio, and capture or expel the strong garrison stationed there. Heretofore the various municipalities had been acting in their local capacities, without any central authority to direct general operations. San Felipe was regarded as the capital, and Stephen F. Austin was looked to as the practical head of all movements. But now, at his suggestion, each municipality appointed one member from its committee of safety, to form a general council for the control of affairs, and R. R. Royal was elected president of this new body, which left Austin more at liberty to act with the forces in the field.

Mexicans  
fortify San An-  
tonio de Bexar

Ben Milam

Capture of La  
Bahia, October  
9, 1835



GEORGE M. COLLINGSWORTH.

General coun-  
cil formed

Cos was now in command at San Antonio, with about twelve hundred men, and Ugartachea was despatched to the Rio Grande for reinforcements.

The Texan forces at Gonzales were organized into a small army, and on October 11, 1835, Austin was elected to the chief command, with the title of General. His staff were W. D. C. Hall, adjutant; David B. Macomb, assistant adjutant; Peter W. Grayson and William T. Austin (no relative of the General), aides; William H. Wharton, judge-advocate. A regiment of three hundred men was formed, with John H. Moore, colonel; Edward Burleson, lieutenant-colonel; and Alexander Somervell, major. Milam was placed in command of the scouts. This little band marched towards San Antonio, and on October 20 camped on the Salado, fourteen miles east from the town and fort. Here it remained for a week, and was visited by Houston, Rusk, John A. Wharton, Branch T. Archer, and other delegates of the Consultation, who came on from San Felipe; the meeting of the Consultation having been postponed until November, owing to the absence of so many delegates in the army. By request of the soldiers, all delegates were urged to leave the army and attend to their duties in the Consultation, and they all set out for San Felipe as soon as the force removed from the Salado to the mission L'Espada, nine miles below San Antonio, on the river.

Austin now had between six and seven hundred men, and had been waiting further additions; but he determined to move nearer to Bexar. On October 27, he sent Bowie and Fannin with ninety men to reconnoitre. They selected the mission Concepcion, about one and a half miles from town, and disposed their men in a strong position on the river, with the stream and timber as a protection. At sunrise, on the 28th, the enemy's cavalry rode onto the Texan pickets under Henry Karnes, and drove them in. It was very foggy, and when the troops were finally able to see the position of the enemy, it was discovered that the Mexicans had practically surrounded them. Fannin and Bowie at once rallied and arranged their men so as to co-

PERIOD III.  
THE  
REVOLUTION  
—  
1832  
TO  
1836  
—

Austin elected  
commander of  
the army



EDWARD BURLESON.

Battle of Con-  
cepcion, Octo-  
ber 28, 1835

PERIOD III.  
THE  
REVOLUTION  
—  
1832  
TO  
1836  
—

operate effectively. The Mexican infantry came up in force in front, and the cavalry invested the Texan flanks. At eight o'clock the battle opened from the side of the Texans, and was soon general and fierce along the whole line. The enemy began firing grape and canister from a six-pounder about eighty yards from the Texan right flank. It was silenced by the Texan rifles in a few minutes, and by a brilliant movement was captured and turned on the Mexicans. The engagement lasted thirty minutes, and the Mexicans lost about sixty killed, many of them officers, and as many wounded, while the Texan loss was one man killed. The Mexican force engaged was about four hundred, and the Texans were ninety in number. This is known as the *battle of Concepcion*, and it had ended before Austin with the main body of the army arrived from L'Espada.

Texan victory

Texan army  
besieges San  
Antonio

After the victory of Concepcion, Austin moved his army, now nearly a thousand strong, to the head of the San Antonio River, east of the town, and, after various demonstrations intended to secure a surrender of the place, the Texans took their position on the west bank of the river, at the "Old Mill," about half a mile north of the *main plaza* in San Antonio. The town, or rather combination of town, fort, and mission, was situated on the San Antonio River and San Pedro Creek, which were about six hundred and fifty yards apart. The town lay between the two streams,—the San Pedro on the west and the San Antonio on the east,—with a remarkably deep bend outward of the latter, into which the town extended; and just across the river, east, was the Alamo Mission and Fort. The main part of the city was built around the two *plazas*,—the *main* and *military* squares,—which were divided by the church of San Fernando, priests' houses, and a small row of buildings. One main street ran along the north side of these squares, extending through the town and east of the river to the *Garita*, or lookout and powder house, a mile or more from the *plazas*, and the only bridge across the river was at the crossing of this street. The surrounding country is mostly level, with eminences on the west at the Alazan and on the north at the old mill. The houses were all built of stone and *adobé*, with thick walls, flat, parapeted roofs, fronting directly on the street, and admirable for defence. There

Description of  
San Antonio in  
1835

was a system of irrigation ditches, or *acéquias*, all through the town and country between the San Antonio and San Pedro.

Cos had strongly fortified the place, had excellent artillery, and was well equipped for resisting a siege; while the Texans had only a few very inferior cannon. The days passed away, and nothing was done beyond an occasional skirmish, and one spirited engagement on November 28, led by Colonel Bowie, known as the "Grass Fight," in which the Mexicans lost about fifty killed and wounded, and seventy head of horses were captured. The delay caused many of the volunteers to leave the army, and the siege seemed likely to fail. On November 21, General Austin issued an order to prepare for the storming of Bexar, but certain influences among the men caused them to oppose the movement, and he countermanded the order the next day. It is significant that Milam, Bowie, and Travis were absent from the army at that time, engaged in scouting towards the Rio Grande. But some valuable acquisitions were being made to the Texan forces, and the call for volunteers was being responded to, not only in Texas, but in the United States, where men and

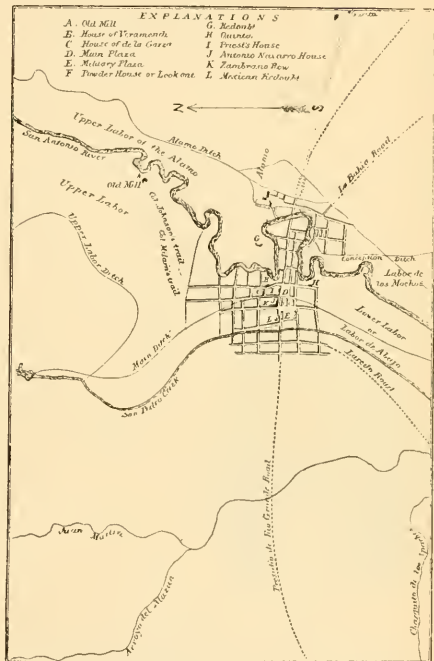
supplies were raised to aid the struggle against Mexico. General Rusk was now with the army, and "Deaf" Smith was beginning his valuable service as a scout. General Houston was at San Felipe, and he was accused of writing letters to officers at Bexar, calculated to produce dissatisfaction and dissension among the gallant men who were gathered there, and who constituted the only army Texas had. General Houston did not believe that San Antonio could be taken without cannon, and he

PERIOD III.  
THE  
REVOLUTION

1832

TO

1836



MAP OF SAN ANTONIO DE BEXAR AND ITS ENVIRONS, ETC.

General Houston's views of the siege of Bexar

PERIOD III.  
THE  
REVOLUTION

1832

TO

1836

Austin resigns  
the command

Succeeded by  
Edward Burleson

The New Or-  
leans Grays

was opposed to the policy of making a stand so far from the supporting line of the American settlements. In the latter opinion he was probably correct ; but that he was wrong in the first, Milam and Johnson demonstrated within a few days.

On November 24, Austin and Wharton were notified that the Consultation had elected them, with Branch T. Archer, commissioners to the United States to solicit aid for the struggling colonists. They resigned at once from their positions in the army, and Colonel Edward Burleson was elected to the chief command in place of General Austin ; Francis W. Johnson was made adjutant, but General Burleson retained the same *aides* his predecessor had.

On November 27, the first volunteers from the United States joined the Texan army at San Antonio. These were the two companies of the *Grays*, from New Orleans, commanded by Captains Robert C. Morris and Breese. These troops were raised by the efforts of Adolphus Sterne, aided by the generous support of William Christy and other citizens of New Orleans. They brought many army supplies with them, and their coming greatly encouraged the people and soldiers of Texas.

After Austin's departure from the army, the plan which he had proposed of storming the town grew in favor. The Texan force had decreased in numbers by inaction, but those left were determined and brave. Milam had returned, and on December 4 he resolved to end the matter by an appeal to the men.

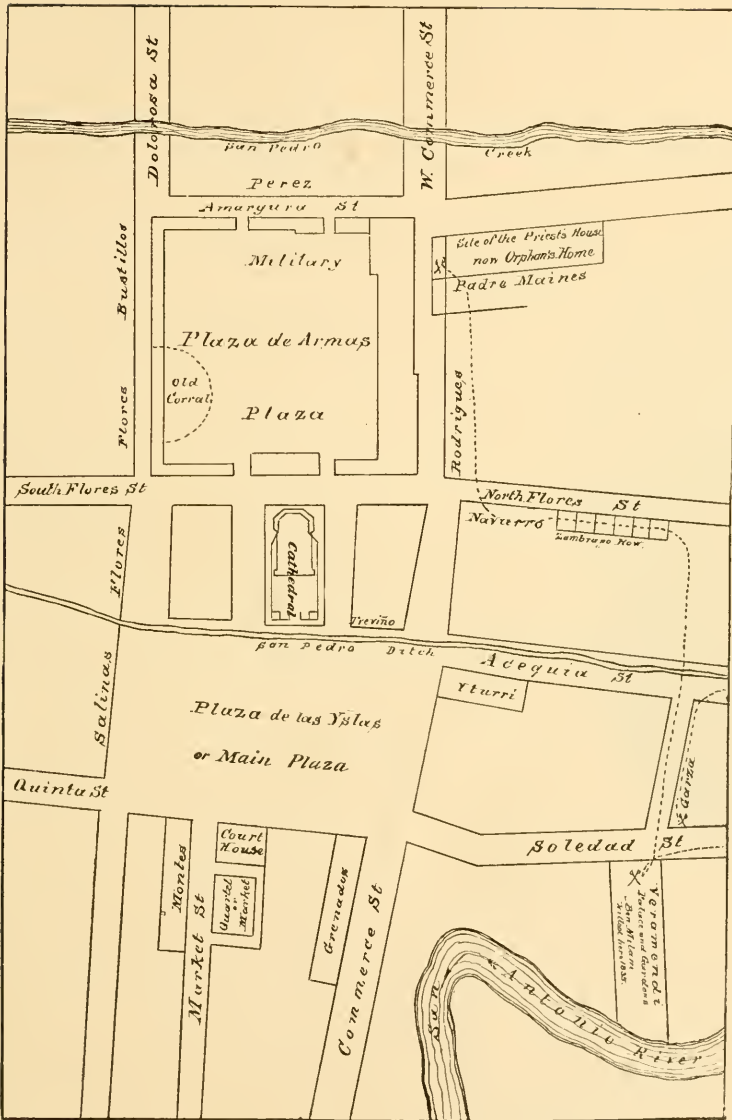
Drawing a line, he took his place on one side of it, exclaiming, "Who will follow old Ben Milam?" Three hundred soldiers responded. The storming party was divided into two divisions, one commanded by Milam, aided by Captain Morris, and the other by Francis W. Johnson, aided by Colonels Austin, Grant, and Brister. Just before daylight, on December 5, they entered the suburbs, and moving rapidly, one command along Acéquia Street and the other along Solédad Street, they approached the *main plaza* ; the first division occupied the house of *La Garza*, while the second seized the *Veramendi house*. These two buildings were a block from the *main plaza* and near



ADOLPHUS STERNE.

Ben Milam  
leads the  
storming of  
Bexar, Decem-  
ber 5, 1835

PERIOD III.  
THE  
REVOLUTION  
1832  
TO  
1836



MAP OR PLAN SHOWING OPERATIONS AND LOCALITIES OF TEXANS IN THE STORMING OF BEXAR. (Both ancient and modern buildings and streets are shown, and the dotted lines indicate route of Texans in the siege.)

PERIOD III.  
THE  
REVOLUTION

1832

TO

1836

Description of  
the locality

Progress of  
the fight



BEN R. MILAM.

Death of Ben  
Milam

the *priests' house* which faced that *plaza* on the north side. The *Zambrano Row* and *Navarro's house* were farther around to the west and south, near the *military plaza*, which was defended by a redoubt a block west of those buildings. Barricades and fortifications protected all the streets near the *plazas*, and most of the houses were garrisoned by Mexican soldiers. A battery at the Alamo could shell the town, and the enemy's artillery was everywhere well disposed. The first day's fight was slow but desperate,—the Texans using their rifles, while the Mexicans kept up a deadly fire from their cannon and breastworks. During the night of the 5th both sides were busy strengthening their positions, the Mexicans firing all night, and on the 6th the Texans were able to use their small cannon to better effect, while they extended their line and fortified themselves in trenches. The Mexicans occupied the tops of the houses near the *plazas*, and from the parapet walls directed a terrible volley at Milam's men, while a continual cannonade was kept up from the Alamo and the batteries at the entrances to the main and military squares. Great danger was experienced in passing from house to house, and the storming force was not able to keep up communications as well as they wished, but towards evening they advanced from the Garza house to a building near the main *plaza*. On the 7th the conflict continued much the same, the Texans steadily gaining ground. But at three o'clock that afternoon, Colonel Milam, in passing to Johnson's position in the Veramendi house, was instantly killed by a shot in the head. Francis W. Johnson succeeded to the command, with Robert C. Morris next in authority. At ten o'clock that night the *Navarro house* was taken, being a material advance towards the *plaza*. On the morning of the 8th *Zambrano Row* was seized by the Texans, after a desperate resistance by the enemy, the storming party forcing their way by tunneling through the thick stone walls and fighting from room to room. This was accomplished by the companies of Llewellyn, English, Crane, and Landrum, and a detachment of the New Orleans *Grays*, those troops being



PERIOD III.  
THE  
REVOLUTION  
—  
1832  
TO  
1836  
—

now commanded by William G. Cooke. At ten o'clock on the night of the 8th the *priests' house* was stormed and captured. The enemy had been strengthened that day by Ugartachea with a large force, and that night they kept up a furious firing against every point of the Texan position. But at nine o'clock on the morning of the 9th, General Cos sent a flag of truce to Colonel Johnson, and surrendered San Antonio to the Texans, agreeing to leave Texas with his officers at once, and never again to take up arms against the Constitution of 1824. All his men were to be permitted to go or stay as they pleased, but the battalion of convict soldiers was required to be taken back to Mexico by General Cos. All stores, arms, and military property were delivered to General Bureson for the Texan army, and all prisoners on both sides were released. Thus, on December 9, 1835, Bexar had fallen, and the Mexican invaders were driven from Texas soil. The loss on the Texan side in the storming of Bexar was very trifling, Colonel Milam being the only one killed outright, while about thirty were wounded. The Mexicans were said to have had about one hundred and fifty killed and wounded. It is a remarkable fact that this desperate undertaking was accomplished by a volunteer force of three hundred men under a subordinate officer, while the commanding general and main body of the army remained in camp.



WILLIAM G. COOKE.

Losses in the  
storming

About the time the siege of Bexar began, a small conflict occurred at *Lipantitan*, near San Patricio, on the Nueces. This was on November 4, Captain Westover commanding the Texans. The Mexicans were defeated and retired from the country.

Lipantitan,  
November 4,  
1835

The campaign of 1835 had ended, and the results were of incalculable value to Texas. Had the capture of Bexar been postponed, as General Houston advised in November, until the following March, the Mexicans would have overrun the whole country west of the Brazos before money, arms, or troops could have been collected; before a government could be put in operation; before a single volunteer could come from the United States; before the colonists could have organized any but the

Results of the  
campaign of  
1835

PERIOD III.  
THE  
REVOLUTION

1832

TO

1836

most disorderly and feeble resistance. As it was, not a Mexican soldier was in Texas at the close of December; Bexar, Goliad, and Gonzales were held by Texan troops; the provisional government had been organized, and its agents were in the United States enlisting substantial aid and generous sympathy everywhere; volunteers were coming from all the colonies and from the patriotic towns and cities of distant States, while practical steps were being taken to equip an army and navy capable of coping with the Mexican invasion, which it was certain would soon attempt the subjugation of Texas. None of these things could have been accomplished but for the patriots of Goliad and Gonzales, and the heroes of Lipantitlan and Bexar, in the campaign of 1835.

## QUESTIONS.

WHAT were Santa Anna's motives for detaining Austin as a prisoner in Mexico? To what position was Austin elected during his absence, and who else was elected with him? How did his captivity affect the colonists? What two parties were there in Texas at the time of the Revolution, and what were their views on the subject? What was the general conclusion of all thinking men? What were Santa Anna's plans for conquering Texas? What did the Texans do towards organizing for resistance and freedom? Describe the Tenorio incident. What about public meetings? What was the sentiment in Bexar? What was the uniform sentiment in all the public meetings? When, where, and by whom was the first meeting held suggesting a "Consultation"? Where else and when were other meetings held for the same purpose? What occurred at this time in regard to the Indians? What can you say about the meeting held by the "peace party" in July, 1835? Who came to Texas from Mexico at this time, and why? What had been his career in Mexico? What did Santa Anna do towards securing his arrest and return to Mexico, and who else were included in the order of arrest? What effect had the order in Texas? What occurred in July? What in August? What was decided upon? What was done towards organizing the militia? Who was elected commander at Nacogdoches? When did Austin return from Mexico, and what did he do in Texas? What condition did Mexico propose as the basis of peace, and how did the Texans receive it? When and where was the first battle of the Revolution fought? Describe the events leading to the battle and capture of Gonzales. What place did the Mexicans fortify and reinforce? What steps did the Texans take to capture that point?

What man, afterwards distinguished, joined the Texans at this time? Describe the capture of La Bahia or Goliad, and what was the importance of that event? What was the purpose of the Texans at that time? Describe what took place in regard to organizing a central council, and who was the president of it? Who was in command of the Mexicans at San Antonio, and what did he do? Describe the organization of the Texan army at Gonzales. Who were the various officers? What did the army do? Who visited it in camp, and what occurred? Where did the army then go? When was this, and what was the size of the Texan forces? Describe the battle of *Concepcion*, and how it happened. When was this? Where did Austin then move to? Describe the location, surroundings, and plan of San Antonio de Bexar in 1835. What was the *Grass Fight*, when and how did it occur? What order did Austin issue on November 21, and why was it not executed? What reinforcements did the Texans receive at this time? Where was General Houston, and what were his views as to the situation at Bexar? What can you say of them? What changes occurred in the army on November 24, and why? When did the first volunteers from the United States join the army, who were they, and by whose influence were they raised? What occurred after Austin left the army? Who called for men to storm Bexar, and describe what happened? How was the storming party divided and commanded? Describe the locality involved in this storming. Explain the course of the Texans on entering the town. Describe the storming, giving the progress of the fighting each day, and explaining the movements of the Texans. Who finally won, and when? What were the terms of the surrender? What were the losses on each side, and what was the result of the Texan victory? Who was killed on the Texan side, how, and who succeeded him in the command? Give the names of the principal officers and troops engaged in the storming of Bexar. When, where, and by whom was the battle of Lipantitlan fought, and with what result? What were the results and importance of the campaign of 1835, and explain the value of what was accomplished by the Texan army in that campaign?

### Topical Analysis.

1. The progress of the Revolution, as shown in the public meetings, committees of safety, general council, and final call for a "General Consultation of all Texas." Note the times and places of the various meetings.
2. Santa Anna's attempt to arrest citizens of Texas and carry them to Mexico for trial for political offences. This precipitated the actual breaking out of the war.
3. Capture of Gonzales (the first battle of the Revolution), followed by capture of Goliad and the march on San Antonio, being the beginning of the campaign of 1835.

PERIOD III.  
THE  
REVOLUTION

1832  
TO  
1836

4. Continuation of the campaign, battle of Concepcion, the Grass Fight, Lipantitlan, and the storming of Bexar. Mexicans driven out of Texas.
5. Importance and value of the campaign of 1835.

### Geography.

The student should locate the several *municipalities* of Texas as they existed in 1835-6, as they formed the first political institutions of the colonies and were afterwards adopted as original counties at the organization of the permanent government of the Republic. Trace the route of the Texan army in the campaign of 1835, and locate the battles of Gonzales, Goliad, Lipantitlan, Concepcion, the Grass Fight, and siege and storming of Bexar.

### Parallel Readings.

Scarff's "Comprehensive History of Texas" (1897), Vol. I.; Brown's "History of Texas," Vols. I. and II.; Williams's "Sam Houston;" Francis W. Johnson's "History of Texas," MS.; Crane's "Life of Houston."



Juan Nepomuceno Seguin.  
1836.

SIGNATURE OF JUAN NEPOMUCENO SEGUIN.

## CHAPTER XII.

### The Consultation ; The Provisional Government ; Preparations for War.

**T**HE General Consultation of all Texas, called to meet for October 16, 1835, did not organize on that day owing to the absence of a quorum, many of the delegates being with the army at Gonzales. The organization was postponed to November 1, and on that date, there still being a number absent, the proceedings were deferred until November 3, —Austin's birthday. The general council, or central executive committee, which had been previously formed by the municipalities, had been up to that time the only government for all the colonies, and it had not been able to do much. It had a delicate and difficult question to deal with, in satisfying the Cherokee and Cushatta Indians, who were becoming very restless and even clamorous about their settlements in Eastern Texas. They had built villages and engaged in farming, to some extent, near Nacogdoches and along the Neches and Trinity, and they were anxious to have the titles to their lands confirmed. In a critical moment like this it would not do to incur their hostility, and every effort was made to pacify them. Both Austin and Houston wrote to them in October, 1835, assuring them that their lands and rights would be protected ; and they were invited to send a representative to the Consultation.

The council managed to keep up a weekly mail through Texas and to the United States. The *Telegraph* was published weekly by Baker and Borden at San Felipe, and "The Emigrant's Guide" was about starting at Nacogdoches ; so that the colonists were kept informed of passing events. The council also appointed Sims Hall army contractor, and Thomas F. McKinney financial agent to contract a loan of one hundred thousand

PERIOD III.  
THE  
REVOLUTION  
—  
1832  
TO  
1836  
—

The Consulta-  
tion at San  
Felipe, No-  
vember 3, 1835

The Indian  
problem

Early newspa-  
pers and mails

PERIOD III.  
THE  
REVOLUTION  
—  
1832  
TO  
1836  
—



THOMAS F. MCKINNEY.

Independence  
deferred

Declaration of  
grievances

Provisional  
government  
organized

William H.  
Wharton

dollars in New Orleans. These acts were regular and apparently necessary, and the action of the council was afterwards approved by the Consultation.

The Consultation finally met on November 3, fifty-five delegates being present, representing thirteen municipalities. Branch T. Archer was elected president of the body, and a committee was appointed, with John A. Wharton as chairman, to prepare a declaration of the causes which impelled the colonists to take up arms against Mexico; while another committee, of which Henry Millard was chairman, was appointed to draft a plan for a provisional government for Texas. The question of whether the colonists should declare their absolute independence came up and was warmly discussed. Perhaps all the delegates wished for such action and believed it would soon come, but it was not then thought to be prudent and wise to so declare. The

motion for a Declaration of Independence was defeated by a vote of fifteen *yeas* to thirty-three *nays*. John A. Wharton led the debate in favor of independence, while D. C. Barrett led the opposition to it. Houston also opposed an immediate declaration of independence. The declaration of grievances reported by the committee and adopted, set forth fully all the despotic and unconstitutional acts of the Mexican government, as they have appeared in the history of the preceding ten years, and declared for the Constitution of 1824. The plan of the provisional government, agreed upon on November 13, provided for the election by the Consultation of a provisional governor and lieutenant-governor, and an advisory council composed of one member from each municipality. Henry Smith was elected governor and James W. Robinson lieutenant-governor. It was desired to elect Austin provisional governor, but he was with the army at San Antonio, and it was thought that his services would be more valuable as one of the commissioners to the United States, to which position he was appointed, with Branch T. Archer and William H. Wharton. Wharton at first declined, for the reason that he was in favor of declaring the absolute independence of Texas. He argued that anything short of

such a declaration would accomplish nothing ; that all Mexico would unite against Texas, no matter what was done ; and that nothing could be expected from the United States in the way of men, money, or sympathy so long as the colonists occupied the position of a revolted province of Mexico, still claiming allegiance to the Mexican constitution. He was, however, at last prevailed upon to accept the position of commissioner, upon the assurance that what he desired would very soon be accomplished. In December the commissioners set out for the United States.

The Consultation provided for a commander-in-chief of the army, and Sam Houston was elected to that rank, while the organization of a regular army of eleven hundred and twenty men was ordered, and one hundred and fifty *Rangers* on the frontier. A loan of one million dollars was authorized ; all land commissioners were suspended and no further land titles could be issued ; the fraudulent and illegal land grants made by the legislature of Coahuila and Texas were declared void ; and it was solemnly enacted that the Cherokee and other friendly Indians should be secured in the titles and peaceable possession of their lands in Eastern Texas. The Consultation adjourned on November 14 to meet March 1, 1836, the adjourned meeting to be composed of the same delegates unless the council should order an election for new delegates.

As soon as the provisional government began operations, an unfortunate hostility arose between the governor and the council. It would be a waste of time to undertake to decide who was right in the various controversies that arose, or to enter into the details of their differences. The continual disagreement between Governor Smith and his council paralyzed the government, and prevented the organization of the army for a month. It progressed to the point of the most violent and abusive language on both sides, and finally resulted in the council adopting a resolution deposing the governor, although he still claimed and continued to exercise such authority as he

PERIOD III.  
THE  
REVOLUTION  
—  
1832  
TO  
1836  
—



HENRY SMITH.

Cherokees  
guaranteed  
their lands

Quarrel be-  
tween g-  
overnor and  
council

PERIOD III.  
THE  
REVOLUTION  
—  
1832  
TO  
1836  
—

Its disastrous  
effects

Organization  
of the army

Land bounties

Independence  
meeting at  
Goliad, De-  
cember 20, 1835

The Matamoros  
expedition

could. The plan of the provisional government provided that the commander of the army should be "subject to the governor and council," but as the latter could never agree among themselves, General Houston was powerless to do anything. The spectacle of this disgraceful controversy disgusted everybody, discouraged the colonists, and well-nigh drove away the sympathy and aid of the outside world. It was but another example of the folly, so often demonstrated in modern times, of placing the military operations of a revolutionary war under the control of a political government.

At last, on December 13, General Houston secured such action from the governor and council as enabled him to proceed to organize a regular army. The council declared that all soldiers in the regular army should receive six hundred and forty acres of land as a bounty, which was afterwards increased to eight hundred acres; all volunteers in the war against Mexico should receive six hundred and forty acres; and all persons who should leave Texas in her then condition forfeited their lands entirely. Houston issued a proclamation, setting forth these inducements and calling for soldiers to enter the service, but the continual conflict in the provisional government greatly retarded all his efforts.

Meanwhile, the sentiment in favor of the declaration of absolute independence from Mexico grew apace among the people. In November and December public meetings were held in Nacogdoches and Brazoria, which adopted resolutions to that effect, and on December 20, at Goliad, ninety-two citizens drew up, adopted, and signed a declaration "that the former province and department of Texas is, and of right ought to be, a free, sovereign, and independent state." Major Ira Ingram got up this movement, and he was aided by Captain Philip Dimmitt's volunteer company and the citizens of Goliad. Thirty-one out of the ninety-two signers belonged to the Irish colonies of San Patricio and Refugio.

About this time the country was agitated by the scheme of an expedition to capture Matamoros. Dr. James Grant, who owned valuable estates in Northern Mexico, seems to have started this scheme, and it was favored by Colonels Francis W.



Johnson and J. W. Fannin. The soldiers were idle and restless, and there was a desire to engage in some sort of desperate enterprise against Mexico. General Houston and Governor Smith were opposed to the expedition, but it seemed impossible to prevent the volunteers who had gathered in the west from taking part in the movement, and to preserve the enthusiasm of the men the Matamoros raid was partially authorized by the commander-in-chief. The council was wholly committed to the expedition, and in January, 1836, it went so far as to ignore General Houston's authority by appointing Johnson and Fannin as agents to raise troops and prosecute an independent warfare on Mexico. This was clearly beyond the powers of the council, amounted to setting aside the general of the regular army, and it led to most serious consequences. All the confusion and disaster that followed in the spring of 1836 were traceable to this Matamoros scheme and the arbitrary action of the council in regard to it. The troops were stationed throughout the western country under separate chiefs, the soldiers were in doubt as to what would be the next move, the officers were involved in controversies with the government and with each other, and what should have been a united and well organized army under one competent commander became a disorganized and discordant force, made up of widely scattered detachments engaged in pushing the individual plans of their several leaders. The fall of the Alamo and the massacre at Goliad were among the terrible results of such a policy.

The financial condition of Texas at this time was very critical. The people were poor and the provisional government had no funds. Private aid came from many sources in and out of the province, Mobile and New Orleans being especially generous in their contributions. The finance committee of the council recommended a system of taxation and customs duties which would provide necessary funds for the future; but what was needed then was money and supplies to conduct the war, and these must be had at once. A public loan was the only remedy;

PERIOD III.  
THE  
REVOLUTION  
1832  
TO  
1836

Aided by the  
council



FRANCIS W. JOHNSON.

Financial con-  
dition of Texas

PERIOD III.  
THE  
REVOLUTION

1832  
TO  
1836

Mexico pre-  
pares a second  
invasion of  
Texas

Volunteers  
from Alabama  
and Georgia



ALEXANDER HORTON.

and for the negotiation of this the people looked to their commissioners in the United States.

In November, 1835, Mexico sent two war-ships, the *Bravo* and the *Montezuma*, to the Texas coast, and began to do great harm to the importation and exportation of merchandise in Texas. In the interior of Mexico extensive preparations were made for the second invasion to subdue the Texans. A large army was collected at San Luis Potosi in November and December, to be led to Bexar by Santa Anna in person; Urrea was sent to defend Matamoros and to march thence to Goliad; Cos was at Laredo, where he had been joined by Sesma with fifteen hundred fresh troops, so that, unknown to the colonists, the storm was gathering beyond the Rio Grande.

On December 25, 1835, General Houston removed his headquarters to Washington, on the Brazos, where he met two companies of volunteers from Alabama under Colonel Wyatt; while about the same time the famous *Georgia Battalion*, under Major William Ward, arrived at San Felipe. Houston had been industriously trying to concentrate the regular troops at Goliad and Refugio, and the supplies at Copano and Matagorda on the coast. On December 30 he ordered all volunteers to gather at Copano and to remain there for further orders. These dispositions were all upset by the Matamoros excitement in January, and San Antonio was left practically undefended by the departure of men from there to join that expedition. On January 8, General Houston set out for the west, having appointed Colonel Travis chief of the recruiting service, and ordered Colonels T. J. Rusk, J. K. Allen, and A. Horton to report at headquarters. At this time General Houston expressed himself as convinced that absolute independence was the only course for Texas to pursue, and almost at the same date General Austin wrote to Houston from New Orleans, expressing the same conviction.

Houston reached Goliad on January 16, ordered the command of Colonel R. C. Morris to proceed to Refugio, and on the 17th

Houston's  
orders in the  
west

he sent Bowie with thirty men to Colonel Neill at San Antonio, with orders to destroy the fortifications there and retire with the artillery to Goliad, as the position could not be held with the small force then there. Captain Smith was also directed to raise a hundred men and go to San Antonio; it having been learned that a Mexican force of one thousand men were marching on that place. Neill replied that he had no teams to move the cannon, and therefore did not destroy the fortifications. Only eighty men were now left at Bexar, and Governor Smith assumed the authority to remove Travis from his position as recruiting officer, and sent him to San Antonio with a small command. Travis called for men and money. Of the latter there was none, and the former were few to respond in the disordered condition then prevailing.

Meanwhile, the Matamoros expedition was being still nursed by Grant, Fannin, and Johnson, supported by the council, and it operated as a counter-movement to anything attempted by the commander-in-chief. Houston reached Refugio and learned that no supplies had been gathered at Copano, as he had directed. On January 20, Colonel Francis W. Johnson arrived at Refugio and informed General Houston that the council had deposed Governor Smith, and had appointed Colonel Fannin and himself agents to raise troops and supplies and invade Mexico by taking Matamoros. Houston's conduct was simple and natural. One branch of the provisional government had assumed to destroy the other, thereby practically destroying itself. It had ignored the military organization established by the Consultation, by superseding the commander of the army with independent agents of its own, and all discipline, unity, and intelligence of action were rendered impossible. General Houston at once returned to Washington and reported the facts to Governor Smith.

By a previous order of the council, General Houston, John Forbes, and John Cameron had been appointed to make a treaty with the Cherokee Indians and their associate bands, for the purpose of carrying out the solemn promise made by the Con-

PERIOD III.  
THE  
REVOLUTION  
—  
1832  
TO  
1836  
—

San Antonio  
practically  
abandoned

Matamoros  
expedition  
continues to  
disorganize  
the army



JOHN FORBES.

Treaty with  
the Cherokees

PERIOD III.  
THE  
REVOLUTION

1832  
TO  
1836

sultation in reference to securing the Indians in the title to their lands. By order of the governor, General Houston was granted a furlough until March 1, and directed to proceed on his mission to the Indians. He and Forbes went to Chief Bowles's village, and, on February 23, 1836, entered into a treaty in accordance with the action of the Consultation. This treaty was never formally ratified by the government of Texas.

Turning now to Mexico, we find Santa Anna at Saltillo in January, 1836, whence, on the 1st of February, he set out for Texas at the head of six thousand men. He reached the Rio Grande on the 12th, and sent General José Urrea to Matamoros, whence the latter, on February 18, marched with about seven hundred men to attack Johnson and Grant at San Patricio, arriving there on the 27th. Santa Anna's generals in this expedition, besides Urrea, were Filisola, Sesma, Gaona, Tolsa,

Castrillon, Andradé, Woll, and Cos. Marching from the Rio Grande in February, Santa Anna's army reached the heights of the Alazan, overlooking San Antonio, on the 23d,—the spot where the "Republican Army of the North" had so signally routed Elisondo in 1813. The recovery of Bexar by the Mexicans was about to begin. Texas was not well prepared for the ensuing conflict, but her people felt no fear, trusting in the bravery of their men and the justice of their cause. The commissioners to the United States had met with reasonable success. Austin made a great speech in Louisville, Kentucky, which was widely circulated and aroused much sympathy and enthusiasm for the struggling colonists.



WILLIAM CHRISTY

Colonel William Christy, of New Orleans, was the faithful friend and helper of Texas in this crisis, and by his aid the commissioners secured a loan of two hundred thousand dollars,—ten per cent. in cash and the balance in instalments,—and another cash loan of fifty thousand dollars.

The people at large, however, seemed strangely indifferent to the approaching danger, and it was with the greatest difficulty they could be aroused. This was largely due to the general disgust at the provisional government and its unseemly discords,

Santa Anna  
marches to  
Texas

Austin in the  
United States

Secures a loan

General  
apathy in  
Texas

which continued to paralyze the army and dishearten everybody. In spite of this continual trouble between the governor and the council, some good measures were adopted, which formed the basis for the subsequent legislative system of the Republic and State. One notable act of patriotism in those times was the gift by Thomas J. Chambers of ten thousand dollars, for supporting an army of reserve which he was authorized to raise and organize.

As a result of the general and growing sentiment in favor of the absolute independence of Texas from Mexico, on December 10, 1835, the council had passed an ordinance providing for an election to be held throughout Texas on February 1, 1836, to select delegates to a general convention to be assembled at Washington on March 1, for the purpose of forming and declaring an independent government for Texas, destined to place her among the sovereign republics of the world. To that declaration and its vindication on the field of battle we have now come.

PERIOD III.  
THE  
REVOLUTION  
—  
1832  
TO  
—  
1836

Election  
ordered for a  
general con-  
vention to de-  
clare Texan  
independence

## QUESTIONS.

WHEN did the General Consultation finally organize, and what caused the delay? Prior to that time what sort of government did the colonies have, and what difficult question did it have to deal with? Explain what was done in regard to the Indians. What did the central executive council do in regard to the mails, army contracts, and negotiating a loan? What publications were issued in Texas at that time? What did the Consultation do in regard to the council's acts? How many delegates were there in the Consultation, and how many municipalities were represented? Who was elected president, and what committees were appointed? What action was taken in regard to a Declaration of Independence? Who led the two sides in the debate on that question? What kind of declaration was adopted, and what did it contain? When was the plan of *provisional government* adopted, and what was that plan? Who were elected provisional governor and lieutenant-governor? Why was Austin not elected governor, and to what position was he appointed by the Consultation? Who else was appointed with him? Explain the position and action of William H. Wharton. What provision was made in regard to the army, and who was elected commander-in-chief? What other important acts did the Consultation pass? When did it adjourn, and when and how was it to assemble again? What controversy arose

PERIOD III.  
THE  
REVOLUTION  
—  
1832  
TO  
1836  
—

at this time between the governor and council, and explain the progress and effects of this quarrel? When did General Houston finally begin to organize the army, and what provisions were made for donating lands to the soldiers? What progress was made in the direction of independence, what meetings were held, and when, where, and by whom was a declaration of independence actually adopted? Who constituted a large part of the signers of that declaration? What scheme was agitated at this time? Who originated and favored it? Who opposed it? What did the council do in the matter, and with what result? Explain the disastrous consequences of that scheme. What was the financial condition of Texas then, from whence was private aid received, and what was necessary to raise money? When and how did Mexico do injury to Texan commerce? What preparations were made for a second invasion of Texas? Explain General Houston's movements and plans at this time. What troops came to Texas to aid the Revolution? What effect did the Matamoros expedition have on the army? When did Houston go to the West, and what orders did he give? What views did he and General Austin entertain at that time in regard to independence? When did Houston reach Goliad, and what orders did he issue? Explain how they were executed, and what was the situation at San Antonio? What was being done in regard to the Matamoros expedition, and by whom? What occurred at Refugio, and what did General Houston do, and why? Explain the relations and treaty with the Cherokee Indians at this time. When and by whom was the treaty made, and what were its provisions? Describe Santa Anna's movements in January and February, 1836. Who were his generals in the invasion of Texas? When did the Mexican army reach San Antonio? What success had the Texas commissioners in the United States? What great speech did Austin make, and with what result? What citizen of New Orleans rendered valuable aid to Texas? What loans were made to Texas, and on what terms? What was the condition among the people at large, and why? What good measures did the council adopt? What notable act of patriotism occurred at that time? When was an election for a general convention ordered, for what purpose, and when and where was it to meet?

### Topical Analysis.

1. The *General Consultation* at San Felipe, November 3, 1835. Organization of a provisional government. Declaration of grievances adopted instead of declaration of independence. Commissioners to the United States appointed, to secure a public loan and general sympathy and aid.
2. The organization of the army, scarcity of men and means, and difficulties of the situation. Land bounties granted the soldiers. Volunteer troops from the United States.
3. The *Matamoros Expedition*, and its disastrous influence and results in the ensuing campaigns of 1835-6.

4. The quarrel between the governor and council, and its paralyzing effects upon the army and the people.

5. Treaty with the Cherokee Indians, by which they were solemnly promised secure title and peaceable possession of their lands in Eastern Texas, in consideration of their remaining neutral in the fight between Mexico and Texas.

6. Second invasion of Texas by a Mexican army, led by Santa Anna in person.

7. Growth of sentiment in favor of absolute independence, and the calling of a general convention for that purpose.

### Geography.

The student should familiarize himself with the locations of the various points of interest in this period of the history; such as San Felipe, Goliad, Gonzales, Refugio, San Patricio, San Antonio, and the various rivers in that region.

### Parallel Readings.

Scarff's "Comprehensive History of Texas" (1897), Vol. I.; Brown's "History of Texas," Vols. I. and II.; Williams's "Sam Houston;" Francis W. Johnson's "History of Texas," MS.; Crane's "Life of Houston."



BIBLE OF COLONEL W. B. TRAVIS (found in the Alamo).

## CHAPTER XIII.

### The Independence of Texas Declared; Campaign of 1836; Fall of the Alamo; Battle of the Coleto; Massacre at Goliad.

PERIOD III.  
THE  
REVOLUTION  
1832  
TO  
1836

First Consti-  
tutional Con-  
vention,  
March 1, 1836  
Its leading  
members

**T**HE first Constitutional Convention of Texas met at old Washington on the Brazos, on March 1, 1836. It contained fifty-eight members, comprising most of the men then prominent in Texas and many who afterwards became so. Among the leading members were Sterling C. Robertson, Bailey Hardeman, George C. Childress, Charles B. Stewart, James B. Collinworth, Edwin Waller, Thomas J. Rusk, José Antonio Navarro, Collin McKinney, Albert H. Latimer, William Menefee, Richard Ellis, Stephen W. Blount, Matthew Caldwell, W. C. Crawford, Sam Houston, Lorenzo de Zavala, George W. Smythe, Claiborne West, B. B. Goodrich, M. B. Menard, Jesse Grimes, James G. Swisher, A. B. Hardin, Elijah Stapp, Robert Potter, R. M. Coleman, William Morley, S. Rhoads Fisher, Samuel A. Maverick, Andrew Briscoe, and John W. Moore. James Kerr and John J. Linn were members, but did not arrive in time to participate. Richard Ellis, of Red River, was elected president, and H. S. Kimball, secretary.

Declaration of  
Independence  
adopted,  
March 2, 1836

On the next day, March 2, a *Declaration of Independence* was unanimously adopted and signed by the members present, the absentees signing as they came in. The *Declaration* was prepared by a committee composed of George C. Childress, Collin McKinney, Edward Conrad, James Gaines, and Bailey Hardeman. The convention spent no time in investigating the difficulties of the provisional government, but simply demanded the books and papers and took charge of affairs. On March 4, General Houston was elected to the supreme command of all the military forces then or thereafter in the service of the new government. Houston was a delegate from Refugio, having been



elected from there, instead of from his home in Nacogdoches. All able-bodied persons between the ages of seventeen and fifty were declared liable to military duty, and provisions were adopted to compel their service. Liberal land bounties were likewise offered to the soldiers. Those then in the army, and who should continue to the end of the war, should receive twelve hundred and eighty acres; for six months' service, six hundred and forty acres; for three months, three hundred and twenty acres; and all new recruits serving six months, or to the end of the war, nine hundred and sixty acres. An appeal to the people of the United States for aid in money, supplies, and troops was published.

On March 16-17, a permanent constitution for the Republic of Texas was adopted, modelled after that of the United States, with some provisions borrowed from the various State constitutions of the American Union. It provided for a president, vice-president, and congress composed of two houses; and a temporary government, called the govern-



DAVID G. BURNET.

ment *ad interim*, was to be established until a regular election could be held. The constitution was to be submitted for ratification to a vote of the people, at an election to be held on September 1, at which time also the first permanent officers and members of congress were to be elected by popular vote. On the 17th the convention elected David G. Burnet president *ad interim*; Lorenzo de Zavala, vice-president; Samuel P. Carson, secretary of state; Bailey Hardeman, secretary of the treasury; Thomas J. Rusk, secretary of war; Robert Potter, secretary of the navy; and David Thomas, attorney-general. On the following day the convention adjourned, its labors having been thoroughly harmonious. The headquarters of the govern-

PERIOD III.  
THE  
REVOLUTION  
—  
1832  
TO  
1836  
—



BAILEY HARDEMAN.

Constitution  
of the Republic of Texas  
adopted in  
convention,  
March 16, 17,  
1836  
Government  
*ad interim*

PERIOD III.  
THE  
REVOLUTION

1832  
TO  
1836

Military situation at the opening of the campaign of 1836

ment *ad interim* were removed to Harrisburg, on Buffalo Bayou, and General Houston had already set out, on March 6, for the scene of active operations in the west.

At the commencement of the campaign of 1836, the military situation in Texas was as follows: Francis W. Johnson was at San Patricio, while Dr. James Grant and Robert C. Morris were scouting for horses west of the Nueces. Fannin had marched from Copano, by way of Refugio, to Goliad, where he was stationed with his regiment composed of the Lafayette and Georgia battalions under Majors Wallace and Mitchell, with Fannin as colonel and William Ward as lieutenant-colonel. The plan was,

that as soon as Grant returned to San Patricio, he and Johnson would join Fannin at Goliad. At San Antonio there were about one hundred and fifty men, under the four notable leaders whose names are imperishably linked with the bloody memories of Bexar. William B. Travis, a native of North Carolina, was in command. He was a lawyer by profession, twenty-eight years old, of indomitable courage, fine physical bearing, and great personal attraction. There was James Bowie, originally of Georgia, as desperate and dangerous a foe as lived in those deadly days,—but withal a kind-hearted and chivalrous man,—a duellist, a filibuster, a pirate and slave-trader with Lafitte, a skilful Indian fighter, and now a devoted defender of Texan liberty. Lately there had come from Tennessee to Texas, and to the little band at San Antonio, the famous Davy Crockett,—the bear-

hunter, the politician and ex-congressman, the former friend and subsequent caricaturist of Jackson and Van Buren,—who “ever with a frolic welcome took the sunshine and the thunder.” And there was the quiet and soldierly James B. Bonham, from South Carolina, whose cool daring was concealed beneath a surface of kindly reserve. These men and their loyal comrades were des-



DAVID CROCKETT.<sup>1</sup>

James B.  
Bonham

<sup>1</sup> From oil-painting by W. H. Huddle.

tinged to make the Alamo as immortal in the calendar of historic heroism as Leonidas and his three hundred had rendered the mountain pass of northern Greece.

It should be borne in mind that, in what followed, most of the events in different places occurred without the knowledge of what was passing elsewhere. Communication was slow and difficult in those days, and the scattered detachments of Texan soldiers fought their battles and met their fate in entire isolation from each other and from the great body of the colonists east of the Colorado.

As we have seen, Urrea reached San Patricio from Matamoros on the night of February 27, and immediately assaulted the town. The Texans, numbering about a hundred, were nearly all killed, a few were captured, and Colonel Johnson and three others escaped and made their way to Refugio. Urrea had nearly a thousand men, and, learning that Grant was absent with a scouting party, he sent out a force to capture him. On March 2, at the *Agua Dulce* Creek, twenty miles from San Patricio, the Mexicans ambushed Grant's party and killed all of them, including Colonel R. C. Morris, except Grant and Reuben R. Brown, who escaped and fled with the horses. They were pursued for several miles, and Grant was finally lamed and shot to pieces by the Mexicans, while Brown was captured and lived to relate the story of the butchery. Urrea, having thus disposed of two leaders in the famous Matamoros expedition, now turned his attention to the remaining one at Goliad. Fannin, having occupied Goliad early in February, fortified the town and began collecting men and supplies for its defence, rechristening old La Bahia as *Fort Defiance*. His means of transportation and subsistence were scarce, and he had great difficulty in maintaining his force. When he heard of the fate of Johnson and Grant and Urrea's advance on Refugio, Fannin sent Captain King with twenty-eight men to remove some families who were at that mission. King reached Refugio on March 12, where he was immediately besieged by Urrea's cavalry and took refuge in the old mission, sending a messenger to Fannin for aid. The message reached Goliad at midnight the same date, and Fannin at once sent off Major Ward with one hundred men to King's relief.

PERIOD III.  
THE  
REVOLUTION

1832  
TO  
1836

Isolated nature of the war movements

Urrea captures San Patricio

Grant killed at Agua Dulce Creek

Fannin at Goliad

Sends King and Ward to Refugio

PERIOD III.  
THE  
REVOLUTION

1832

TO

1836

King's com-  
pany captured  
and shot

Battle at Re-  
fugio Mission.  
Ward escapes

Houston at  
Gonzales. Or-  
ders Fannin to  
retreat

The Texans  
besieged in  
the Alamo,  
February 24,  
1836

Description of  
the Alamo

Ward reached the mission on the 13th, and next day Mexican reinforcements arrived. It was intended to return to Fannin on the 14th, but, hearing of the Mexican increase of force, King took a few men from the mission and went to reconnoitre. He lost his way and wandered around for two days, when his party were all captured and shot. The same morning King left the mission (the 14th), Ward, becoming alarmed by firing in the direction the party had gone, started after them with his command. They came on the enemy, eight hundred strong, and retreated to the mission, where a desperate battle ensued,—the Mexicans losing two hundred killed and wounded. The following night, Ward and his men escaped from the mission and marched to Victoria.

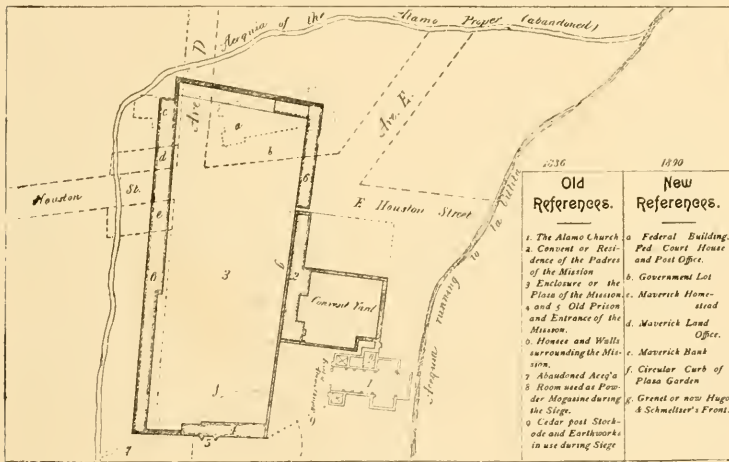
Meanwhile, on March 11, General Houston had reached Gonzales, and the same day sent a despatch to Fannin, at Goliad, to abandon that place, blow up the fort, and retire to Victoria on the Guadalupe. Fannin received this order on the 14th, and at once sent runners after Ward and King, while he prepared to evacuate Fort Defiance. His fatal delay in waiting for the return of his officers and men from Refugio led to the tragedy that overtook his command a few days later.

We return now to the little garrison at Bexar. As has been stated, Santa Anna reached San Antonio with the advance of his army, on February 23. The Texans took refuge in the Alamo Mission, on the east side of the river, driving as they went a herd of some fifty beesves. Santa Anna at once sent a flag of truce and demanded the surrender of the place. Travis answered with a cannon-shot. The blood-red flag of "No quarter to rebels!" was hoisted over the church of San Fernando in the town, and the siege of the Alamo began February 24, 1836. The same day Travis issued and sent to the people a pathetic appeal for help, in which he declared, "I shall never retreat or surrender." The enemy, after losing several men by the Texan rifles, succeeded in erecting a battery three hundred yards south of the entrance to the mission, and another at the powder-house to the southeast. The mission, as then constructed, covered considerable space, and fully garrisoned would have been invincible. It lay along-side the northern angle of the great bend in the river,

PERIOD III.  
THE  
REVOLUTION  
—  
1832  
TO  
1836  
—

Description of  
the Alamo

about two hundred yards or more from the eastern bank and facing obliquely towards the town on the west. There was first the mission church, which is all that now remains, a building of stone, with walls five feet thick, narrow, deeply embrasured windows and heavily barred doors, fronting the west. It was constructed in the form of a cross, with the longer end in front and the arms in the rear, there being two small rooms in front on either side of the entrance. The body of the structure then had no roof, but the two front rooms were closed in, and a room



PLAN OF THE ALAMO.<sup>1</sup>

on the north side towards the rear was roofed in with stone and used as a powder magazine. Adjoining the church on the northwest was the convent yard, about a hundred feet square, enclosed with stone walls sixteen feet high and three feet thick, strengthened by an embankment on the inside half the height of the walls. Along the west side of this yard and beyond to the north ran the row of priests' cells and hospital rooms, built of *adobe*, two stories high, eighteen feet wide, and one hundred and ninety-one feet long. Just west of the convent yard was the main area or quadrangle of the mission, containing two or three

<sup>1</sup> From Corner's "History of San Antonio," by permission.

acres. It was oblong from north to south, being about four hundred and ninety feet long and two hundred feet wide. Its southern end thus projected about sixty feet beyond the south line of the church, and at a distance of about a hundred feet from the front of that building. This large area was enclosed with a stone wall eight feet high and thirty-three inches thick, and along its west side on the inside was a row of buildings or stalls used for various purposes. In the south end of it were some rooms against the wall, used as barracks and prison, and about midway of this side was a gateway or *porte-cochère*, with a room on either side of it, that being the real entrance to the mission. Across the triangular open space in front of the church a stockade of heavy cedar logs had been built, running diagonally from the southeast corner of the large area to the southwest corner of the church, thus protecting the entrance to the latter. On the north side of the convent yard was a sally-port defended by a redoubt. There were two large *acéquias* running around the mission on the west, north, and east sides, with a branch from the larger one entering the main quadrangle, running along its west side and furnishing water to the fort.

For the defence of this extensive fortification Travis had taken one hundred and forty-five men with him into its walls. He had fourteen pieces of artillery. Some of the guns were placed in the church, at its south, east, and north windows, on raised platforms, so as to command the openings. They did but little good there, as the assault of the Mexicans was finally directed to other parts of the mission. Other cannon were stationed at the main entrance to the mission, at the stockade, at the sally-port and redoubt of the convent yard; and it is believed that one of the best guns was mounted on a raised platform near the centre of the large enclosure.

Santa Anna continued to erect batteries on all sides of the mission, and kept up the cannonading from day to day and sometimes at night. Not much damage was done to the fort, except a breach in the northern wall of the large area. No assault was attempted until the final storming. At dawn on March 1, Captain Albert Martin, with thirty-two men from Gonzales, entered the fort. In the last days of February, Travis sent Captain

PERIOD III.  
THE  
REVOLUTION  
—  
1832  
TO  
1836  
—

Description of  
the Alamo

Plan of defence  
by Travis

Santa Anna  
bombards the  
mission

Bonham to Goliad with an appeal to Fannin to come to his aid. Bonham returned on the 3d, bringing the news that Fannin would come. The latter did in fact start on February 28, with three hundred men and four pieces of artillery, but his wagons broke down a few miles out from Goliad, and he abandoned the attempt. On March 3, Travis sent his last message to Texas and the world, and to a friend in Washington County he addressed a pathetic note, in which he said: "Take care of my little boy. If the country should be saved, I may make him a splendid fortune; but if the country should be lost and I should perish, he will have nothing but the proud recollection that he is the son of a man who died for his country."

PERIOD III.  
THE  
REVOLUTION  
—  
1832  
TO  
1836  
—

Travis's last  
message to  
Texas and  
the world

On March 2, Santa Anna's entire army had arrived, and he had not many short of ten thousand men at San Antonio. During the eleven days of the siege, the Texans, by repeated sallies from the walls and by the unerring aim of their rifles, had killed quite a number of the enemy, forcing them to keep at a safe distance. On the 4th, at a council of war held by the Mexican commanders, it was decided to carry the Alamo by storm, the morning of the 6th being selected as the time for the assault.

Santa Anna's  
force during  
the siege

Between midnight and day on that Sunday morning the Mexican infantry was formed into three columns, under the immediate command of General Castrillon. One column was to enter the breach in the northern wall of the large enclosure; the other two were to approach from the south,—one of them to attack the main entrance of the mission, the other to storm the church. The assault was so timed as to reach the walls at daylight. Santa Anna and his staff were stationed south of the mission at the old bridge across the river, surrounded by the regimental bands. At the signal of a single bugle-note the Mexican columns advanced in the dead stillness of the Sabbath dawn. No sound but the tramp of the assaulting host was heard until the guns of the little garrison opened from the fort. Then all the bands at the bridge broke forth in the shrill and terrible strains of the *deguello* (dā-gwāl-yō),—the music of merciless murder. The approach was so rapid that the artillery of the Texans did little or no service. But when the enemy reached the breach on the north they were driven back by the deadly

The final  
assault, March  
6, 1836

Terrible strug-  
gle of the  
Texans

PERIOD III.  
THE  
REVOLUTION

1832  
TO  
1836

Death of  
Travis

No quarter

rifles of the defenders, aided by the cannon that commanded the area from within. The column that attacked the southern gateway was more successful and effected an entrance. The Texans fought with incredible bravery and inflicted terrific slaughter. Travis was probably killed near the northwest angle of the large area, as his body was found lying near the cannon there. After the outer walls were carried by the Mexicans, the garrison sought refuge in the inner buildings, and were killed as they were overpowered. No prisoners were taken and no quarter was asked



SIEGE OF THE ALAMO.

or given. Bowie had been injured by a fall, and was in bed in an upper room in the southwest corner of the convent yard. There he was found and was shot to death, with his smoking pistols in his hands and more than one dead Mexican near his couch. As the heroic men were driven into the barracks and towards the church, the struggle became more furious and desperate. Volleys of musketry were followed by bayonet charges on the part of the enemy, while the Texans fired as rapidly as they could, and then clubbed their muskets or used their bowie knives in hand-to-hand conflicts. Retreat was impossible, and each hero fell where he was brought to bay. The bloodiest struggle occurred in the long barracks or row of priests' cells in

Death of  
Bowie

The desperate  
fight in the  
barracks and  
church



the convent yard, and the dead were piled thick in front of it. Crockett was killed in one of the rooms near the main entrance, on the south side of the large area. His body was found alone, but many a slaughtered Mexican lay around him. Where Bonham died is not known.

The church was the last point taken. The assault upon it had been at first repulsed, but it was finally carried by a terrible effort. Here the few remaining Texans continued the conflict, and, firing from the upper platforms, did fearful execution. Here they were all despatched, and the Alamo was in the hands of Santa Anna's army. In thirty minutes one hundred and eighty-

PERIOD III.  
THE  
REVOLUTION  
—  
1832  
TO  
1836  
—

Last stand  
made in the  
church. Tex-  
ans all slain



THE ALAMO. (Restored.)

two Texans had killed and wounded over five hundred of their foes, and had died to a man with their guns in their hands. And behold the grim irony of their isolation! They fell with the flag of the Constitution of 1824 floating over their heads, while four days before the banner of a free republic had been unfurled on the Brazos!

The defence of the Alamo is unparalleled in the history of desperate and unyielding valor, inspired by the purest and loftiest patriotism. But the most melancholy feature connected with that immortal combat is, that it was a mistaken and fruitless sacrifice of noble human lives. As was said of another marvellous exhibition of heroic courage: "It was glorious, but it was not war!" By nine o'clock the reduction was complete. Santa

The heroic na-  
ture of the  
Texan defence

PERIOD III.  
THE  
REVOLUTION

1832  
10  
1836

Anna then appeared upon the scene, and by his orders the dead bodies of the Texans were piled up in the church and burned. The charred bones and half-consumed bodies were left there, to be collected and buried in the church of San Fernando, a year afterwards, by Colonel John Seguin, mayor of San Antonio.

The news at  
Gonzales

When General Houston reached Gonzales on March 11, the news of the fall of the Alamo had arrived there, and a scene of grief and terror was enacted. Women and children, many of them widows and orphans by the butchery at San Antonio, were wild with fear of the approaching Mexicans. It was then that the universal panic began which, spreading afterwards as Houston retired to the east, was known among the old settlers as the "Runaway Scrape."

The "Run-  
away Scrape."

Character of  
troops at  
Gonzales

General Houston found at Gonzales about three hundred militia, and a hundred more came in soon. But these were raw troops, unorganized and incapable of resisting Santa Anna's large invading army, now ready to proceed to the interior, to say nothing of Urrea's thousand men then on the Guadalupe. Houston decided to retire to the Colorado, expecting Fannin, to whom we have seen he sent a peremptory order on the 11th, to join him with the force then at Goliad. Fannin delayed his departure from the latter place until the 18th, when he learned that Refugio had been captured and that Ward had fled towards Victoria. He at once prepared to leave Goliad, dismantling his fort, burying such of the cannon as could not be taken, and on the 19th he set out for Victoria. He had about three hundred and fifty men, ten pieces of artillery, and some ox wagons. His line of march lay over the prairie towards the Coletto Creek, ten miles from town. In the afternoon he halted to rest in a depression of the prairie, about three miles from the Coletto. This was an unfortunate delay and was opposed by Fannin's officers. After an hour's stop, as he started to move on, Urrea's cavalry came in sight and rode between the Texans and the creek, while a heavy infantry force approached from the rear, completely surrounding Fannin's men. Undismayed, he prepared for battle. The wagons were massed in the centre, a hollow square three lines deep was formed around them, and the artillery was placed at the corners. The Mexicans advanced rapidly and

Fannin leaves  
Goliad for Vic-  
toria, March  
19, 1836

Is attacked by  
Urrea on the  
Coletto

fiercely, but were driven off by the Texan rifles. Charge after charge was repelled by the gallant square, and dead men and riderless horses soon covered the prairie. There was no water to sponge the cannon, and they became useless early in the action. Night came on, and the Mexicans drew around the little band, out of range, while a hundred Campeachy Indians crawled through the long grass and kept up a murderous fire upon the Texans until dark. Then the flashes from their guns enabled Fannin's marksmen to silence them, and many a dead Indian was afterwards found with a rifle-bullet in his head. The night that followed was one of dense darkness and deep gloom in the Texan camp. There was no water, and it was discovered that the provisions had been left at Goliad. There were sixty wounded men whose injuries and sufferings could not be relieved, and the red camp-fires of the watchful enemy gleamed all around them in the distance, while the shrill cries of Urrea's sentinels broke the stillness of the dreary darkness. The proposition to retreat was discussed and rejected, because the men would not leave their wounded comrades. At daylight, Urrea received three or four hundred fresh troops with two pieces of artillery. The battle commenced again, and the enemy's cannon did such deadly work upon the men and wagons that it was decided to surrender if honorable terms were offered. Fannin opposed it, but he and three officers met a like number from the Mexican lines. Written articles of capitulation were drawn up and signed by both sides, and the Texans laid down their arms. By the terms agreed upon the men were to be treated as prisoners of war, the officers were to have their arms and property restored to them, and they were all to be paroled and sent to the United States as soon as arrangements could be made for that purpose. This was the distinct understanding, as embodied in the written instrument and as stated by the Mexican officers at the time. This battle is known as the *battle of the Coleta* among the Texans, and as that of the *Encinal* or *Perdido* by the Mexicans. The loss on Fannin's side was seven killed and sixty wounded, some of whom died; while the Mexicans lost between two and three hundred killed and wounded, they having about fifteen hundred men in battle. The prisoners were marched back to Goliad and

PERIOD III.  
THE  
REVOLUTION

1832  
TO  
1836

A dismal night

The battle con-  
tinues on the  
20th

Fannin sur-  
renders under  
written arti-  
cles of capitu-  
lation

Losses in the  
battle

PERIOD III.  
THE  
REVOLUTION

1832

TO

1836

Santa Anna  
orders the exe-  
cution of the  
prisoners

guarded in the old church of Espiritu Santo. On the 25th, Major Miller and eighty-two volunteers from the United States, who had been captured at Copano, were brought to Goliad ; and on the same day Major Ward and his men, who had surrendered at Victoria, were also brought in. There were thus in the hands of Urrea about four hundred and forty-three prisoners. Several days passed in apparent hope among the Texans. Arrangements appeared to be in progress for sending them to Copano and thence to New Orleans. But on March 26, Urrea being absent, Santa Anna sent an order from San Antonio to Lieutenant Portilla that the prisoners should all be instantly shot. This he claimed to do under an act of his congress, dictated by himself, requiring all rebels taken with arms in their hands to be executed as pirates.

The massacre  
of Goliad,  
March 27, 1836

On Palm Sunday, March 27, 1836, the Texans were marched out in squads and shot like dogs, those who fled being pursued and murdered without mercy. Miller's command was spared, and the physicians and attendants to the number of eight were also omitted from the execution. Señora Alvarez, a humane Mexican lady,—the same who saved Reuben Brown's life at San Patricio,—secreted and saved two or three officers ; while in the wholesale butchery twenty-seven men succeeded in getting away from the massacre. Three hundred and thirty were victims of this cruel and treacherous slaughter. Fannin and Ward were shot separately from the men, and the latter died denouncing his murderers. Nearly all the Goliad prisoners were volunteers from the United States. Fannin himself was originally from Georgia, and Ward had but lately come with his battalion from that State. Among those who perished were the soldiers composing the New Orleans *Grays*, under Captain Pettes ; the *Mustangs* of Kentucky, under Captain Duval ; a company from Louisville, Kentucky, and Huntsville, Tennessee, under Captain Bradford ; Captain King's company from Georgia ; and the *Red Rovers* from Alabama, under Captain or Doctor Shackelford. These were in addition to Ward's battalion.

The survivors

The prisoners  
nearly all vol-  
unteers from  
the United  
States

Disheartening  
effect of these  
tragedies on  
the Texans

The campaign of 1836 had thus far been one of fearful tragedy to the young republic, and the feelings of horror and terror produced by its bloody work drove the colonists in panic-stricken

flight towards Eastern Texas. But the rage and resentment that possessed the gathering troops under Houston nerved them to such a pitch of excitement that it was with difficulty they could be restrained from sacrificing their army in vain resistance against the approaching foe. A time came, however, and right speedily, when their valor and vengeance should find satisfaction in a decisive and glorious victory over the butcher of the Alamo and Goliad.

PERIOD III.  
THE  
REVOLUTION  
—  
1832  
TO  
1836  
—

### QUESTIONS.

WHEN and where was the first Constitutional Convention held in Texas? How many delegates composed it, and give the names of the leading members? Who were president and secretary of the convention? What did the convention do on March 2, 1836? Who prepared the *Declaration of Independence*? What did the convention do in regard to the command of the army? What district did Houston represent in this convention? Describe what provisions were made in regard to military service, land bounties, etc. When was a permanent constitution for the Republic of Texas adopted by the convention, and after what was it modelled? What officers of government did it provide for? What provision was made for a government until an election should be held? When was the constitution to be ratified by the people and permanent officers elected? What was the temporary government called? Give the names of the officers of the government *ad interim*, and how were they elected? When did the convention adjourn? Where did the government *ad interim* establish its headquarters, and when did General Houston start for the west? Describe the military situation at the beginning of the campaign of 1836. Who was William B. Travis? Who was James Bowie? Who was David Crockett? Who was James B. Bonham? Describe the characters of each of these men. Where were they at that time? What did they afterwards do? What is necessary to be borne in mind in reference to the events that followed in that campaign? Describe what occurred at San Patricio and Agua Dulce Creek. When did those events occur, and who took part in them? When did Fannin occupy Goliad, and what did he do there? What did he call his fort? What occurred in regard to sending relief to Refugio Mission? Describe the subsequent events in relation to the commands of King and Ward. When did General Houston reach Gonzales, and what message did he send to Colonel Fannin? Why did Fannin not obey this order, and to what did his delay lead? What did the Texans at San Antonio do on the arrival of Santa Anna at that place? What did Santa Anna do, and what reply did the Texans make? What then occurred? On what date was this? Describe

PERIOD III.  
THE  
REVOLUTION  
1832  
TO  
1836

the movements and acts of Travis and of the enemy after this. Give a description of the *Alamo Mission* as it then existed, and make a sketch of its ground plan. What part of it now remains? Describe the church or chapel as it was in 1836. Describe the surrounding buildings, enclosures, etc. How many men had Colonel Travis to defend the Alamo, and what arrangements did he make for the defence? What did Santa Anna continue to do, and with what results? What occurred in the last days of February and on March 1? When did Bonham return to the fort, and with what news? What effort did Fannin make to go to the rescue of the Alamo, and how came he to fail? When did Travis send his last message, and what letter did he write about his little boy? When did Santa Anna's entire army arrive, and how many men had he then? What losses had he sustained? When was it decided to storm the Alamo? What date was fixed for the storming? Describe the beginning of the assault, giving the plan of the Mexican attack. Describe the opening scenes of the battle. What occurred at the breach in the north wall? What, at the southern gate-way? How did the Texans fight? Where was Travis killed? When the outer walls were carried, where did the Texans retire, and describe what happened there? Where and how was Bowie killed? Describe the retreat to the inner works, and the character of the struggle. Where was the bloodiest fighting? Where were Crockett and Bonham killed? Where was the last stand made by the Texans? Describe the final struggle and slaughter. How long did the storming of the Alamo last? How many men had the Texans, and how did they die? How many Mexicans were killed? What flag floated over the Alamo at the time, and what can you say of this incident? What may be said of the defence of the Alamo? What was done with the dead bodies of the Texans, and by whose order? When and by whom were their remains afterwards buried, and where? What effect did the news of the fall of the Alamo produce at Gonzales? What was the "Runaway Scrape"? How many and what character of troops were collected at Gonzales? What did General Houston decide to do, and what did he expect? What was Fannin doing meanwhile at Goliad? When did he finally decide to leave that place, and what steps did he take in that direction? When did he finally leave, and for what place? Describe his movements and what occurred, until the battle began with Urrea's troops. How did Fannin arrange his men, and what was the progress of the battle until night? Describe the scenes, events, and surroundings of the night that followed. Why did the Texans not retreat that night? What occurred on the Mexican side at daylight next morning? What was the result of the battle when renewed? What was decided by the Texans, and what was Fannin's position on that question? By whom were the terms of surrender agreed upon, and what were those terms? Were they verbal or written? What is that battle called? What were the losses on both sides? When did it occur? How many Mexicans were in the fight? How many Texans were taken prisoners, and what

was done with them after the battle? What other Texan prisoners were brought to Goliad at that time, and how many Texans in all were then in Urrea's hands? What happened for several days? What order was received on March 26, and by whom was it executed? When did the massacre of the Texan prisoners at Goliad occur? Describe the deed. How many were shot, how many escaped or were spared? What noble woman saved several Texans? How were Fannin and Ward executed? Where were most of these men from? Give the names of the troops who thus perished. What had been the character and results of the campaign of 1836 thus far? What effect did these things have on the Texans?

### Topical Analysis.

1. The first Constitutional Convention in Texas, at Washington on the Brazos, March 1, 1836. Adopts a Declaration of Independence for the Republic of Texas, frames a constitution, organizes a government *ad interim*, and provides for the ratification of the constitution by the people, and the election of a permanent government. Provisions for an army.

2. The campaign of 1836. The military situation in the west, at Bexar, San Patricio, Refugio, Goliad, and Gonzales. General Houston's plan of campaign.

3. The heroes of the Alamo,—Travis, Bowie, Crockett, and Bonham.

4. Fannin at Goliad. His delay in obeying Houston's orders, by reason of attempting to relieve King and Ward at Refugio. Urrea's advance on San Patricio. The battle at Refugio Mission. Capture and killing of Dr. Grant at Agua Dulce, and slaughter of King's command. Escape of Ward.

5. The siege and fall of the Alamo. The desperate and heroic struggle of Travis and his men.

6. The battle of the Coleto, and the massacre of Texan prisoners at Goliad. Disastrous results of the campaign thus far.

### Geography.

Study the geography of Western Texas between the Colorado and the San Antonio Rivers, and in the neighborhood of San Antonio, Goliad, San Patricio, Refugio, Victoria, and Gonzales, so as to understand the exact locations and relative situations of those places. Study also the original plan of the Alamo and its location.

### Parallel Readings.

Scarff's "Comprehensive History of Texas" (1897), Vol. I.; Brown's "History of Texas;" Williams's "Sam Houston and the War for Independence;" Corner's "History of San Antonio de Bexar;" Crane's "Life of Sam Houston."

## CHAPTER XIV.

### General Houston's Retreat; Battle of San Jacinto; Close of the War.

PERIOD III.  
THE  
REVOLUTION  
1832  
TO  
1836

Santa Anna's  
plan of cam-  
paign

He leaves  
Bexar

Houston's re-  
treat to the  
Colorado

**A**FTER the barbarities at San Antonio and Goliad, Santa Anna seemed to think that he had practically conquered Texas, and that he had only to complete the subjugation by easy stages. He divided his army into three columns. The first, under Gaona, was to march to Nacogdoches by the old Comanche trail and the upper crossing of the Trinity; the second, under Sesma, was to advance to Bastrop on the Colorado, and thence to San Felipe; and the third, under Urrea, after scouring the country between Victoria and Galveston, was ordered to cross the Colorado at Matagorda and march to Brazoria. The point of concentration of the second and third columns was evidently at the mouth of the Brazos, or perhaps at Anahuac, whence it was expected the Mexican president and his victorious troops could embark for Vera Cruz. Santa Anna himself was to personally direct the operations of the army of occupation, and for that purpose he set out with Filisola from Bexar, on March 31, accompanied by two battalions and five pieces of artillery, to join Sesma's column.

Meanwhile, General Houston left Gonzales in flames, on the night of March 13, with about three hundred men and a train of fleeing and homeless women and children. The weather was wretched; the rain poured in torrents, the roads were quagmires, the prairies were trackless seas of water, the streams were swollen and swift, and the dull and lowering skies covered everything like a pall of gloom and despair. The "Runaway Scrape" had begun in earnest, and the frightened colonists, seeing in Houston's retreat and the removal of the government to Harrisburg the sure signs of Mexican conquest of the whole country, fled in wild confusion, spreading dismay and dread everywhere they

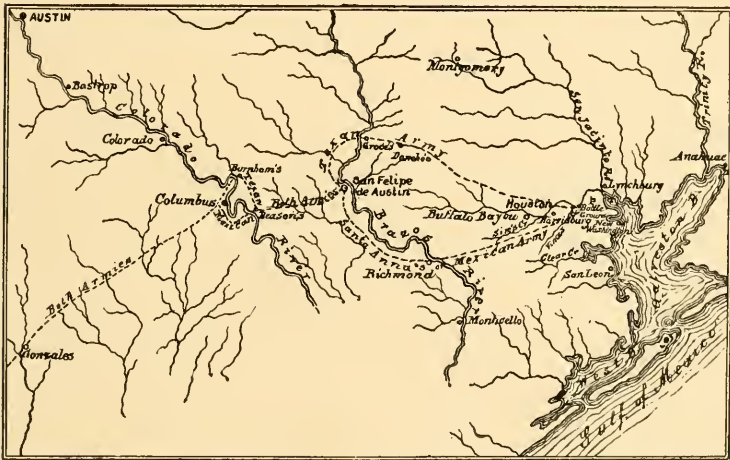


came. The wretchedness and desperation of those times were frightful, and the women and children suffered most. The greatest terror was caused by some cowardly deserters, who left the army and ran through the country, even to Eastern Texas, circulating the most outrageous accounts of the size of Santa Anna's forces and the retreat of the Texan troops.

Houston reached Burnham's Crossing on the Colorado, near the present town of Columbus, on March 17, and at once sent William T. Austin to the mouth of the Brazos for artillery. It

PERIOD III.  
THE  
REVOLUTION  
—  
1832  
TO  
1836  
—

Texan army at  
the Colorado



MAP SHOWING ROUTE OF THE ARMIES FROM GONZALES TO SAN JACINTO.

was his purpose to make the Colorado his line of defence, expecting reinforcements from Eastern Texas and some news of Fannin. On the 19th, Houston crossed to the east bank of the river and marched down stream a few miles to Beason's Crossing, where he remained until the 26th. On the day the Texans left Burnham's, Sesma and Woll reached the Colorado with about seven hundred men, and stopped on the west side two miles above Beason's. Houston then had about twelve hundred men and could have easily defeated Sesma, but he waited for his artillery and for information from Goliad. On the 25th the story of the battle of the Coeto reached the Colorado, and that event had left Urrea free to join Sesma or to march to the rear of the

Mexicans  
reach the  
Colorado

PERIOD III.  
THE  
REVOLUTION

1832  
TO  
1836

Houston re-  
tires to the  
Brazos

Dissatisfac-  
tion at his  
course

At the Brazos

San Felipe  
burned

Santa Anna  
concentrates  
his army on  
the Brazos

Texan army by a flank movement lower down the river. A battle with Sesma at that point would also no doubt have concentrated the entire Mexican force on the Colorado, and this would have brought on the decisive struggle farther from the base of supplies and troops in the settlements of the east than was deemed prudent. A victory would not have been final and a defeat would have been destructive. At any rate, for these or other reasons, General Houston decided to retire to the Brazos, and he began his retreat on the evening of March 26. His action provoked great criticism and almost mutiny in his army. The soldiers were anxious to fight, and they knew they could whip the enemy just in front of them, and to fall back under the circumstances was considered by many to be the height of folly, not to say cowardice. Some of the officers shared this feeling, notably Captains Mosely Baker and Wylie Martin, who then and afterwards were unsparing in their condemnation of General Houston. But he pursued his own course, reaching the Brazos at San Felipe on the 27th. From there he marched up the river, and this strange and unexplained movement excited open rebellion on the part of Baker and Martin, and they refused to go. Baker, with one hundred and twenty men, stayed at San Felipe, while Martin took his company below to guard the crossing at Fort Bend.

The rains and floods continued, and the experiences of the troops in the Brazos bottoms were dreary indeed. Houston reached Groce's Ferry, and remained there and at Donoho's, both near the present town of Hempstead, until April 14. On March 29, Captain Baker had burned the town of San Felipe, as he always claimed, by Houston's orders. In the first days of April, Vice-President Zavala and Secretary of War Rusk joined the army.

While the Texans were thus scattered up and down the Brazos, Santa Anna was gathering all his forces towards the same locality. He countermanded Gaona's march to Nacogdoches and directed him to join Sesma, who had advanced from the Colorado to San Felipe. Gaona reached the latter place on April 17, having been lost in coming from Bastrop. Urrea had also been ordered to come from west of the Colorado to join his

forces with Sesma, Gaona, Tolsa, and Woll on the Brazos, where a final victory was expected. But when Santa Anna reached San Felipe in person on April 7, and found that Houston had gone up the river, he thought the Texan army had concluded to get out of his way and give him free course to overrun the country. He sent word to Urrea to proceed on his original route to Matagorda, and, leaving Sesma to await Gaona's delayed arrival, he took about one thousand men and one cannon and tried to cross the Brazos. Baker was still at San Felipe and gallantly disputed the passage, so that Santa Anna went below and effected a crossing at Fort Bend, in spite of Martin's defence there. Pushing on down the river and through the bottoms, he reached Harrisburg on the 15th, whence the government had barely escaped towards Galveston Island. He burned the town on the 16th, and marched to the town of New Washington, on Galveston Bay, where President Burnet and family were just leaving in a boat in full view of the enemy, and escaped unharmed because Almonté would not permit the soldiers to fire on account of the ladies.

Learning of Santa Anna's movements from his scouts, on the 14th Houston left Donoho's to follow him. Baker had rejoined the army, but Martin's conduct was such that he was sent to the Trinity to guard the families there against Indians. It was just as the little army was leaving the Brazos that there came to them two cannon, the first artillery they had possessed in this campaign,—the generous gift of the citizens of Cincinnati,—known afterwards as the "Twin Sisters," and used effectively at San Jacinto. Santa Anna was now separated from his army, and had placed himself in a trap by entering the narrow peninsula below Harrisburg, into which the Texan army now hurried to catch and hold him fast.

Buffalo Bayou was reached on the 18th. Deaf Smith brought in a captured courier with despatches, from which it was rendered certain that Santa Anna was in front of them. Houston made the men a speech

PERIOD III.  
THE  
REVOLUTION

1832

TO

1836

Crosses the  
river

Burns Har-  
risburg

Houston pre-  
pares to fol-  
low him



ERASTUS SMITH.

PERIOD III.  
THE  
REVOLUTION

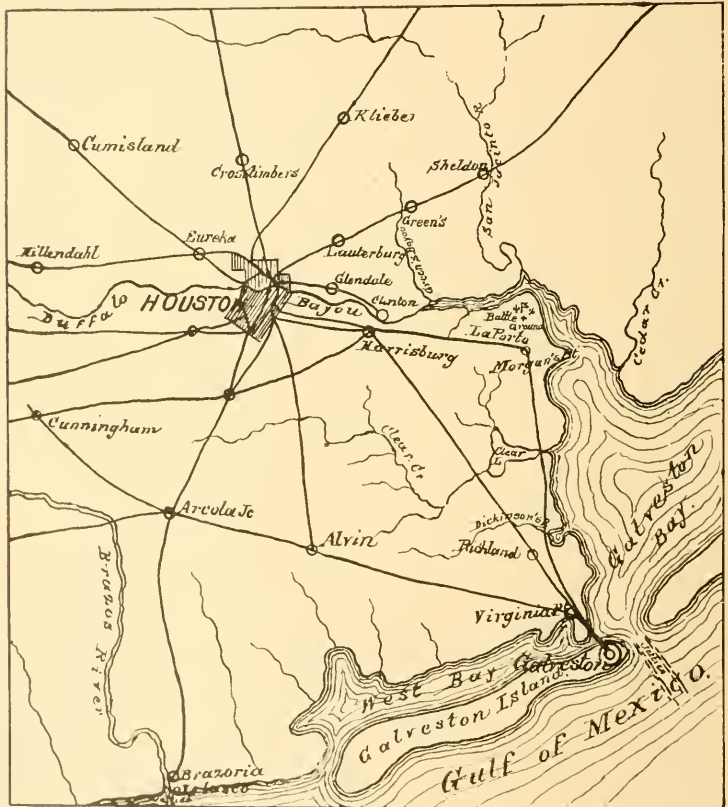
1832

TO

1836

which set them wild with enthusiasm and filled their souls with righteous vengeance, as he bade them "Remember the Alamo! Remember Goliad!"

On the 19th, by rafts and in rickety boats, the army was crossed over the Bayou two miles below Harrisburg, marched



MODERN MAP OF REGION NEAR SAN JACINTO BATTLE-GROUND.

nearly all night, and at sunrise on the 20th they were halted on the borders of the heroic field of San Jacinto. The scene of this encampment was picturesque and beautiful. In the rear lay the deep and sluggish waters of Buffalo Bayou, skirted by groves of live-oaks, whose vivid green was sobered by the soft

gray moss that hung in festoons from the giant trunks and spreading limbs ; in front, for two miles, stretched the rolling surface of a fertile prairie, covered with tall, waving grass, and interspersed with small clumps of trees ; while beyond this lay the Gulf marshes of the San Jacinto Bay, treacherous and miry, and covered with a thick growth of rank verdure and swampy timber. The wet and late spring was now ripening into early summer, the atmosphere was soft and balmy, the trees and grass were fresh and fragrant, and the whole scene was full of those sights and sounds that make life sweet and hope strong in human breasts. Almost immediately in front of the Texan camp there were two small groves of live-oaks, a few hundred yards distant ; while the whole ground in front for a length of five hundred yards rose above the level of the camp, and to the top of this rise there ran a skirt of timber from the Bayou, about midway, reaching to near the top where the level of the prairie began.

Santa Anna was then at New Washington on the upper arm of Galveston Bay, and his route of escape by Lynch's Ferry would necessarily bring him past the Texan camp. The Mexicans proceeded towards the Ferry on the way to Anahuac, on the 20th, and coming upon a part of the Texan camp soon afterwards, a sharp skirmish ensued, after which the enemy withdrew towards the San Jacinto and camped. In the afternoon, Colonel Sidney Sherman, with a small force of cavalry, went out to reconnoitre, and became engaged with the Mexican infantry, which for a while seemed about to develop into a battle, but the Texans withdrew successfully. In this action Mirabeau B. Lamar first displayed his bravery and skill, which resulted in his being placed in command of the cavalry next day. The Mexican army spent the night in extending their lines and erecting fortifications of packs, and baggage, with an opening in the centre for the artillery.

Nothing occurred on the 21st until the afternoon. It was a bright and beautiful day, and the two armies lay in expectant

PERIOD III.  
THE  
REVOLUTION  
—  
1832  
TO  
1836  
—

Texan camp



SIDNEY SHERMAN.

Cavalry fight  
on April 20, 1836

Cos brings re-  
inforcements  
to Santa Anna

PERIOD III.  
THE  
REVOLUTION  
—  
1832  
TO  
1836  
—

Vince's bridge

Houston's  
plan of attack

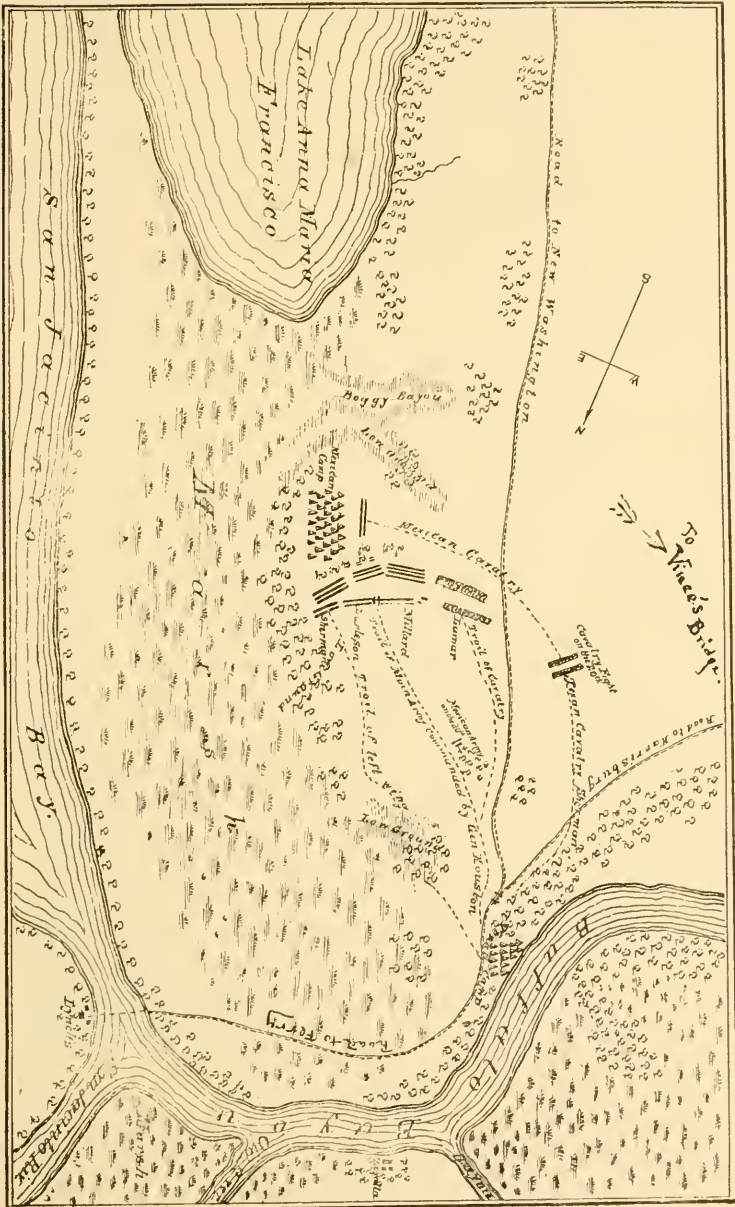
The Mexican  
position

The battle.  
April 21, 1836

impatience waiting for the result. At nine o'clock in the morning, General Cos arrived from the Brazos, bringing to Santa Anna five hundred of Sesma's choice troops, which increased the Mexican force to about fifteen hundred men. They came by *Vince's bridge*, over an arm of the Bayou by that name, and Houston at once sent Deaf Smith to destroy the bridge, so as to prevent any further reinforcements from that direction, or the escape of the enemy by that route. At half-past three o'clock in the afternoon, General Houston paraded his troops in their position, and arranged to attack the Mexican camp. The location of the Texan camp, with the protection given by the timber and the nature of the ground as before described, enabled Houston to make his dispositions for the attack without being seen by the enemy. He divided his army into four divisions. On the extreme right the cavalry was placed, under command of Colonel Lamar; next towards the left came the infantry, under Millard; then the "Twin Sisters," under Hockley; Colonel Burleson with the first regiment occupied the centre; and the second regiment, under Sidney Sherman, formed the left wing. The troops advanced to the edge of the projecting neck of timber at the top of the rise in front of their camps, while the cavalry went to the front to draw the attention of the enemy. Santa Anna's cavalry was on his left wing, his infantry and artillery in the centre, behind fortifications of boxes and baggage, while his extreme right had been extended so as to reach the timber along the San Jacinto.

The Texan army had no band, its only martial music being a drum and fife, and to the air of "Will you come to the bower?" it formed its line of battle. At four o'clock the command "Forward" was given along the whole line. The men advanced rapidly, and Houston had difficulty in making them hold their fire until near enough to do execution. When at point-blank range, the two cannon were wheeled, and poured their contents into the barricades of the Mexican centre, while the Texan soldiers dashed headlong upon the startled camp, delivering a destructive volley at close quarters. Santa Anna's army seemed to be taken by surprise. He himself was asleep in his tent, and the soldiers were lying about in confusion. But

PERIOD III.  
THE  
REVOLUTION  
1832  
TO  
1836



THE BATTLE-FIELD OF SAN JACINTO.

PERIOD III.  
THE  
REVOLUTION

1832  
TO  
1836

Mexican de-  
feat

when those terrible words—"Remember Goliad! Remember the Alamo!"—smote on their ears, they endeavored to form in line and stem the Texan charge. It was useless. Castrillon was shot dead while trying to rally his men. Santa Anna in terrified haste mounted a swift horse and fled towards Vince's bridge, now destroyed. The Texans were too eager to reload often, and, in their furious haste to wreak vengeance for past outrages, they clubbed their muskets and drew their bowie knives. At first no quarter was given. The route was complete and the slaughter terrific. The intensity of the rage and violence of the victorious colonists were something fearful. After the battle, many dead Mexicans were found into whose heads the heavy knives had been struck with such force as to shatter their skulls like panes of glass. The few Texans who were injured received their wounds from the first scattering volley, fired by the enemy as the barricades were reached and overthrown.

The rout and  
pursuit

The fugitives ran in wild terror over the prairie and into the boggy marshes of the San Jacinto, and were pursued and killed or driven into the mud and water and drowned. In thirty minutes it was all over. The inhuman butchery of Travis, Bowie, Crockett, Ward, and Fannin had been terribly avenged, but not without regard to the usages of civilized war. Almonté rallied about four hundred men and formally surrendered, their lives and rights as prisoners being respected. But six hundred and thirty Mexicans lay dead on the field, two hundred and eight were wounded, and seven hundred and thirty prisoners were taken, a very few having escaped, most of whom were afterwards captured, including Generals Santa Anna and Cos, Colonel Almonté, and several other officers. Large quantities of arms, army stores, camp equipage and mules and horses were also taken, and eighteen thousand one hundred and eighty-four dollars in money, three thousand dollars of which were at once voted to the navy. The number of men engaged on the Texan side in the battle of San Jacinto was seven hundred and forty-three, and their loss was six killed and twenty-five wounded. General Houston was painfully and seriously wounded, his ankle being shattered by a ball in the first volley fired by the Mexi-

Mexican  
losses in the  
battle

Texan losses



cans. That night was one of unbounded joy and uproarious celebration. The men were simply wild with the intoxication of victory and the sense of freedom at last gained, after so much suffering, such tragic losses, such sickening suspense, and oft-times despair.

Next day, James A. Sylvester, a sergeant in Wood's company, with six others, was scouting for prisoners on Vince's Bayou. Sylvester, while separated from the others, came on a man concealed in the tall grass. He was dressed like a common soldier, but wore a fine linen shirt with studs in the bosom, which convinced Sylvester that he was in disguise. When the others came up, they started to camp with the prisoner, a distance of eight miles, the captive walking part of the way and riding behind Joel W. Robinson the remainder. When they reached the Texan camp, Sylvester conducted the strange man to where General Houston was lying under a tree, talking with General Rusk. As the party passed some Mexican prisoners, the latter exclaimed in Spanish, "The President," "General Santa Anna." This was the first intimation of his identity. As soon as Sylvester reached Houston and Rusk, Santa Anna stepped



MOSES AUSTIN BRYAN.

forward, and with dignity stated his name and rank, and demanded the treatment of a prisoner of war. A conversation of nearly two hours ensued. At first Moses Austin Bryan, a youth about grown, acted as interpreter; then General John A. Wharton and Vice-President Zavala came up, and the latter interpreted for a while, when General Rusk asked Santa Anna if he would like to have Almonté sent for, to which the prisoner gladly assented, and Almonté translated the greater part of the interview. After the first exchange of courtesies between Houston and Santa Anna, General Rusk did most of the talking on the part of the Texans. A warm discussion was had between

PERIOD III.  
THE  
REVOLUTION  
—  
1832  
TO  
1836  
—

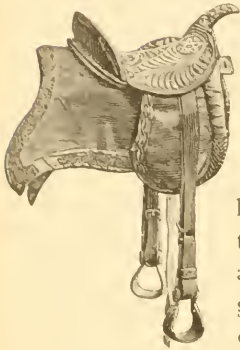
Capture of  
Santa Anna



JOEL W. ROBINSON.

His interview  
with Houston  
and Rusk

PERIOD III.  
THE  
REVOLUTION  
—  
1832  
TO  
1836  
—



SANTA ANNA'S SADDLE.

Armistice  
agreed upon

him and the Mexican commander as to the massacre of Fannin's men, the responsibility for which Santa Anna denied, but did not dispute Urrea's treaty with Fannin. At last Santa Anna said he wanted to end the war and would order Filisola to retire from Texas with the army, to which Rusk replied that Filisola would not obey him. The prisoner said his officers and men would obey any order he might issue. "Then," said Rusk, "order them to surrender." With great dignity and spirit Santa Anna responded: "I am but a single Mexican, and you can do with me as you please; but I will do nothing that would be disgraceful to me or my nation." The captive president was much exhausted, mentally and physically, and asked for opium, which was given him. He finally addressed a note to General Filisola, directing him to retire to San Antonio, and to order Gaona to do the same, while Urrea should retreat to Victoria, and all hostilities should be suspended until further orders, pending an armistice which had been agreed upon between him and Generals Rusk and Houston. These orders were at once sent off to the Mexican commander, and the war practically ceased.

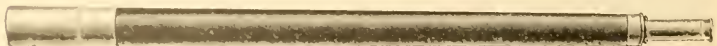
Treaty of  
peace

Changes in  
the Texas  
army and  
government

As soon as the news of the victory reached Galveston Island, President Burnet and his Cabinet came to the camp on the San Jacinto, reaching there April 28. The outline of a treaty of peace had already been drawn up by Rusk and Houston, and was submitted to Burnet. On May 5, General Houston was granted leave of absence to go to New Orleans for treatment of his wound, and Rusk was appointed to the com-



SANTA  
ANNA'S  
CANE.



SANTA ANNA'S FIELD-GLASS.

mand of the army, while Colonel M. B. Lamar was made secretary of war. Lamar and the secretary of the navy, Robert

Potter, were opposed to treating with Santa Anna, holding him to be a miscreant outside the pale of civilized warfare, and entitled only to be shot as a murderer. A violent controversy arose as to the standing and treatment to be accorded the prisoner, which did not end without further serious trouble extending over several months. But on May 14, 1836, a treaty was finally signed between Santa Anna and David G. Burnet, as presidents of their respective republics, by the terms of which Santa Anna pledged himself never again to take up arms against Texas, and to use his influence to end the war; all hostilities should cease on land and water, and the Mexican troops must immediately evacuate Texas; all property should be respected, captured property to be restored; and all prisoners held by the Mexicans must be exchanged for an equal number of Mexicans held by the Texans. On the same date a secret treaty was made, by which Santa Anna was to use all his influence in Mexico to secure a recognition of Texan independence and the establishment of the boundary at the Rio Grande. The government *ad interim* had established itself at Velasco on May 8, and the treaties were executed at that port. The Mexican army, amounting in all to about seven thousand troops, continued its retreat to the Rio Grande, and in the early part of June they all retired beyond that river.

Meanwhile, great numbers of volunteers were constantly arriving from the United States, and the enthusiasm produced by the victory of San Jacinto brought troops from Eastern Texas; so, that when the enemy's last column crossed into Mexico, there were enough men in the recruited Texan army to have driven out the invaders had they delayed their departure.

In following the exciting operations of the army on land in the campaign of 1835-36, it must not be forgotten that Texas also had a small and efficient navy in the Gulf. Early in the year 1836, the government succeeded in procuring three armed vessels,—the *Invincible*, the *Brutus*, and the *Independence*,—which did valuable service in destroying Mexican commerce and securing supplies for the army. Other small vessels were after-

PERIOD III.  
THE  
REVOLUTION  
—  
1832  
TO  
1836  
—

Terms of the  
treaty, May 14,  
1836



THOMAS J. RUSK.

Mexicans  
leave Texas

Arrival of  
volunteers

The Texas  
navy

PERIOD III.  
THE  
REVOLUTION

1832  
TO  
1836

wards added, and the Texan navy was an important factor in some of the events that followed under the Republic.

Having declared and achieved by the test of heroic battle her sovereign independence, the new Republic prepared to assume her place among the nations of the world, and to maintain a government suited to the needs and capacities of her great territory and her growing population.

### QUESTIONS.

WHAT plan of campaign did Santa Anna adopt for the further conquest of Texas, after the fall of the Alamo and the massacre at Goliad? At what point did he intend to centre and complete his final campaign? When did he leave Bexar, and with what general and forces? When and under what circumstances did General Houston leave Gonzales? Describe the condition of the weather, roads, and surroundings. Describe the "Runaway Scrape," and its progress. Who caused a great part of this general panic? When and at what point did Houston reach the Colorado River? What did he do there, and what were his plans? Describe his movements on the Colorado. When did the Mexicans reach that river, and under what officers? How many men had Houston at that point, and explain why he did not fight the Mexicans then and there? What did Houston decide to do, and what effect did his conduct at that time have upon the officers and men? When did he reach the Brazos, and what disposition was made of the Texan army at that river? Where did Houston go with the main body of the army, and what were the experiences of the troops on the Brazos? When and by whom was the town of San Felipe burned? Who joined the Texan army on the Brazos, and when? What was Santa Anna doing meanwhile? Explain the movements of the several divisions of the Mexican army. What did Santa Anna think and do? Who prevented his crossing the river at San Felipe, and where did he finally cross? Where did he then go, and describe what happened at those places? Describe Houston's plans and movements as soon as he heard of Santa Anna's course. What gift did the Texan army receive at this time? What was Santa Anna's situation at this juncture? When did the Texans reach Buffalo Bayou, and describe their subsequent movements until they reached the field of San Jacinto? Describe the scene and surroundings of the Texan camp at the latter place. Where was Santa Anna then? Describe his movements, and the cavalry fight on April 20. Who distinguished himself in that action? What did the Mexicans do that night? What occurred in the forenoon of the 21st? What reinforcements did the Mexicans receive? How did

they come? What did Houston at once do, and for what purpose? What occurred at three o'clock in the afternoon? How did Houston arrange his troops for the attack, and give the names and disposition of the Texan troops? How did they advance? How was the Mexican army placed? Describe the *battle of San Jacinto*, giving the several events in its progress. What can you say of the impatience and violence of the Texans? What became of the Mexicans after the rout began? What did Colonel Almonté do? What were the Mexican losses in killed, wounded, and captured, and who were included among the captives? What property was also captured by the Texans? How many men had the Texans in this battle, and what was their loss? Who was wounded on the Texan side? What occurred that night? Describe the circumstances of the capture of Santa Anna. Describe the interview of Santa Anna with Houston and Rusk when he was brought into camp, giving the substance of what was said, the persons present and participating, etc. What was Santa Anna asked to do, and what did he reply? What did he finally do towards ending the war? Where was the Texan government at that time, and what did its officers do when they heard of the victory at San Jacinto? What treaty was outlined, and by whom? What changes occurred in the army and cabinet? What controversy arose in regard to Santa Anna, and what position did Colonel Lamar and Secretary Potter take in the matter? When and by whom was the final treaty of peace signed, and what were the terms of that treaty? What secret treaty was made at the same time? Where were these treaties signed, and why at that place? When did the Mexican army finally leave Texas? What had occurred during this period in regard to the Texan army? What can you say of the Texas navy during the war for Texan independence? What did the new Republic now prepare to do?

### Topical Analysis.

1. Santa Anna's plan of campaign for the further conquest of Texas, the disposition of his army, and his movements in the advance from San Antonio.
2. Houston's retreat from Gonzales to the Colorado, and then to the Brazos. The reasons for these movements, and the criticism and opposition they caused in the Texan army.
3. Santa Anna's advance across the Brazos and down to Harrisburg and New Washington. The situation this movement placed him in, cut off from the main body of his army and liable to be hemmed in on a peninsula.
4. Houston's rapid march from the Brazos to Harrisburg and across Buffalo Bayou to the field of San Jacinto. His position of advantage there, being such as to cut off Santa Anna's return up the Bayou, or his escape across Lynch's Ferry to Anahuac. The Mexican army was caught in a pocket, and a battle was inevitable.

PERIOD III.  
THE  
REVOLUTION

1832  
TO  
1836

5. The battle of San Jacinto. Its desperate and violent character, under the inspiration of Texan vengeance and the knowledge that the issue involved the salvation of Texas. The disparity in numbers, and in losses, between the two armies. The completeness of the victory.

6. The end of the war, the treaty of peace, and the future prospects of the young Republic.

### Geography.

Study particularly the route of the two armies from Gonzales to San Jacinto. Study also the plan of Santa Anna's campaign and the routes his several generals were expected to pursue. Locate and understand clearly the battle-field of San Jacinto.

### Parallel Readings.

Williams's "Sam Houston and the War for Independence ;" Crane's "Life of Sam Houston ;" Brown's "History of Texas ;" Scarff's "Comprehensive History of Texas" (1897).



MONUMENT TO BURNET AND SHERMAN

## CONTEMPORANEOUS EVENTS.—1832-1836.

## Parallel with Period III.

## AMERICA.

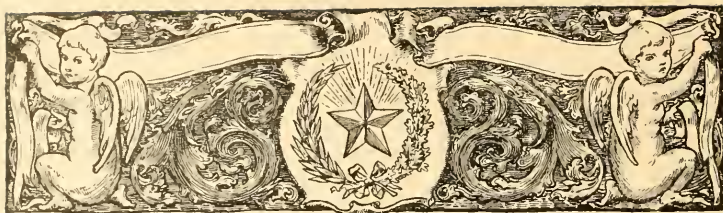
- 1832.—Morse originates the telegraph.
- 1833.—Andrew Jackson inaugurated President for his second term, March 4. Santa Anna president of the Mexican republic, April 18. First successful American locomotive—the “Arabian”—built. Clay’s compromise tariff. Jackson removes the deposits from the bank of the United States.
- 1834.—The *Whig* party in the United States organized, to succeed the National Republican party. Growing hostility between North and South on slavery and States’-rights issues.
- 1835.—The second Seminole Indian war. Colt’s revolving pistol patented.
- 1836.—Arkansas admitted into the Union, June 15. Congress refuses to abolish slavery in the District of Columbia. United States treasury issues the “specie circular.” United States debt extinguished. Michigan admitted to the Union. Territory of Wisconsin created. The Mexican republic ends.

## GREAT BRITAIN.

- 1833.—The *Reformed* Parliament meets. Daniel O’Connell in parliament. Slavery abolished in the British colonies. Edmund Kean and Wilberforce died.
- 1834.—New Poor Law passed. System of national education begun. Agitation by O’Connell in Ireland. Houses of Parliament burnt. Ministry of Sir Robert Peel.
- 1835.—Death of James Hogg, the “Etrick Shepherd.” Municipal Corporations Act passed, restoring local government to towns, which had been taken away in the fourteenth century.
- 1836.—Act passed allowing Dissenters civil marriage. General Registration Act. Continued agitation in Ireland.

## EUROPE.

- 1833.—Donna Maria, Queen of Portugal. Isabella II., Queen of Spain.
- 1834.—Death of Lafayette. Monasteries abolished in Portugal.
- 1835.—Ferdinand I., Emperor of Austria. Death of Humboldt.
- 1836.—M. Thiers, first minister of Louis Philippe in France. Death of Charles X. of France and Abbé Sieyès.



## Period IV.

THE REPUBLIC.—1836-1846.



### CHAPTER XV.

#### Events following San Jacinto ; Troubles in the Army ; First General Election ; Organization of the Permanent Government.

Government  
at Velasco

THE government having been established at Velasco, the course of events was for a time somewhat confused and disorderly. Some changes had taken place in the composition of the Cabinet. Lamar was now secretary of war ; Samuel P. Carson being disabled by sickness, James B. Collinworth was secretary of state ; and David Thomas having been accidentally killed, Peter W. Grayson was attorney-general.

Volunteers  
from the  
United States

Meanwhile the volunteers from the United States and elsewhere continued to arrive, until June 1, 1836, the army had increased to nearly twenty-five hundred men, and many of them were not of the most conservative and obedient character. Among the prominent new arrivals were General Felix Huston, a Mississippi lawyer who had raised and brought with him a command of five hundred men from that State ; General Thomas J. Green, also at the head of a band of volunteers ; J. Pinckney Henderson, and General Memucan Hunt. Nearly all the newcomers were ambitious and adventurous, and their zeal seemed proportioned to the little they had had to do with preceding events. The hostility to Santa Anna which had been so emphatically expressed by Lamar and Potter rapidly extended to

Hostility to  
Santa Anna



many officers in the army, and the freshly arrived troops were especially anxious for his trial and execution as a murderer. The captive president of Mexico had been brought to Velasco, and on June 1 he was placed on board the *Invincible* to be sent to Vera Cruz, in accordance with the treaty.

But Thomas J. Green, Generals Hunt, Huston, Henderson, and others stirred up such a tumult against letting him go that President Burnet was compelled to submit to his being brought ashore. It was then proposed to try him by court-martial. President Burnet vigorously resisted these violent acts, and his opposition aroused such resentment that there was an organized movement in the army against the President, which accused him of starving the soldiers and demanded all sorts of arbitrary relief. Burnet was firm but powerless, and the civil power for a time seemed in danger of being overthrown by the military. To add to the difficulty, some of the old officers, like Colonel Millard, took sides with the mutineers, and it was known that the secretary of war sympathized with them, at least in regard to Santa Anna. General Houston was then at Natchitoches, and he wrote a most positive protest against the conduct of the army and the proposed trial of Santa Anna. The latter was finally sent for safe-keeping to the plantation of Dr. Phelps, at Orozimbo on the Brazos. Sometime before that General Rusk had asked to be relieved of the chief command of the army, and suggested General Felix Huston as his successor. President Burnet, about July 1, instead appointed Colonel Lamar, a most unfortunate selection under the circumstances. The army rebelled against the appointment, and, upon the question being submitted to a vote of the soldiers, they decided by a large majority that they would not accept Lamar, but preferred to retain Rusk in immediate command, with Sam Houston as real commander-in-chief. Lamar did not take his defeat with good grace, but at last he saw that the army would not receive him and he retired.

The vacancy created in the Cabinet by his appointment had been filled by Colonel Alexander Somervell, and during the

PERIOD IV.  
THE REPUBLIC  
1836  
TO  
1846



GENERAL FELIX HUSTON.

President  
Burnet resists  
attempt to kill  
Santa Anna

Insubordina-  
tion in the  
army

Changes in the  
government

PERIOD IV.  
THE REPUBLIC

1836

TO

1846

Isaac W. Bur-  
ton's notable  
feat



GENERAL BARNARD E. BEE.

Indian  
hostilities

Attitude of  
United States

summer other changes occurred in the government. John A. Wharton became secretary of the navy instead of Robert Potter ; Barnard E. Bee succeeded Bailey Hardeman as secretary of the treasury, the latter having died ; William H. Jack became secretary of state, to succeed James B. Collinworth ; while Peter W. Grayson having been appointed commissioner to the United States, the office of attorney-general remained vacant for most of the time until the regular government was installed.

The army was unemployed, except as above stated, during the months following San Jacinto, except the one notable feat of Captain Isaac W. Burton, who with a company of Rangers captured three Mexican vessels in the harbor of Copano, which was rather more of a naval than a military exploit, and was certainly a novel performance for mounted Rangers.

The news of the battle of San Jacinto reached the City of Mexico on May 15, the day after Santa Anna had signed the treaty at Velasco. By that time the Mexican troops were all leaving Texas, and, notwithstanding several attempts were made during the summer to send a second invading army into Texas, nothing was accomplished in that direction. The rumors of invasion, however, served to keep the Texans uneasy and to necessitate some preparations to meet it. Mexico repudiated Santa Anna's treaty and declared she would never recognize Texan independence. In June, 1836, Manuel Flores and other Mexican agents renewed their efforts to organize and excite the Indians in Eastern Texas against the colonists, and they did succeed in stirring up enough hostility among the Cherokees, Caddos, and Cushattas to render the situation a dangerous and delicate one. But for the presence of United States troops on the eastern border, there might have been serious trouble.

During the war for Texan independence in 1835-36, the United States government had preserved strict neutrality. Andrew Jackson was President, and his sympathies were with the struggling patriots, but the law of nations required him to maintain an attitude of perfect impartiality as between the two con-

tending parties. Mexico complained bitterly of the volunteers who were allowed to join the Texan army from the United States, but the government was powerless to prevent them from leaving, so long as they did not actually march out in military array. But there was one thing the United States did do. During the war it was known that the Indians along the Trinity and next to Louisiana were being influenced by Mexican agents to rise and massacre the families of the men who were struggling for liberty at San Antonio, Goliad, and San Jacinto. The nearness of these tribes to the United States territory, and the instincts of humanity and justice required that the United States, as a neutral power, should keep the Indians from such an uprising, and accordingly General Edmund P. Gaines was stationed with troops on the Louisiana frontier, to watch and quell any outbreak among the Indians in East Texas. At the request of the Texan government, in the summer of 1836, he performed the same service, making his headquarters at Nacogdoches.

As soon as the victory of San Jacinto had rendered their independence secure, the Texans were anxious to have the new government recognized by the United States, and, if possible, to be annexed to the American Union. The commissioners who had been sent to the United States in December, 1835, were not accredited as diplomatic agents to the American government, but were merely representatives commissioned to solicit the sympathy and aid of the people of the United States, which they did most successfully. These gentlemen—Austin, Wharton, and Archer—returned to Texas in June, 1836, but on May 30 President Burnet had appointed James B. Collinworth and Peter W. Grayson as commissioners to the government at Washington City, to secure the recognition of Texan independence, to enlist the influence of that government with Mexico in procuring a similar recognition by the latter republic,

PERIOD IV.  
THE REPUBLIC  
1836  
TO  
1846

Protection  
against In-  
dians by  
American  
troops



INDIAN WAR DANCE.

Movement  
towards an-  
nexation to  
United States

Texan com-  
missioners to  
Washington

Recognition of  
Texan inde-  
pendence by  
the United  
States

PERIOD IV.  
THE REPUBLIC

1836  
TO  
1846

and to suggest that the annexation of Texas to the United States would be most acceptable to her citizens, upon certain terms which were to be explained by the commissioners. The news of the success of the struggle in which Texas was engaged was received with general rejoicing in the United States, and on June 18, 1836, Henry Clay offered a resolution in Congress to recognize the independence of the new Republic.



Moses Austin Bryan. Lewis Clemons.  
George W. Petty.

A GROUP OF OLD TEXANS.

This, however, was postponed, and it was not until March 1, 1837, that the United States finally recognized Texan independence. The subject provoked political controversy, and the agitation was the beginning of the exciting and bitter struggle that occurred over annexation eight years later. During the discussion of the question of recognition, Henry M. Morfitt was sent by the United States to investigate and report on the condition and resources of Texas. He reported favorably, stating that the population was about fifty-eight thousand, of whom thirty thousand were white, three thousand six hundred and seventy were Mexicans, five thousand were negroes, and twenty thou-

sand Indians. He estimated the public debt at one million two hundred and fifty thousand dollars.

First regular  
election in the  
Republic

On July 23, President Burnet issued his proclamation for the first regular election, to be held September 1, 1836, to ratify the constitution of the Republic, elect the first permanent officers of the Republic and members of the First Congress, and at the same time the people were to vote on the question of annexation to the United States. Politics in Texas then and for many years afterwards, were entirely personal. There were no great party issues, and no important public measures and policies upon which political divisions could be organized. Men rallied around their favorite candidates from motives of personal attachment, or because they admired their position on some question of local and temporary concern. A man's personal popularity and success in winning and holding friends were the secrets of his leadership, and strong personal friendships begat equally strong

Early politics

personal hatreds. Hence the difficulty of correctly estimating the real character and merits of the public men of those days, and the danger of accepting the opinions of their contemporaries, unless their personal attachments are known and made proper allowance for.

In the election of 1836 there were two of these personal parties,—the *Austin party* and the *Wharton party*. The former was not strictly an Austin party, for all the people loved and revered Stephen F. Austin, but his immediate, personal friends felt that injustice had been done him on account of his position in regard to the war with Mexico and the early declaration of Texan independence, and that such injustice was largely due to the ambitious intrigues of John A. and William H. Wharton. Resentment against the Whartons produced personal opposition to them among Austin's closest followers, and it was an *anti-Wharton* rather than an Austin party. The Whartons espoused the candidacy of Henry Smith for the first presidency, and their influence rather than his own gathered a few followers around him. Austin was not a candidate in the sense of seeking the office, but he could not prevent the use of his name, although he took no part whatever in the canvass. The new-comers and the volunteers in the army took but little interest in the personal animosities of the Wharton and anti-Wharton factions. They had known but little of General Austin, as he had been absent in the United States since most of them came to the country, and his services as the real founder and father of Texas were not felt nor appreciated by them. To them General Houston was the central figure in the Revolution, whose success they considered had been won by his valor and skill, and as the "hero of San Jacinto" his military fame, as so often happens, outshone the less sensational achievements of civil life. Besides, Houston was a skilful politician, adroit, dramatic, popular in his speech and manner, and trained in a State where politics and public speaking had reached the position of a fine art. So he was brought out as a candidate, apparently against his wishes, by public meetings at Columbia, Nacogdoches, San Augustine, and elsewhere. The Wharton party, finding they could not elect Smith, threw their influence to General Houston. In the election

PERIOD IV.  
THE REPUBLIC  
1836  
TO  
1846

Austin and  
Wharton  
parties

Position of the  
army and the  
new-comers

Sam Houston  
elected first  
President

PERIOD IV  
THE REPUBLIC

1836

TO

1846

that followed Houston received four thousand three hundred and seventy-four votes, Smith seven hundred and forty-five, and Austin five hundred and eighty-seven. Mirabeau B. Lamar was elected Vice-President, in consequence, it was said, of Houston's complimentary mention of him in the report of the battle of San Jacinto.

First Congress

The First Congress met at Columbia, to which place the capital had been removed from Velasco, on October 3, and the President and Vice-President elect were installed on October 22, 1836. The vote for annexation was almost unanimous, while the constitution was also adopted by a large vote, but the proposed authority to Congress to amend it was defeated.



FIRST CAPITOL OF REPUBLIC AT COLUMBIA, 1836, BRAZORIA COUNTY.

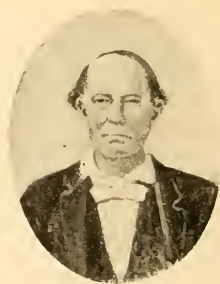
Houston's  
Cabinet

President Houston appointed as his Cabinet, Stephen F. Austin, secretary of state; Henry Smith, secretary of the treasury; Thomas J. Rusk, secretary of war; S. Rhoads Fisher, secretary of the navy; James Pinckney Henderson, attorney-general; Robert Barr, postmaster-general.

Congress organized with Ira Ingram as speaker of the house, and Richard Ellis was president *pro tem.* of the senate, in place of Vice-President Zavala, until Vice-President Lamar was inaugurated. Zavala died on November 15 following his retirement from office.

First Judiciary  
of the Republic

James B. Collinworth was elected chief justice of the Supreme Court by Congress, and Shelby Corzine, Benjamin C. Franklin, Robert M. Williamson, and James W. Robinson were elected judges of the four judicial districts of the Republic, who, together with the chief justice, constituted the Supreme Court. District attorneys and county judges were also elected by Congress, and the various county and local officers had been chosen at the election on September 1. These all assumed their duties in December.



JAMES B. COLLINWORTH.

William H. Wharton was appointed minister to the United States. The vacancy in the command of the army, caused by the appointment of General Rusk to the war department, left General Felix Huston at the head of the army, and soon afterwards efforts were made, in view of war with Mexico, to induce the distinguished General James Hamilton, of South Carolina, to become commander-in-chief of the Texan forces.

The first permanent government of the Republic was now fully organized, and its labors in meeting the severe demands made upon it furnish another illustration of the capacity of the Anglo-Americans for self-government.



GENERAL JAMES HAMILTON.

PERIOD IV.  
THE REPUBLIC  
1836  
TO  
1846

## QUESTIONS.

WHERE was the government established after the battle of San Jacinto? What changes took place in the officers of the government? What can you say of the volunteers who continued to arrive from the United States? Give the names of the most prominent among them, and what position did they assume towards Santa Anna? Where was he at that time, and what occurred in regard to him, and how was it brought about? Describe what happened between President Burnet and the leaders of this movement. What position did General Houston take, and what did he do on the subject? What was finally done with Santa Anna at that time? What occurred in reference to the command of the army? What changes occurred in the government at that time? What singular and notable feat was performed by Captain Isaac W. Burton at Copano? When did the news of the battle of San Jacinto reach the Mexican capital, and what was done in Mexico? When, by whom, and where were attempts made to excite Indian hostilities? What Indians were concerned in this movement, and what prevented an outbreak among them? What was the attitude of the United States during the Texas Revolution? What did that government do in regard to preventing Indian hostilities along the eastern frontier of Texas? What American officer commanded the troops for that purpose, and what did he do in the summer of 1836? Where were his headquarters? What were the Texans anxious for as soon as their independence was secured,

PERIOD IV.  
THE REPUBLIC

1836

TO  
1846

and what steps did the government of the Republic take towards that end? Who were sent to the United States, and with what instructions? How was the news of Texan success received in the United States, and what occurred in the American Congress? When was that, and when did the United States finally recognize Texan independence? What effect did the discussion of the subject have in the United States? Who was sent to Texas, for what purpose, and give the substance of his report in reference to the population and public debt of the Republic? When was the proclamation for the first regular election issued in Texas? When was the election to be held, and for what purposes? What was the nature of politics in Texas then and for many years afterwards? Describe how men took sides in political campaigns. What difficulty did that condition of affairs create in regard to judging the public men of those days? In the election of 1836, what two political parties were arrayed against each other? Explain the relations and feelings which existed between Austin's friends and the Wharton party. What candidate for the presidency did the Whartons support? What was Austin's attitude towards the campaign? What was the position of the army and the newcomers, and whom did they favor? What were Houston's qualifications as a politician, and how was he brought into that campaign? What did the Wharton party then do? What was the result of the election? Who was elected Vice-President, and why? When and where did the First Congress meet, and when did the inauguration of the new government take place? What was the result of the vote on annexation and the constitution? Whom did President Houston appoint to his Cabinet? How did Congress organize? What distinguished patriot died soon afterwards? Who was elected chief justice of the Supreme Court, and who were his four associates? How was the Supreme Court then constituted and elected? What other officers were elected at this time, and by whom? When did all the officials assume their places? Who was appointed minister to the United States? Who became commander of the army, and what distinguished American officer was solicited to accept that position?

### Topical Analysis.

1. The first troubles of the government of the Republic, growing out of the desire to execute Santa Anna.
2. The arrival of distinguished volunteers from the United States, and their somewhat meddlesome disposition to interfere with the government. Beginning of insubordination in the army.
3. Efforts of the Texan government to secure recognition of its independence by the United States, with the ultimate object of annexation.
4. The political agitation in the United States, caused by the discussion of the question of Texan recognition and annexation. Delay in recognizing Texan independence.



5. The friendly action of the United States in protecting Texas from Indian hostilities during the Revolution. Its effects in exciting the enmity of Mexico towards the American government.

6. The first regular election in the Republic of Texas. The personal nature of early Texas politics. The *Austin* and *Wharton* parties. General Houston's attitude, and the causes of his political strength in that campaign.

7. The organization of the first permanent government of the Republic. Names of the first officers, and a general outline of the government.

PERIOD IV.  
THE REPUBLIC

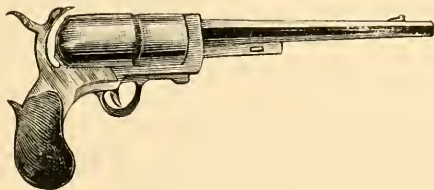
1836  
TO  
1846

### Geography.

Locate Velasco, Copano, Orozimbo, Columbia, and the country inhabited by the Cherokees, Caddos, Cushattas, and other Indian tribes in Eastern Texas.

### Parallel Readings.

Scarff's "Comprehensive History of Texas" (original text of Yoakum's "History"), Vol. I.; Brown's "History of Texas;" Williams's "Sam Houston and the War for Texan Independence;" the several works on Texas by Foote, Kennedy, and Mrs. Holly; Benton's "Thirty Years' View;" Crane's "Life of Sam Houston;" Jere Clemmon's "Bernard Lyle."



OLD COLT'S REVOLVER, 1838.

## CHAPTER XVI.

### Houston's First Administration; Land and Financial Policies; Indian and Army Troubles; Election of President Lamar.

PERIOD IV.  
THE REPUBLIC

1836  
TO  
1846

Release of  
Santa Anna

ONE of the first acts of President Houston was the release of Santa Anna. Already the unwise and violent conduct of certain persons in holding the Mexican chief a prisoner, in direct violation of the treaty made with him, had lost all the advantages to be derived from holding him at all. Houston visited him at Orozimbo, and soon afterwards sent him to Washington city, where he was kindly treated by President Jackson, and the United States government sent him to Vera Cruz, where he landed February 23, 1837. His popularity for a time was gone, but his abilities for thriving in the troubled politics of Mexico ere long brought him again to the head of affairs in that distracted country.

Difficulties of  
the new gov-  
ernment

The responsibilities and difficulties that confronted the first administration of the permanent government of the Republic of Texas were enormous and complicated. There was the whole machinery of regular republican institutions to be devised, constructed, and put in operation. The threats of continued war and invasion from Mexico required the support of an army and navy suitable to maintain the independence and security of the country. The frontier was harassed by hostile Indian tribes, many of whom lived in dangerous contact with the best settled portions of the Republic, and among whom the agents of Mexico were continually plotting and urging murderous outbreaks against the American settlers. To provide for all these necessities there was not a dollar in the public treasury, and a public debt of more than a million dollars had already accumulated against the government. Quantities of *land scrip*—that is, paper authorizing the holder to locate and secure title to a section or less of land,

Indians

Public debt  
and poverty

Land scrip  
and titles

at not less than fifty cents an acre—had been issued to meet the expenses of the late war and of the provisional governments theretofore existing ; but owing to the uncertain future of the country and its independence, and the great confusion in land titles arising from the various grants, bounties, and contracts made in Texas since its colonization, this scrip was very difficult to sell and commanded a very low price, and the multitude of it which continued to be issued rendered it practically worthless in a short time.

In addition to these necessary evils, there existed another, most trying and dangerous. The country was full of reckless and ambitious men, many of whom had no patriotic interest in the welfare of the new government, and whose presence in Texas was but recent and prompted by motives of personal and selfish gain. Some of these were lying in wait to secure legislation from the Texan Congress, by which they might put on foot large schemes of speculation, calculated to defraud the public and disgrace the government. Most of them, however, had joined the army, which was now quartered on the Lavaca, as volunteers, and there they stirred up all sorts of wild and mutinous movements, which soon converted the army into a turbulent and lawless mob, threatening the safety and stability of the civil authorities of the Republic. We have seen how this same influence had defied President Burnet at Velasco and clamored for the blood of Santa Anna. It was not long in finding other objects for its visionary and reckless ambitions. The old scheme of an expedition against Matamoros was revived, and preparations for the invasion of Mexico were openly advocated. At a time when that country was torn with civil strife and unable to continue the war ; when the United States had been asked to use their influence to secure peace and the recognition of Texan independence ; and when Texas was utterly without means to maintain her own government and defend her own territory with respectable success,—it was proposed to incur the expense of a useless and dangerous raid beyond the Rio Grande, destroy all hopes of Mexican recognition, and invite a renewal of barbarous hostilities. We shall see the disastrous effects of these enterprises on the subsequent fortunes of the young Republic.

PERIOD IV.  
THE REPUBLIC  
—  
1836  
TO  
1846  
—

Ambitious and  
turbulent men

Troubles in  
the army

Matamoros  
expedition  
revived

PERIOD IV.  
THE REPUBLIC

1836  
TO  
1846



AN OLD-TIME TEXAS RANGER.

But President Houston met these demands upon his capacity and patience with firmness and wisdom. His policies were well defined. He favored peace and good faith with the Indian tribes, which his intimate knowledge of Indian character, his personal influence with them, and his respect for their rights, enabled him to secure more successfully than any other of the early executives of Texas. At the same time he recognized the fickle and dangerous temper of the tribes and the influence of the Mexican agents among them, and hence maintained a strong Ranger force to watch and subdue them as occasion demanded. His administration, while not free from some Indian outrages, was able to prevent any general hostility among them, and the murders committed were generally the result of local and temporary causes.

Houston was opposed to all schemes for financial speculation and *fiat* money. The poverty of the government and the worthlessness of land scrip led Congress to favor the issuance of treasury notes to a large amount, thus flooding the country with paper money that could not be redeemed, and would become practically valueless. The United States, in 1837, suffered a terrible financial panic, due very much to the same causes, and he tried to save Texas from a similar experience. He vetoed the most hurtful acts passed by Congress on this and other subjects, and, although some of the bills were passed over his veto, he managed to control legislation to a certain extent in the interest of the public credit.

The land system of Texas was in a disorderly condition. The Consultation, in November, 1835, had suspended all land operations of every description, and no further titles could be extended. In the last days of the legislature of Coahuila and Texas, great frauds had been committed and large quantities of land were voted away without any regard for the laws. The provisional government had declared these acts void, and the Constitution of the Republic also pronounced them null and void. But under the provisional government and the govern-

Money panic  
of 1837

Confusion in  
land system

Land bounties

ment *ad interim* extensive bounties had been granted to soldiers and volunteers in the army, and it was necessary that these lands should be located, surveyed, and patented to the true owners. Many of the colonists who were in Texas before the Revolution had not received their portions of lands, and were anxious for their titles. The Constitution of the Republic provided for the recognition of all these valid claims, and that a general land office should be established, in order to properly conduct the business of locating, surveying, and patenting the lands. All heads of families living in Texas on March 2, 1836, were to receive a league and *labór* of land (four thousand six hundred and five acres), and all single men a third of a league; and this was afterwards extended to persons who arrived between March 2 and August 1, 1836, who served in the army and were honorably discharged, or died prior to December 14, 1837. These grants of land were called *headrights* of the *first class*.

It will be readily seen that there was great room for fraud and speculation in managing the details of this extensive and complicated system; and President Houston favored the most rigid safeguards against such dangers. He vetoed several land bills passed during his first administration, which were some of them passed over his veto and led to much fraud and litigation afterwards.

In regard to the foreign relations of the Republic, Houston advocated a dignified and independent course, seeking the recognition of all the leading powers, the establishment of commercial relations with all of them, including Mexico, and a course of wise, conservative, and honest national policy that would strengthen the government at home and make it respected abroad. He was in favor of annexation to the United States, and William H. Wharton and Memucan Hunt were both sent to Washington to secure that object. But after much delay the American government confined itself to recognizing Texan independence, on March 1, 1837, and declined the proposition of annexation. Houston then believed that Texas should withdraw her offer and wait for developments, meanwhile maintaining a friendly but

PERIOD IV.  
THE REPUBLIC  
1836  
TO  
1846

General land  
office

President  
Houston  
vetoes  
land bills



MEMUCAN HUNT.

Annexation to  
United States  
declined

PERIOD IV.  
THE REPUBLIC

1836

TO

1846

dignified attitude towards the Union. The course the United States had taken, in placing troops at Nacogdoches to protect the colonists from the Indians during the Texan Revolution and afterwards, had offended Mexico. There were also other causes for ill feeling between the two governments, growing out of Mexican depredations on American commerce, and in October, 1836, all diplomatic relations between the two nations ceased for several months.

Relations with  
European  
nations

James Pinckney Henderson was appointed minister to Great Britain and France, and while he did not succeed in securing an absolute recognition of independence, he did negotiate commercial treaties with those two governments, by which they established trade with Texas and sent their agents to represent them in the new Republic. In the management of foreign relations, the secretary of state, Stephen F. Austin, was invaluable, as his great tact, conservatism, and prudence peculiarly fitted him for the post, and his unselfish patriotism inspired all he did. But the Republic, whose foundations he had laid, was all too soon to be deprived of his aid in the completion of its fabric. Overworked by the pressing duties of his office, and exposing himself to the inclement weather, his health, already impaired, gave way to an attack of pneumonia, and after a very short illness he died at Columbia, December 27, 1836, at the early age of forty-three years. His life had been one of incessant activity, great sufferings and exposures, and of unparalleled usefulness to his race and country. He was never married, and the wealth of devotion, fidelity, and zeal which most men bestow upon their families he lavished upon the child of his genius and labor,—the magnificent commonwealth whose dawning destiny his dying eyes were permitted to behold. President Houston announced his death in a bulletin which began with the truthful statement: "The Father of Texas is no more." Amid universal sorrow and the highest honors official grief could award, he was buried at Peach Point, near the mouth of the river on whose banks just fourteen years before he had planted the first American colony in Texas.

Death of Stephen F. Austin

His public and  
private character and  
services

Turbulence of  
the army

Early in his administration, Houston was confronted with the disorderly and rebellious spirit of the army, camped on the

Lavaca and Navidad. The troops were in command of General Felix Huston, whose military attainments were few, but whose reckless and turbulent conduct among his men provoked them to great disorders, and often to violence among themselves. He and other leaders favored an expedition into Mexico, and he came to Congress to secure aid for that enterprise. While he was absent, President Houston sent the secretary of war to the Lavaca and furloughed all the soldiers except a small command, sending the most of them to their homes in the United States and elsewhere. Thus the government was relieved of a great expense and a menace to its safety, and the country was spared the further development of the second Matamoros expedition. General Huston, deprived of his military mob, not long afterwards returned for a while to the United States. Prior to these events, however, in February, 1837, he had challenged and shot Albert Sidney Johnston, who had been sent to relieve him of the command. Upon his final departure, Johnston assumed control of the remaining troops.

During the spring and summer of 1837, the Texas navy sustained serious loss in the capture, by Mexican vessels, of the *Independence* and the *Invincible*. William H. Wharton, late Texan minister to the United States, having resigned in favor of Memucan Hunt, was returning home on the former vessel and was captured and taken prisoner to Matamoros. His brother, John A. Wharton, went to his relief, proposing to exchange thirty Mexican prisoners for him; but he, too, was seized and thrown into prison. Both the brothers soon escaped, and about a year later they both died within a few months of each other.

Throughout the two years of Houston's first administration there was more or less trouble with the Indians, necessitating continual activity by the Rangers. Some daring murders were committed by roving bands, and thefts of horses were frequent. Among the leading officers in the Ranger service at this time were Edward Burleson, John H. Moore, R. M. Coleman, Henry

PERIOD IV.  
THE REPUBLIC  
1836  
TO  
1846

Disbanded by  
President  
Houston

General Felix  
Huston

Texas navy

Captivity and  
death of the  
Whartons

Indian raids

The early  
Rangers



GEORGE B. ERATH.

PERIOD IV.  
THE REPUBLIC

1836

TO

1846

First, Second,  
and Third  
Congresses

Capital at city  
of Houston

W. Karnes, George B. Erath, William M. Eastland ; and General Rusk took an active part in many of the Indian campaigns. In the summer of 1838, Vicente Cordova, a Mexican agent, attempted to stir up a rebellion among the Indians and Mexicans in Eastern Texas ; but this was speedily suppressed, although Cordova remained for some time on the upper Brazos and Trinity, to encourage the Indians to war and outrage against the Texans.

Houston's first term extended from the date of his inauguration, October 22, 1836, to December 10, 1838. During that period the First and Second Congresses and a part of the session of the Third Congress were held. The first session of the First Congress met at Columbia on October 3, 1836, and adjourned on December 21. By one of its acts the capital was moved to the new town of Houston, founded at the head of Buffalo Bayou by the brothers A. C. and John K. Allen. The second session of the same Congress met in Houston May 1, 1837, and remained in session until June 13. The Second Congress was elected the first Monday in September, 1837, and President Houston called them to meet in special session on September 26, which lasted until the end of December. A second session was held the 1st of May, 1838, and continued about a month. The Third Congress met November 5, 1838, and continued in session until the close of January, 1839.

By an act of the first session of the Second Congress, October 17, 1837, commissioners were to be appointed to select a permanent capital for the Republic, to be located between the Guadalupe and Trinity Rivers, not more than one hundred miles north of the upper San Antonio Road, nor south of a line from the Trinity to the Guadalupe, crossing the Brazos at Fort Bend.

There were many laws passed by these Congresses during the first presidential term ; but the most important general laws



OLD CAPITOL OF REPUBLIC AT HOUSTON.

Commis-  
sioners to  
locate a new  
capital

Important  
early laws



adopted were the following : organizing a complete system of courts, and establishing the practice and procedure therein ; organizing the Republic into counties ; establishing a general land office and eleven land districts, with a land office in each district ; providing for surveying the lands into sections of six hundred and forty acres each ; issuing land scrip at fifty cents an acre, with agents at New Orleans and Mobile to sell it ; establishing a system of post-offices and mail routes ; organizing companies of Rangers for the protection of the frontier against Indians ; levying import duties and a direct tax of one-half of one per cent. ; appointing a commissioner to act with the commissioner from the United States to fix the eastern boundary ; establishing the boundary lines of Texas, from the Rio Grande to the Sabine, and to the forty-second degree of latitude on the north ; authorizing a loan of \$5,000,000, to be secured by bonds of the Republic ; authorizing the issuing of treasury notes for \$500,000 ; appropriating \$100,000 to increase the navy ; establishing a "board of land commissioners" to examine and pass on all land titles ; a statute of wills ; declaring all *empresarios'* contracts at an end from March 2, 1836 ; and a great many acts establishing and naming various towns and villages.

There were frequent changes in President Houston's Cabinet, so that a list is necessary in order to understand them. During his first administration the following persons held office by his appointment : secretary of state, Stephen F. Austin, J. Pinckney Henderson, Robert A. Irion ; secretary of war, Thomas J. Rusk, William S. Fisher, Barnard E. Bee, George W. Poe, and George W. Hockley ; secretary of the treasury, Henry Smith ; secretary of the navy, S. Rhoads Fisher, William M. Shepherd ; attorney-general, J. Pinckney Henderson, Peter W. Grayson, John Birdsall, Albert S. Thruston ; comptroller, Elisha M. Pease, Frank R. Lubbock ; postmaster-general, Robert Barr ; commissioner of land office, J. P. Borden ; minister to United States, W. H. Wharton, Memucan Hunt, Anson Jones ; minister to England and France, J. Pinckney Henderson. James B. Collinworth, the first chief justice, having died in the summer of 1838, President Houston appointed John Birdsall to the vacancy.

PERIOD IV.  
THE REPUBLIC  
1836  
TO  
1846

President  
Houston's  
Cabinets dur-  
ing his first  
administra-  
tion

PERIOD IV  
THE REPUBLIC

1836

TO

1846

Early life at  
the capital

The mode of life of the President and his Cabinet and Congress was of the simplest kind. The President's house at Houston was a log cabin, with a puncheon floor in one room and a dirt floor in the other. The building used for a capitol was a cheap frame house, unfinished, and its leaky roof subjected the Congress to frequent and involuntary baths. There were very few people in the new town, and they dwelt in tents and shanties ; but among them were ladies and gentlemen of education and

refinement, so that the rude simplicity of this infant capital was enlightened by many of the graces and charms of intellectual and social intercourse.

On the whole, the first administration of the Republic was a success, and its results compare most favorably with those of the first government of the American colonies after the revolution of 1776. At its close, in December, 1838, the public debt of all descriptions



RESIDENCE OF PRESIDENT HOUSTON, 1836  
(while the capitol was being built).

Public debt

was \$1,942,000 ; there were outstanding \$739,789 of treasury notes, worth from fifty to sixty-five cents on the dollar ; and the receipts from the customs duties for the year 1838 were \$278,134.

Commerce

A fair trade had been established with Mexico along the Rio Grande, and there was really very little to fear from that country in its then condition. Commercial relations had been secured with the leading European powers, and the United States were friendly and favorable to annexation when the time should arrive. The only trouble was with the Indians, who were kept hostile by the Mexican agents who were active among them. The government was very poor, but its prospects were hopeful.

President not  
eligible for re-  
election

The Constitution forbade the re-election of a president of the Republic to succeed himself ; so that President Houston could not be a candidate at the re-election in September, 1838. The regular term of a president was fixed at three years, but the first executive was limited to two years. In the canvass for the second presidency, Vice-President Mirabeau B. Lamar, James B. Collinworth, and Peter W. Grayson were the candidates. During the summer Grayson committed suicide in Tennessee,

Candidates for  
second presi-  
dent

and Collinsworth was drowned in Galveston Bay,—by many also supposed to be a suicide. This left Lamar without opposition, and he was elected by a vote of 6995 out of a total poll of 7247. David G. Burnet was elected Vice-President over Albert C. Horton and Joseph Rowe, by a majority of 776.

President Lamar was inaugurated on December 10, 1838, the Third Congress having been already in session since November 5. On December 14 the new President appointed his Cabinet, as follows : secretary of state, Barnard E. Bee ; secretary of war, Albert Sidney Johnston ; secretary of the navy, Memucan Hunt ; secretary of the treasury, Richard G. Dunlap ; attorney-general, John C. Watrous. The Congress elected Thomas J. Rusk chief justice of the Supreme Court, who resigned in 1841, and was succeeded by John Hemphill.

The policies of the newly-elected executive, as outlined in his inaugural address and as deduced from his well-known views, were to be the reverse of those pursued by his predecessor. Their nature and results we shall soon see.

PERIOD IV.  
THE REPUBLIC  
1836  
TO  
1846  
—

President  
Lamar's  
Cabinet

His policies

## QUESTIONS.

DESCRIBE the circumstances attending the final release of Santa Anna and his return to Mexico. What difficulties met the first administration of the government of the Republic? What troubles existed with the Indians? What was the financial condition of the country? What was *land scrip*, and what difficulties arose from this source? What can you say of the dangers arising from the schemes of ambitious and turbulent men? What was the condition of the army? What old scheme for invading Mexico was revived at this time, and to what did these influences lead? How did President Houston meet these difficulties? What were his policies in regard to the Indians, public finances, and the land system? What financial troubles existed in Texas and the United States at that time? What confusion and difficulty arose in regard to land titles, and what was done to remove them? What land grants were made by the Constitution of the Republic? What bills did President Houston veto, and with what result? What was Houston's policy as to foreign and commercial relations and annexation? When did the United States recognize Texan independence, and what was done in regard to annexation? What state of feeling existed between Mexico and the United States, and what caused it? What occurred in consequence? When

PERIOD IV.  
THE REPUBLIC  
1836  
TO  
1846

was that? Who was appointed minister to Great Britain and France, and what did he succeed in doing? Who managed the foreign relations of the Republic at that time, and what can you say of him? When, at what age, and where did he die? What can you say of his public and private life and services? Describe what honors were paid him by the government and people. Where was he buried? Describe the troubles that arose in the Texan army. Who led this movement? What did the President do in regard to the army? What can you tell about General Felix Huston? Who assumed command of the army as his successor? What occurred to the navy in the spring and summer of 1837? What two distinguished men were captured by the Mexicans at that time, and under what circumstances? What became of them soon afterwards? What was the condition of Indian affairs during Houston's first administration? Who were some of the noted officers in the Ranger service of those times? Who tried to arouse the Indians to warfare against the Texans? Between what dates was Houston President the first time? What Congresses met during his administration, and give the dates and places of meeting of each of those Congresses? Where was the capital of the Republic then, and who founded the town? When were commissioners appointed to locate the permanent capital, and within what limits was it to be located? Give a list and outline of the most important laws passed during Houston's first presidency. Give the names and official positions of the various persons who held office in President Houston's Cabinet during his first term. Who were the first and second chief justices of the Supreme Court of the Republic, and when were they elected or appointed? Describe the residence of President Houston at that time, and the general mode of domestic and social life at the first capital of the Republic. What were the general results of the first administration as to finances, commerce, and Indian affairs? What were the constitutional provisions as to re-election of the President, term of office, etc.? Who were candidates for second President of the Republic? What became of two of them? Who were elected second President and Vice-President of the Republic? Who were candidates for Vice-President? When did the election occur, and what was the vote? When was President Lamar inaugurated? What Congress was then in session? Who were the members of Lamar's first Cabinet? Who was elected chief justice of the Supreme Court, how long did he hold the office, and who succeeded him? What were Lamar's policies as compared with those of his predecessor?

### Topical Analysis.

1. President Houston's first administration. Difficulties of the new government, as follows:
  - (a) The inauguration of a new and complete system of republican institutions.
  - (b) Indian depredations and threats of invasion from Mexico.

PERIOD IV.  
 THE REPUBLIC  
 1836  
 TO  
 1846  
 —

- (c) Heavy public debt and impoverished condition of the country.
- (d) Great confusion in land titles, owing to issuance of *land scrip*, frauds in procuring bounties, and general spirit of reckless speculation.
- (e) Turbulence in the army, caused by ambitious and reckless men, who revived the scheme of an expedition to invade Mexico, and promoted insubordination among the soldiers.
2. Policies of President Houston in dealing with these questions, as follows :
- (a) Peace with foreign nations, including Mexico, and the promotion of commercial intercourse abroad.
- (b) A firm but friendly attitude towards the Indians, supported by a vigorous Ranger service on the frontier.
- (c) Recognition by the United States, with annexation to the American Union, if possible.
- (d) Opposition to all financial schemes for increasing the public debt, issuing *fiat* money, or flooding the country with worthless land scrip, and speculative land enterprises.
- (e) Opposition to all schemes for invading Mexico, and a determination to quell the turbulence of the army and its reckless leaders.
3. Important events of this administration :
- (1) Final release of Santa Anna and his return to Mexico.
- (2) Independence of Texas recognized by United States, but annexation declined. Commercial treaties with United States, Great Britain, and France.
- (3) Death of Stephen F. Austin, John A. Wharton, William H. Wharton, Peter W. Grayson, and James B. Collinworth.
- (4) Foundation of the land system of the Republic ; general land office and board of land commissioners established.
- (5) Continued troubles with Indians, who were excited to hostility by Vicente Cordova and other Mexican agents. The Texas Rangers organized under their first great captains.
- (6) The army disbanded by indefinite furlough, to prevent its lawless conduct. Revival of the "Matamoros Expedition" scheme.
- (7) Movement to prevent issuance of worthless land scrip and treasury notes.
- (8) Town of Houston founded and capital established there. Appointment of commissioners to locate the permanent capital. First, Second, and part of the Third Congresses held their sessions at Houston.
- (9) Passage of laws authorizing a five million dollars' public loan, organizing a complete judicial system, dividing the Republic into counties, establishing eleven land districts, establishing post-offices and post-roads, for *sectionizing* the public lands, organizing the Ranger service on the frontier, and providing for establishing the boundaries of Texas.

PERIOD IV.  
THE REPUBLIC

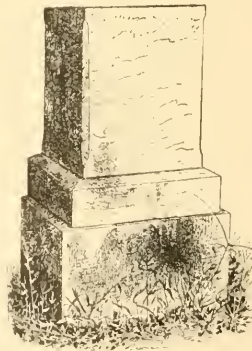
1836  
TO  
1846

## Geography.

The student should be required to trace the location and boundaries of the original counties of the Republic, and of the eleven original land districts, so as to be able to point out the county and district to which any one of the present counties of the States originally belonged. Fulmore's "Chart of Historical and Political Geography of Texas" will be found most useful for this purpose.

## Parallel Readings.

Scarff's "Comprehensive History of Texas" (1897), Vol. I.; Brown's "History of Texas," Vol. II.; Williams's "Sam Houston and Independence;" Crane's "Life of Sam Houston;" Baker's "Texas Scrap-Book;" Gouge's "Fiscal History of Texas;" Kennedy's, Foote's, and Mrs. Holly's works on Texas.



TOMB OF ERASTUS (DEAF) SMITH,  
Richmond, Texas.

## CHAPTER XVII.

### President Lamar's Administration; Santa Fé Expedition; Indian Wars; Texas System of Jurisprudence Established; Foundation of Educational System.

**M**IRABEAU B. LAMAR was a native of Georgia, and was forty years of age when elected to the presidency of the Republic. He was a man of stainless character, chivalrous courage, lofty patriotism, and brilliant talents, gifted with great facility of language, an ardent imagination, and a boundless ambition; he was an orator, poet, and revolutionist rather than a practical statesman, a safe ruler, or a wise diplomat. The defects of his character were shown in his violent attitude towards Santa Anna and his attempt to seize command of the army, in 1836. They were now to be disastrously felt in his administration of the government of the Republic, from 1838 to 1841.

His theories on public questions were expressed in his messages to Congress and in his acts as President, and they were in all points essentially different from those of General Houston. He announced open opposition to annexation to the United States; unrelenting war against the Indians; the extension of Texan jurisdiction over New Mexico, and an alliance with the revolutionists of northern Mexico; active aid to Yucatan in her revolt against the Mexican government; the establishment of a national bank with power to issue irredeemable paper money; and the maintenance of an extensive and expensive system of institutions for the Republic. To accomplish these ends it was necessary to involve the country in savage warfare, to violate the plighted faith of the nation to its Indian inhabitants, to provoke the renewed hostility of Mexico, to alienate

PERIOD IV.  
THE REPUBLIC

1836  
TO  
1846

Mirabeau B.  
Lamar



MIRABEAU B. LAMAR.

His policy as  
President of  
the Republic

Its practical  
results

PERIOD IV.  
THE REPUBLIC

1836  
TO  
1846

the sympathy of the United States, and to plunge the government into useless and continued expense, which had to be met by the endless issue of treasury notes, until the currency of the Republic sank to such a low value that it was worth less than ten dollars to one of gold and silver. Such public results were enough to dim the lustre of the loftiest personal character, and, but for his splendid and lasting service to posterity in the foundation of a magnificent educational system, Lamar's administration would be condemned by truthful history as one of unmixed disaster to the young and struggling Republic.

Indian relations and troubles

Upon assuming the presidential chair, Lamar found the frontier engaged in frequent struggles with the Indians, generally prompted by Vicente Cordova, Manuel Flores, and other malignant messengers from the Mexican government. The Cherokees and their twelve allied bands were not directly concerned in these outbreaks, but for a long time they had been restless and discontented, because the titles to their lands had not been secured to them as was solemnly promised by the Consultation in 1835, and as had been doubly guaranteed by the treaty negotiated by Houston and Forbes in 1836. The Mexican



CHEROKEES.

The Cherokees and their rights in Texas

agents took advantage of these fears, and President Lamar confirmed them by publicly declaring that these Indians had no legal or equitable rights in the country, and that they must leave Texas. The Cherokee chief, Bowles, who was a man of great courage and high character, naturally resented this injustice to his people, and the tribes, who were for the most part peaceable and industrious, were aroused to great excitement. In 1822, the Emperor Iturbide had given these people consent to settle in Texas; their residence was older and more permanent than that of most of the colonists, and their rights had been recognized by every government Texas had organized. Cordova and Flores were in constant communication with all the tribes near the settlements and with the Comanches and wild tribes in the west, and, by direction of the Mexican authorities, urged them to a united and general massacre and pillage of the Texans. In March, 1839, Cordova was attacked by Colonel Burleson's Rangers, near Seguin, and driven beyond the Rio Grande.

Mexican agents among the Indians

Work of the Rangers



Manuel Flores, attempting to join Cordova, was overtaken on the Colorado near where Austin was laid out the same year, by Captain James O. Rice, and his party routed, Flores being killed in the fight. Early in July, 1839, President Lamar sent David G. Burnet, Albert Sidney Johnston, Hugh McLeod, and Thomas J. Rusk to the Cherokee village, to remove them from the country. To gain time Chief Bowles appeared to agree, but next day he rallied his men and retreated towards the Delaware village in what is now Cherokee County. Here, on July 16-17, Rusk and Burluson, with four hundred Rangers, attacked the Indians, killed Bowles, and drove the remainder of the tribe into Arkansas. Later on, in December, 1839, a remnant of the tribe, under John Bowles and Chief Egg, were overtaken on the San Saba River, while they were fleeing to Mexico, and all killed and taken prisoners. This ended the *Cherokee War*, if war it can be called, when a sovereign nation violates its plighted faith, to rob, kill, and expel its own inhabitants, be their race and color what it may. A mistaken spirit of vengeance, aided by the unscrupulous influence of land speculators, had accomplished this great wrong. The Indian policy, thus inaugurated, bore its bitter and bloody fruits in many massacres of helpless families the following autumn and winter, and in 1840 there was a dangerous and formidable war along the whole western frontier, led by the wily and murderous Comanches.

On March 19, 1840, twelve Comanche chiefs and sixty-five warriors, women and children came to San Antonio to make a treaty with Texan commissioners appointed to meet them. The chiefs and commissioners entered a house to hold a council. The Indians were supposed to have many white prisoners in their possession, of whom they had delivered but one. The chiefs were told that they would be held as hostages until all the prisoners were brought in. A company of Rangers was in the hall, and another outside, to enforce the demand. The Indians resisted, a desperate fight ensued, all twelve of the chiefs were killed, and the sixty-five warriors outside, joining in the struggle, were all shot down after a heroic battle for their

PERIOD IV.  
THE REPUBLIC  
1836  
TO  
1846

The Cherokee  
War and  
death of Chief  
Bowles

Results of this  
policy



"BIG-FOOT" WALLACE.

The "Council  
House Fight"  
at San An-  
tonio, March  
19, 1840

PERIOD IV  
THE REPUBLIC  
1836  
TO  
1846

Comanches  
and Kiowas  
make a raid on  
Victoria and  
Linnville

lives. Several squaws were killed in the struggle, and one Indian woman was sent to tell the tale and to demand the delivery of all white prisoners. There were other Comanches near town, and they soon sent in several white children to exchange for the few squaws and Indian children who had escaped the massacre. This was known as the "Council House Fight."

In the following August, one thousand Comanches and Kiowas made a raid down through the country, attacked and captured Victoria, stole two thousand horses, killed many persons, burned and sacked Linnville on Lavaca Bay, rapidly retreated, defying the Rangers under Tumlinson and Ben McCulloch, and finally escaped as far as what is now Caldwell County. Here, on August 12, they were overtaken and defeated by a force of Rangers and volunteers under Bureson and Caldwell, in what is known as the "Plum Creek Fight." In the following October, Colonel



AN INDIAN RAID.

John H. Moore, aided by a party of Lipan Indians under their chief Castro, destroyed a large camp of Comanches near where Colorado City now stands. These were the most prominent operations in Indian affairs during 1839-1840.

Location of  
the permanent  
capital at  
Austin

During the session of the Third Congress, in January, 1839, further legislation was had for the location of the permanent capital. It was to be named the "City of Austin," and five commissioners were appointed to select the location, and an agent to lay off the city and erect necessary buildings, to be ready for the removal of the government thereto on October 1. The commissioners selected were Albert C. Horton, Isaac W. Burton, William



WILLIAM MENEFEE.

Menefee, Isaac Campbell, and Louis P. Cooke. Edwin Waller was appointed agent to lay off the town, and by October a two-story frame house was erected for the President, a board house for Congress, log buildings for the various department offices, and a number of log cabins for residences and business purposes. The archives and public offices were removed from Houston to Austin in October, 1839, and in a short time the new capital had about fifteen hundred inhabitants.

The First Congress had established the *National Seal* of the Republic as a five-pointed star on a circular seal, with the letters "Republic of Texas" around it; and the *National Standard* for the naval service, as a flag, union blue, star central, thirteen stripes prolonged, alternate red and white,—being the same as the naval flag adopted by President Burnet in April, 1836. This act was amended by the Third Congress, January 25, 1839, so as to require the *national arms* to consist of a white star of five points, on an azure field, with a wreath of olive and live-oak branches encircling the star, as well as the lettering of the name; while the *national flag* was fixed as a blue, perpendicular stripe, one-third the whole length of the flag, with a white star of five points in the centre, and two horizontal stripes of equal breadth, the upper white and the lower red, two-thirds the length of the whole flag. The naval standard was left unchanged. During the Revolution many banners were devised and carried by different commands. The only flag at San Jacinto was that carried by Colonel Sidney Sherman's regiment, which was of light blue silk, with gold fringe, and the figure of *Liberty* in the centre. The flag of the Alamo was that of the Constitution of 1824.

President Lamar's policy was to establish a national bank, which should issue its notes based on landed security and the faith of the Republic, supported by a specie reserve of gold and silver, which Texas did not have and had no means of obtaining. Congress, warned by the recent experiences of the United States, rejected this scheme, and the President, apparently without authority of law, had recourse to the issuance of more treasury notes, until by November 1, 1839, there were outstanding \$1,800,000 of these promises to pay, circulating at ten cents on

PERIOD IV.  
THE REPUBLIC  
1836  
TO  
1846  
—

National seal,  
arms, and flag  
of the Republic.



TEXAS SEAL.



TEXAS FLAG.

President Lamar's plan for  
a national  
bank

Condition of  
the finances  
in 1839

PERIOD IV.  
THE REPUBLIC  
1836  
TO  
1846

Increase of ex-  
penses and  
public debt

Land forgeries

Mexican rev-  
olutionists in  
Texas

Battle of Al-  
cantra, Octo-  
ber 3, 1839

"Republic  
of the Rio  
Grande" so-  
licits aid in  
Texas

Filibustering  
expedition to  
Mexico, 1840

the dollar. The receipts of revenue for that year were \$188,000, while the expenses of the government were over \$900,000. The five million dollar loan not having yet been effected, \$280,000 had been borrowed from the United States Bank, of which only \$62,000 went into the public treasury, the balance being spent in Indian warfare and other military and naval operations. During Lamar's three years' administration, the enormous sum of \$2,552,319 was spent or incurred in frontier defence and other military expenses, as against \$190,000 in the preceding administration, and \$104,092 in the succeeding three years.

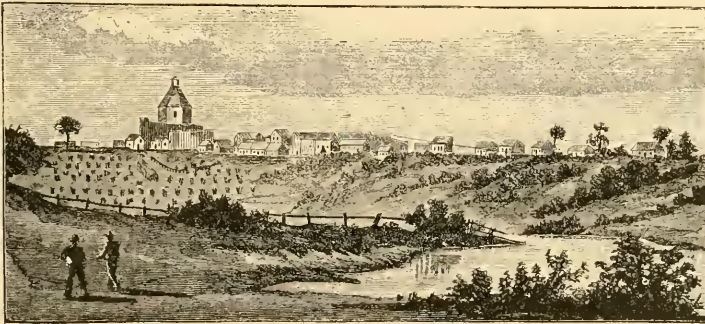
The forging of land certificates began to be extensively practised in the year 1839, and to prevent it a travelling land board was organized, whose duty it was to go from county to county and examine all titles to land before they could be patented at the general land office.

The civil commotions in Mexico still continued, and in the early part of 1839 they involved the states bordering the Rio Grande. The Federalist leaders, Canales and Gonzales, sought refuge in Texas and established their headquarters at Lipantitlan on the Nueces. Colonels Reuben Ross and S. W. Jordan joined them with a considerable force of Texans, and the allied troops marched into Mexico under Colonel Zapata. They proceeded as far as Alcantra, twelve miles beyond Mier, where on October 3, 1839, they met and defeated a large Centralist force. After various adventures, including a siege at Matamoros and a battle at Monterey, the Texans returned home in January, 1840. Soon after this what was called the "Republic of the Rio Grande" was formed, with Cardenas as president and Canales as military chief. Its purpose was to establish an independent republic in Northern Mexico, for which they desired the aid of Texas. The leaders visited President Lamar in the spring of 1840, and his subsequent conduct would indicate that they inspired him with their wild and visionary schemes. In the summer of 1840, three hundred Texans, under Colonel William S. Fisher and Captains Jordan and Seguín, joined Canales on the Rio Grande. Part of the command under Jordan and a Mexican named Molano were sent in advance, and they proceeded as far as a *hacienda* near Saltillo. Here the Texans were betrayed by their Mexican

allies, and after a desperate battle on October 23, 1840, known as the battle of Saltillo, Jordan succeeded in beating off the Centralist forces and escaped to Texas. And while all these filibustering expeditions were being organized in Texas, the government despatched Barnard E. Bee as minister to Mexico, to solicit peace and a recognition of Texan independence; while the Texan minister at Washington was instructed to request the good offices of the American government and the British minister to the same end. As might have been expected, Mexico would not listen to such propositions while Texas was permitting, if not encouraging, hostile raids into Mexican territory. It

PERIOD IV.  
THE REPUBLIC  
—  
1836  
TO  
1846  
—

Efforts to-  
wards peace  
with Mexico  
fail



SAN ANTONIO DE BEXAR IN 1840.

is true that President Lamar issued proclamations forbidding these demonstrations, but his personal conduct and sympathies neutralized his public warnings.

Early in 1840, an attempt was made to run the boundary line between the United States and Texas on the Louisiana border. The Sabine and Red Rivers were adopted as the eastern boundary, which threw a strip formerly belonging to Miller County, Arkansas, into Texas. The northern boundary was left undecided. By the act of December 19, 1836, of the First Congress of Texas, the northern boundary was fixed as the forty-second degree of latitude, which would include New Mexico as part of the Republic, but there was no authority for any such claim. New Mexico was a separate province of Mexico long before Texas was attempted to be settled, and no pretence had ever

Attempts to fix  
and run the  
boundary of  
Texas

New Mexico  
claimed by  
Texas

PERIOD IV.  
THE REPUBLIC

1836  
TO  
1846  
—

been made that it was included in the territory of Texas. The claim set up to that country by some persons in 1840-41 involved the Republic in great trouble and expense.

During the year 1840, by the efforts of General James Hamilton, in connection with the Texan ministers, Great Britain, France, and Belgium recognized Texan independence, and commerce rapidly increased with Europe in consequence.

The Texan  
navy

The Texan navy had been greatly enlarged and strengthened since the Revolution, but it had cost the government a great sum of money. During the first nine months of 1839, sixty thousand dollars were spent on it, and the estimated naval appropriations for the year beginning September 1, 1839, were nearly half a million dollars. This costly armament, not being needed, was placed *in ordinary*,—that is, retired from service by an act of the Fourth Congress. But in the spring of 1840, Yucatan, a province of Mexico, being in a state of insurrection, sent an agent to Texas to solicit aid, and President Lamar, in June, 1840, placed the best part of the Texan navy in the service of that distant and alien country, where it remained for two years, most of the vessels being lost altogether.

Sent to aid  
revolution in  
Yucatan

Gloomy finan-  
cial prospects

At the close of the second year of the administration the situation was gloomy indeed. The financial distress was alarming. No loan had been secured, the public expenses were enormous, the issues of government notes were nearly worthless, and there seemed no relief. The Congress which met in November, 1840, did the best it could by cutting down appropriations nearly sixty-six per cent., but it could do nothing with the condition of the finances. In December, President Lamar, on account of sickness, retired from the active duties of office, and left Vice-President Burnet to act as chief executive.

President La-  
mar retires

New schemes

At the beginning of the year 1841, notwithstanding the impoverished state of the treasury and the sad experience of the two years past, new and magnificent schemes were set on foot.

Military roads

A great military road from the Nueces to Red River was put under construction, supported by land bounties; and another from Austin to Santa Fé, New Mexico, six hundred miles through a savage wilderness, was projected. In February the "Franco-Texan Land Company" came near getting its gigantic scheme

\* Franco-  
Texan Land  
Company."

of fraud through Congress, which would have given to that corporation three million acres of the best land in Texas, free from taxation until 1849, and exempt from all import duties for twenty years. This tremendous monopoly was understood to have the endorsement of the administration, but it was fortunately defeated in the Senate.

In the spring of 1841, President Lamar became enamored of a project to extend the jurisdiction of Texas over New Mexico. Santa Fé had long been a great trading post between St. Louis and Mexico, and its rich commerce would undoubtedly have been of great value to the poverty-stricken Republic. But the peaceable or forcible acquisition of that territory was out of the question at that time. Congress was asked to endorse and support the expedition, but refused, and the President then undertook it on his own responsibility. The Santa Fé expedition was disguised as a peaceable, commercial undertaking, but its whole organization showed it to be a military, filibustering enterprise, intended to occupy New Mexico, amicably if possible, violently if necessary. The expedition started from near Austin on June 21, 1841, under command of General Hugh McLeod, with two hundred and seventy men divided into companies, a full military equipment and supplies, and accompanied by adventurers of every description and citizenship. José Antonio Navarro, William G. Cooke, and Richard F. Brenham went along as commissioners from the Republic, while George W. Kendall, of the New Orleans *Picayune*, was the historian of the expedition. After being lost for days in the cañons and arid plains of the upper Pecos and Rio Grande, and being reduced to a diet of snakes and lizards to keep from starving, they reached San Miguel, New Mexico, in August. They were all made prisoners by Armijo (är-mě'hō), the governor of the province, and sent on foot two thousand miles to the City of Mexico, which place they reached after untold sufferings and cruelties and many deaths from violence and small-pox. It required the best efforts of the United States and England to secure the release of the prisoners, and the expense of the venture was paid for by more promissory notes of the Republic of Texas.

PERIOD IV.  
THE REPUBLIC  
1836  
TO  
1846

The "Santa Fé Expedition" projected

It sets out from Austin, June 21, 1841



HUGH McLEOD.

Captured by Armijo, and prisoners sent to Mexico

PERIOD IV.  
THE REPUBLIC  
1836  
TO  
1846

The end of the administration was drawing near, and with it the government itself seemed on the verge of dissolution, but in the midst of it all Acting-President Burnet declared: "Texas proper is bounded by the Rio Grande; Texas as defined by the sword may comprehend the Sierra del Madre. *Let the sword do its proper work.*"

Financial ruin  
of the Republic

The *promissory notes* had done their "proper work," and when the Sixth Congress assembled on November 1, 1841, the government was financially wrecked. The expenses for the year had been \$1,176,288, and the receipts \$442,604, mostly in government paper taken for taxes and duties. The national debt had grown beyond computation, and was variously estimated at from *seven to twelve millions*. The debt represented dollars in good money; the receipts were in promissory notes worth from ten to twenty cents on the dollar.

Period of Lamar's  
administration

Third, Fourth,  
Fifth, and  
Sixth Con-  
gresses

President Lamar's administration began December 10, 1838, and ended December 12, 1841. During that period there were two entire Congresses and parts of two others. The Third Congress was in session when he was inaugurated, and continued about three months. The Fourth Congress met at the new capital, Austin on the Colorado, on the first Monday in November, 1839, and was in session until February, 1840. The government paid twenty-one thousand dollars in treasury notes for seven thousand one hundred and thirty-five acres fronting three miles on the east bank of the Colorado, on which the new capital was located, the city tract proper being six hundred and forty acres. The Fifth Congress met at Austin on the first Monday in November, 1840, and adjourned on February 5, 1841. The Sixth Congress met November 1, 1841, and adjourned February 5, 1842.

Important  
legislation

"Common  
Law" adopted

The legislation of these several bodies, during Lamar's term of office, was extensive and much of it highly beneficial. It comprehended the foundation of our whole system of laws of property rights and judicial procedure. On January 29, 1840, the Fourth Congress adopted what is called the *Common Law of England*, with certain modifications. This identified the legal and judicial institutions of Texas with that great and venerable system of jurisprudence by which the English-speaking race



everywhere is governed. The modifications in it were mainly those affecting the property rights of husband and wife, in which the *Spanish Civil Law* was retained ; and also the establishment of the law of *homestead exemptions*, borrowed from the Spanish law and founded upon the preservation of the family home as the necessary element of all social and political prosperity. In the matter of pleading and practice in the courts, too, the ancient and technical forms of the Common Law were abolished, and the litigant was required to state the facts of his case without regard to forms of action or distinctions between law and equity.

But it was in the field of educational enterprise that President Lamar and his Congresses are entitled to special admiration and gratitude. He was the father of the great system of free public schools supported by a landed endowment, which has ever been the pride of Texas. As far back as May 11, 1829, the legislature of Coahuila and Texas had provided for compulsory free education in a limited number of schools, on the *Lancastrian* or Monitorial plan. The Declaration of Texan Independence had complained of the failure of the Mexican government to establish and maintain a system of free education by bounties from the public domain, as one of the grievances of the colonists. The Constitution of the Republic commanded that "it shall be the duty of Congress, as soon as circumstances will permit, to provide by law a general system of education." But it remained for President Lamar to put these demands into execution. In his inaugural he was eloquent in his advocacy of liberal aid to public education, and his efforts secured the first laws on the subject. The Act of January 26, 1839, appropriated three leagues of land in each county, to found a primary school or academy, and fifty leagues were required to be surveyed and set apart for the endowment of two colleges or universities. An act of the Fourth Congress, February 5, 1840, provided further for the location of these lands by the county commissioners, and for receiving and holding other property for school purposes ; and gave an additional league of land in each county to be sold and the proceeds applied to the purchase of necessary scientific apparatus for schools. Thus was begun that wise and liberal policy of public support to the free schools and the University

PERIOD IV.  
THE REPUBLIC  
—  
1836  
TO  
1846  
—

Modifications  
from Spanish  
"Civil Law"

Foundation of  
great system  
of free public  
education

Early de-  
mands for the  
system

President La-  
mar the father  
of the system  
in Texas

Lands granted  
to academies,  
universities,  
and free  
schools

Beneficent  
effects of this  
policy

PERIOD IV.  
THE REPUBLIC

1836

TO

1846

of Texas, which has been the most consistent and meritorious feature in the whole subsequent history of the government. All of President Lamar's mistakes—and they were errors of judgment rather than of motive—can be readily forgiven him in the contemplation of his zeal and wisdom in the interest of the highest function of a free government,—the universal enlightenment of its citizens.

General results of the administration were good

During the three years of his administration many new counties were organized and their boundaries defined; several important industries incorporated and encouraged; a general bankruptcy law adopted, to enable unfortunate men to rebuild their fortunes; and, outside the reckless financial and foreign policy of the government, the general results of his administration were good. In spite of the poverty and distress of the times, the Republic rapidly filled up with immigrants, domestic and foreign trade increased immensely, and Texas was gradually learning to export more and import less of the articles of consumption. In 1836 there was but one newspaper in the Republic; in 1840 there were over a dozen, and their columns showed ability, thought, and hopeful energy throughout the country. Foreign nations had sent their representatives to the new court, while foreign vessels in considerable numbers whitened with their sails the harbors of Galveston, Velasco, Matagorda, and Copano, and small steamers plied the Brazos, the Trinity, and even the Colorado. But the blight of financial distress touched every interest, and there was no remedy but a change in the government. In the election of September, 1841, Sam Houston and David G. Burnet were the candidates for the presidency. Houston, since his retirement from the executive chair, had been a member in the Fourth and Fifth Congresses, and had opposed most of the reckless schemes of the administration. He was now regarded as the only man to save the country from its ruinous condition. Burnet was universally respected as a pure patriot and an able man, but his identity with the disastrous policies of the past three years assured his defeat.

Growth and prosperity of the Republic

Commercial activity

Election of September, 1841

At the election, Houston received 7915 votes and Burnet, 3619. For Vice-President, Edward Burlson received 6141 votes and Memucan Hunt, 4336.

Sam Houston elected President second time

On December 13, 1841, General Houston was inaugurated for his second term as President of the Republic, and at once entered upon the difficult task of restoring the broken and disordered affairs of the government.

PERIOD IV.  
THE REPUBLIC  
1836  
TO  
1846

## QUESTIONS.

WHO was Mirabeau B. Lamar, what was his age when elected President, and what can you say of his talents, character, and administration? How did his theories on public questions compare with those of General Houston? What were the principal features of his public policy, as shown in his messages to Congress? What results followed from the pursuit of these measures? What effect did they have on Lamar's administration, and what single service redeemed the misfortunes of his government? What condition existed among the Indians at the time of Lamar's inauguration as President? Explain the situation and attitude of the Cherokees,—their history, rights, and claims in Texas. Who was their principal chief, what was his character, and how did he feel on the subject? Who were in communication with the Indians, and for what purpose? What happened in March, 1839? Describe what occurred in July of the same year, the negotiations with the Indians, and the final results of the Cherokee War. What can you say of the causes and merits of that war? What was the result of the Indian policy thus inaugurated? When, where, and under what circumstances did the "Council House Fight" occur? Describe that fight. When and by what Indians was a bloody raid made through the country? What occurred at Linnville and Victoria? Who pursued the Indians, and with what results? When, where, and by whom was the "Plum Creek Fight" fought? What further operations were had against the Indians in that year? When and by what Congress was a law passed for locating the permanent capital of the Republic? What were the provisions of that law? Who were the commissioners and agent appointed under it, and what was done? When was the capital removed to Austin? Describe the various laws and changes made in regard to the seal, coat of arms, and flag of Texas. Give a description of the seal, arms, and flag finally adopted by the Republic. What flags were used by the Texans at San Jacinto and the Alamo? What did President Lamar propose in regard to a national bank, and what disposition did Congress make of his suggestion? What did he then do? Describe the condition of Texas finances in November, 1839,—amount of outstanding treasury notes, loans, receipts from revenue, expenses, and public debt. How did the expenses compare with the preceding and succeeding administrations? What occurred in 1839 in reference to land certificates, and what was done to remedy it? What

PERIOD IV.  
THE REPUBLIC

1836

TO

1846

was occurring in Mexico at this time? When, where, by whom, and on what account was the battle of Alcantra fought? What followed that battle? What "Republic" was formed at that time, who were its officers, what were its purposes, and what did the leaders do in Texas? Describe what occurred in the summer of 1840 in regard to an expedition to Mexico. What Texans took part in this expedition? Describe their experiences. When, where, between whom, and with what results was the battle of Saltillo fought? What did Texas do at this time towards securing peace and recognition from Mexico, with what result, and why? What was done in 1840 towards running the boundary line between Louisiana and Texas? Describe the condition of the Texas boundaries at that time. What claim was laid to New Mexico by some persons, and what can you say of that claim? By whose efforts and when did Great Britain, France, and Belgium recognize Texan independence? What were the condition and cost of the Texas navy at that time? What was done with it by the Fourth Congress? What did President Lamar do with the navy in June, 1840, and what became of most of the vessels? What was the financial condition at the end of the year 1840? What did Congress do to relieve the situation? What occurred to the President at that time? What new schemes were put on foot in the early part of the year 1841? What can you say of the "Franco-Texan Land Company" and its projected monopoly? What was the "Santa Fé Expedition," and when and how did it originate? Who undertook it? When and whence did it set out, under whose command, with what force, and accompanied by whom? Describe the adventures, capture, and fate of this expedition. What was the condition of the government at the close of Lamar's administration? What did Acting-President Burnet declare? What was the state of the finances at that time? Give the amounts of expenses, receipts, public debt, etc. When did Lamar's administration begin and end? What Congresses were in session during that period, and give the places of their meeting and dates of assembling and adjourning of each? Describe the terms and location of the purchase of the location for the permanent capital. What was the general character of legislation during this administration? What great system was then founded? Describe the adoption of the *Common Law*, and how modified; what features of the Spanish *Civil Law* were retained, etc. What special and new legal changes were instituted as to *homestead*, *pleading*, and *practice* in the courts, etc.? In what particular field of enterprise was this administration distinguished? Give a sketch of the early legislation of Mexico and Texas on the subject of public education. Who was really the father of the Texas educational system? Describe the various provisions that were made by law for founding that system during his administration, giving the dates of each act of Congress. What can you say of this policy, and of its effect upon President Lamar's fame and memory? Describe the general results of his administration. What were the condition, growth, commercial activity, and foreign relations of the Republic?

What general blight rested on the country, and what was necessary to remove it? Who were candidates for President and Vice-President at the election in September, 1841? What can you say of Houston and Burnet? Give the result of the vote at that election. When was President Houston inaugurated for his second term of office?

PERIOD IV.  
THE REPUBLIC  
1836  
TO  
1846

### Topical Analysis.

1. President Lamar's administration, December 10, 1838, to December 12, 1841. His policies the reverse of those of his predecessor, in the following respects :

- (a) Opposition to annexation of Texas to the United States.
- (b) Unrelenting war on the Indians, and their expulsion from Texas.
- (c) Alliance with revolutionary schemes in Mexico, and filibustering expeditions to invade that country.
- (d) Extension of Texas boundary to include New Mexico.
- (e) Aid to Yucatan in her revolt against Mexico.
- (f) Establishment of a national bank, and the issuance of irredeemable paper money and treasury notes.
- (g) A generally expensive and extensive administration of the government.

2. Important events of his administration :

- (a) The Cherokee War in Eastern Texas, expulsion of the Cherokees, and a general Indian war on the frontier, accompanied by murderous raids of Comanches and Kiowas as far as Linnville and Victoria.
- (b) "Council House Fight" at San Antonio; battles of "Plum Creek," "Battle Creek," and other Indian encounters with Texas Rangers.
- (c) Location of permanent capital of the Republic at the city of Austin. Adoption of national seal, arms, and flag.
- (d) Expensive navy developed, placed *in ordinary*, and finally sent to Yucatan.
- (e) Defeat of national banking scheme, increase of public debt, expenses, and outstanding treasury notes. Loan from United States Bank. Forgery of land certificates. Travelling land board.
- (f) Revolution in northern Mexico, "Republic of the Rio Grande" formed, filibustering expeditions from Texas to aid the revolutionists. Battles of Alcantra, Saltillo, Matamoros, and Monterey. Mexico refuses peace.
- (g) Attempt to fix boundaries of Texas. Claim laid to New Mexico.
- (h) "Santa Fé Expedition;" is captured in New Mexico, and prisoners sent to the Mexican capital. Their release secured only after long delay and difficulty.
- (i) Military roads projected from the Nueces to Red River, and from Austin to Santa Fé. The corrupt scheme of the "Franco-Texan Land Company."

PERIOD IV.  
THE REPUBLIC

1836

TO

1846

(j) Adoption of the "Common Law" of England, modified to some extent by Spanish "Civil Law." *Homestead exemption*, and abolition of *forms of action* and distinction between *law* and *equity* in the practice of courts, adopted.

(k) *Educational System* of Texas founded; policy of land donations to schools and University adopted; and the liberal endowment of a great system of free public instruction established,—entitling President Lamar to lasting gratitude and renown.

(l) Organization of many new counties, general growth and prosperity of the Republic, increased immigration, commercial activity, and foreign trade.

(m) Financial distress and enormous public debt, threatening the destruction of the government. The Third, Fourth, Fifth, and Sixth Congresses sat during Lamar's administration.

(n) Re-election of Sam Houston as President, defeating David G. Burnet. Edward Burleson elected Vice-President.

### Geography.

Locate the country claimed and inhabited by the Cherokee Indians in Texas; the places where the several Indian battles mentioned in this chapter occurred; the scene of the expeditions and battles in Mexico which are described; the route of the "Santa Fé Expedition;" the boundaries of Texas as claimed and sought to be established during Lamar's administration.

### Parallel Readings.

Scarff's "Comprehensive History of Texas," Vol. I.; Brown's "History of Texas;" Foote's "Republic of Texas;" Kendall's "Santa Fé Expedition;" Bancroft's "His-  
ico;" Williams's "Sam Hous-  
pendence;" Crane's "Life of  
Scrap-Book;" Gouge's "Fiscal  
Mirabeau B. Lamar" (1857);  
of Texas Geography."



TOMB OF GENERAL M. B. LAMAR,  
Richmond, Texas.

## CHAPTER XVIII.

### Houston's Second Administration; Financial Reform; Mexican Hostilities; Indian Treaties; New Colonial Contracts.

**P**RESIDENT HOUSTON'S first administration had been one of *construction*; his second was one of *reconstruction*. The results of the three years since he left the executive office were such as to render his second labor more difficult than the first. To aid him in the work he selected able and experienced men. His various Cabinet and executive appointments during his second administration were as follows: secretary of state, Anson Jones; secretary of war and navy, George W. Hockley, George W. Hill; secretary of the treasury, William H. Daingerfield, James B. Miller; attorney-general, George W. Terrell, Ebenezer Allen; treasurer, Asa Brigham; comptroller, Frank R. Lubbock, James B. Shaw; auditor, Charles Mason; commissioner of general land office, John P. Borden, Thomas William Ward; minister to the United States, James Reiley, Isaac Van Zandt, J. Pinckney Henderson; minister to France, Ashbel Smith; minister to Belgium, the Netherlands, and Hanse Towns, W. H. Daingerfield; secretary of legation to the United States, Charles H. Raymond.

It was during this administration that there were developed in their fullest intensity the personal issues that divided men into Houston and *anti*-Houston parties, and the influence of which runs through all the politics of Texas from that time even to the breaking out of the civil war in 1861.

In his message to Congress in December, 1841, the President outlined his policies as in the main the same as during his former term and directly opposed to those of President Lamar.

PERIOD IV.  
THE REPUBLIC  
1836  
TO  
1846  
—

Houston's second administration one of reconstruction



THOMAS WM. WARD.

Personal politics

His public policies

PERIOD IV.  
THE REPUBLIC

1836  
TO  
1846

Financial  
plans

He recommended friendship and treaties of peace with the Indians, with a line of trading posts along the frontier, protected by small garrisons; the absolute suspension of all attempts to meet the outstanding obligations and debts of the Republic, until their amount and nature could be fixed, and there was some certainty of paying them; the issuance of not more than \$350,000 of exchequer bills, to take the place of the "red-backs," as the old promissory notes were called,—these exchequer bills to be secured by 1,000,000 acres of the Cherokee lands and by the customs revenues of the government, to be received for duties and taxes only at par, and to be cancelled as fast as they were received; the reduction of all expenses and cutting down of taxes one-half, to be paid only in coin or par paper; and a public loan of \$300,000. He deprecated all connection with Mexican revolutionists, and advised a friendly attitude of armed neutrality towards that country.



ISAAC VAN ZANDT.

Congress at once adopted the spirit of these reforms to a considerable extent. It provided, on January 19, 1842, for the issuance of \$200,000 of exchequer bills, secured by the customs receipts, and that these bills should be received only at par for taxes and duties.

It did not base these issues on landed security, as the President had advised, nor did it reduce taxes; so that the exchequer currency fell for a while to fifty cents on the dollar. This was due also to the fear that the government might refuse to receive the bills for duties and taxes, as had just been done with the treasury notes issued in the past five years. It was further provided that all bills received by the government, and all of the old notes, bonds, and obligations of the Republic then in the hands of the government, should "be cancelled, burned up, and utterly destroyed." Congress repealed the law authorizing the \$5,000,000 loan, and declined to authorize any further loans in any amount. It cut down all salaries more than half, and abolished many useless offices. At the organization of the Republic in 1836, the public salaries were fixed very high,—the President's was \$10,000 a year,—and a multitude of unnecessary officials were required to run the government. These

Congress  
adopts his  
recommenda-  
tions

Exchequer  
bills

Destruction of  
old notes

Reduction of  
salaries



were now unsparingly reduced. The beneficial results of this legislation are apparent from the financial records of the times. The expenses of Lamar's three years' term of service were \$4,855,215, while those of Houston's second term were \$511,082. The salaries of the public officials at the capital for the year 1840 were \$174,200; for 1841, \$173,506; for 1842, \$32,800.

But with all the wisdom thus displayed in regard to the finances, the Sixth Congress was not free from the insanity of the times when it came to dealing with Mexico. The news of the fate of the Santa Fé prisoners reached Austin on January 18, 1842, and great were the sorrow and indignation of the people. Congress at once passed a bill extending the boundaries of Texas to include the Californias, New Mexico, Chihuahua, Sonora, and parts of Sinaloa, Durango, Coahuila, and Tamaulipas,—a territory as large as the then American Union, and containing a population of 2,000,000 Indians and Mexicans. Houston promptly vetoed this astounding act, but so great was the feeling that it was passed over his veto. Aside from the utter absurdity of the declaration, it was a reckless and dangerous provocation to Mexico at a time when Texan citizens were prisoners in her hands, and when their release as well as permanent peace were being sought through the mediation of foreign nations. But Mexico was already aroused by the expedition to Santa Fé and the aid to Yucatan in the previous year. Besides, it was necessary that she should make some active movement showing her continued claim to Texas. It had been six years since San Jacinto, and the young Republic was fast taking its place among the independent sovereignties of the world. Foreign nations were beginning to think and to say that Mexico's claim was growing stale, if not entirely forfeited. Santa Anna had again seized the presidency, and at the beginning of the year 1842 declared he "would plant his eagles on the banks of the Sabine." General Arista, in command at Monterey, issued a proclamation on January 9, 1842, inviting Texans to return to their allegiance, and declaring his purpose to reconquer the lost province.

On March 5, General Rafael Vasquez, with five hundred men, appeared at San Antonio. The small garrison left the

PERIOD IV.  
THE REPUBLIC  
1836  
TO  
1846  
—

Absurd action  
of Congress

Houston's  
veto

Mexico  
aroused to ac-  
tive hostility

Santa Anna's  
boast

Invasion by  
Vasquez,  
March, 1842

PERIOD IV.  
THE REPUBLIC  
1836  
TO  
1846

Houston's call  
for troops in  
Texas

Soldiers  
assemble at  
San Antonio

Disbanded

Houston's  
plan

Blockade of  
Mexican ports

Troubles with  
the Texas  
navy

Ordered to be  
sold

town, and he took possession for two days, returning to the Rio Grande on the 7th. About the same time small parties of Mexican troops entered Goliad and Refugio, but they did no damage, and left in a few days. These movements were probably intended merely to evidence Mexico's claim to the country, but they excited the people of Texas. The President issued a call for troops on March 10, and published a letter of defiance in reply to Santa Anna's boasting utterances. A force of some three hundred men assembled at San Antonio; but, as the Mexicans had retreated to the Rio Grande, it was not considered advisable to follow them. There was a dispute as to the command of these troops, the men preferring Colonel Edward Burleson (the Vice-President), while General Alexander Somervell, by virtue of his rank in the militia, was assigned to the command by the President. The men were disbanded on April 2. Meanwhile the levies and volunteers had swelled the number of men at Bexar to nearly thirty-five hundred, and there was great dissatisfaction that they were not permitted to march at once into the enemy's country. The fact appears to be, that while Houston publicly humored the demand for war and invasion, he was determined not to go beyond defending the territory and independence of Texas; and in the subsequent events it is likely General Somervell acted under his secret instructions to that effect.

On March 26, 1842, the President declared a blockade against all Mexican ports, from the coast of Tobasco to Brazos Santiago. The Mexican navy had been destroyed in the French war, and this blockade could have been easily enforced if the Texas navy had been on hand to execute it; but the vessels had been sent to Yucatan in the fall of 1841, and did not return until May, 1842. Commodore Moore then took them to the mouth of the Mississippi for repairs. President Houston ordered Moore to bring the navy to the Texas coast for blockading purposes. He refused, on the ground that he had contracted debts for the repairs of the ships and had pledged his honor not to take them away until the amount was paid. On January 16, 1843, Houston procured a secret act of Congress for the sale of the navy, and soon afterwards sent James Morgan and William Bryan as

commissioners to bring the vessels to Galveston. But Commodore Moore had been offered rich spoils if he would return to Yucatan and aid in the rebellion going on there. He persuaded the commissioners to let him go, and one of them went with him. President Houston at once suspended Moore and proclaimed him and his men pirates, requesting the vessels of all foreign nations to treat them as such, and to seize and return the vessels to the Texan government. Moore served his little fleet with brilliant success at Campeachy, and roughly handled all vessels that came in his way. Houston's acts provoked great indignation among the Commodore's friends and at Galveston. The act for the sale of the navy was repealed on February 5, 1844, and the vessels, having returned, were laid up in ordinary. Four of them remained at the date of annexation, and were transferred to the United States navy. As late as 1857, Congress appropriated money to pay the officers for the five years succeeding annexation. Thus ended the history of the Texan navy. It had a gallant career, but, as with the army on land, insubordination impaired its usefulness.

The alarm produced by the occupation of San Antonio by Vasquez, in March, 1842, excited fears for the safety of the capital at Austin, and the President decided to return the seat of government to Houston. The records were not then removed on account of the opposition of the citizens. But in December, 1842, Houston sent Captain Thomas I. Smith to bring away the papers and archives of the various departments. He succeeded in entering the town on December 30, at night, and loaded three wagons with boxes of records. He was discovered and fired upon with a cannon, a Mrs. Eberly touching off the piece. Smith escaped with his loads as far as Brushy Creek, where he camped. Next morning he found himself surrounded by a company of men from Austin, under command of Captain Mark B. Lewis, with a cannon planted squarely in front of his wagons. He was compelled to haul the records back to Austin, where they remained until delivered to President Anson Jones at the Annexation Convention in that city, in 1845. This episode was known as the "Archive War."

PERIOD IV.  
THE REPUBLIC

1836

TO

1846

Commodore  
Moore's insub-  
ordination  
and removal

Indignation  
against Presi-  
dent Houston

Fate of the  
navy

Capital  
removed to  
Houston

"The Archive  
War"

PERIOD IV.  
THE REPUBLIC

1836  
TO  
1846

Houston's  
message on  
relations to  
Mexico

To provide for the threatened renewal of hostilities by Mexico, and to decide upon what course should be pursued in regard to that country, the President convened the Sixth Congress in special session at Houston, on June 27, 1842. In his message to that body he did not assume the responsibility of advising an invasion of Mexico. He stated that he did not believe there was any real danger of a serious attempt on the part of Mexico to subjugate Texas, but that the policy of that country would be to harass the frontier, excite the Indians, and make predatory



MRS. EBERLY FIRING THE CANNON.

incursions into Texas ; and that some remedy must be adopted to prevent these evils. He called attention to the fact that many volunteers and militia-men had responded to his call for troops, and were then on the Nueces and at other points, waiting to be employed in active operations, or to be disbanded ; and he left with Congress the decision of what should be done. In May, the President had sent General James Davis to Corpus Christi, to take command of the volunteers and militia gathering there, but with orders to make no advance without authority. The men gradually left, until in June Davis had only one hundred and ninety-two men. He was attacked on the Nueces, on June 7, by Canales, with seven hundred men and one piece of artillery ;

General Davis  
at Corpus  
Christi

Fight with  
Mexicans on  
the Nueces

but the Texans repulsed the enemy, who soon afterwards retired. These recent events had caused such a feeling that the Congress passed a bill providing for an offensive war against Mexico, appointing the President commander-in-chief with dictatorial powers, and appropriating 10,000,000 acres of land to defray the expenses. President Houston vetoed the bill for several reasons given by him. One was that he was opposed to dictatorial powers being conferred upon any person in a free government; another was that to prosecute a successful war of invasion would require at least five thousand men, with all necessary military funds, supplies, and equipments, and the Republic had no money to put such an army in the field. The 10,000,000 acres appropriated would require agents to sell it, and no provision was made for their pay; and the land itself would bring but little, as the Republic had already issued great quantities of land scrip which had no sale except at nominal prices. As he said, the whole bill was like "a resolution to appropriate ten million acres of blue sky, and conferring dictatorial powers on the north wind." This veto provoked unbounded and violent criticism of the President. He was accused of having secured the passage of the bill, in order to make popularity by refusing

PERIOD IV.
THE REPUBLIC
1836
TO
1846

Act of Congress for active war, and appointing Houston dictator



JAMES DAVIS.

the powers conferred upon him by it. Threats of revolution and even assassination were freely indulged in, and the storm of abuse was terrific. He bore it calmly and fearlessly, and the excitement gradually subsided, although the bitterness of this and other events in his career at that time never entirely passed away.

Houston vetoes the bill

Violent feeling against him in consequence



MRS. GENERAL SAM HOUSTON.

The Congress at this special session changed the time for the meeting of the regular sessions to the first Monday in December of each year.

Change in time of meeting of Congress

Meanwhile the Mexicans were not idle. On September 11, 1842, General Adrian Woll, with an army of fourteen hundred men, appeared at San Antonio and took possession of the town,

Mexican invasion under General Woll, September, 1842

PERIOD IV  
THE REPUBLIC

1836

TO

1846

Texans rally at  
San Antonio

Battle of the  
Salado, Sep-  
tember 18, 1842



MONUMENT TO  
DAWSON AND HIS  
MEN AND MIER  
PRISONERS, LA  
Grange, Texas.

The "Dawson  
Massacre"

Woll's retreat  
and escape

Texans  
disband

capturing the officers of the district court then in session. A few Texans escaped and spread the news throughout the country. In a few days the militia, Rangers, and volunteers gathered from the Brazos to the Lavaca, and under the leadership of such men as Captains John C. Hays, Matthew Caldwell ("Old Paint"), Henry E. McCulloch, Ewan Cameron, James Bird, and John R. Baker, they rallied towards San Antonio to the number of two hundred and two men. On September 18, they succeeded in drawing Woll's force out of the town, and a battle occurred on the Salado, six miles from Bexar. The Mexicans numbered about a thousand infantry and four hundred cavalry, and they had two pieces of artillery. The Texans held the enemy in close fight for several hours, and Woll at sunset drew off. Next day he retreated towards the Rio Grande, having lost severely in killed and wounded.

While the battle of the 18th was in progress, Captain Nicholas Dawson, with fifty-three volunteers from Fayette County, approached from the east to join Hays and Caldwell on the Salado. They were cut off and surrounded by Mexican cavalry in the prairie, and after a desperate struggle, in which they could accomplish but little because the Mexicans kept out of range of their rifles and used a cannon, they surrendered, after half of them had been killed. The Texans were shot down without mercy after their surrender. Only two men escaped, fifty-one were killed, and ten were taken prisoners.

This is known as "Dawson's Massacre," and the dead bodies of the slain were stripped and left in the prairie, where they were found next day by Caldwell's scouts. After Woll's retreat, Caldwell and his men followed him on the 20th, and reinforcements came in to the number of two hundred and twenty, under Jesse Billingsley, W. J. Wallace, and John H. Moore. The Mexicans, however, made good their escape, leaving their carts and baggage, and crossed the river at the Presidio del Rio Grande. The Texans returned to San Antonio, meeting on the way three hundred volunteers under Colonel Ed. Bureson. On the 25th they were disbanded, Bureson advising them to go home and get ready for a vigorous campaign into Mexico.

This second Mexican invasion within the year aroused the

most intense war spirit in Texas, and preparations for a counter invasion of Mexico were extensively made. After the called session of Congress adjourned, in July, 1842, the President issued a proclamation removing the temporary seat of government from Houston to Old Washington, on the Brazos, where it remained until the Annexation Convention in 1845, when it was brought back finally to Austin. As soon as the Woll invasion was known, President Houston called out two regiments of militia, who, together with the volunteers, were to constitute an army for active operations against Mexico, and General Somervell was assigned to the chief command. The latter was not acceptable to the men, because it was not believed that he was in sympathy with the war party, and his subsequent conduct proved that he was not, or that he was controlled by secret instructions from Houston not to advance beyond the Rio Grande. A considerable number of troops, mostly volunteers, assembled at San Antonio in October and November, and a regiment was organized with James R. Cooke as colonel. Chief-justice Hemphill was adjutant-general of the entire force, and William G. Cooke, quartermaster-general. On November 22 they set out for the Rio Grande, and after a most disagreeable march, during which the dissatisfaction against Somervell increased, they reached Laredo on December 8. The town had been vacated by the Mexican garrison, and the command was marched to a point three miles down the river and camped. The weather was cold, the men had scant clothing, few blankets, and nothing to eat, and their murmurings became loud and frequent. Somervell refused to cross the river, but marched down stream to the mouth of the Salado River, nearly opposite Guerrero. All who wanted to go home had been invited to do so at Laredo, and two hundred had accepted the invitation, leaving about five hundred men now in the party. They crossed the river on December 15, and camped near Guerrero for two or three days. On December 19, the commander ordered them to prepare to return to Gonzales and be disbanded. Three hundred of them refused to obey, and, organized into companies under the chief command of Colonel William S. Fisher, they prepared to conduct a campaign on their own account. The

PERIOD IV.  
THE REPUBLIC

1836

TO

1846

Capital re-  
moved to Old  
Washington,  
on the Brazos

Army to  
invade Mexico

General  
Somervell

Beginning of  
the "Mier  
Expedition"

Reaches  
Laredo

Dissatisfac-  
tion

Crosses the  
Rio Grande

Colonel W. S.  
Fisher organ-  
izes an inde-  
pendent force

At Mier

PERIOD IV.  
THE REPUBLIC

1836

TO

1846

Siege of Mier  
decided upon

The siege of  
Mier, Decem-  
ber 25-26, 1842

The Texans  
surrender

Desperate  
escape at the  
"Hacienda  
Salado"

Lost in the  
mountains

Recaptured

other two hundred, including the more prudent and conservative, returned to Texas. Fisher's party descended the river in boats and by land until they reached the Mexican town of Mier, and on December 23 crossed the river and entered the town. After levying contributions on the inhabitants, they brought away the *alcalde* and the priest as hostages and returned to the Texas side of the river. Two days later they learned that General Ampudia had occupied Mier with two thousand troops. The Texans decided to cross over and give the Mexicans a battle. Meanwhile disputes had arisen among them, and several of the best men went home, including Captains Hays, Ben and Henry E. McCulloch, Tom Green, and Ephraim M. McLean.

On Christmas night, 1842, this little band, leaving forty-two men to guard the camp on the Texas side of the river, crossed the Rio Grande and the Alcantra River, which skirts the walls of Mier, and entered the town, effecting a lodgement in some houses near the *plaza*. It was a repetition of the siege of Bexar under Milam and Johnson, but with a different result. Ampudia's strong force resisted desperately, and the fight was conducted in the streets, from the housetops, and with volleys of grape and canister from the Mexican artillery. It lasted nearly eighteen hours, during which the Mexicans lost over six hundred killed and wounded, while the Texans had sixteen killed and mortally injured. At last Fisher's men were persuaded to surrender, under written promise that they would be humanely treated and soon exchanged. Instead of this, the prisoners were tied together in pairs and driven on foot towards the City of Mexico. The majority of these captives reached the *Hacienda of the Salado*, between Saltillo and San Luis Potosi, on February 10, 1843. Next morning, led by Captain Ewan Cameron, they rose against their guards, and after a deadly struggle, in which five of them were killed, they routed the guard, consisting of nearly two hundred men, and escaped, well armed and mounted. There were about one hundred and ninety-three liberated prisoners, and they started at once for the Rio Grande. But leaving the road, they became lost in the mountains, several perished from hunger and thirst, and only four finally reached home. The others were recaptured on February 19, and carried back to



the *Hacienda of the Salado*. Santa Anna ordered them all to be shot at once, but the humanity of the officers modified this barbarity, so as to shoot only every tenth man. On March 26, 1843, the prisoners were drawn up in line, blindfolded, and a jar containing one hundred and seventy beans, of which seventeen were black and the remainder white, was held above their heads. As the roll was called, each man stepped forward and, thrusting his hand into the jar, drew out a bean. If it was *black*, his

PERIOD IV.  
THE REPUBLIC

1836  
TO  
1846

Drawing of  
the black  
beans



DRAWING THE BLACK BEANS AT HACIENDA SALADO.

doom was sealed ; but if *white*, he was spared for the uncertain cruelties of continued captivity. The seventeen men were executed, and the others were marched on to the Mexican capital. On the way, at Huehuetoca (*wā-wā-tō-cā*), came an order for the immediate execution of Captain Ewan Cameron, who headed the break for liberty at the *Hacienda* ; and this gallant Scot was taken out and shot. The others were carried to the strong castle of Peroté (*pā-rō'-tā*), on the road from Mexico to Vera Cruz, where they found other Texan prisoners, waiting for death

Captain Ewan  
Cameron

Prisoners of  
Peroté

PERIOD IV.  
THE REPUBLIC

1836

TO

1846

Troubles in  
Eastern Texas

Land forgeries

Feud between  
Jackson and  
Goodbread

or release. This unfortunate invasion of Mexico is known as the "Mier Expedition," and of its members who joined in the battle at Mier only about thirty-five lived to return to Texas. It was, however, the last but one of the desperate and hopeless ventures in which so many heroic lives were sacrificed in mistaken efforts of valor and patriotism.<sup>1</sup>

While these warlike events were happening in the West, a dangerous civil feud broke out in the East, in the old municipality of Teneha, mainly in Shelby County. The "heroes of the neutral ground" were not all dead, and from smuggling and filibustering they had turned their attention to forging land titles and setting up fraudulent squatters' claims to large and valuable tracts in Eastern Texas. The confusion of land titles in that region was great, owing to the many conflicting grants from the days of Hayden Edwards's "Fredonian War" down to the recent acts of the district land boards. In 1842, one Charles W. Jackson, a fugitive from justice from Louisiana, ran for Congress in Shelby County. He was defeated, and he ascribed his defeat to certain persons interested in land frauds, which he at once declared he would expose to the general land office. One Joseph Goodbread, a leader of the other faction, threatened to run him

<sup>1</sup> Forty-one of the Texans who remained at the river during the siege of Mier escaped, but Major George W. Bonnell was captured and shot. There escaped from Mier ten of the Texans; sixteen were killed or died from wounds received in the siege; in the struggle for liberty at the *Hacienda Salado*, five were killed, including Dr. Richard F. Brenham; seventeen drew black beans and were shot; Captain Cameron was executed at Huehuetoca; five perished in the mountains after their escape from the *Hacienda*; four reached Texas; thirty-five died in the prison of Peroté; fourteen were released at various times; eight escaped from the City of Mexico. The seventeen who drew the fatal beans were L. L. Cash, James D. Cocke, Robert H. Dunham, Captain William M. Eastland, Robert Esty (brother of Mrs. David G. Burnet), Robert Harris, Thomas L. Jones, Patrick Mahan, James M. Ogden, Charles Roberts, William Rowen, J. L. Shepherd, J. W. N. Thompson, James N. Torrey, Turnbull, Henry Whaling, and Martin Carroll Wing. There were confined in the Castle of Peroté, besides the Mier prisoners, the survivors of the Santa Fé Expedition who were captured in New Mexico, those captured at San Antonio by General Woll in 1842, and the men who survived the Dawson Massacre and were taken prisoners by the Mexicans.

out of the country, and Jackson shot Goodbread dead in Shelbyville. When Jackson's trial came on, the court-house was filled with armed men, and the judge would not attend the court. The excitement spread and assumed dangerous proportions. Jackson organized an armed force which he called the *Regulators*, while his opponents formed into an equally violent organization called the *Moderators*, and a deadly *vendetta* was declared in East Texas. More than fifty men were killed from time to time, and in 1844 the two factions were drawn up in battle array at Shelbyville. President Houston sent General Smith to disperse the lawless bands, which he succeeded in doing without bloodshed; but for many years afterwards the feud broke out now and then, and more than one citizen held the title to his lands by virtue of his readiness to defend it with his rifle. This desperate civil strife was known as the "War of the *Regulators* and *Moderators*."

Since his second election, President Houston had been so engrossed with the affairs of the government that he had but little time to devote to the Indian problem. But he had not abandoned his plan of making a general treaty with all the tribes, by which the line of the frontier would be defended, trading posts established, and the rights of both parties fixed and respected within the agreed limits. In pursuance of that plan he appointed Joseph C. Eldridge commissioner of Indian affairs. A partial treaty was made in the winter of 1842-43 with the Wacos, and representatives of several of the smaller tribes visited the President to have friendly talks. In March, 1843, Houston sent Eldridge, with Hamilton P. Bee and Thomas Torrey, to see all the tribes on the Brazos, upper Trinity, and as far north as the Comanche headquarters in the Indian Territory, to solicit their head chiefs to meet him in a general council for the purpose of entering into a treaty of peace and trade. The point selected for this meeting was Bird's Fort, on the west fork of the Trinity, being about twenty-two miles west of where Dallas now stands, and the date

PERIOD IV.  
THE REPUBLIC

1836

TO

1846

"War of the  
Regulators  
and Moderators"

Houston's  
Indian policy

Treaty with  
Indians  
attempted



FORT ON THE WESTERN BORDER.

PERIOD IV.  
THE REPUBLIC

1836

TO

1846

Adventures of  
Eldridge, Bee,  
and Torrey

Meet with rep-  
resentatives of  
several tribes

Pay-hay-  
yuc-co

Treaty finally  
negotiated,  
September 29,  
1843

was August 10. The latter part of March the commissioners set out from Washington, accompanied by *Acoquash*, head chief of the Wacos, a party of Delaware guides and interpreters, a pack train with supplies and presents for the Indians, and carrying with them two Comanche children, captured three years before in the Council House Fight at San Antonio. They proceeded up the Brazos and then north to a point on the upper Trinity, probably in what is now Wise, or Jack County, where they met representatives of the Waco, Tawakana, Towash, Ionic, Keechi, Caddo, Bedais, Biloxi, Delaware, and Anadarko tribes, all of whom promised to attend the council. They were delayed here a month, but pushed on north to find the Comanches. Finally, about the 1st of August, they reached the village of *Pay-hay-yuc-co*, the head chief of the Comanches, near where Fort Sill is now located. A council of the tribes was held August 9, and it came near decreeing the death of the Texan commissioners. As it was, Pay-hay-yuc-co declined to enter into the treaty, and the commissioners were allowed to depart in peace. The date for the meeting of the council had now passed, and it was necessary to fix a new date and send word to the other tribes. This was done, and after considerable delay and some adventures they reached Bird's Fort, to find that President Houston had awaited their coming until it was concluded they were lost, and had returned to Washington. George W. Terrell and E. H. Tarrant, however, were there to represent the government, and on September 29, 1843, a treaty was negotiated with the several tribes before named. A dividing line between the white settlements and the Indian grounds was agreed upon, along which trading posts were to be established. This frontier line ran from the present site of Fort Worth, by way of Comanche Peak in Hood County, south past the location of the old San Saba Mission to the Rio Grande, and the Indians agreed to keep to the west of it.



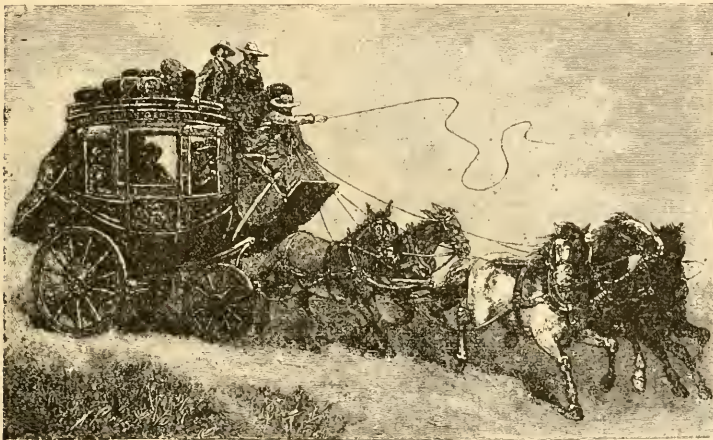
MAP SHOWING FRONTIER IN 1843 AND 1873.  
SOLID LINES AND FLAGS SHOW FRONTIER AND TRADING  
POSTS IN 1843. DOTTED LINES THE BORDER IN 1873.

There was one more "expedition" to attest the restless and reckless spirit of those days, and it was authorized by the government. In the spring of 1843, Colonel Jacob Snively set out from Texas, with one hundred and eighty men, to capture a richly-laden wagon-train that was said to be on the way from Missouri to Santa Fé. He reached the Arkansas River in May, and learned that the train was approaching under escort of United States dragoons, while a large Mexican force was near by to receive and guard it to Santa Fé. Snively came in contact with the Mexicans on May 20 and killed seventeen of them,

PERIOD IV.  
THE REPUBLIC

1836  
TO  
1846

Snively's  
expedition



AN OLD-TIME STAGE-COACH.

capturing eighty prisoners and large supplies. Here seventy of the party returned to Texas under Captain Chandler. On June 30, Captain Cooke, of the United States army, captured Snively's command, one hundred and seven men, alleging that they were on the soil of the United States, and disarmed them. Fifty of the men went to Missouri with Cooke's dragoons, and the others overtook Chandler's party, with whom they reached Fort Bird on August 6.

Captured by  
United States  
troops

In the midst of these stirring scenes on both borders, enlivened by an occasional outbreak of turbulence at home, Texas was nevertheless growing rapidly in population, and the financial

Growth,  
prosperity,  
and public  
economy

PERIOD IV.  
THE REPUBLIC

1836  
TO  
1846

Revival of  
colonization  
contracts

Peters's  
Colony

Fisher and  
Miller's, Cas-  
tro's, and Mer-  
cer's colonies

Irregularity of  
Mercer's Col-  
ony contract

Diplomatic  
correspond-  
ence with  
Mexico and  
United States

condition had vastly improved. The public debt was not increased a dollar; the exchequer bills were brought up to something like par; the old "red-backs" had been entirely lost sight of; and the receipts of the government exceeded its expenses. The total cost of Houston's three years' administration was \$416,058, and there was a balance in the treasury of \$5058.

The system of colonization contracts had been abolished by the Consultation in 1835, but it was revived by an act of the Fifth Congress, passed January 4, 1841, under President Lamar's administration. The first colony contract under that law was made with W. S. Peters, Daniel S. Carroll, and eighteen others, and it was modified afterwards by additional families and an extension of time. This was known as Peters's Colony, and by the general terms of the contract six hundred and forty acres were to be given to each head of a family, and three hundred and twenty acres to each single man, subject to requirements as to actual settlement and improvements. Peters's Colony was located in the district of country lying one hundred miles square just south of Red River. Under the same law and other acts of Congress, similar colonies were established. Among the principal ones of these were Fisher and Miller's Colony, on the Llano and San Saba Rivers; Henri Castro's, in 1842, between the Rio Grande and Medina Rivers and along the Arroyo Uvalde; and that of Charles Fenton Mercer, on the upper Trinity. Mercer's Colony contract was signed by President Houston on January 29, 1844, when Congress had but a few days before repealed the law authorizing such contracts, and the repealing bill was then in the President's hands for approval. On January 30 he vetoed the bill, and the same day it was passed over his veto. His conduct provoked much criticism, and the Supreme Court of the United States, forty years afterwards, held the contract to be unlawful and void.

A great feature of Houston's second administration was the diplomatic correspondence and intrigues, looking to peace with Mexico and annexation to the United States; but this subject is so intimately interwoven with the acts of the succeeding administration that it will be postponed to the next chapter, in order to treat that topic as a continuous and intelligent whole.

Houston's second term as President began on December 13, 1841, and ended December 9, 1844. During that period the Sixth, Seventh, Eighth, and Ninth Congresses met, the Sixth having convened in regular session a few weeks preceding Houston's inauguration, and the Ninth having just met when he retired from office. The Sixth Congress held its regular session from the first Monday in November, 1841, to February 5, 1842. To meet the necessities of the invasion from Mexico, it was called together in special session at Houston on June 27, 1842, and remained in session until July 23. The Seventh Congress should have met the first Monday in December, 1842, but the President convened it on November 14 to meet certain exigencies. It continued until January 16, 1843. The Eighth Congress met in December, 1843, and lasted until February 5, 1844. The Ninth Congress met the first Monday in December, 1844, and adjourned February 3, 1845. A special session of this body was held from June 16 to 24, 1845, being the last assembling of the legislative department of the Republic of Texas.

During the three years from 1841 to 1844 a great amount of important legislation was enacted. The general nature of the more prominent acts has already been indicated; but there was a vast system of laws passed affecting the details of domestic government that cannot be noticed here. Among those not heretofore named may be mentioned an act of the Sixth Congress authorizing district judges to alternate in holding their courts; and the acts of the Seventh Congress opening the Cherokee lands to settlement, and providing for constructing the "Central National Road" from a point on the Trinity near Dallas to the mouth of Kiamatia on Red River, the surveyors and contractors to be granted six hundred and forty acres of land each, adjoining the road.

Near the close of President Houston's second administration, on September 16, 1844, Santa Anna released the one hundred and four Texan prisoners at Peroté, it was said, by the dying request of his wife.

At the fourth general election held September 2, 1844, Anson Jones was elected President over Edward Burleson by a vote of 6994 to 5695, and Kenneth L. Anderson was elected Vice-

PERIOD IV.  
THE REPUBLIC  
1836  
TO  
1846  
—

Congresses in  
Houston's  
second ad-  
ministration

Sixth to Ninth  
Congresses,  
inclusive

Important  
legislation

"Central Na-  
tional Road"

Prisoners of  
Peroté  
released

Anson Jones  
elected fourth  
President

PERIOD IV  
 THE REPUBLIC  
 ———  
 1836  
 TO  
 1846  
 ———

President. At that time Jones was regarded as being opposed to annexation, and the vote was significant on that question. But the history of that issue we shall next relate.

## QUESTIONS.

WHAT were the respective characters of Houston's two administrations as President? Give the names and official positions of the men who composed his Cabinet and executive aids in his second administration. What personal issues arose then, and what can you say of their continuance? What were his public policies as outlined in his message to Congress in December, 1841, and how did they contrast with those of his predecessor? Explain especially his plans for financial reform. What did he advise in regard to Mexico? What did Congress do upon these recommendations? In what respects did Congress depart from the President's financial plans, and with what results? What was done with all bills, old notes, bonds, and obligations of the government? What in regard to public loans? In what respects were governmental expenses reduced, and with what practical results? Compare the expenses of Lamar's and Houston's second administration. What absurd bill was passed by Congress in regard to the territory of Texas? What did Houston do, and what followed? What can you say of that measure? What was the attitude of Mexico at that time, and what risk did she run? What had become of Santa Anna, and what did he and General Arista do? When and by whom was an invasion made from Mexico into Texas? Describe the extent, nature, and motives of this invasion. What did President Houston do in consequence of it? What troops gathered at San Antonio, and what ensued there? What was probably Houston's attitude in that emergency? When was a blockade of Mexican ports ordered, and why was it not enforced? What had become of the Texas navy? Describe fully what difficulties arose in regard to the navy, the acts of the President, the Congress, and Commodore Moore, and the final result. What was the ultimate fate of the vessels composing the navy? What can you say of its career? What change was made in the capital of the Republic, and when was it made? Describe the consequences of this change and the struggle that followed. What was that struggle called? What became of the archives? What did the President do to provide for Mexican invasion? When and where did the Congress meet, and what views did Houston express in his message to them? What action had the President taken prior to that in regard to defending the Rio Grande frontier? What occurred on the Nueces in the early part of June, 1842? What did Congress do in consequence of these occur-



rences? What did the President do, and what reasons and opinions did he express in so doing? What was the result of this veto? How did Houston conduct himself? When and what change did Congress make in regard to the times for its regular sessions? When and by whom was a second invasion from Mexico made, and with what result? Describe the gathering of Texas troops around San Antonio at that time. When, where, and with what result was the battle of the Salado fought? Describe the circumstances and extent of the "Dawson Massacre." What did the Texans do after Wolf's retreat from San Antonio? What became of the Mexican invaders? What became of the Texan troops who had pursued them? What reinforcements met them? When were they disbanded? What effect did these invasions produce in Texas? When and to what place was the capital again changed, and how long did it remain there? What call was made for troops for active operations against Mexico? Who was placed in command, and what difficulties arose in consequence? When and where did the troops assemble, what regiment was organized, and who were its officers? Describe the next movements of this command, when and where did it reach the Rio Grande, and what occurred there? What hardships did the men endure, and what did General Somervell do? How many went home, and how many remained? What did the latter do? What order was issued on December 19, and how was it obeyed? Under whose command did the remaining men organize, and where did they then go? What occurred at Mier? What Mexican general took command at that place, and what did the Texans decide to do? What prominent men went back to Texas at this time? When and how did the siege of Mier begin? Describe the progress and result of the siege. What was done with the Texas prisoners? When and where did they escape, and how? How many escaped, and what became of them? When were they recaptured, and what was done with them? Describe the drawing of the *black beans* and the execution of the men. When and where did this occur? What became of the survivors? When and where was Captain Ewan Cameron shot? Where were the others finally imprisoned? Give the details of the Mier prisoners and the Texans confined at Peroté. What was this fatal expedition called, and how many of its members lived to return home? While these things were happening in the West, what disturbances arose in Eastern Texas, and what caused them? Where did those events occur, and describe the circumstances leading to the final outbreak? What two factions were engaged in the feud, what happened, and how was it finally settled? What was this feud called, and what consequences followed it to later times? What policy did Houston propose towards the Indians? Whom did he appoint to carry out this plan? When and with whom was a partial treaty made, and what did other tribes do at that time? Whom did Houston appoint in March, 1843, and for what purpose? What point and date were selected for the meeting with the Indians? Describe the movements of the commissioners, by whom were

PERIOD IV.  
THE REPUBLIC

1836

TO

1846

PERIOD IV.  
THE REPUBLIC

1836

TO

1846

they accompanied, where did they go, whom did they meet, and where did they finally find the Comanches? Who was the Comanche head-chief, and what occurred at the council of that tribe? What did the commissioners then do, where did they go, and what was finally done about a general treaty with the Indians? When was that treaty negotiated, and what did it provide? Where did the frontier line run by the terms of the treaty? Contrast the frontier as then established with the frontier as it existed thirty years later. What persons represented Texas in making that treaty? What was the last of the reckless and filibustering expeditions of those times? When did it occur, for what purpose, who commanded it, and where did it go? Describe what happened to this expedition, and its conflict with Mexicans. Where did that happen, and who then returned to Texas? Who captured Snively's command, and what became of the Texans? What was the condition of the country in spite of these troubles at home and abroad? What about the public debt, the currency, and the finances of the Republic? When and by whom had the system of colonization been abolished? When and how was it revived? What was the first colony contract under the new law, what were its terms, and where located? What other colonies were founded under the colonization law of the Republic, where located, and by whom? When was the law repealed? Describe the circumstances attending the Mercer Colony contract as affected by the repeal of the law. What can you say of it, and when and by whom was it held to be void? What was a special feature of Houston's second administration in regard to the Republic's foreign relations? When did Houston's second term as President begin and end? What Congresses met during that period? Where did each of them meet, on what dates, and when did each of them adjourn? What important legislation was enacted by those Congresses? When were the prisoners of Peroté released, by whom, and why? When did the fourth general election of the Republic occur? Who were candidates for the presidency, and who was elected? Who was elected Vice-President? Give the votes cast. What was understood to be Anson Jones's position on the question of annexation?

### Topical Analysis.

1. Houston's second administration. His public policies, directed towards restoring the government on the lines of his first presidency, as follows:

- (a) Friendship and treaties of peace with the Indians.
- (b) A friendly attitude of armed neutrality towards Mexico, and non-interference with revolutionary movements in that country.
- (c) Suspension of all attempts to pay public obligations until their amount was ascertained and payment could be certainly provided for.
- (d) A public loan of \$300,000, and issuance of \$350,000 of exchequer

bills, secured by 1,000,000 acres of Cherokee lands, and receivable at par for duties and taxes.

(c) Reduction of all expenses, and cutting down taxes one-half, payable in coin or paper at par with coin.

2. Principal events of the administration :

(a) Reforms by Congress in the direction indicated by the President ; but the exchequer bills, not being secured by the lands as he had advised, rapidly depreciated. Salaries and expenses reduced.

(b) Passage of a bill to extend territory of Texas to include California, New Mexico, and a large part of Northern Mexico. Vetoed by the President, and passed over his veto. Beginning of Houston and *anti*-Houston politics.

(c) Renewal of hostilities by Mexico, in two invasions of Texas,—one by Vasquez, in March, 1842, and the other by Woll, in September, 1842. Texans aroused. Battle of Salado, September 18, 1842. Mexicans driven out of Texas. Dawson's Massacre.

(d) Passage by Congress of bill for active war against Mexico, and declaring Houston dictator. Vetoed by the President.

(e) Blockade of Mexican forts declared, but not enforced, because the Texan navy was absent at Yucatan. The President's troubles with the navy, resulting in its final disuse.

(f) Removal of the capital from Austin to Houston, causing the "Archive War," and afterwards to Washington, on the Brazos, where it remained until annexation. Change in time for meetings of Congress.

(g) Texan troops march to Rio Grande. Dissatisfaction with General Somervell. The "Mier Expedition" organized, December, 1842.

(h) Siege of Mier, capture of Texans, escape at *Hacienda Salado*, recapture, drawing of the *black beans*, and execution of the Texans. "The prisoners of Peroté."

(i) The "War of the Regulators and Moderators" in Eastern Texas.

(j) Treaty with Indians, September 29, 1843, by which the western frontier was established.

(k) "Snively's Expedition,"—the last of the filibustering schemes.

(l) Revival of colonization contract system. Peter's, Fisher and Miller's, Castro's, and Mercer's colonies. Repeal of the law.

(m) Diplomatic negotiations looking to peace with Mexico and annexation to the United States.

(n) Election of Anson Jones and Kenneth L. Anderson, fourth President and Vice-President of the Republic, September 2, 1844.

## Geography.

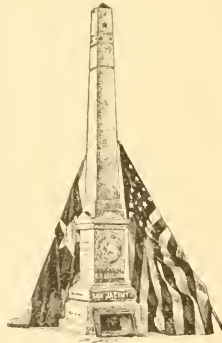
Locate the routes and places mentioned in connection with Vasquez's and Woll's invasions, "Dawson's Massacre," Battle of the Salado, the "Mier Expedition," the *Hacienda Salado*, Castle of Peroté, and "Snively's Expedition." Trace the boundaries of Texas as they would

PERIOD IV  
THE REPUBLIC  
1836  
TO  
1846

have existed under the act of the Sixth Congress, January, 1842. Locate the several trading posts and the line of frontier as established by the Indian treaty of September 29, 1843.

### Parallel Readings.

Scarff's "Comprehensive History of Texas," Vol. I.; Brown's "History of Texas," Vol. II.; Williams's "Sam Houston;" Crane's "Life of Houston;" Green's "Mier Expedition;" "A Prisoner of Peroté;" Baker's "Texas Scrap-Book;" Gouge's "Fiscal History of Texas;" Kennedy's "Republic of Texas;" Foote's "Texas and the Texans;" Mrs. Holly's "Texas;" Anson Jones's "Reminiscences."



BRIGHAM'S SAN JACINTO MONUMENT.

## CHAPTER XIX.

### Annexation; Diplomacy and Politics; Anson Jones's Administration; Texas Annexed to the United States.

**T**HE annexation of Texas was more fruitful of political interest in the United States than in the Republic of Texas. By the purchase of Louisiana in 1803, it was claimed by many of the ablest statesmen in the Union that Texas rightfully belonged to the United States. In 1843, Andrew Jackson charged President Monroe and his secretary of state, John Quincy Adams, with having deliberately adopted the Sabine instead of the Rio Grande as the western boundary of Louisiana, in the treaty of 1819, when Spain was perfectly willing to concede the latter stream as the dividing line between the two countries. With those who thus believed that Texas had been improperly surrendered, her incorporation into the Union was always spoken of as *re-annexation*. As we have seen, President John Quincy Adams, through Mr. Clay as secretary of state, offered to buy Texas from Mexico in 1825, 1827, and 1829. But the course of events in the United States rapidly introduced new issues into the problem. New England has always been opposed to the acquisition of new territory by the Union. Her statesmen bitterly resisted the purchase of Louisiana in 1803, the admission of that State in 1811, the admission of Missouri in 1820, the annexation of Texas in 1844, the reoccupation of Oregon at the same time, and the Mexican war in 1846-48, by which the whole Pacific slope was added to the national domain. This antagonism was originally and primarily due to the narrow and selfish views of that region, which has never yet been willing to surrender its former supremacy acquired when the population of the Union was confined to the Atlantic seaboard. The spirit of the North and East has always

PERIOD IV.	THE REPUBLIC
	1836
	TO
	1846
	—

Annexation of  
Texas dis-  
cussed in  
United States



ANSON JONES.

Attitude of  
New England  
towards exten-  
sion of the  
Union

PERIOD IV.  
THE REPUBLIC

1836

TO

1846

Her provin-  
cialism and  
Anglo-mania

Abolitionism



MRS. ANSON JONES.

Effect of this  
influence on  
annexation of  
Texas

Texas with-  
draws the  
proposition

Attitude of  
Great Britain  
towards Texas

been *provincial* as affecting their relations to the great country lying beyond the Alleghanies and south of the Ohio River, and *colonial* as influencing their feelings towards American institutions and ideas in general. The intellectual, social, and political tone of New England has always been as thoroughly English as when its people were colonists of the British crown and paid homage to the petty magnificence of their imported Tory governors. Accordingly, as soon as the Anti-Slavery Society in London began its godly attempts to meddle with the affairs of Christendom, the *Abolition Party* of Boston, in ready imitation, organized its moral protectorate over the consciences of the

American people, and prepared to wage war upon the property of the Southern slave-owner and the Constitution of the Republic. The acquisition of more slave territory was a crime which both Mr. Quincy and Mr. Adams declared, in 1811 and in 1844, dissolved the Union and released the New England States from their allegiance to the Constitution. Secession was then considered by those statesmen to be necessary and justifiable, in order to destroy slavery; but in 1861 it became treasonable and rebellious, if resorted to to protect the constitutional property rights of the slave-holding States. The jealousy of the East and North,

aided by the fanatical opposition of the *Abolitionists*, raised up a determined resistance to the annexation of Texas, so that, under a pretext of the fear of a war with Mexico, the request of the newly-formed Republic for annexation, in 1836, was rejected. President Houston withdrew the proposition in 1838, and it was not renewed until 1842, and on July 6, 1843, under Houston's second administration, the whole question was again formally withdrawn by the Texan government.

In the interval the relations between Texas and Great Britain had become quite close and interesting. England had several reasons for not wishing to see the Republic become a part of the American Union. Mexico owed her a very large sum, and the people and resources of Texas would aid materially in helping to discharge the debt. Hence there were strong grounds for desiring that Mexico should regain and hold the revolted province.

But if that was not to be, Texas as a separate nation would furnish a profitable commercial ally for Great Britain, as well as a field for extending the views of English philanthropists on the subject of slavery. Influenced by one or all of these considerations, England exerted herself to aid the Texans in procuring peace with Mexico, and in preventing annexation to the United States.

In October, 1842, President Houston issued a letter to all the great powers, asking their intervention to compel Mexico either to declare peace and recognize the independence of Texas, or to prosecute a regular war for her subjugation, in accordance with the rules of civilized nations. Sir Robert Peel, in England, and M. Guizot, in France, received this letter favorably, and at once the London government took steps to bring about an understanding between Texas and Mexico. The United States also interested themselves in seeking a solution of the troubles. Finally, in June, 1843, a temporary armistice was declared between Santa Anna and Houston, and the following September, Samuel M. Williams and George W. Hockley were sent as Texan commissioners to draw up a general armistice looking to permanent peace. The agreement was concluded on February 14, 1844, and returned to the Texan government. Houston promptly rejected it, because it spoke of Texas as "a department of Mexico." Soon afterwards Santa Anna declared hostilities reopened.

Meanwhile, England's intimate association with the Texan government excited the jealousy of the United States. The Southern States of the Union were fearful that Great Britain would succeed in establishing or gaining control over a powerful non-slaveholding territory to the south of the United States, and even the North did not relish the idea of a foreign monarchy gaining a foothold in America. The annexation feeling grew rapidly in the United States, and Texas was assured that the question would be decided favorably. President Tyler, who had always been in favor of the movement, in his message to Congress, on December 5, 1843, rejected as idle Mexico's threats of war in case the American government annexed Texas,

PERIOD IV.  
THE REPUBLIC  
—  
1836  
TO  
1846  
—

Houston's  
address to  
foreign powers

Its reception  
abroad



JOHN TYLER.

Texas reject's  
terms of peace

Jealousy of  
United States  
excited to-  
wards Eng-  
land

Growth of  
annexation  
sentiment in  
United States

John Tyler

PERIOD IV.  
THE REPUBLIC

1836

TO  
1846



JOHN C. CALHOUN.

Treaty of  
annexation  
signed, April  
12, 1844

Rejected by  
United States  
Senate

Campaign of  
1844 between  
Polk and Clay



JAMES K. POLK.

and declared emphatically that the United States would not permit any European power to assume control over the destinies of the young Republic. This, of course, meant England, and the national pride was aroused in favor of annexation. In January, 1844, J. Pinckney Henderson was sent to Washington to aid Mr. Van Zandt in bringing about a successful issue of the matter. John C. Calhoun was secretary of state in Tyler's Cabinet, and in the annexation of Texas he saw a great advantage to the slave States. He therefore earnestly seconded the President's efforts. A treaty of annexation was signed on April 12, 1844, by Messrs. Henderson and Van Zandt for Texas, and John C. Calhoun for the United States. It was at once sent to the Senate for ratification. But a presidential campaign was approaching, and Martin Van Buren was a candidate for the Democratic nomination, while Henry Clay was the accepted choice of the

Whigs. They both declared themselves opposed to annexation, and their influence defeated the treaty in the Senate, on June 8, by a vote of sixteen to thirty-five. Texas withdrew her minister from Washington and prepared to conduct her future destiny to suit herself. But the people of the United States were now thoroughly aroused. Clay and Van Buren had defeated the treaty, but their victory ruined them both. The Whig and Democratic National Conventions had met in May, before



HENRY CLAY.

the rejection of the treaty in the Senate. Clay was nominated for the presidency by the Whigs, but the influence of Tyler, Calhoun, and other Democratic leaders defeated Van Buren, and nominated James K. Polk for President, and George M. Dallas for Vice-President. The campaign war-cry was: "Polk and Dallas, Oregon and Texas," and it won at the polls in November by a majority of sixty-five electoral votes. Clay lost the ambition of his life, but the Union had gained the right to invite into its fold an independent



empire, whose sovereignty had been won by the valor and patriotism of American colonists.

Texas, however, had made her last offer to join the United States. President Jones in none of his communications to the Ninth Congress made any reference to the subject of annexation, and the world was given to understand that it would require a very plain and pressing invitation to induce the Republic to surrender her separate existence for a place among the American States. The invitation was not long in coming.

But at last, warned no doubt by the result of the recent elections in the United States, General Herrera, the new President of Mexico, released José Antonio Navarro, who was a Santa Fé prisoner, and sent him to Texas to conclude a treaty of peace, with a recognition of Texan independence, provided the Republic should not afterwards be annexed to the American Union. Preliminary articles to that effect had been drawn up on May 19, 1845, and submitted to the Texan government on June 2. Before this action, however, the American Congress had passed a Joint Resolution providing for the annexation of Texas. It passed the House on February 25, 1845, by a vote of one hundred and twenty to ninety-eight, and the Senate on March 1, by a vote of twenty-seven to twenty-five, and the same day President Tyler had the gratification of signing this realization of his earnest hopes and labors.

The Resolution was received by President Jones from Washington, and on May 15 he called a Convention of sixty-one delegates to meet at Austin on July 4, to decide what should be the response of the people of Texas; and at the same time he convened a special session of the Ninth Congress, for the purpose of expressing the will of the existing government, as provided for in the Resolution. The latter body, on June 23, gave its approval to the Resolution and to the calling of the Convention. On June 4, the President had issued his proclamation, informing the people of the proposed treaty with Mexico, and inviting their decision between the two alternatives thus presented to them.

The Convention met on July 4 and remained in session until August 27, during which time it framed a new Constitution for the State of Texas, and accepted the terms of annexation offered

PERIOD IV.  
THE REPUBLIC

1836

TO

1846

Texas indifferent and silent

Mexico proposes peace and recognition of Texan independence

American Congress passes annexation resolution, March 1, 1845

Convention called in Texas to consider the question

Texas Congress approves it

Constitutional Convention of 1845

PERIOD IV  
THE REPUBLIC

1836

TO

1846

General elec-  
tions ordered  
to vote on  
these matters

Method of  
annexation

Disposition of  
the affairs of  
the Republic

Colonial  
contracts  
annulled

by the United States. The Constitution framed by this Convention was adopted and signed by the delegates on August 27, 1845, and is known in political history as the Constitution of 1845, being the second instrument of organic law under which Texas was governed, omitting the articles of provisional government adopted by the Consultation in November, 1835. The Constitution was submitted for ratification by a vote of the people, at an election held on the second Monday in October, 1845, at which time, also, the question of annexation was to be voted on. This election was not by ballot, but  *viva voce*,—that is, by the open, verbal declaration of the person voting at each polling place. The result was to be proclaimed on the second Monday in November following, and the Constitution, if adopted, was to go into effect as soon as a State government was organized under it. As soon as the Constitution was adopted by the people, it was made the duty of the President to issue his proclamation calling for an election to be held on the third Monday in December, 1845, to choose a governor, lieutenant-governor, and legislature for the State of Texas; and as soon as the President was informed of the acceptance of the Constitution by the Congress of the United States, he was to convene the newly-elected State legislature, which should then proceed to declare the result of the election for governor and lieutenant-governor, install them in office, elect United States Senators, and provide for the election of Representatives to the United States Congress; the legislature was also to provide for the transfer to the United States of all property belonging to the Republic, and formerly used in its public defence as an independent nation. It was further provided that the laws and officers of the Republic should continue until the new State government was organized, and that the first general election in the State of Texas should be held on the first Monday in November, 1847, and on the same date every two years thereafter, until otherwise ordered by the legislature. The Convention of 1845 also passed an ordinance declaring certain colonial contracts made by the President of the Republic null and void, and requiring suits to be brought to cancel and forfeit them, saving the rights of actual settlers.

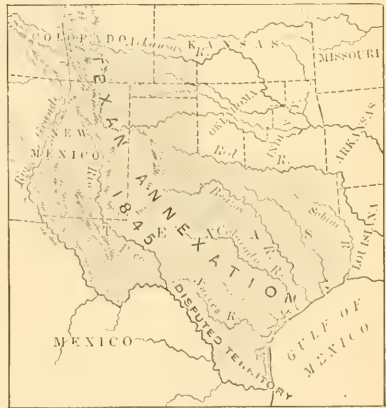
All the acts thus required were properly performed. On October 10, 1845, the Constitution and annexation were adopted by a vote nearly unanimous. At the election for State officers, held in December, James Pinckney Henderson was elected first governor of Texas over James B. Miller, the vote being : Henderson, 7853 ; Miller, 1673 ; and Albert C. Horton was chosen lieutenant-governor over Nicholas H. Darnell. On December 29, 1845, the Congress of the United States accepted the new State Constitution, and this date has been declared by the Supreme Court of the United States to be the true date of the annexation of Texas to the American Union, although the State government was not organized until February 16, 1846.

PERIOD IV.
THE REPUBLIC
1836
TO
1846
—

Date of annexation, December 29, 1845

The Joint Resolution of the American Congress, under which Texas was to be annexed, adopted March 1, 1845, contained substantially the following provisions : All questions of boundary with other nations were to be submitted to adjustment by the United States ; the new State Constitution was to be submitted to Congress for acceptance on or before January 1, 1846 ; Texas should cede to the United States all property owned and connected with the public defence, such as arsenals, barracks, navy and navy-yards, arms, fortifications, and magazines ; Texas should retain all funds, debts, taxes, and dues belonging to the Republic, and all of her public lands, but all such funds and lands should be first subject to the payment of the debts and liabilities of the Republic, and such debts should in no event become a charge against the United States ; new States, not exceeding four in number, in addition to said State of Texas, might afterwards be created out of the territory of said State, with its consent, and be entitled to admission to the Union under the provisions of the Federal Constitution ; all new States formed out of such territory lying north of thirty-six degrees, thirty minutes, north latitude (known as the Missouri Com-

Provisions of the Joint Resolution for an annexation



TEXAN ANNEXATION, 1845.

might afterwards be created out of the territory of said State, with its consent, and be entitled to admission to the Union under the provisions of the Federal Constitution ; all new States formed out of such territory lying north of thirty-six degrees, thirty minutes, north latitude (known as the Missouri Com-

Public debt of the Republic

New States

PERIOD IV.  
THE REPUBLIC

1836

TO

1846

Annexation  
the voluntary  
act of Texas

promise Line), should be admitted to the Union without slavery, but those lying south of that line could be admitted with or without slavery, as they should choose.

Upon these terms Texas became one of the United States. It was her own free and deliberate act, without compulsion, because her independence and peace were assured by the Mexican government if she refused annexation, and the alliance with France and England would have established her commercial



MAP SHOWING TERRITORIAL CHANGES AFTER ANNEXATION, 1845.

prosperity. Since the rejection of the treaty in June, 1844, her people had made up their minds to pursue an independent career, and it was only the force of influences brought to bear upon them by their leaders that finally secured the acceptance of the conditions offered by the United States. The credit for the final triumph of the annexation policy is due to Presidents Houston and Jones. The former was always an annexationist, and the latter labored earnestly to the same end from the time he was minister to the United States in 1836. It required the most skilful diplomacy to accomplish the purpose without sacrificing the pride and position of Texas. Houston as chief executive and Jones as his secretary of state managed it most admirably.

Credit for the  
success of the  
movement

They played upon the jealousies of the United States, the slavery interests of the South, the national pride of the North, the force of the "Monroe doctrine," and the fears that Texas would fall into the lap of Great Britain. At times it suited their designs to oppose annexation, but in the end they witnessed the attainment of their ambition. In after years these two men became political enemies, and there was much bitterness between them, in which the credit of this great work was disputed by their friends; but truth compels a recognition of their mutual services in bringing about the incorporation of the Republic of Texas into the American Union of States.

Anson Jones's administration began on December 9, 1844, and ended February 16, 1846. During that period there was but one Congress, the Ninth, which met in regular session the first Monday in December, 1844, and adjourned February 3, 1845, and again convened in special session on June 16, which continued until June 24. Aside from the usual legislation necessary to perfect the laws and run the government, there was no incident of special importance in the acts of the Ninth Congress. The country was at peace, both at home and abroad; the population was rapidly increasing, there was the prospect of early annexation to the kindred States of the North, and the finances were so improved that the Republic's paper was at par, while there was a cash balance in the treasury sufficient to operate the government for two years without a dollar of additional receipts.

During the fourteen months of President Jones's administration, the following were the principal executive officers of the Republic: secretary of state, Ashbel Smith, Ebenezer Allen; secretary of war and navy, George W. Hill, William G. Cooke; secretary of the treasury, William B. Ochiltree, John A. Greer; attorney-general, Ebenezer Allen; treasurer, Moses Johnson; comptroller, James B. Shaw; commissioner of the general land office, Thomas William Ward; auditor, Charles Mason; minister to France, Great Britain, and Spain, Ashbel Smith, George W. Terrell; minister to the United States, James Reiley, David S. Kaufman; secretary of legation at Washington, William D. Lee.

PERIOD IV.  
THE REPUBLIC  
1836  
TO  
1846

Hostility between Houston and Jones

Administration of Anson Jones

State of the country

President Jones's Cabinet

PERIOD IV.  
 THE REPUBLIC  
 ———  
 1836  
 TO  
 1846  
 ———

On February 16, 1846, amid the booming of cannon and the mingled smiles and tears of Texan patriots, the flag of the Republic with its single star was lowered, the broad banner of the American Union was unfurled, and President Jones declared in tones at once solemn and sad: "The final act in this great drama is now performed: the Republic of Texas is no more!"

## QUESTIONS.

WHAT interest did the annexation of Texas arouse in the United States? What had been claimed by some persons in regard to Texas belonging to the United States? What position did Andrew Jackson take on the subject? What did those who held this view call the annexation of Texas? What efforts were made to purchase Texas from Mexico? What was New England's attitude towards the acquisition of new territory, as shown by her position in reference to Louisiana, Missouri, Texas, Oregon, and the Mexican War? What caused this antagonism to the extension of the Union? What can you say of the *provincial* spirit of the North and East? What of their *colonial* attitude towards England in all matters touching American interests? What connection was there between the *Abolition* party in the North and a similar movement in England? What inconsistency characterized the position of New England statesmen in 1811 and 1844 and in 1861? What effect did these influences exert upon the question of the annexation of Texas? What occurred in 1836 on this subject? When did Texas withdraw her proposition for annexation, and when was it renewed? When was it again withdrawn? Explain fully the relations that grew up at that time between Great Britain and Texas, and the reasons for such relations. What was England's attitude towards annexation? When did President Houston issue his address to the great powers, and what was it? How was it received abroad? When was an armistice declared between Texas and Mexico, who were sent from Texas to draw up articles of permanent peace? When was an agreement concluded, and why was it rejected by the Texan government? What effect did the intimacy between Texas and England produce in the United States, and why? What message did President Tyler send to Congress, and when was this? When and whom did the Texan government send to Washington for the purpose of promoting annexation? What distinguished Southern statesman aided the movement, and why? When and by whom was a treaty for annexation concluded? What was done with it in the United States Senate, and explain what personal and political influences caused this result? When

and by what vote was the treaty rejected? What effect did this have on Van Buren and Clay? Explain the action of the Whig and Democratic National Conventions in 1844. What was the campaign war-cry of the Democrats, and what was the result of the election? What was the attitude of Texas at that time, as shown by President Jones's conduct? What did the Mexican government do looking towards peace with Texas? When were preliminary articles drawn up for that purpose? When did the American Congress adopt the Joint Resolution for the annexation of Texas, and by what vote in each House? What action was taken in Texas upon receipt of this Resolution, and with what results? When, where, and how long did the Constitutional Convention of 1845 sit, and what did it do? When was the Constitution adopted and signed by the delegates? When was it to be submitted to a vote of the people for ratification, how was the election to be held, and explain the methods by which the result was to be declared, officers elected, and the State government inaugurated? What was to be done in regard to the property belonging to the Republic, and the continuation of its laws and officers? When was the first general State election to be held after annexation, and how often thereafter? What was done in reference to colonial contracts of the Republic? When did the first election for State officers occur, who were the candidates for governor and lieutenant-governor, and what was the popular vote? When did the Congress of the United States accept the State Constitution, and from what date did legal annexation occur? When was the State government put into actual operation? Give at length the several provisions of the Joint Resolution for the annexation of Texas. Explain that portion of it referring to new States and slavery. What can you say of the manner in which Texas came into the American Union? To whom is the credit due for that event? What did it require, and explain how it was accomplished? What can you say of the relations of Sam Houston and Anson Jones towards annexation? When did President Jones's administration begin and end? What Congress met during that period? When did it meet and adjourn? What was the condition of the country and the state of public finances? Who were the principal executive officers during Jones's administration? Describe the scene when the Texas Republic came to an end, and what were President Jones's last words on that occasion?

PERIOD IV.  
THE REPUBLIC

1836  
TO  
1846

### Topical Analysis.

1. The annexation of Texas as a political issue in the United States, under which consider :

(a) The attitude of New England and the Northern States in opposition to all acquisitions of new territory, due to their narrow and selfish desire to retain supremacy ; their *colonial* dependence on English ideas and sentiments for all their political and social principles, and their fanatical views in regard to the abolition of slavery.

PERIOD IV.  
THE REPUBLIC

1836

TO

1846

(b) The position of the leaders of the two great political parties,—Whig and Democratic,—both Clay and Van Buren being opposed to annexation. First treaty defeated in Congress on June 8, 1844.

(c) The influence of England's relations towards Texas, whereby the jealousy of the United States was excited. The North feared that Texas would fall into the hands of a foreign monarchy, and thus violate the *Monroe doctrine*; while the South feared the formation in the southwest of a large and powerful nation opposed to slavery.

(d) The rapid growth of annexation sentiment in 1844, resulting in the nomination and the election of Polk by the Democrats on that issue, Clay being defeated on account of his opposition to it.

(e) Joint Resolution for annexation adopted by American Congress, March 1, 1845.

(f) Final acceptance of the Texas Constitution by Congress, on December 29, 1845, from which date Texas became one of the United States.

### 2. Annexation as an issue in Texas, under which consider :

(1) Proposition for annexation adopted by popular vote at election in September, 1836, and tendered to United States. Not accepted by the latter.

(2) Proposition withdrawn by Texas in 1838.

(3) Renewed in 1842, and again withdrawn July 6, 1843.

(4) Treaty for annexation concluded between United States and Texas, April 12, 1844; rejected by United States Senate, June 8, 1844.

(5) Texas determines to make no further efforts in that direction, and is on the point of making a treaty of recognition, peace, and independence with Mexico, May-June, 1845; is also on intimate friendly relations with Great Britain.

(6) Accepts the Joint Resolution for annexation by act of Ninth Congress, June 23, 1845, by vote of State Convention, July-August, 1845, and at popular election, October 10, 1845.

(7) Adopts State Constitution, October 10, 1845, elects State officers, December, 1845, and organizes State government, February 16, 1846.

### 3. The provisions of the Joint Resolution for annexation, as follows :

(a) All boundary questions submitted to adjustment by United States; all public property of the Republic ceded to the United States; all taxes, dues, debts, lands, and public funds to be retained by Texas, but to be first applied to payment of the public debt of the Republic, for which the United States should in no event become liable.

(b) New States, not to exceed four, in addition to State of Texas, may be created out of the territory of the Republic, with the consent of Texas, and be entitled to admission to the Union.

(c) But no new State formed out of such territory lying north of the *Missouri Compromise Line* should be admitted to the Union with slavery.



## Geography.

Trace carefully the boundaries and extent of the territory claimed by Texas at the date of annexation. Note the changes in the territory of the United States resulting from that event.

PERIOD IV.  
THE REPUBLIC

1836

TO

1846

## Parallel Readings.

Scarff's "Comprehensive History of Texas" (1897); Brown's "History of Texas;" Williams's "Sam Houston;" Crane's "Life of Houston;" Draper's "Civil War in America," Vol. I., and "Civil Conflict;" Greeley's "American Conflict;" Von Holst's "Constitutional and Political History of the United States;" Benton's "Thirty Years' View;" Blaine's "Twenty Years in Congress;" Davis's "Rise and Fall of the Confederate States;" McPherson's "History of Political Parties;" Johnston's "American Politics;" Winsor's "Narrative and Critical History."



## CONTEMPORANEOUS EVENTS.—1836-1845.

## Parallel to Period IV.

## AMERICA.

- 1836.—Continuation of Seminole War in United States. The *Democrats* elect Martin Van Buren President. Arkansas admitted to the Union, June 15. *Central Constitution* adopted in Mexico, and Bustamente elected President.
- 1837.—President Van Buren inaugurated, March 4. Seminole War continues. Great financial panic in United States. Rebellion in Canada.
- 1838.—End of Canadian rebellion. Revolution in Mexico under Mexia, who was captured and shot by Santa Anna. The French declare war against Mexico, capture Vera Cruz, and dictate terms of peace.
- 1839.—Revolt in Northern Mexico, led by Canales, to establish the "Republic of the Rio Grande."
- 1840.—*Sub-treasury* bill passed by American Congress. The *Whigs* elect William H. Harrison President. Sixth census shows population of 17,069,453. Union of Upper and Lower Canada.
- 1841.—President Harrison inaugurated, March 4; died, April 4; succeeded by John Tyler, Vice-President. Tyler vetoes United States Bank bill and all his Cabinet except Daniel Webster resign, September 11. Revolution and civil war in Mexico; *Plan of Tacubaya*, for new Constitution, with Santa Anna as temporary ruler.

PERIOD IV.—  
THE REPUBLIC  
—  
1836  
TO  
1846  
—

- 1842.—End of Seminole War. "Ashburton Treaty" between Great Britain and United States, establishing the Maine boundary. The "Dorr Rebellion" in Rhode Island.
- 1843.—Santa Anna disperses the Mexican Congress, declares himself dictator, and proclaims the "Bases of Political Organization" as his Constitution.
- 1844.—Great political agitation and campaign in United States over the question of Texan annexation. James K. Polk (Democrat) defeats Henry Clay (Whig) for President. First telegraph established in the United States between Baltimore and Washington. Joseph Smith, the Mormon leader, killed; succeeded by Brigham Young. Santa Anna involved in a revolutionary struggle in Mexico with Paredes; is defeated, imprisoned at Peroté, and exiled to Cuba (May, 1845).
- 1845.—President Polk inaugurated, March 4. Annexation question still agitated. Judge Joseph Story died, September 10. General Herrera acting President of Mexico; declares war against United States, June 4. Texas annexed to Union, December 29.

#### GREAT BRITAIN.

- 1837.—Victoria succeeds to the throne, aged eighteen, June 21.
- 1838.—Victoria crowned Queen, June 28. Death of Lord Eldon. Daguerrrotype process discovered.
- 1839.—Anti Corn Law League formed by Richard Cobden. *Chartist* agitation. Gold discovered in Australia.
- 1840.—Queen Victoria married to Prince Albert, of Saxe-Coburg-Gotha, February 10. Penny postage system adopted.
- 1841.—Prince of Wales born, November 9. London *Punch* founded.
- 1843.—Daniel O'Connell prosecuted by the English government. "Young Ireland" movement grows in strength. The Thames tunnel opened.
- 1845.—Death of Sydney Smith and Thomas Hood. Railway mania and panic. Failure of the potato crop in Great Britain and Ireland. Gum-cotton invented. Lord Rosse's great telescope erected.

#### OTHER COUNTRIES.

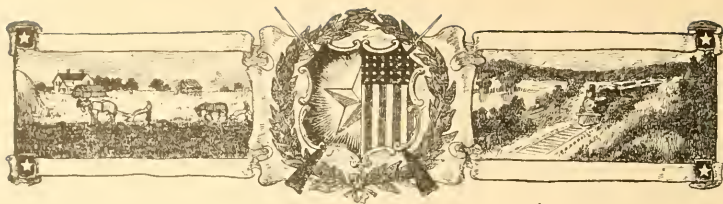
- 1836.—Death of Charles X., late King of France. M. Thiers prime minister of Louis Philippe. Louis Napoleon attempts a revolution at Strasburg.
- 1837.—Epidemic of cholera on the continent of Europe. Winter palace at St. Petersburg burnt.

- 1838.—Death of Talleyrand, May 17.
- 1839.—The Pope prohibits the slave-trade. Charles VIII., King of Denmark. Abdul-Medjid, Sultan of Turkey.
- 1840.—Frederick William IV., King of Prussia. Remains of Napoleon I. brought back to France from St. Helena. *Quadruple Treaty* between England, Austria, Prussia, and Russia to protect the Sultan of Turkey. Reign of the Khedives in Egypt, under the suzerainty of Turkey. Louis Napoleon attempts another revolution at Boulogne; is imprisoned for six years.
- 1842.—The French take Tahiti. Great fire at Hamburg.
- 1843.—Site of ancient Nineveh discovered by Botta. The Queen of Spain (Isabella II.) declared of age, and ascends the throne.
- 1844.—Joseph Bonaparte died, July 28.
- 1845.—Sir John Franklin's last expedition to the Arctic regions.

PERIOD IV.  
 THE REPUBLIC  
 ———  
 1836  
 TO  
 1846  
 ———



THE THREE FLAGS.



## Period V.

FIRST PERIOD OF STATEHOOD.—1846-1861.



### CHAPTER XX.

The New Government; The Texas Land System; Henderson's Administration; Boundary Question; Churches in Texas.

State Constitution of 1845

THE State Constitution of 1845 has been regarded by many able jurists and statesmen as superior to any of those since adopted. The convention that framed it was an exceptionally strong body of men,—they composed the ablest and wisest citizens of Texas. Thomas J. Rusk was president of the convention, James H. Raymond, secretary, and the roll of its members contains the names of nearly every man then and afterwards prominent in the affairs of Texas, in peace and war. The Constitution began with a "Bill of Rights," setting out certain fundamental rights of person and property which should never be invaded by the government. In its general features it was similar to all State constitutions.

It required the State to be divided into representative and senatorial districts, the members of the lower house of the legislature never to exceed ninety or to fall below forty-five; while the senators should never be more than thirty-three or less than nineteen. The First Legislature should contain sixty-six representatives and nineteen senators. Ministers of the gospel, or priests of any denomination, were declared ineli-



Thomas J. Rusk

gible to either house of the legislature. The legislature was to meet every two years. On the subject of slavery, it was provided that offences against the persons of slaves should be punished the same as if against white persons; the importation of slaves for the purpose of traffic and merchandise was forbidden; the legislature was required to pass laws compelling masters to provide for and treat their slaves humanely, and no slave should be emancipated without the consent of his owner. Duelling was prohibited, and divorces could not be granted by the legislature. Banking corporations could not be chartered, nor any private corporation be created except by two-thirds vote of both houses of the legislature. The homestead exemption was fixed at two hundred acres in the country, and in towns and cities as a lot or lots not exceeding in value two thousand dollars; and the legislature was authorized to provide for the exemption from taxation of two hundred and fifty dollars' worth of personal property belonging to a family, and from forced sales a reasonable quantity of such property. It was provided that all property owned by the husband or wife at the time of the marriage, and all acquired afterwards by gift, devise, or descent, should be the separate property of each; while all property otherwise acquired during marriage, by either husband or wife, should be community property.

On the subject of education, it was declared to be the duty of the legislature to make provisions for the support of public free schools by taxation on property; and one-tenth of the annual income of the State derived from taxation was required to be set apart as a perpetual school fund, never to be diverted or used for any other purpose. All the public lands that had been granted to the counties for school purposes were forbidden to be sold or disposed of, except by lease not to exceed twenty years. A general land office for the whole State was established at the capital, where all titles from the government must be registered.

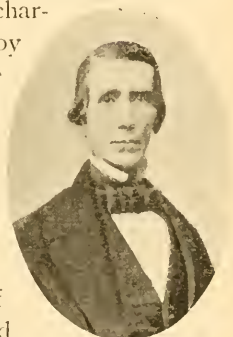
The Constitution contained many other wise and practical provisions, which have not been improved upon by the constitution-makers of later times.

PERIOD V.  
FIRST PERIOD  
OF STATEHOOD

1846  
TO  
1861

Slavery

Duelling and  
divorce



J. PINCKNEY HENDERSON.

Community  
and separate  
estates

Public educa-  
tion

General land  
office

PERIOD V.  
FIRST PERIOD  
OF STATEHOOD

1846  
TO  
1861

Texas land  
system

The First Legislature of the State had a very difficult task to perform, in remodelling the laws and institutions of the government to suit the changed conditions brought about by annexation. It was no longer necessary to maintain an army, navy, postal system, and other institutions of an independent nation; but the details of domestic legislation were many and important. Texas, unlike any other American State, had her own public lands, and immense. It was time of annexation the unappropriated nearly 185,000,000 were besides this acres claimed by der fraudulent and it was necessary to stated, the land sys-

their domain was estimated at the that the extent of public lands was acres, and there many millions of various persons un- illegal titles, which recover. Briefly tem, as then exist-



JOHN HEMPHILL.



ROYALL T. WHEELER.



ABNER S. LIPSCOMB.

THE OLD SUPREME COURT.

Headrights

ing under laws passed by the previous governments, was as follows: The lands granted to various persons by the Republic consisted of headrights, bounty, and donation grants. *Headrights* were those lands which had been granted to the original colonists by virtue of their contracts of settlement, and those afterwards granted to immigrants by the laws of the provisional government, the government *ad interim*, and the Congresses of

the Republic. These were divided into *four classes*. Headrights of the *first class*, as has been already stated, consisted of the lands granted to colonists under the colonization laws of Coahuila and Texas ; to persons residing in Texas at the date of the Declaration of Independence ; and to volunteers who arrived and served in the army between March 2 and August 1, 1836, who were honorably discharged or died before December 14, 1837. In this class, heads of families were entitled to a league and a *labor'* of land (four thousand six hundred and five acres), and single men over seventeen years old were entitled to one-third of a league, and if they married before December 14, 1837, they would receive a league and a *labor'*. Headrights of the *second class* included lands granted to immigrants who arrived in Texas after the Declaration of Independence and before October 1, 1837. Under this class, heads of families were entitled to twelve hundred and eighty acres, and single men to six hundred and forty acres, provided they remained and performed their duties as citizens for three years. Under this class were also included all persons who served in the army previous to March 1, 1837, and whose families were in Texas on January 1, 1840. They were to receive twelve hundred and eighty acres. Headrights of the *third class* were certificates issued to immigrants arriving between October 1, 1837, and January 1, 1840, and to single men permanently residing in the Republic who became seventeen years old prior to January 1, 1840. In this class, heads of families received six hundred and forty acres and single men three hundred and twenty acres. *Fourth class* headrights were those granted to immigrants who came after January 1, 1840, and before January 1, 1842. They received the same quantities of land as the third class. In order to make up the full quantities of land to which colonists and immigrants were entitled under the laws granting headrights, additional certificates were issued, known as Augmentation Certificates.

There were certain special grants, of a league and a *labor'* and a third of a league of land, issued to the heirs and representatives of the men who fell at the Alamo, Goliad, and other battles of the Revolution, which were classed by the authorities

PERIOD V.  
FIRST PERIOD  
OF STATEHOOD

1846

TO

1861

First class  
headrights

Second class

Third class

Fourth class

Donation  
headrights

PERIOD V  
FIRST PERIOD  
OF STATEHOOD

1846  
TO  
1861

Bounty lands

Land scrip



WILLIAM B. OCHIL-  
TREE.

"Eleven  
league grants"

Pre-emption  
lands

as headrights, although, strictly speaking, they should have been described as donation lands. There were also donated to the survivors of those early struggles, certificates for six hundred and forty acres of land, known as *Donation* lands.

Then there were the *Bounty* certificates, being those issued to soldiers in the army of the Revolution,—three hundred and twenty acres for three months' service; six hundred and forty acres for six months; nine hundred and sixty for nine months; and twelve hundred and eighty acres for twelve months or more.

There were also large quantities of land scrip which had been issued and sold at fifty cents an acre, to pay the debts of the

Republic; each of such certificates calling for six hundred and forty acres of unlocated land. In after years came

certificates granted to encourage irrigation, improvements of rivers, boring artesian wells, and building railroads. Many fraudulent and fictitious certificates had been issued under the Republic, and it was a very delicate and difficult task to detect and reject them. Various means were used for this purpose,

such as travelling land boards, local and district boards, and, finally, the Constitution of 1845 required persons holding certificates not yet approved to file suits on them in the district courts on or before July 1, 1847, or be

thereafter forever debarred. The "eleven league grants," so often spoken of in Texas land history, were acquired under the Mexican government. The State Colonization Law of 1825, of Coahuila and Texas, and the Federal Colonization Law of 1824, of Mexico, provided that a person might acquire not more than one league of irrigable land, four leagues of arable land not irrigable, and six leagues of pasture land,—making in all eleven leagues. There were no such grants by any government of Texas after she began her Revolution.

The last Congress of the Republic, by the act of January 22, 1845, created what were known as *Pre-emption* titles to land,—that is, where any person should settle upon and improve any portion of the vacant, unappropriated public domain, he was entitled to three hundred and twenty acres including his improvements, provided he proved up his claim, surveyed the



land, and applied for a patent in three years from the date of settlement, or the date of the law. This feature of our land system was continued with modifications in all subsequent legislation, until all pre-emption laws were repealed by the act of March 7, 1889.

The first governor, J. Pinckney Henderson, was a native of North Carolina, and came to Texas in June, 1836. As we have seen, he filled many and difficult positions, at home and abroad, under the Republic, and was a man of varied talents as well as a fine lawyer. Albert C. Horton, the lieutenant-governor, was an officer in the Revolution, and was with Fannin at Goliad, but was cut off at the battle of the Coleto and escaped the massacre. Governor Henderson appointed the following gentlemen to the offices which were at his disposition under the Constitution : David G. Burnet, secretary of state ; John W. Harris, attorney-general ; John Hemphill, chief justice, and Abner S. Lipscomb and Royall T. Wheeler, associate justices of the Supreme Court ; William G. Cooke, adjutant-general ; Thomas William Ward, commissioner of the general land office ; James Love, William E. Jones, R. E. B. Baylor, M. P. Norton, O. M. Roberts, William B. Ochiltree, John B. Jones, and John T. Mills, district judges for the several judicial districts in the order named. The legislature elected James B. Shaw, comptroller, and James H. Raymond, treasurer. On February 21, 1846, Sam Houston and Thomas J. Rusk were elected the first United States Senators from Texas, Houston drawing the short term, so that he was re-elected on December 15, 1847.

By the terms of the annexation Resolutions, Texas was allowed two Representatives in the Congress of the United States, and the legislature divided the State into two districts, with the Trinity River as the line. On March 30, 1846, an election was held for the Congressmen from Texas, and David S. Kaufman was elected in the Eastern district, and Timothy Pilsbury in the Western, the former being a native of Pennsylvania and the latter of Maine. The State constituted a Federal judicial district, and John C. Watrous was appointed the first Federal judge. He

PERIOD V.  
FIRST PERIOD  
OF STATEHOOD

1846  
TO  
1861

First State ad-  
ministration,  
J. Pinckney  
Henderson,  
governor

Executive  
officers



R. E. B. BAYLOR.

United States  
Senators

First  
Congressmen

Federal judge

PERIOD V.  
FIRST PERIOD  
OF STATEHOOD

1846  
TO  
1861

Texas politics  
in 1846

Boundary  
question

Complications  
on the slavery  
issue

Missouri Com-  
promise Line  
as affecting  
Texas

was afterwards asked to resign, and an unsuccessful attempt was made to impeach him.

Politics prior to that time, as has been said, were purely personal in Texas, and it was yet some years before party lines were drawn on the issues that governed political affairs in the United States. But so far as Texans then took an interest in Federal politics, they were nearly all Democrats. It was the Democratic party, under Polk, Calhoun, and Dallas, that had brought Texas into the Union, and naturally her citizens rallied around its standard.

One of the serious questions that arose under the first State administration, and which continued to vex the government for several years, was that of the northern boundary of Texas. That had been fixed by the First Congress of the Republic as extending to the forty-second parallel of north latitude, which included New Mexico, or the territory of Santa Fé, as it was called. Mexico did not recognize any such claim, nor did the United States, except in an indirect way. In the annexation Resolutions, it will be remembered, there was a provision that four new States might be formed out of Texas territory, but that any such new State lying north of thirty-six degrees and thirty minutes north latitude would only be admitted to the Union as a free State,—that is, without slavery; which was a recognition that a portion of Texas lay north of that line. That line was known as the *Missouri Compromise Line*, having been agreed upon in 1820, when Missouri was admitted into the Union, as the northern limit of slave territory west of the Mississippi River. Now, Texas might never form any new States, in which case part of her territory would lie north of the slavery line, and the Abolitionists would have no power to prevent slaves in that part of the State. In other words, the Missouri Compromise Line was abolished so far as Texas was concerned, unless new States were formed out of her territory lying north of that line. This condition of things made it the desire and interest of the anti-slavery party in the United States to shove the northern boundary of Texas as far south as possible. Again, when the war broke out between the United States and Mexico in 1846, in consequence of the annexation of Texas, a bill was introduced in

Congress to provide funds for that war. A Mr. Wilmot, of Pennsylvania, offered an amendment to the bill, providing that slavery should never be permitted in any portion of the territory which might be acquired by the war. This was known as the *Wilmot Proviso*, and the bitter fight over its adoption in the end broke up the old political parties and prepared the way for the Civil War fifteen years later. It was defeated, but it definitely divided the country into North and South on the slavery question. Texas was interested in the *Wilmot Proviso* in this way: When the Mexican War was ended and the question of the boundary between Texas and other Mexican territory acquired by the war came up for settlement, if the doctrine of the *Proviso* prevailed, there would be another strong reason among the anti-slavery party for narrowing the boundaries and reducing the territory of Texas as much as possible; and the United States had reserved the right, by the terms of the annexation, to adjust all questions of boundary. If the foregoing facts are borne in mind, they will explain nearly all of the political events that followed in Texas and the United States.

Shortly after annexation United States troops occupied New Mexico, and preparations were begun to organize it into a territory of the Union. Governor Henderson at once protested to the secretary of state, Mr. Buchanan, who replied that it was merely a military movement until peace was declared with Mexico. Another thing was, that by the terms of annexation Texas was to hold her public lands subject to the debts of the Republic, and those debts were never to become a charge against the United States. There was no way to enforce this agreement against Texas, unless the United States should occupy enough territory belonging to Texas to force some settlement of the debts; and no doubt this had something to do with the action of the United States in regard to New Mexico.

Governor Henderson's term of office began February 16, 1846, and ended December 21, 1847. During a part of this time, as will be seen, he was absent in the Mexican War, and Lieutenant-Governor Horton was the acting governor. Under this administration there was only one legislature, the regular session of the First Legislature, which met February 16, 1846,

PERIOD V.  
FIRST PERIOD  
OF STATEHOOD

1846  
TO  
1861

Wilmot  
Proviso

Relation of  
Texas to that  
question

Dispute as to  
New Mexico

Attitude of the  
United States

Henderson's  
administra-  
tion

PERIOD V.  
FIRST PERIOD  
OF STATEHOOD

1846

TO

1861

Indian affairs

First census  
of Texas

Public debt

Beginning of  
real progress

Religious en-  
terprise

Catholics

Count Far-  
nese's propo-  
sition

and adjourned May 13, 1846. It passed many necessary laws and organized a great number of new counties. Under the Republic, new counties could not be created except upon very strict conditions, and this had been very inconvenient for the growing interests of the people. There were no serious troubles with the Indians at this time. An occasional outrage and a few desperate fights by the Rangers comprised the history of Indian affairs.

In 1847, the first census of Texas was taken by counties. There were then reported 100,508 white population, 35,267 negro slaves, making a total of 135,775, exclusive of Indians and Mexicans. The Indians were estimated at 30,000.

The total public debt of Texas on January 1, 1848, all of which was incurred under the Republic, was \$11,050,201.51. As will be seen, this was afterwards cut down or scaled to \$5,528,195.19.

The social, moral, and material growth of the State, under the encouragement of a settled destiny and assured peace, now began in earnest. It must not be supposed, however, that during all these years of war, sacrifice, and uncertainty there was no moral and religious influence thrown around the struggling patriots and suffering citizens of early Texas. Pious faith in God and the ministers of His holy word have always accompanied the footsteps of American pioneers, and it was not different in Texas. The *Missions* were closed in 1793, but in after times, when the Americans held sway, they were permitted to be used by the few priests who remained in the country, and around their altars there still gathered the remnants of the Mexican population, while in the sacred ground near their portals rude graves marked the last resting-place of pious Catholics. Father Henry Doyle, among the Catholic colonists of San Patricio, and Father Muldoon on the Brazos in the early days visited the scattered homes of the settlers, married their young men and maidens, baptized their converts, and soothed the dying hours of such as succumbed to the privations of the wilderness. After the Revolution, Galveston was erected into a See and Bishop Odin was placed in charge. The cathedral there was built in 1848. In 1837, the Count Farnesé, from Europe, visited the Texan government, and proposed to have the

Roman Catholic faith adopted as the established religion of the Republic. He represented that it would be the means of securing immediate peace with Mexico, and would greatly promote the interests of the country. But he little understood the spirit of the Texan patriots. They had battled for and won the inherited institutions of Anglo-American freedom, not the least of which was religious liberty, and they were not likely to surrender any of them so soon. Besides, the Protestant churches already had a firm foothold in Texas. Of these, the Baptists were perhaps the first to commence organized work, although the Methodists were here about the same time. In 1825, Elder Joseph Bays, a Baptist, visited Austin's Colony and preached on the Brazos. In 1829, Thomas Hanks, of the same denomination, preached at the same place, and Thomas J. Pilgrim, also a Baptist, established the first Sunday-school at San Felipe. In 1833, a Baptist church was organized in Austin's Colony, and in 1837, Rev. Z. L. Morrell established another at Washington on the Brazos. Isaac Reed, in 1838, founded the Union Baptist Church near Nacogdoches, and the following year churches were organized at Independence and in Austin and Fayette counties. The Union Baptist Association was formed at Austin on October 8, 1840; the same year a church was established at Galveston, and the next year at Houston. In 1843 the Sabine Association was formed, with five churches represented. In 1845, Baylor University, at Independence, was chartered under Baptist auspices, and the following two years associations of churches were formed in various parts of the State. The Baptist State Convention was organized at Anderson, in Grimes County, in 1848. At that time there were reported to be eleven associations of the missionary Baptists, and three of the anti-mission, with one hundred and fifty-one churches and ten thousand members.

Rev. Henry Stephenson, of the Methodist Church, arrived in Austin's Colony in 1824. Rev. Alexander Thompson came to Robertson's Colony in 1830, and did much to organize Methodism in that region for years afterwards. A camp-meeting was held and a church organized near San Augustine in 1833, and a

PERIOD V.  
FIRST PERIOD  
OF STATEHOOD

1846  
TO  
1861

Protestants  
Baptists and  
Methodists

Baptist asso-  
ciations and  
colleges



RUFUS C. BURLESON.

Early Meth-  
odist churches  
and institu-  
tions of  
learning

PERIOD V.  
FIRST PERIOD  
OF STATEHOOD

1846  
TO  
1861

similar action was held in Austin County in 1834. In 1837, the Methodist Church sent three missionaries to Texas,—Revs. Martin Ruter, R. Alexander, and Littleton Fowler. In December, 1840, the Texas Annual Conference was organized at Ruterville, by Bishop Waugh, but in 1844 it divided into two conferences, called the Texas Conference and the East Texas Conference. In 1850 there were two hundred and eighty-six Methodist ministers in Texas, and twelve thousand three hundred and thirty-six members.

Early Pres-  
byterians in  
Texas

The Presbyterians began their labors as early as 1834, by the preaching of Rev. P. H. Fullenwider. In 1838, Rev. Hugh Wilson organized a church at San Augustine, and another at Independence; and the same year churches were organized at Galveston and Houston. In 1840, the Brazos Presbytery was organized at Gay Hill, in Washington County. The Cumberland Presbyterians did their first work in Texas in 1828, by Rev. Sumner Bacon. In 1833, a church was organized in Red River County by Rev. Milton Estell, and one near San Augustine in 1836. The first presbyteries were formed near San Augustine in 1837, on Red River and the Colorado in 1841, and the Synod was organized at Nacogdoches in 1842. The Synods of the Brazos and Colorado were organized in 1849 and 1853.

Episcopal  
church

The Protestant Episcopal Church sent its first preacher to Texas in 1838, and built a church in Galveston in 1842, with Rev. Benjamin Eaton as rector. In 1843, Rev. Charles Gillette supplied the church at Houston. In 1844, Texas and Arkansas formed a bishopric under Rev. G. W. Freeman. The Diocese of Texas was organized at Matagorda, January 1, 1849.

Christians

The Christians or "Campbellites" were earnest workers in the days of the Republic, but few reliable facts have been preserved as to their labors and leaders. In 1850, there were in Texas, according to the United States census, of all denominations of Christian churches, 63,571 members, owning church property worth \$204,930.

Masons

The first Grand Lodge of Masons in Texas was organized in Houston on December 20, 1837. Among its members were Sam Houston, Thomas J. Rusk, Anson Jones, Adolphus Sterne, A. S. Thruston, William G. Cooke, and Thomas G. Western.

The public free school system, owing to the scattered and scanty population and the disorganized conditions existing prior to annexation, had not yet been inaugurated; but a number of private schools, academies, and colleges, generally under religious control, had been chartered and were in successful operation. Men's minds were turning to peace and the prosperous rewards of intelligent toil; and yet they were not altogether done with war, brought on by the very cause that had secured their future tranquillity and progress.

PERIOD V.  
FIRST PERIOD  
OF STATEHOOD

1846

TO

1861

Early schools

## QUESTIONS.

WHAT can you say of the State Constitution of 1845, and of the men who framed it? How did it begin, and what were its general features? Give an outline of the organization of the legislative department of the government under that Constitution. How many representatives and senators were there in the First Legislature? Who were ineligible to the legislature, and how often did it meet? What provisions did the Constitution contain in regard to slavery? What, in reference to duelling and divorce? What, in regard to banks and private corporations? What was the homestead exemption? What other exemptions were provided for? What provisions were made in reference to the property of husband and wife? What provisions were made for public schools? What, as to a general land office? What difficult and important work had the First Legislature of the State to perform? How did Texas differ from the other States in the matter of her public lands? What amount of public land had she at the time of annexation? Into what general divisions were lands granted to individuals by previous governments divided? How were *headrights* classified? What grants were included in headrights of the *first class*? What, in the *second class*? *Third class*? *Fourth class*? What special grants were made to persons on account of certain military services? How are those grants classified? What were the *bounty certificates*? What can you say of *land scrip*? What, of irrigation and other improvement certificates? What difficulties arose in regard to land certificates issued by the Republic, and what methods were adopted to remedy them? What was meant by an "eleven league grant," and explain how it originated? When did such grants cease? When were *pre-emption* titles originated, and explain their nature? How long were *pre-emption* lands recognized by the government, and when were they abolished? Who was the first governor of the State of Texas, from what State did he come to Texas, when, and what had been his career in Texas? Who was the first lieutenant-governor, and what can you say of him? Whom did Governor Henderson appoint to the various offices

PERIOD V.  
FIRST PERIOD  
OF STATEHOOD

1846

TO

1861

under his control? What officers did the legislature elect? Who were the first United States Senators, when elected, and for how long? How many Representatives had Texas in Congress at that time, how was the State divided for that purpose, and who were the first Congressmen elected? Who was the first Federal judge in Texas, and what can you say of him? What was the condition of politics in Texas then, and for several years afterwards? What was one of the first serious public questions that arose in Texas? How had the northern boundary been fixed by the Republic? What provisions were contained in the Annexation Resolutions in regard to new States, and explain how those provisions affected the Texas boundary question, slavery, and the Missouri Compromise? What effect did this condition of things have in the United States? What was the *Wilmot Proviso*, when, for what purpose, and with what result was it introduced in Congress? Explain how it affected Texas. What happened in New Mexico shortly after annexation? What did Texas do in regard to it? Explain the motives that actuated the United States in that matter. During what period was Henderson governor of Texas? Where was he during part of that time, and who was governor then? What legislature sat in his administration, and between what dates? What work was accomplished by it? What was the condition of Indian affairs at that period? When and how was the first census taken in Texas, and what did it show as to the population? What was the amount of the public debt, January 1, 1848, and how was it afterwards reduced?

What can you say of the growth and prosperity of the State at that time? What influence contributed largely to the early civilization of the State? Who were the first religious teachers in Texas? When did the regular mission work of the Catholics end? Describe the subsequent labor of the priests among the early colonists. When and by whom was the See of Galveston established? When, through whom, and with what representations did the Catholics propose to make their church the established religion of Texas? Why was the proposition rejected? What two Protestant denominations were pioneer missionaries in Texas? When and by whom did the Baptists first commence their work? Give an account of the early Baptist churches, associations, conventions, colleges, and preachers, and what was the condition of the denomination in 1848? When and by whom did the Methodists begin their labors in Texas? Give an account of their early organizations and institutions, and what was their condition in 1850? When and by whom did the Presbyterians commence religious work in Texas? Give the dates, names, and localities of their early organizations. When did the Episcopal Church send its first preacher to Texas? When, where, and by whom were its early labors conducted? When did the Christians or "Campbellites" begin work here? What were the number and wealth of all Christian churches in Texas in 1850? When and where was the first Grand Lodge of Masons organized in Texas, and who were among its members? What can you say of the early schools of Texas?



## Topical Analysis.

PERIOD V.  
FIRST PERIOD  
OF STATEHOOD

1846  
TO  
1861

1. The government of Texas as organized under the Constitution of 1845. Consider the principal provisions of that Constitution on legislative department, slavery, duelling, divorce, banks, private corporations, homestead exemptions, community and separate estate of husband and wife, public education, and land office.

2. The Texas land system. Peculiar position of Texas as owner of 185,000,000 acres of her own public lands. General division of land grants into *Headrights*, *Bounty*, and *Donation* lands. *Four classes* of headrights. "Eleven league grants." Irrigation, railroad, and other improvement certificates. Land scrip. Pre-emption lands.

3. Governor Henderson's administration; inauguration of the State government; the First Legislature. Election of United States Senators and Congressmen. Early politics.

4. The first serious public question,—the *Northern boundary*, involving title to New Mexico and other territory north. Considerations of Federal politics affecting that question, such as the probable formation of new States that might lie north of the *Missouri Compromise Line*; the *Wilmot Proviso*; the desire of the United States to hold New Mexico as a means of forcing Texas to pay her public debts.

5. The population, progress, and increasing prosperity of Texas.

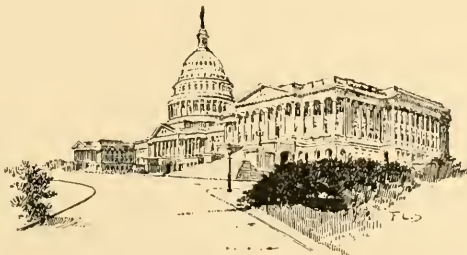
6. Early religious enterprise in Texas as shown in the labors of the Catholics, Baptists, Methodists, Presbyterians, Episcopalians, and Christians. Early establishment of the Masonic order.

## Geography.

Locate the territory involved in the dispute between Texas and the United States as to the Northern and North-western boundary.

## Parallel Readings.

Scarff's "Comprehensive History of Texas" (1897), Vol. I., Chap. XIX.; Vol. II., Part III.; Brown's "History of Texas," Vol. II.; Blaine's "Twenty Years in Congress;" Draper's "Civil War in America," Vol. I.; Benton's "Thirty Years' View."



CAPITOL AT WASHINGTON.

## CHAPTER XXI.

### The Mexican War; Administrations of Governors Wood, Bell, and Pease; The Boundary and Public Debt; Railroads; Public Schools; Indians.

PERIOD V.  
FIRST PERIOD  
OF STATEHOOD

1846  
TO  
1861

Mexico pre-  
pares for war

President  
Herrera's  
friendly  
overtures

A revolution  
in Mexico

United States  
troops in  
Texas

**M**EXICO had threatened that she would regard the annexation of Texas as a declaration of war by the United States, and, as soon as the resolutions for annexation passed Congress, the Mexican minister at Washington demanded his passports and left the capital. In November, 1845, Mr. John Slidell had been sent as the American minister to Mexico to try and adjust the difficulty that was foreseen would arise from annexation. But his arrival in the Mexican capital, on December 6, preceded but a few days one of those political revolutions to which that country had become accustomed. The Mexican president, José Joaquin de Herrera, was friendly to the independence of Texas, and, as we have seen, submitted a proposition to the Texan government to recognize that independence if the Republic would agree to remain a separate nation. Herrera's liberal and friendly views did not suit the excited temper of the Mexican people, and General Paredes (pär-ā-dāz) at once organized a revolution and forced Herrera to resign in his favor. This was on December 29, 1845. Minister Slidell at once withdrew from the capital, but was not furnished his passports until March 21, 1846. On April 18, 1846, Paredes ordered the army on the Rio Grande to take the initiative in bringing on actual hostilities.

Meanwhile, anticipating trouble, in the fall of 1845, General Zachary Taylor had been stationed with troops at Corpus Christi, in Texas, to be ready for any emergency. The feeling between the United States and Mexico had not been friendly for a long time. Mexico owed the American government over eight

million dollars for depredations committed on the persons and property of American citizens, and the attempt to collect it had produced considerable friction. The annexation of Texas rendered war inevitable.

On January 13, 1846, Taylor was directed to march to the mouth of the Rio Grande, opposite Matamoras. This would necessitate his crossing the Nueces, which Mexico claimed as the northern boundary of her territory, and was regarded by her as an invasion of Mexican soil. The war was now on, and it was only a question of time and opportunity when the first hostilities should occur. On April 25, 1846, General Taylor's troops being in camp on the east bank of the Rio Grande opposite Matamoras, a small force of Mexicans crossed the river and attacked the United States dragoons, capturing a number of men and officers and killing sixteen American soldiers. Thus Mexico began the actual attack and shed the first blood.

Already two small companies of Texan Rangers, under Captains Samuel H. Walker and John T. Price, had joined Taylor's command, and were with it when hostilities commenced. After the affair of April 25, General Taylor called on the governor of Texas for four regiments of troops, two to be mounted and two on foot. These troops did not arrive in time to take part in the first battles. On May 8, 1846, was fought the first real battle, at Palo Alto, on Texas soil, about eight miles north-east of Brownsville, and next day that of Resaca de la Palma, still in Texas, four miles north of Matamoras. The Americans were victorious in both battles, the Mexicans retreating across the river, evacuating Matamoras and falling back towards the Sierra Madre in the direction of Monterey, their rear being followed and harassed by the American cavalry.

It is not possible here to give a history of the Mexican War.

PERIOD V.  
FIRST PERIOD  
OF STATEHOOD  
—  
1846  
TO  
1861  
—



MAP SHOWING DISPUTED TERRITORY BETWEEN  
NUCES RIVER AND RIO GRANDE, 1846.

Rangers and  
troops raised  
in Texas

Palo Alto, May  
8, 1846, and  
Resaca de la  
Palma, May  
9, 1846

PERIOD V.  
FIRST PERIOD  
OF STATEHOOD

1846

TO

1861

Nothing more than a brief statement of the part Texan troops took in it will be attempted. On May 9, 1846, the Texas legislature granted Governor Henderson leave of absence to take command of all the Texan troops in the army. Prior to this President Polk had offered to Sam Houston and Thomas J. Rusk commissions as major-generals in the United States army, which



MAP OF GENERAL TAYLOR'S CAMPAIGN.

they declined on account of their duties in the Senate. Governor Henderson at once joined the army, and commanded the Texan soldiers for the first year of the war, with the rank of major-general. On his staff were M. B. Laniar, Edward Burleson, Henry L. Kinney, and Edward Clark. Texas contributed to this war, first and last, about eight thousand men. The first troops to arrive in response to General Taylor's call was a regiment of infantry under Colonel Albert Sidney Johnston, in which

Texas officers  
and troops in  
the Mexican  
War

August Buchel commanded a German company. Then came a regiment of mounted men under Colonel John C. Hays, in which Samuel H. Walker was afterwards lieutenant-colonel and Michel Chevallie was major. Ben McCulloch also had a company of scouts attached to this regiment. Next to join was Colonel George T. Wood's mounted regiment, in which William R. Scurry was major and P. Hansborough Bell was an officer. After the battle of Monterey there was an armistice for two months, and most of the men returned home. But "Mike" Chevallie organized a



JOHN C. HAYS

mounted battalion composed of the companies of Walter P. Lane, Robert H. Taylor, G. W. Adams, and G. K. Lewis. Ben McCulloch raised a company and joined again just before the battle of Buena Vista.

Among the other Texan officers not mentioned above, and who served to the end, were M. T. Johnson, Shapley P. Ross, Samuel Highsmith, John S. Gillett, Henry W. Baylor, Hamilton P. Bee, R. A. Gillespie, Henry E. McCulloch, Jacob Roberts, Ephraim M. Daggett, Isaac Ferguson, Tom Green, Preston Witt, Alfred M. Truitt, John S. Ford, and Alexander E. Handley. All these commands behaved most gallantly from Monterey to Chapultepec, and the name of Jack Hays's Texas Rangers became a synonym for bravery, skill, and daring wherever heroic courage is recognized and admired. Captain R. A. Gillespie was killed at the battle of Monterey, and the gallant Samuel H. Walker lost his life in the siege of Huamantla (wä-mant-lä), near the close of the war. After the war was over, in 1848, 1849, and 1850, the United States employed some of these men to defend the frontier against Indians, among whom may be mentioned Henry E. McCulloch, John S. Ford, Sam Highsmith, William A. A. Wallace, Jerome B. McCown, and John J. Grumbles.

PERIOD V.  
FIRST PERIOD  
OF STATEHOOD  
—  
1846  
TO  
1861  
—



SAM HIGHSMITH  
(In Santa Anna's Uniform.)

Noted Ranger  
captains



MAP OF GENERAL SCOTT'S CAMPAIGN.

On September 14-16, 1847, the City of Mexico was captured by the American army, and on February 2, 1848, a final treaty of peace was signed at the village of Guadalupe, four miles from

Capture of  
City of Mexico

PERIOD V.  
FIRST PERIOD  
OF STATEHOOD

1846

TO

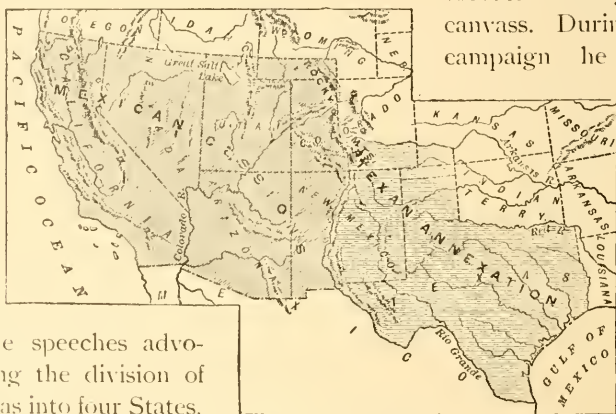
1861

Second State  
election, No-  
vember, 1847

the City of Mexico, known as the treaty of Guadalupe-Hidalgo. By its terms the United States became possessed of the territory out of which have since been formed California, Nevada, Utah, Arizona, a large part of New Mexico, and parts of Wyoming and Colorado.

The election for the second governor of Texas took place the first Monday in November, 1847. The candidates for the office were George T. Wood, Isaac Van Zandt, Dr. J. B. Miller, and Nicholas H. Darnell. Mr. Van Zandt died of yellow fever at

Houston during the canvass. During his campaign he had



MAP SHOWING ADDITIONS TO UNITED STATES MADE BY ANNEXATION OF TEXAS AND MEXICAN WAR.

The candi-  
dates for  
governor

made speeches advocating the division of Texas into four States, his motive being no doubt to give greater strength to the South

in the Senate of the United States, in view of the gathering troubles over the slavery question. Colonel Wood had been a gallant officer in the Mexican War, which was not yet ended, and this gave him great popularity. He was elected governor, receiving 7154 votes, while Miller received 5106 votes, Darnell 1276, and there was a scattering vote of 1212. The candidates for lieutenant-governor were John A. Greer, E. H. Tarrant, and Edwin Waller, and Mr. Greer was elected.

Governor  
George T.  
Wood's ad-  
ministration,  
1847-1849

Governor Wood was inaugurated on December 21, 1847, the Second Legislature being then in session. The following officers served in his administration: W. D. Miller, secretary of state; attorney-general, first John W. Harris and afterwards H. P.

Brewster ; comptroller, James B. Shaw ; treasurer, James H. Raymond ; commissioner of land office, Thomas William Ward ; adjutant-general, John D. Pitts ; auditor, J. M. Swisher.

At this election David S. Kaufman and Timothy Pilsbury were re-elected to Congress, and two years later Kaufman was again elected, but Volney E. Howard succeeded Pilsbury.

As the general subjects of legislation, politics, and public progress were very much the same, and were closely connected for the next several years, until 1857, it will be best to here state the results of the successive elections and discuss the history of the period as a whole.

At the election in November, 1849, P. Hansborough Bell, who had served with distinction among the Texan troops, both at home and in Mexico, was chosen governor, defeating Governor Wood and John T. Mills. The vote stood : Bell, 10,310 ; Wood, 8764 ; Mills, 2632. John A. Greer was re-elected lieutenant-governor. The officers under Governor Bell's two administrations were as follows : secretary of state, James Webb, Nicholas H. Darnell ; attorney-general, A. J. Hamilton, Ebenezer Allen ; land commissioner, George W. Smyth ; adjutant-general, C. L. Mason, John S. Gillett, Ben Hill. The treasurer, comptroller, and auditor were not changed.



P. H. BELL.

elected lieutenant-governor. Governor Pease was re-elected in 1855, there being a total vote of 46,339, of which he received

PERIOD V.  
FIRST PERIOD  
OF STATEHOOD

1846

TO  
1861

GEORGE T. WOOD.

Governor P.  
H. Bell's first  
administra-  
tion, 1849-1851

Governor Bell was re-elected in 1851, defeating M. T. Johnson, John A. Greer, B. H. Epperson, and T. J. Chambers. The total vote cast was 28,300. J. W. Henderson was elected lieutenant-governor. In 1853, Elisha M. Pease was elected governor, receiving 13,091 votes out of a total of 36,152, and defeating William B. Ochiltree, George T. Wood, Lemuel D. Evans, T. J. Chambers, and John W. Dancy. -David C. Dickson was

Governor  
Bell's second  
administra-  
tion, 1851-1853

Governor E.  
M. Pease's  
two adminis-  
trations, 1853-  
1857

PERIOD V.  
FIRST PERIOD  
OF STATEHOOD

1846  
TO  
1861

26,336, and Hardin R. Runnels was elected lieutenant-governor. These figures of the votes cast at the several elections, from 1847 to 1855, show how rapidly the State increased in population.

During Pease's two administrations Edward Clark was secretary of state, James Willie and Thomas J. Jennings were attorney-generals, Stephen Crosby was land commissioner, and the other executive officers were the same as under preceding governors. Governor Pease was a native of Connecticut and came to Texas in 1835. He was secretary of the Consultation, and afterwards of the Council of the provisional government; had been comptroller under the Republic, and served in both houses of the legislature after annexation. He was a lawyer by profession, and his administration, from 1853 to 1857, showed him to be a most liberal, practical, and progressive executive. During his administrations most of the public buildings and institutions at Austin were established and completed, and the State assumed



ELISHA M. PEASE.

Congressmen,  
1851 1861

its full functions as a commonwealth. In the Eastern Congressional district, in 1851, Richardson Scurry was elected to succeed David S. Kaufman, who died in Washington. In 1853, in the same district, George W. Smith was elected to Congress, and in 1855 Lemuel D. Evans succeeded Smith. In 1857, John H. Reagan defeated Malcolm D. Graham for Congress in the Eastern district, and was re-elected in 1859. In the Western district, in 1853, Governor P. H. Bell was elected to Congress, and was re-elected in 1855. He was succeeded in 1857 by Guy M. Bryan, and in 1859 A. J. Hamilton defeated T. N. Waul.



DAVID S. KAUFMAN.

First political  
conventions  
in Texas

The first political conventions held in Texas were in connection with Congressional elections in the Eastern district, beginning in 1851. There was no regular convention in the Western district until 1859,



when General Waul was nominated. There were five legislatures from 1847 to 1857, being the Second to the Sixth Legislature inclusive, and the labor accomplished was varied and useful. The growth of the State and the settlement of her boundaries and finances, in 1850, gave rise to many new subjects of legislation, and required a liberal policy to promote the development of her resources, in which respect the several legislatures proved themselves equal to the task.

Under Governor Wood's administration, in 1847-49, the boundary question continued to attract attention. The United States still kept troops in New Mexico in spite of Governor Wood's protests. Finally, the legislature having created a judicial district including that territory, the governor sent Judge Spruce M. Beard and other civil officers to hold court there. The military authorities ignored this action, and ordered an election for organizing New Mexico into a territory of the United States. The same trouble continued under Governor Bell's first administration. Another serious question was that of the public debt handed down from the days of the Republic. As we have seen, it was nearly twelve millions of dollars. While Texas was an independent nation, the receipts from the custom-

houses had been pledged to help pay the debt, but now that source of revenue belonged to the United States. A large part, if not all, of the obligations represented by the public debt had been obtained by the creditors of Texas at from ten cents on the dollar to eighty cents, and now the holders of the obligations were demanding the full face value of them. Texas insisted that the claims should be scaled, that is, cut down so as to represent the fair value of what the claimants had paid for them. If this was done the debt would not amount to over five millions of dollars.

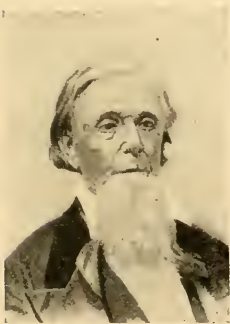
PERIOD V.  
FIRST PERIOD  
OF STATEHOOD

1846  
TO  
1861



GUY M. BRYAN.

The public  
debt question



T. J. JENNINGS.

Proposition  
to scale

PERIOD V.  
FIRST PERIOD  
OF STATEHOOD

1846

TO  
1861

Compromise  
measures of  
1850, settling  
boundaries

Terms of the  
settlement

Greer County

Settlement of  
public debt

Taxes re-  
mitted

First legisla-  
tion in aid of  
public schools

The boundary dispute was at last settled by the famous Com- promise Measures of 1850, as adopted in the Congress of the United States. By the terms of the "Boundary Bill," as it was called, passed by Congress in 1850, the United States offered to pay Texas ten million dollars in stock, bearing five per cent. interest, due in fourteen years, for ninety-eight thousand three hundred and eighty square miles of territory then claimed by Texas in New Mexico, it being understood that Texas should release any and all claims against the United States of every description ; but the United States was to hold back five million dollars of this stock, to pay the debts of Texas which had been secured by the customs revenues of the Republic. After a bitter opposition the legislature passed a bill in November, 1850, ac- cepting the proposition, and the boundary dispute was disposed of, except the question as to which fork of the Red River was meant in the original treaty of 1819 between Spain and the United States. That issue remained to be settled in after years in the famous Greer County case, in the Supreme Court of the United States, decided March 16, 1896.

The public debt, however, was not settled until 1855, when laws were finally passed by both the United States and Texas, under which the United States agreed to pay \$7,250,000 to cancel the debt of Texas, instead of the \$5,000,000 of stock which had been retained in 1850, the money to be distributed ratably among the creditors. Thus Texas was free from debt and had \$1,575,000 of United States bonds in the treasury, besides \$2,000,000 of the bonds that had been set apart as a special fund for the public free schools, on January 31, 1854. Since the receipt of the \$5,000,000 from the United States in payment for the claim to New Mexico there had been no State taxes collected in Texas ; but Governor Pease, in his message to the legislature in the fall of 1855, called attention to the fact that the bonds in the treasury could not last always, and recom- mended that they be applied to some permanent and useful purpose and that taxes be restored.

On January 16, 1850, the legislature appropriated four leagues of land each to all the new counties that had been created since 1839, for the endowment of the public schools.

Four years later, on January 31, 1854, the first law was passed to organize a general system of public free schools in the State, that being the same law that appropriated the two million dollars of United States bonds as the foundation of a school fund.

This, too, was the era of the first railroad enterprises in Texas. As early as 1846, public meetings had been held in some sections of the State to favor the building of a railroad through Texas. In February, 1850, a resolution was passed by the legislature, authorizing the United States to build a National railroad through the State to the Pacific Ocean, granting a right of way over all public lands; and, if the road should run through the State from Marshall to El Paso, all lands within ten miles of the right of way on either side were to be divided into sections of six hundred and forty acres, and every alternate section was donated to the United States for the construction of the road. The lands thus described were to be reserved from sale or location for any other purpose. This resolution expired in 1851, and nothing was done under it; but it was the origin of the "Pacific Reservation," afterwards revived. The first railroad really projected in the State was the Galveston, Harrisburg, and San Antonio road. It was organized by General Sidney Sherman and others in 1853, and was first constructed from Harrisburg, on Buffalo Bayou, twenty miles to Stafford's Point. A little later it was extended to Richmond, and in 1860 it had reached a point near Columbus. The Houston and Texas Central Railroad was begun in 1853-54, by Paul Bremond and other citizens of Houston. It was first built from Houston to Cypress, then to Courtney, Hempstead, Navasota, and in 1861 it reached Millican. Between 1856 and 1860 the Texas and New Orleans road was run from Houston to Liberty, Beaumont, and Orange. About the same time the Gulf, West Texas, and Pacific road was built from Port Lavaca to Victoria. On January 30, 1854, by an act of the Fifth Legislature, in Governor Pease's first administration, was begun the system of land grants to aid in the construction of railroads. That act provided that any railroad company that would construct and put in running order twenty-five miles or more of road, could have surveyed thirty-two sections of public land for every mile of road so

PERIOD V.  
FIRST PERIOD  
OF STATEHOOD

1846

TO

1861

Railroad  
enterprises

Pacific rail-  
road reserva-  
tion

First railroads  
built in Texas

System of land  
grants in aid  
of railroad  
construction.

PERIOD V  
FIRST PERIOD  
OF STATEHOOD

1846

TO

1861

constructed, the land to be surveyed in square sections of six hundred and forty acres each, and every alternate section was donated to the railroad company, while the other sections were appropriated to the public free schools of the State. There were many requirements to be complied with in order to get the benefit of this law ; but this feature of giving railroads sixteen sections of land for every mile of road constructed was continued in all the subsequent legislation of the State, until there were no more lands to give. By that system the State encouraged the



MAP SHOWING TERRITORIAL CHANGES IN UNITED STATES, 1845-1853.

building of railroads, got its public lands surveyed and sectionized free of expense, opened up a market for the wild lands, and secured for its public schools the most magnificent landed endowment in the world.

Two opposing  
policies as to  
land grants to  
railroads

At the time that policy was begun, in 1854-55, there was a strong party in Texas in favor of the State using the public lands to build, equip, and own its own railroads, leasing them out or charging track-hire to competing companies ; but the donation policy carried the day, and the State has adhered to it ever since. It is worthy of note that in 1853 a law was passed regulating freight and passenger rates on railroads, and requiring

every railroad company that accepted aid from the State to comply with the regulations.

In 1850, as was required by the Constitution, an election was held to locate the State capital for the next twenty years. Austin was selected over Tehuacana Hills.

During the years from 1847 to 1857 there were frequent Indian raids in the west, and the Rangers were kept busy protecting the frontier. By the terms of annexation the control of the Indians properly belonged to the United States ; but Texas was forced to defend her people against the hostilities of the tribes, because the Federal government could not or would not do it. In 1854, desiring to give the Texas Indians a home in the State, the legislature set apart two large districts of country as *reserves* for the tribes, and placed them at the disposal of the United States. One of these, called the Brazos Reserve, was located on the upper Brazos near Fort Belknap ; the other, called the Comanche Reserve, was about sixty miles distant from the Brazos Reserve, on the Clear Fork of the Brazos. Agents were put in charge of these reservations ; but it seemed impossible to keep the Indians from raiding into the white settlements.

Texas was prosperous and progressive ; but the events that were transpiring elsewhere were destined soon to draw her people into the gathering storm of Federal politics.

PERIOD V.  
FIRST PERIOD  
OF STATEHOOD

1846

TO

1861

Indian raids

Indian re-  
serves estab-  
lished in Texas

Progress

## QUESTIONS.

WHAT did Mexico do upon the adoption of the Annexation Resolutions by the American Congress? When and whom did the United States send as a representative to Mexico to adjust the difficulty? What happened in Mexico soon after his arrival there? Who was the Mexican President, what were his views towards Texas, and what effect did they produce in Mexico? Who succeeded him as President, and when? What did the American minister do? When did Paredes order the Mexican army to begin hostilities? What military movements had the United States made in anticipation of trouble with Mexico? What had been the state of feeling between the two countries for a long time, and why? What effect did annexation have upon their relations? When was General Taylor ordered to advance to the Rio Grande? What did

PERIOD V.  
FIRST PERIOD  
OF STATEHOOD

1846

TO

1861

the execution of this order involve? Explain how this movement affected the Mexican claim of boundary. When, where, and under what circumstances did the first actual hostilities occur? With what results, and who began the war? What Texas troops had already joined the American army, and under whose command were they? After the first engagement between the Americans and Mexicans, what call did General Taylor make for Texas troops? When, where, and with what results were the first two battles of the Mexican War fought? When and for what purpose did the legislature of Texas grant leave of absence to Governor Henderson? What offer had previously been made by President Polk to two distinguished Texans, and why did they decline? What part did Governor Henderson take in the war? Who were on his staff? How many men did Texas send to the army during the war? Which were the first Texas troops to respond to General Taylor's call? Give an account of the other Texas officers and commands participating in the war. What Texas officers served through the conflict, and what can you say of their services? What particular officer and his men became especially famous? What two noted Texans were killed during the war, and where? After the war, how were some of the Texas officers employed, and name the most prominent among them? When was the City of Mexico captured? When and where was the final treaty of peace signed? What is that treaty called, and what territory did the United States acquire under it? When did the second general State election in Texas take place? Who were candidates for governor? What can you say of Isaac Van Zandt? Who was elected governor, what gave him his popularity, and what was the vote of the several candidates? Who were candidates for lieutenant-governor, and who was elected? When was Governor Wood inaugurated, and what legislature was then in session? Who filled the several executive offices during his administration? Who were elected to the United States Congress at that and the ensuing election? What can you say of the general nature and course of public questions for the next ten years, and what becomes necessary in treating that period? Who were elected governor and lieutenant-governor in 1849, and how did the vote of the several candidates stand? Who were the executive officers during that and the succeeding administration? Give the names of the candidates in 1851, and the result of the election. Who was elected governor in 1853, who were his opponents, and what was the vote? What was the result of the election in 1855? What do these votes show? Who were the executive officers during Governor Pease's two administrations? Who was E. M. Pease, what positions had he previously held, and what can you say of his public character and services at that time? Give the names of the Congressional candidates and the results of the elections for Congress in 1851, 1853, 1855, 1857, and 1859, in the eastern and western districts respectively? When were the first political conventions held in Texas, and for what purpose? How many legislatures sat from 1847 to 1857, and what can you say of the subjects and character of their work?

What public question attracted attention in Governor Wood's administration (1847-1849)? Explain what occurred in New Mexico at that time. What public questions agitated Governor Bell's administrations? How much was the public debt of Texas at the date of annexation? Explain what effect annexation had upon the ability of Texas to pay this debt, and the considerations that led the State to demand a reduction in the amount of it. When and how was the *boundary dispute* finally settled? Give the terms and provisions of the "Boundary Bill" passed by Congress. When did Texas accept those terms? What question was still left unsettled, and what can you say of its continuation to recent times, and its final settlement? When was the *public debt* question finally settled, and upon what terms? What was the result as to the financial condition of Texas? What had been the condition as to taxes in Texas since 1850, and what did Governor Pease advise in 1855? When was the first legislation had in regard to the endowment of public schools, and what was it? What further laws were passed on the subject in January, 1854? What other important enterprise was inaugurated in that era (1847-1857)? How early in the history of the State had public interest been directed to railroad building? When did the legislature pass a resolution authorizing a National railroad to the Pacific? What were the terms of the resolution? What became of this resolution, but what did it afterwards lead to? What was the first railroad projected in Texas, when and by whom was it organized, and where was its first railway built? How and when was it afterwards extended? When and by whom was the Houston and Texas Central Railroad begun? Where was its line constructed prior to 1861? When and where did the Texas and New Orleans and the Gulf, West Texas, and Pacific Railroads build their early lines? When, by what legislature, and in whose administration was the system of land grants to railroads begun? Explain fully the several features and provisions of that law. How was the system thus inaugurated followed up, and with what results? What two opposing theories or parties were there on this subject at the time the system was begun? What noteworthy law was passed in 1853 in regard to rates of transportation by railroads? When was the first election held to locate the State capital, what places were candidates, which was selected, and for how long? What occurred with reference to the Indians from 1847 to 1857? By the terms of the Annexation Resolutions, what should have become of the Indians, but what actually did occur? When and where did the Texan government attempt to establish *Reserves* for the Indians? With what result?

PERIOD V.  
FIRST PERIOD  
OF STATEHOOD

1846  
TO  
1861

### Topical Analysis.

#### 1. Causes leading to the Mexican War :

(a) Long-standing differences between the United States and Mexico, growing out of depredations by the latter upon American commerce, creating a debt of over eight million dollars, which Mexico refused to pay.

PERIOD V.  
FIRST PERIOD  
OF STATEHOOD

1846  
TO  
1861

(b) The annexation of Texas, which Mexico chose to treat as an act of hostility.

(c) Movement of United States troops to the Rio Grande (1845), thus crossing the Nueces River, which Mexico claimed was the western boundary of Texas, and amounting to an invasion of Mexican soil.

(d) Unfriendly revolution in Mexico, under Paredes, who deposed President Herrera and ordered the commencement of hostilities.

2. Progress of the war :

(a) Mexico begins actual hostilities on Texas soil, opposite Matamoros, on April 25, 1846.

(b) Beginning of General Taylor's campaign at the battles of Palo Alto and Resaca de la Palma, May 8-9, 1846; followed by his invasion of Mexico, and victories at Monterey and Buena Vista.

(c) General Scott's campaign from Vera Cruz to the City of Mexico, ending in the capture of the latter, September 14-16, 1847.

(d) Treaty of Guadalupe-Hidalgo, February 2, 1848, ending the war, and ceding to the United States an immense territory in the west.

3. The part taken by Texans in the war, they contributing about eight thousand men during its progress. Among the prominent officers from Texas were Governor Henderson, Samuel H. Walker, John T. Price, "Mike" Chevallie, George T. Wood, Walter P. Lane, Ben McCulloch, R. A. Gillespie, M. T. Johnson, Shapley P. Ross, John S. Ford, Henry E. McCulloch, and many others. Specially noted were Colonel John C. Hays and his famous "Texas Rangers."

4. Administrations of Governors Wood, Bell, and Pease, 1847-1857, characterized by very much the same general features of public policy, and the agitation of the same public questions, among which were :

(a) The *boundary dispute*, involving the title to New Mexico. Settled in 1850, as part of the famous "Compromise Measures" of Congress, by which Texas ceded 98,380 square miles in New Mexico to the United States for \$10,000,000 in stock, bearing five per cent. interest, due in fourteen years, but half of that amount to be held back to pay public debts of Texas.

(b) The *public debt* question. Finally settled in 1855, by scaling the debt to \$7,250,000 from \$12,000,000.

(c) Beginning of landed endowment of the public free school system, by acts of January 16, 1850, and January 31, 1854, and donation of \$2,000,000 of United States bonds.

(d) Inauguration of railroad enterprises, and the first act of the legislature (January 30, 1854) by which alternate sections of public lands were donated to aid railroad construction; being the beginning of the system of land subsidies to railroads by the State.

(e) Attempt to settle the Indians on *Reserves* on the Upper Brazos, so as to control their hostile movements.



### Geography.

Trace the disputed territory claimed by Mexico lying between the Nueces and the Rio Grande. Locate the routes of campaign of Generals Taylor and Scott in the Mexican War, pointing out the places of the principal battles. Locate and trace the region known in later years as "Greer County," and point out the disputed boundaries claimed by the United States and Texas. Trace and locate the territory in New Mexico sold by Texas to the United States in 1850. Trace the lines of railroads built in Texas prior to 1861.

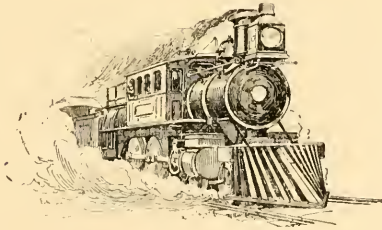
PERIOD V.  
FIRST PERIOD  
OF STATEHOOD

1846

TO  
1861

### Parallel Readings.

Scarff's "Comprehensive History of Texas" (1897), Vols. I. and II. ; Brown's "History of Texas," Vol. II. ; Wilcox's "History of the Mexican War ;" Jenkins's "History of the Mexican War ;" Rose's "Life of Ben McCulloch," "Life of Samuel H. Walker."



## CHAPTER XXII.

### Early Politics in Texas; Campaign between Runnels and Houston; Runnels's and Houston's Administrations; the Secession Convention; War.

PERIOD V.  
FIRST PERIOD  
OF STATEHOOD  
1846  
TO  
1861

Early politics  
of the State

Attitude towards Federal  
questions



JOHN HANCOCK

Kansas-  
Nebraska bill

**P**OLITICS, in the sense of a division of the people on party lines and principles of government, did not exist in Texas until 1854 and 1855. At the time of annexation, and for several years afterwards, as has been stated, most of the people of Texas were *Democrats*, not from any special devotion to the doctrines of that party, but because it was the means of bringing Texas into the Union. The candidates for the various offices came out voluntarily, or were brought out by petitions, mass-meetings, or the personal efforts of their friends. But after the defeat of the *Wilmot Proviso*, in 1846, the *Compromise Measures* of 1850, and the growing bitterness of sectional feeling between the North and South on the slavery question, the Texans were forced to take sides in Federal politics, which of course extended to State politics. In the course of the slavery agitation in the United States the Whig party had been split to pieces in 1848, and finally destroyed in 1852. Out of its fragments was created the Know-Nothing or American party, to which were also added many Democrats who could not agree with some of the measures proposed by their party. In 1854, the so-called Kansas-Nebraska Bill came up in Congress, being a bill to organize the two Territories named, leaving the inhabitants of each to decide for themselves whether or not slavery should exist. This was in accordance with the policy of that wing of the Democratic party which advocated the doctrine of what was called *Squatter Sovereignty*, or Non-Interference, holding that Congress had no authority to control a new

State or Territory on the subject of slavery, but that the citizens of the locality must govern their own institutions in that regard. Both Kansas and Nebraska lay north of the Missouri Compromise Line, and the passage of the bill mentioned amounted to abolishing that line entirely. This measure was supported almost solidly by the Southern Democrats in Congress, but Senator Sam Houston, from Texas, voted against it. This action on the part of General Houston was regarded by Texas Democrats as placing him out of harmony with his party, and his influence was correspondingly weakened in the State. That strong personal following which he was always able to command was not altogether broken by his vote on the Kansas-Nebraska Bill, but it was very much diminished. In 1855, the Know-Nothing party made its appearance in Texas. It was a secret, oath-bound organization, and its main principles were supposed to be opposition to Roman Catholics and to the easy naturalization of foreigners, and in favor of the election of none but native-born, Protestant citizens to office. It claimed the name of the *American* party, but the fact that its members professed to "know nothing" when asked about their purposes gave it the name of *Know-Nothing* party. This organization was not originally an anti-slavery party, but the Whig party being dead, and the Democrats who were opposed to the extension of slavery and the extreme States'-rights doctrine, being driven out of their own party by the force of recent events like the Kansas-Nebraska Bill, many old Whigs and discredited Democrats drifted into the Know-Nothing party. It was so in Texas. Many men who had always been good Democrats, and who still professed to be so, were suspected of being secretly members of, or in sympathy with, this new political faction. In the State campaign of 1855, when Governor Pease defeated David C. Dickson for governor, the latter was understood to belong to the Know-Nothings. Among the prominent men who were supported by the Know-Nothing party were Lemuel D. Evans, John Hancock, and A. J. Hamilton, who claimed to be *Union* Democrats.

In 1857, the candidates for governor were Hardin R. Runnels and General Sam Houston. Houston was still in the United

PERIOD V.  
FIRST PERIOD  
OF STATEHOOD

1846  
TO  
1861

Sam Houston's position

Know-Nothing party



JAMES H. BELL.

The political situation in Texas, 1855

The campaign of 1857

PERIOD V.  
FIRST PERIOD  
OF STATEHOOD

1846  
TO  
1861



LEMUEL D. EVANS.

Judiciary  
election

Slavery agita-  
tion alarms  
the South

Action of  
Texas legisla-  
ture, 1858

States Senate, but his views were such as to render his re-election doubtful. It was feared by the regular Democratic party in Texas that the Union Democrats and Know-Nothings would combine to elect him governor, and so it was decided to hold a State Democratic Convention to nominate candidates for State offices. This was the first political State convention ever held in Texas. It met in Waco, in the summer of 1857, and nominated Runnels for governor and Frank R. Lubbock for lieutenant-governor. Jesse Grimes was candidate for lieutenant-governor on the ticket with Houston. It was a most exciting campaign, and resulted in the election of the regular Democratic nominees. The total vote cast was 56,180, of which Runnels received 32,552 and Houston 23,628. In the fall of 1856, Abner S. Lipscomb, associate justice of the Supreme Court, died, and Oran M. Roberts was elected to fill the vacancy. On November 9, 1857, Chief Justice John Hemphill was elected to the United States Senate, to succeed Thomas J. Rusk, who committed suicide July 30, 1857. Royall T. Wheeler, associate justice, was elected to the vacant chief-justiceship, and James H. Bell was elected associate justice to fill Wheeler's place. It should be mentioned that in 1850 the Constitution was amended, so as to require all judges to be elected by the people, instead of being appointed by the governor, as had been the case before.

The continued agitation of the slavery question in the United States, and the disposition shown by the Abolitionists of the North to disregard the Constitution, laws, and judicial decisions, in their fanatical war upon the slave interests of the South, greatly alarmed the people of the Southern States; and in 1858 the legislature of Texas passed a resolution authorizing the governor to appoint delegates to meet delegates from the other Southern States, whenever it



JESSE GRIMES.

should be deemed advisable to hold a convention for the purpose of considering the matter.

During 1857, 1858, and 1859 there were several serious fights between the Indians and Rangers on the frontier, the Comanches being especially troublesome. It was impossible to keep them on the *Reserves*, and in August, 1859, they were all removed by the United States to the Indian Territory; whence, however, they still continued to make raids into Texas for twenty years.

General Houston's term as United States Senator expired on March 14, 1859. Ex-Governor J. Pinckney Henderson was elected to succeed him, but being in feeble health, he died in a few months, and Governor Runnels appointed Matthew Ward until the legislature met, in the fall of 1859, when Louis T. Wigfall was elected to the Senate. He and his colleague, Judge Hemphill, served until the War between the States broke out in 1861. In 1857, the same convention that nominated State officers at Waco put forward Guy M. Bryan for Congress in the Western district,



LOUIS T. WIGFALL.

PERIOD V.  
FIRST PERIOD  
OF STATEHOOD

1846  
TO  
1861

Congressmen

who was elected and served one term, being succeeded in 1859 by A. J. Hamilton, who defeated General Waul, the Democratic nominee. Judge John H. Reagan was the Congressman in the Eastern district from 1857 to 1861.



JOHN S. FORD.

During Governor Runnels's administration, the notorious Mexican outlaw, Juan Cortina, began his depredations on the Rio Grande frontier. Colonel Robert E. Lee, then commanding the United States troops in Texas, drove him back into Mexico, in which service Colonel John S. Ford rendered effective aid with his body of Texas Rangers.

Cortina's raids  
on the Rio  
Grande

Governor Runnels's administration extended from December 21, 1857, to December 21, 1859, and during that period the executive officers of the State government were as follows:

Executive  
officers, of  
Runnels's ad-  
ministration,  
1857-1859

PERIOD V.  
FIRST PERIOD  
OF STATEHOOD

1846

TO

1861

University of  
Texas en-  
dowed

Campaign of  
1859, Runnels  
and Houston



HARDIN R. RUNNELS.

Houston de-  
feats Runnels

Troubles on  
the Rio Grande  
border

T. S. Anderson, secretary of state ; C. R. Johns, comptroller ; C. H. Randolph, treasurer ; F. M. White, commissioner of the general land office ; Malcolm D. Graham, attorney-general.

In the legislature which met in November, 1857, under Governor Runnels, an act was passed providing for the establishment of the University of Texas, granting to it one hundred thousand dollars of United States bonds and one section in every ten surveyed for the railroads. Nothing, however, was done under this law towards actually organizing the institution.

In 1859, Governor Runnels and General Houston were again candidates for governor. There had been a change in public sentiment since the last election. The increasing violence of the slavery agitation, with the prospect of war and a dissolution of the Union, made calm and conservative men cautious and fearful. The extreme and hot-headed elements all over the country were advocating all sorts of filibustering schemes, such as Lopez's expedition to Cuba and that of Walker to Nicaragua. It was even proposed by a few rash men in the South to reopen the African slave-trade. No considerable number of respectable persons believed in any such enterprises, but men's minds were inflamed and their passions aroused, and the dread of unknown dangers caused all prudent men to pause and think. The Democratic party was held respon-

sible for all these troubles, on account of its position on the slavery and States'-rights questions, and it lost strength by reason of them. The majority of two years before was reversed. Out of 64,027 votes cast, Houston received 36,257, and Runnels, 27,500. F. R. Lubbock was a candidate for re-election as lieutenant-governor, but he was defeated by Edward Clark, who ran on the same ticket with Houston.

Governor Houston's administration was compelled to deal with serious troubles on the Mexican frontier along the Rio Grande, and also on the north-western frontier. The United States troops had been withdrawn to a large extent, and this left the border to be protected entirely by Rangers. But a greater trouble than Indian wars was approaching. The rapid

course of political events in the United States, resulting in the election of Abraham Lincoln in 1860, and the *secession* of South Carolina on December 20, 1860, brought the country face to face with Civil War. In January, 1861, Georgia, Alabama, Florida, Mississippi, and Louisiana followed the example of South Carolina, and *seceded* from the Union. In a message to the legislature, in January, 1861, Governor Houston opposed Secession, and advocated seeking relief from threatened dangers by an appeal to the Constitution and fidelity to the Union. The movement, however, had gone too far to be checked, and Texas had no choice but to go with her sister States of the South.

On December 3, 1860, a committee at Austin, composed of William P. Rogers, George M. Flournoy, and O. M. Roberts, prepared and published an address to the people of Texas, calling a convention of delegates to meet at Austin on January 28, 1861. Governor Houston was opposed to this method of procedure and to the whole movement. Accordingly, on December 7, 1860, he called a special session of the legislature to convene on January 21, 1861; so that the legislature would meet several days before the convention. The governor sent in his message, in which he expressed the belief that all the evils complained of by the South could be settled in the Union and without resorting to Secession. But the legislature, by a two-thirds vote, recognized the convention that had been called, and declared it had full power to act for the people.



GEORGE M. FLOURNOY.

The *Secession Convention* met in Austin on January 28, 1861, with one hundred and eight delegates present, and others afterwards came in. Oran M. Roberts was elected president of the Convention. A committee was appointed to notify Governor Houston of the organization. He replied, stating that the recognition of the Convention as a legal body by the legislature commended it to his consideration; that

PERIOD V.  
FIRST PERIOD  
OF STATEHOOD

1846  
TO  
1861



WILLIAM P. ROGERS.

Governor  
Houston calls  
the legislature

The Secession  
Convention

Dealings with  
the governor

PERIOD V.  
FIRST PERIOD  
OF STATEHOOD

1846

TO

1861

Ordinance of  
Secession  
passed, Feb-  
ruary 1, 1861



W. S. OLDHAM.

Secession rat-  
ified by the  
people

Confederate  
States or-  
ganized

General  
Twiggs sur-  
renders arms  
and forts

whenever the people should have decided the question of Secession, he would submit to their will ; for, said he, " Their fate is my fate, their fortune is my fortune, their destiny is my destiny, be it prosperity or gloom ; as of old, I am with my country."

An Ordinance of Secession from the United States of America was adopted by the Convention, by a vote of one hundred and sixty-six *yeas* and seven *nays*, on February 1, 1861. The seven delegates who voted against the ordinance were Thomas P. Hughes, of Williamson County ; A. P. Shuford, of Wood County ; George W. Wright, Lemuel H. Williams, and William H. Johnson, of Lamar County ; James W. Throckmorton, of Collin County ; and Joshua A. Johnson, of Titus County. The governor and lieutenant-governor and judges of the Supreme Court were present when the vote was taken, the president of the Convention being one of the justices of the Supreme Court. The Convention then appointed a *Committee of Safety* to attend to important matters, and elected delegates to attend the meeting of the delegates from the other Southern States then assembled at Montgomery, Alabama. The delegates from Texas thus elected were John H. Reagan, W. S. Oldham, William B. Ochiltree, John Hemphill, Louis T. Wigfall, and Thomas N. Waul, and they at once proceeded to Montgomery.

On February 5, the Convention took a recess to March 2, to await the result of a vote of the people on the Ordinance of Secession, which was had on February 23. Secession was carried by a large majority, and in the meanwhile the provisional government of the *Confederate States of America* had been organized at Montgomery, Alabama, with Jefferson Davis as President, and Alexander H. Stephens as Vice-President. During the recess of the Convention, the Committee of Safety had managed to make an arrangement with General Twiggs, who commanded the United States troops in Texas, by which he surrendered all arms, forts, arsenals, and munitions of war in the State. General Twiggs was afterwards dismissed from the army for his conduct in that affair.



Notwithstanding Governor Houston had declared his willingness to abide the vote of the people, his whole conduct and his official utterances showed clearly that, if possible, he would like to avoid the result and in some way overturn the action of the Secession Convention. The Convention adopted the existing State Constitution, with such changes as were necessary to accommodate the government to its new relations with the Confederate States. On March 14, 1861, an ordinance was passed by the Convention requiring all the State officers to take the oath of allegiance to the new government, and the governor, lieutenant-governor, and executive officers at Austin were notified to appear in the convention hall, on March 16, at mid-day, and take the oath; and the offices of such as did not appear were to be declared vacant. This was intended to force a direct and final settlement of Governor Houston's attitude towards the new order of things. It was a shrewd and summary manner of compelling him to submit or vacate the governorship. The time arrived, and he did not appear.

Lieutenant-Governor Edward Clark was present and took the oath, and was declared to be the acting governor of the State.

This action produced violent excitement in Austin, and was denounced by all the leading Union men as wholly revolutionary. The whole movement was indeed a *revolution*, and one that could not be stayed by any number of protests. The people were fully aroused and committed to the step that had been taken, and Governor Houston simply mistook the situation when he sought to delay and debate the issue. The matter

was brought up in the legislature on March 20, and that body by a vote of fifty-two to twelve sustained the action of the Convention.

PERIOD V.  
FIRST PERIOD  
OF STATEHOOD

1846  
TO  
1861



THOMAS N. MAUL.

Houston  
deposed, and  
succeeded by  
Edward Clark

Great excite-  
ment in Texas



EDWARD CLARK.

PERIOD V.  
FIRST PERIOD  
OF STATEHOOD

1846  
TO  
1861



JOHN R. BAYLOR.

Civil war  
began, April  
14, 1861

The Convention passed ordinances providing for a Ranger force under John S. Ford, John R. Baylor, and Edwin Waller, to protect the frontier ; for declaring Texas one of the Confederate States of America ; for dividing the State into six Congressional districts, the members of the Confederate Congress to be elected in November, 1861 ; and on March 26, 1861, it finally adjourned.

Governor Houston was inaugurated on December 21, 1859, and he was deposed, as it was called, on March 16, 1861. The lieutenant-governor, Edward Clark, filled out the unexpired term until the election and qualification of Governor Lubbock, in the following winter. The executive officers of the State government during Houston's and Clark's administrations were the same as under that of Governor Runnels, except that E. W. Cave, Bird Holland, and C. S. West were successively secretary of state ; and George W. Flournoy was attorney-general.

The War between the States was now assured. On April 12-14, 1861, Fort Sumter was seized by the citizens of South Carolina. Its fall was the signal for the call for troops, both North and South, and Texas, along with the other Southern States, was plunged into the four years' struggle that rent the Union from 1861 to 1865.

## QUESTIONS.

WHEN did political differences on party lines first appear in Texas? To what political party did most Texans belong at the time of annexation and for several years afterwards, and why? How were political candidates brought out in those days? What events led Texans to take an interest in Federal politics and to divide on those questions? Describe the course of events among political parties in the United States from 1848 to 1854. What became of the old Whig party, and what party was built up on its ruins? What was the *Kansas-Nebraska Bill*, when was it agitated, and explain its political significance? What was the doctrine of *squatter sovereignty*? What was the situation of Kansas and Nebraska with reference to the Missouri Compromise Line, and the effect of the bill for organizing those territories in 1854? What was the attitude of the Southern Democrats in Congress on that measure? What position

did Sam Houston take, and what effect did it have upon his political standing at home? When did the *Know-Nothing party* appear in Texas, and what were its doctrines? How did it get that name? What was its position on the slavery question, and by whom was it supported and composed? What figure did that party cut in the State campaign of 1855 in Texas? What prominent men in Texas were favored by the *Know-Nothings*, and what did those men claim to be? Who were the candidates for governor in 1857? What did the Democrats decide to do, and why? When, why, and where was the first political State nominating convention held in Texas? What did it do? Who were the opposing candidates for lieutenant-governor in that campaign? How did the campaign progress and result? Give the vote. Explain the changes that took place in the Supreme Court and in the United States Senatorships from Texas in 1856 and 1857. When and how did Thomas J. Rusk die? When and how were judges made elective in Texas? What actions on the part of the Northern people and Abolitionists alarmed the Southern States? What did the Texas legislature do on the subject in 1858? What occurred among the Indians in 1857-59, and what became necessary in consequence? When were the Indians removed from Texas by the United States government, and to what place? Did that end the Indian troubles in Texas? When did General Houston's term in the United States Senate expire? Who succeeded him, and what soon happened to his successor? Who then filled the place? Who were the United States Senators from Texas until the War broke out in 1861? Who were the Texas Congressmen from 1857 to 1861? What notorious Mexican bandit made raids on the Rio Grande during those years? What United States officer drove him out of Texas? Who commanded the Texan Rangers in those troubles on the border? When was the first act passed providing for the establishment of the University, and what endowment was granted it at the same time? What was done under that act? Who were the candidates for governor in 1859? What change had occurred in public sentiment since 1857, and what caused it? What rash and dangerous schemes were set on foot at that time? What can you say of the proposition made by some persons to reopen the African slave-trade? What effect did all these things have on the Democratic party in Texas? What was the result of the campaign and election of 1859? Who were candidates for lieutenant-governor, and who was elected? What serious troubles on the border and frontier did Governor Houston have to deal with? What greater trouble was approaching? Explain what events happened in the United States in 1860 to hasten a civil war. When did South Carolina secede from the Union? What other States followed her example, and when? What message did Governor Houston send to the legislature in January, 1861? What can you say of the situation at that time, and of the course Texas was compelled to pursue? When and by whom was the first movement made in Texas

PERIOD V.  
FIRST PERIOD  
OF STATEHOOD

1846  
TO  
1861

PERIOD V.  
FIRST PERIOD  
OF STATEHOOD

1846

TO

1861

towards *Secession*? What was the nature of the movement? What was Houston's position on the subject, and what did he do in regard to it? What views did he express in his message to the special session of the legislature? What action did the legislature take in regard to the Convention that had been called? When and where did the Secession Convention meet? How many delegates were present, and who was elected President? What committee was appointed, and what did Governor Houston reply to them? When was the *Ordinance of Secession* adopted, and by what vote? Give the names and residences of those who voted against it. What State officers were present when the ordinance was adopted? What important committee was then appointed? What delegates were elected by the Convention? Give the names of the delegates thus chosen. When and for what purpose did the Convention take a recess? When was the Ordinance of Secession voted on by the people of Texas, and with what result? Meanwhile, what had happened at Montgomery, Alabama? What arrangement did the Committee of Safety make during the recess in regard to United States arms, munitions, and forts in Texas? Who was the United States officer who made this arrangement, and what happened to him in consequence of it? What were Governor Houston's attitude and disposition towards the Convention and its action? What did the Convention do in regard to the State Constitution? When did the Convention pass the ordinance requiring State officers to take the oath of allegiance to the new government? What notice was served on the governor and other officers at Austin, and what was to be the result of not complying with the notice? What were the purpose and effect of this action as affecting Governor Houston? What did he do in response to the notice, and what followed? What effect did this produce at Austin? What can you say of the whole movement of Secession, and the futility of attempting to prevent or defeat it? When was the matter brought up in the legislature, and what action did that body take? What other important ordinances did the Convention adopt? When did it finally adjourn? What was now assured? What event was the signal for the War to begin, and when and where did it occur?

### Topical Analysis.

1. Political events in the United States, tending to sectional feeling and disruption of the Union on the slavery question :

(a) Defeat of the *Wilmot Proviso* in 1846, the adoption of the *Compromise Measures* in 1850, and the *Kansas-Nebraska Bill* in 1854, all serving to intensify the slavery agitation and to widen the breach between the North and South.

(b) The death of the Whig party in 1848-52, succeeded by the *Know-Nothing* or American party, composed of discredited Democrats, old Whigs, and other disaffected elements, many of whom gradually com-

joined with the *Free-Soilers*, the *Black Republican* party, *Abolitionists*, and other factions opposed to slavery, to form the *National Republican party*.

(c) The organization of societies in the North to set at defiance the Constitution and laws of the Union, in the liberation and protection of fugitive slaves; the passage of *personal liberty laws* in many Northern States, by which the Fugitive Slave laws of the United States were openly nullified; the *Dred Scott decision* by the United States Supreme Court, which was purposely misquoted and misconstrued to serve the purpose of lawless Abolitionists; and the final nomination and election of Abraham Lincoln by the Republicans, upon a platform that avowedly threatened the constitutional rights and integrity of the slaveholding States.

(d) The secession of Southern States in December, 1860, and January, 1861.

## 2. Political events in Texas preceding and leading to the war :

(a) The introduction of Federal issues into State politics in 1853-54. Prior to that time nearly all Texans were Democrats simply because the Democratic party had brought Texas into the Union. Candidates were selected and elected on purely personal grounds.

(b) General Houston's opposition to the Kansas-Nebraska Bill in 1854 practically drove him out of the Democratic party in Texas, and his great personal popularity carried with him a great many others, thus threatening the integrity and strength of the party.

(c) The advent of the Know-Nothing party in 1855, which gathered to it all the elements dissatisfied with the policy and principles of the Democracy, including many leading men.

(d) The campaign of 1857, between Runnels and Houston, for governor, resulting in the election of Runnels by nearly ten thousand majority. In that year the first State political nominating convention was held by the Democrats, at Waco, and nominated Runnels for governor and Lubbock for lieutenant-governor. Houston was defeated on account of his disaffection to what was considered the faith of loyal Southern Democrats.

(e) The increasing violence of the extreme States'-rights and slavery advocates, together with such wild and reckless schemes as the Lopez expedition to Cuba, the Walker expedition to Nicaragua, and the proposed revival of the African slave-trade,—for all of which the Democrats were held responsible,—produced a great reaction in public sentiment between 1857 and 1859.

(f) The second exciting campaign between Runnels and Houston, in 1859, resulting in the election of Houston by nearly ten thousand majority, completely reversing the vote of two years before.

(g) Calling of a State Convention to consider what action Texas should take in regard to Secession, December 3, 1860. Special session

PERIOD V.  
FIRST PERIOD  
OF STATEHOOD

1846  
TO  
1861

of legislature, January 21, 1861, recognizes the validity of the call and the authority of the Convention to be assembled.

(h) Secession Convention meets, January 28, 1861, adopts *Ordinance of Secession*, February 1, 1861, seven votes in the negative. Governor Houston declares that he will abide the decision of the people, but avoids recognizing the authority of the Convention. The Convention requires all State officers to take the oath of allegiance to the new government; Houston refuses, and his office is declared vacant, the lieutenant-governor, Edward Clark, succeeding him as governor, March 16, 1861.

(i) Texas Convention sends delegates to Montgomery, Alabama, where the Provisional Government of the Confederate States of America was organized, February 9, 1861.

(j) The "Committee of Safety" of the Convention secure from General Twiggs the delivery of all United States property in Texas.

(k) Ordinance of Secession ratified by the people, February 23, 1861; the Convention organizes Ranger service to protect the frontier, declares Texas one of the Confederate States, provides for electing Senators and Representatives in the Confederate Congress, and finally adjourns, March 26, 1861.

### 3. Other important events :

(a) Suicide of Thomas J. Rusk, July 30, 1857; succeeded in United States Senate by John Hemphill.

(b) Final removal of Indian tribes from Texas to Indian Territory, August, 1859.

(c) General Houston retires from the Senate, March 14, 1859; succeeded by J. Pinckney Henderson, who died in a few months, and was succeeded by appointment of Matthew Ward until the regular election of Louis T. Wigfall.

(d) The raids of Juan Cortina on the Rio Grande, beginning in 1858.

(e) First act to establish University of Texas, and donating to it one hundred thousand dollars of United States bonds, with every tenth section of lands surveyed by railroads, November, 1857. No action was had under this law towards inaugurating the institution.

### Parallel Readings.

Scarff's "Comprehensive History of Texas," Vol. II., Part III., "Political History of Texas," by O. M. Roberts; Draper's "Civil War in America;" Stephens's "War Between the States;" Davis's "Rise and Fall of the Confederate Government;" Greeley's "American Conflict;" Blaine's "Twenty Years in Congress;" Von Holst's "Constitutional and Political History;" May's "Life of L. Q. C. Lamar;" Andrews's "History of United States;" Johnston's "American Politics."



MONUMENT TO THOMAS  
J. RUSK.

## CONTEMPORANEOUS EVENTS.—1846-1861.

PERIOD V.  
FIRST PERIOD  
OF STATEHOOD

1846  
TO  
1861

## Parallel to Period V.

## AMERICA.

- 1846.—Congress of United States declares war with Mexico, May 13. General Taylor crosses the Rio Grande, May 18. "Bear Flag" insurrection in California. Iowa admitted to the Union. The "Wilmot Proviso" proposed, to exclude slavery from newly acquired territory. Increase of agitation on slavery and sectional issues. Tariff law passed by Democrats, for revenue only. River and harbor bill vetoed as unconstitutional. Treaty with Great Britain, establishing the Oregon boundary. Smithsonian Institution founded. Several revolutions in Mexico, during which six men held the presidency, resulting in Santa Anna becoming President, December 6.
- 1847.—Battle of Buena Vista, February 22-23. General Scott captures Vera Cruz, March 29. Battle of Cerro Gordo, April 18. Battles of Contreras, Churubusco, and San Antonio, August 19-21. Capture of Chapultepec, September 13, and entry into the City of Mexico, September 16. Salt Lake City founded by the Mormons. Reformed Constitution adopted in Mexico, restoring the Federal Republic; Santa Anna is deposed, leaves the country, and Peñ̄a-y-Peñ̄a becomes President.
- 1848.—Treaty of Guadalupe-Hidalgo, signed February 2, completed May 20, by which peace, boundaries, and price of ceded territory were settled between Mexico and United States. Wisconsin admitted to the Union. "Free-Soil" party formed. "Barn-burners" and Abolitionists in New York State. Gold discovered in California. Zachary Taylor elected President. The annexation of Texas and the acquisition of new territory by the Mexican War revived and intensified slavery and sectional agitation.
- 1849.—President Taylor inaugurated, March 4. Great rush of gold hunters to California, where a State government is organized. Death of Edgar A. Poe. Cliff dwellings discovered in Colorado.
- 1850.—Democratic policy of "squatter sovereignty" and "non-interference" proclaimed. "Boundary bill" passed by Congress, establishing upper bounds of Texas, September 9; accepted by Texas, December 13. Discovery of Grinnell's Land and the Northwest passage. Death of President Taylor, succeeded by Vice-President Fillmore, July 9. Clay's "Compromise Measures" adopted. California admitted to the Union. Wm. H. Seward proclaims the "higher law" doctrine. Fugitive Slave Law passed. Death of John C. Calhoun. Seventh census of United States shows population of 23,191,876.

PERIOD V.  
FIRST PERIOD  
OF STATEHOOD

1846

TO  
1861

- 1851.—Continued agitation of slavery and sectional issues in United States.
- 1852.—Franklin Pierce elected President. Death of Henry Clay and Daniel Webster. Dissolution of the Whig party, and rise of the "Know-Nothing" or American party. Publication of "Uncle Tom's Cabin" adds to the slavery discussions.
- 1853.—President Pierce inaugurated, March 4. *Gadsden Purchase* by United States from Mexico, December 30. Revolution in Mexico; Santa Anna returns and is made dictator; *Plan of Ayulla*; Santa Anna flees the country; universal chaos.
- 1854.—Kansas-Nebraska Bill passed by Congress in May. New Republican party formed. Reciprocity treaty between United States and Canada. Commodore Perry makes treaty with Japan. Troubles begin in Kansas. Internal improvement bill vetoed as unconstitutional.
- 1855.—Activity of "Free-Soil" party. Long contest for election of Speaker of lower house of Congress, lasting three months. Growing violence in Kansas. Suspension bridge at Niagara completed. "Bessemer process" for making steel patented. Provisional government in Mexico; Comonfort as President.
- 1856.—James Buchanan elected President. Free-State convention in Kansas; the State is refused admission to the Union. The Brooks-Summer incident in Washington. A constitutional convention in Mexico; radical reforms proposed; rupture with Spain.
- 1857.—President Buchanan inaugurated, March 4. The *Dred Scott decision* by United States Supreme Court. Civil war in Kansas. Low tariff law passed. Unsuccessful attempt to lay the Atlantic cable. Liberal Constitution adopted in Mexico, March 11; suspended December 1, and Comonfort declared dictator; Benito Juarez begins the "War for Reform," which lasted until 1860.
- 1858.—Minnesota admitted to the Union. Atlantic cable completed. Continuation of the war and revolution under Juarez, in Mexico; Comonfort deposed by Zuloaga, and the Constitution suspended until 1860.
- 1859.—John Brown's raid in Virginia; he is captured, tried, and hanged at Harper's Ferry, December 2. Oregon admitted to the Union. Death of Washington Irving. Miramon, President of Mexico; is succeeded by Zuloaga; Juarez continues the war for liberty and reform.
- 1860.—Abraham Lincoln elected President. South Carolina secedes, December 20. Japan sends ambassador to United States. Oil wells discovered in Pennsylvania. Prince of Wales visits United States. *Great Eastern* crosses the Atlantic. Eighth census of United States



shows population of 31,443,322. The Liberals under Juarez triumph in Mexico; Miramon flees the country.

- 1861.—President Lincoln inaugurated, March 4. Jefferson Davis elected Provisional President of Confederate States, February 9. Fort Sumter fired on and captured, April 12-14. Kansas admitted to the Union. Territory of Dakota organized. Alabama, Arkansas, Florida, Georgia, Louisiana, Mississippi, North Carolina, Tennessee, Texas, and Virginia *secede* and join the Southern Confederacy. Juarez elected President of Mexico; great reforms instituted; clergy suppressed; church and State separated; church property (\$375,000,000) confiscated. Spain, France, and Great Britain claim large indemnities from Mexico, and occupy Vera Cruz to enforce their demands.

PERIOD V.  
FIRST PERIOD  
OF STATEHOOD

1846  
TO  
1861

### GREAT BRITAIN.

- 1846.—Repeal of the Corn laws and reduction of tariff. Famine in Ireland.
- 1847.—Death of Daniel O'Connell. Roman Catholic hierarchy established in England.
- 1848.—Renewal of the *Chartist* agitation. Income-tax riots in London.
- 1849.—Cholera in London. Livingstone in Africa. Conquest of the Punjab by the English.
- 1850.—Death of Wordsworth and Sir Robert Peel. Submarine telegraph between France and England.
- 1851.—Gold digging begins in Australia. London Great Exhibition opened.
- 1852.—Death of Duke of Wellington and Thomas Moore.
- 1853.—English fleet enters the Dardanelles.
- 1854.—The *Crimcan War*, between Great Britain, France, Turkey, and Sardinia on one side, and Russia on the other. Battles of Alma, Balaklava, and Inkerman. Siege of Sebastopol begun. Crystal Palace, at Sydenham, opened.
- 1855.—Battles of Redan and the Malakoff. Fall of Sebastopol, September.
- 1856.—End of *Crimcan War*, Treaty of Paris. Death of Sir Wm. Hamilton.
- 1857.—The *Sepoy Mutiny* in India. Relief of Lucknow.
- 1858.—Government of India transferred to the British crown. First Atlantic cable. Jews' Relief Act passed. Right of search at sea abandoned by England.
- 1859.—Death of Lord Macaulay, DeQuincey, and Leigh Hunt.
- 1860.—Prince of Wales visits America.
- 1861.—Famine in India. Great Britain recognizes the Confederate States as a belligerent power, June 15.

PERIOD V.  
FIRST PERIOD  
OF STATEHOOD

1846  
TO  
1861

## OTHER COUNTRIES.

- 1846.—Polish Republic crushed by Russia and Austria. Pope Gregory XVI. dies, and is succeeded by Pius IX., who favors liberty in the Papal States, which is resisted by Austria.
- 1847.—Uprising in Italy against Austrian despotism.
- 1848.—Revolutions in France, Germany, Hungary, and Sardinia. In France, King Louis Philippe flees the country, the French Republic is founded, and Louis Napoleon is made President. German National Assembly meets. War in Lombardy and Sardinia against Austria. Spanish *Cortes* dissolved.
- 1849.—A republic proclaimed at Rome. Kossuth, governor of Hungary. The French occupy Rome. Russia invades Hungary.
- 1850.—North German parliament at Erfurt.
- 1851.—*Coup-d'état* in France, December 2. Louis Napoleon seizes the government, and is elected President for ten years.
- 1852.—Victor Hugo banished from France; Louis Napoleon elected emperor, as Napoleon III.
- 1853.—Russia occupies Moldavia and Wallachia, principalities of Turkey, and thus leads to the Crimean War. Napoleon III. marries Eugenie de Montijo. Count Cavour, as Prime Minister, accomplishes great reforms in Italy. French fleet enters the Dardanelles.
- 1854.—*Crimean War* begun. Dogma of the Immaculate Conception promulgated at Rome. Lake dwellings discovered in Switzerland.
- 1855.—The fall of Sebastopol. Death of Emperor Nicholas of Russia. Universal Exposition at Paris.
- 1856.—End of the *Crimean War*, Treaty of Paris. Alexander II. crowned Emperor of Russia.
- 1857.—Mount Cenis tunnel begun. Canton, China, taken by French and English.
- 1858.—Great eruption of Vesuvius.
- 1859.—War between France and Austria. Battles of Montebello, Magenta, and Solferino. Lombardy surrendered by Austria. Death of Alexander von Humboldt and Prince Metternich.
- 1860.—Garibaldi begins his campaign for the liberation of Italy. Battles of Palermo and Melazzo.
- 1861.—William I., King of Prussia. Rise of *nihilism* and emancipation of the serfs in Russia. Garibaldi succeeds in freeing Naples, Italy, and Sicily, and founds the new kingdom of Italy, with Victor Emmanuel as king. Death of Cavour.



## Period VI.

THE CIVIL WAR, OR CONFEDERACY.—1861-1865.



### CHAPTER XXIII.

#### Civil Government in Texas during the War; Military Operations on the Coast and Frontiers; Texans in the Confederate Armies.

**D**URING the period of the war between the United and the Confederate States, the civil government of Texas was necessarily feeble and its important acts were few.

Civil government in Texas during the war

Nearly every able-bodied man in the State was in the army for the greater part of the time, and the few old men and boys who were exempt from service busied themselves in taking care of the homes and cultivating the fields of the absent soldiers. The necessaries of life became scarce, the anxiety of the times was intense, and the waiting families at home listened daily for the news of the deadly conflict, in which many a brave Texan fell fighting for the *Stars and Bars*.

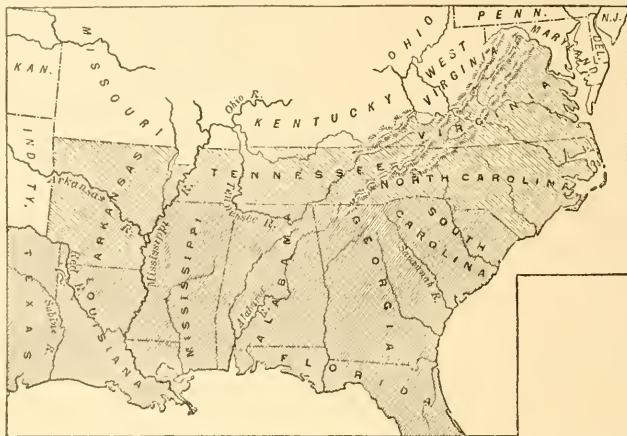
The usual State elections were held in November, 1861, and November, 1863. At the former election Frank R. Lubbock was elected governor, defeating Edward Clark by a vote of 21,854 to 21,730, while T. J. Chambers received 13,759 votes. John M. Crockett was elected lieutenant-governor. In 1863, Pendleton Murrah was elected governor and Fletcher S. Stockdale lieutenant-governor. These two ad-



F. R. LUBBOCK.

PERIOD VI.  
THE  
CIVIL WAR  
1861  
TO  
1865

ministrations were chiefly concerned in raising, organizing, and providing for troops to serve in the armies of the Southern Confederacy. Various conscript acts were passed, requiring men to



MAP SHOWING THE SECEDING STATES THAT FORMED THE SOUTHERN CONFEDERACY (Darker shade shows original secession ; lighter shade shows subsequent secession.)

Conscript acts enlist as soldiers, and martial law was declared and attempted to be enforced at different times. These things produced considerable dissatisfaction, and the history of those times in Texas discloses a good many arbitrary acts on the part of the State government, which, however, were perhaps unavoidable in the general state of war then prevailing throughout the country.



PENDELTON MURRAH.

John H. Reagan in the Confederate Cabinet

At the close of his term of office, Governor Lubbock went to Richmond, Virginia, where he was appointed an *aide* on President Davis's staff, in which position he served to the end of the war, being with Mr. Davis when the latter was captured. Upon the organization of the government of the Confederate States, in 1861, Judge John H. Reagan was appointed postmaster-general in the President's Cabinet, which place he continued to occupy until the fall of the government, acting also as secretary of the treasury towards the close of the war. He, too, was with the President when captured.

PERIOD VI.  
THE  
CIVIL WAR  
—  
1861  
TO  
1865  
—

At the election for Confederate congressmen from Texas, in November, 1861, John A. Wilcox, C. C. Herbert, Peter W. Gray, Frank B. Sexton, Malcolm D. Graham, and W. B. Wright were elected. In 1863, Wilcox, Sexton, and Herbert were re-elected, and A. M. Branch, John R. Baylor, and S. H. Morgan were the others selected. Wilcox having died during his second term, Stephen H. Darden was elected to the vacancy. The legislature, in the fall of 1861, elected Louis T. Wigfall and Williamson S. Oldham Confederate States Senators from Texas. O. M. Roberts having resigned from the Supreme Court, early in 1862, to go in the army, George F. Moore was elected to the vacancy. Chief Justice R. T. Wheeler having died in 1864, O. M. Roberts was elected chief justice, and at the same time Reuben A. Reeves was elected associate justice, to succeed James H. Bell. The Confederate government established two Federal judicial districts in Texas, of which Thomas J. Devine and William Pinckney Hill were the judges.



JOHN H. REAGAN.

On July 26, 1863, at his home in Huntsville, at the age of seventy years, died General Sam Houston. His advent to Texas in 1832 had been followed by thirty years of active, earnest, and patriotic service to his adopted country,—as a feeble province struggling for liberty and independence; as a free Republic, beset with difficulties and threatened with dissolution; as an American commonwealth among her sovereign sisters in the Union. His declining years were saddened by the loss of confidence of his fellow-citizens, and his life went out amid the roar of civil strife and the doubtful struggle of discordant States.

Death of Sam  
Houston



GENERAL JOHN B. HOOD.

It would require volumes to relate the services of the Texan troops in the great Civil War. That belongs to the wider field of American history. In proportion to population, Texas fur-

Texas troops  
in the Confed-  
erate armies

PERIOD VI.  
THE  
CIVIL WAR  
—  
1861  
TO  
—  
1865

nished more soldiers in that war than any State in the Union. The census of 1860 showed the total population of the State to be 604,215. Out of this, Texas sent eighty-eight regiments and nineteen battalions of infantry and cavalry, and thirty-one batteries of artillery to the Confederate armies, besides two regiments and several companies to the Union army, and a considerable

force kept at home for frontier protection. Allowing the usual number of men to these military organizations that would make up a total of nearly one hundred thousand men from Texas who served in the Civil War. Perhaps that number was actually enlisted during the whole four years of the conflict, and certainly at any given time after the struggle fairly begun there were

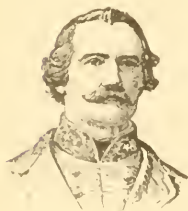


GRAVE OF GENERAL SAM HOUSTON.

seventy-five thousand Texans engaged in marching, camping, and fighting for the Southern cause.

Operations on  
the coast and  
frontier

The first attention of the State troops was directed to seizing all the posts and forts along the borders, even to New Mexico and the Indian Territory, and to securing the coasts and harbors along the Gulf. Many daring and skilful feats were performed in that service, under



GENERAL A. S. JOHN-  
STON.

Capture of  
Galveston and  
the Harriet  
Lane

such men as Henry E. McCulloch, John S. Ford, B. F. Terry, and W. C. Young, acting under the directions of Colonel Earl Van Dorn and General P. O. Hebert. There were various stirring conflicts along the coast, from Sabine Pass to the mouth of the Rio Grande, the most notable of which were the capture of Galveston in October, 1862, in-



GENERAL TOM GREEN.

cluding the taking of the *Harriet Lane*, a United States vessel of war; the bombardment of Port Lavaca; several engagements at the mouth of the Sabine, and the capture of Brownsville by General Banks's expedition. There were also military operations

along the Rio Grande, E. J. Davis being at the head of a force of Americans and Mexicans on that border, as a Union command, which committed various depredations up and down the river.

In the summer and fall of 1862 there began to go out from Texas to the battle-fields of Virginia, Tennessee, Kentucky, Mississippi, and Alabama, a vast host of armed men, whose deeds immortalized the name of the Confederacy, from Mansfield, Corinth, Shiloh, and Chickamauga to Antietam, Chancellorsville, Cold Harbor, the Wilderness, and Gettysburg, in whose fiery charges so many of them perished with heroic valor. Texas gave to the Southern arms her adopted son, Albert Sidney Johnston, by many considered the ablest commander on either side; and among the leading officers were John B. Hood and Tom Green, Wharton and Sam Bell Maxey, Ross and the two Robertsons, Waul and Walter P. Lane, Whitfield and Harrison, King and De Bray, Gregg and Hardeman, Granbury and Ben McCulloch, Hogg and Wigfall, Steele and the two Scurrys, Bee and Gano, Ector and Winkler, and many more who won their stars as generals before the ordeal was over.

Among the officers below the rank of general, the roll of bravery is almost interminable, and to mention one without all would wrong the equality of their chivalric devotion to the cause they fought for. The most famous single commands of Texas troops were Hood's Brigade, Terry's Rangers, Waul's Legion, Whitfield's Legion, and Ross's, Green's, Ector's, and Granbury's Brigades.

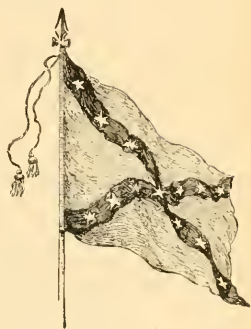


GENERAL H. B. GRANBURY.

The fall of Richmond, the surrender at Appomattox, the submission of General Joe Johnston, and the final dissolution of the Trans-Mississippi Department under General E. Kirby Smith, followed each other in

PERIOD VI.  
THE  
CIVIL WAR

1861  
TO  
1865



CONFEDERATE BATTLE FLAG.



MAT D. ECTOR.

Fall of the  
Confederacy

rapid succession in the spring of 1865, and the struggle had ended before the summer of that year began.

The last battle of the war was fought, and the last gun fired, on Texas soil, in an engagement between Texan troops under Colonel John S. Ford and a large Federal force under General Barrett. This occurred on May 13, 1865, at the *Palmito Ranch*, near Brownsville, and the Texans won the day.

### QUESTIONS.

WHAT was the condition of civil government in Texas during the Civil War? Where were most of the men, and what was the occupation of those who remained at home? Describe the state of affairs among the people at home. What about the usual State elections? Give the names of the candidates for governor and lieutenant-governor, and the results of the vote at the elections in 1861 and 1863. In what were those two administrations chiefly engaged? What laws were passed for raising troops, and what was the result of their operation in Texas? What did General Lubbock do at the close of his term of office? What distinguished Texan held positions in the Confederate cabinet, and what positions did he hold? What happened to him and Governor Lubbock at the close of the war? Who were the Confederate Congressmen and Senators while the government lasted? What changes took place in the Supreme Court during the war? How many Confederate judges were there in Texas, and who were they? When and where did Sam Houston die? What can you say of his career and services in Texas? What of his last years and death? What proportion of soldiers did Texas furnish to the Confederate States' armies? Give the estimated number of Texas troops, and the figures on which the estimate is based. How many Texans were in the Union army? To what were the efforts of Texas at first directed on the breaking out of the war? What men were engaged conspicuously in that service, and under whose chief command? What important engagements occurred on the coast, at Sabine Pass, Galveston, and Brownsville? What military operations were conducted on the Rio Grande? What can you say of the services of Texas troops abroad and in the campaigns and battles of the Civil War? Give the names of the most distinguished general officers furnished by Texas to the Confederate arms. Give the names of the most noted single commands of Texas troops. What important events in 1865 brought the war to a close? When, where, by whom, and with what result was the last battle of the war for Secession fought?



### Topical Analysis.

1. Civil government and social conditions in Texas during the war.
2. Operations of State troops on the frontiers, coasts, and interior during the same period.
3. The number, efficiency, and distinguished services of Texas officers and troops in the armies of the Confederacy in the campaigns and battles from 1861 to 1865.

PERIOD VI.  
THE  
CIVIL WAR  
1861  
TO  
1865

### Geography.

Locate the scenes of the most important military operations and engagements in which Texans participated during the Civil War.

### Parallel Readings.

Scarff's "Comprehensive History of Texas" (1897), Vol. II., Part V., "Texas and Texans in the Civil War;" Hood's "Advance and Retreat;" Winkler's "Life of John B. Hood," "History of Hood's Brigade;" "Campaigns of Walker's Texas Division;" Johnston's "Life of Albert Sidney Johnston;" Rose's "History of Ross's Brigade," "Life and Services of Ben McCulloch;" "Lives of Lee and Jackson;" Davis's "Rise and Fall of the Confederacy;" Taylor's "Destruction and Reconstruction;" Draper's "Civil War in America;" Stephens's "History of the War between the States;" "Records of the War of the Rebellion," Vols. I., III., IV., VIII., IX., XV., XXVI. (Parts I. and II.), XXXIV., XLI.; Brown's "History of Texas," Vol. II.



## CONTEMPORANEOUS EVENTS.—1861—1865.

## Parallel to Period VI.

## AMERICA.

- 1861.—President Lincoln calls for seventy-five thousand troops to make war on the South, and convenes Congress, April 15. United States troops invade Maryland and West Virginia, May. Confederate Congress meets at Richmond, July 20. First battle of Manassas or Bull Run, July 21. Jefferson Davis elected permanent President of the Confederacy, November 20. Suspension of specie payments in United States. Juarez, President of Mexico, and war threatened with England, Spain, and France.
- 1862.—Fall of Forts Henry and Donelson, February. Naval fight of *Merrimac* and *Monitor*, March 8. Battle of Shiloh, April 6, 7. Capture of New Orleans, April 24. "Seven Days' Fight" on the Chickahominy, June 25 to July 1. McClellan's peninsular campaign defeated, April to July. "Stonewall" Jackson's victorious campaign in the Shenandoah Valley. Second battle of Manassas, August 29. Antietam or Sharpsburg, September 17. Fredericksburg, December 13. England and Spain adjust their claims with Mexico, but France declares war.
- 1863.—Lincoln's emancipation proclamation, January 1. West Virginia made a State. Victory of Chancellorsville, but "Stonewall" Jackson is accidentally killed, May 2. Fall of Vicksburg, July 4. Battle of Gettysburg, July 1-3. Chickamauga, September 19, 20. Fenian Convention in Chicago. French occupy City of Mexico; Napoleon III. offers empire of Mexico to Archduke Maximilian, of Austria, who accepts.
- 1864.—Sheridan's raid into Virginia. Battle of Wilderness, May 5, 6. Cold Harbor, June 3. Atlanta, July 20-28. Mobile Bay, August 5. Petersburg, July 30. Atlanta captured, September 2. Sherman's march through Georgia, November 16 to December 22. Lincoln re-elected. Nevada admitted to the Union, October 31. Fugitive slave laws repealed, June 23. *Alabama* sunk by *Kearsarge*, June 19. Emperor Maximilian arrives in Mexico; war ensues, the Mexicans resisting a foreign tyranny.
- 1865.—Hampton Roads conference, February 3. Lincoln inaugurated (second term) March 4; assassinated, April 14. Andrew Johnson becomes President. Fall of Richmond, April 3. Surrender of General Lee at Appomattox, April 9. President Davis captured, May 10; end of the war. Thirteenth and Fourteenth Amendments passed by Congress, February and June. War in Mexico against Maximilian continued.

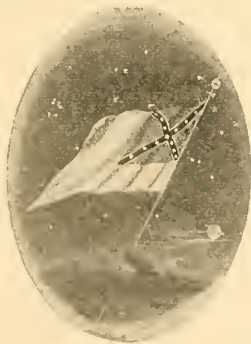
## GREAT BRITAIN.

- 1862.—The *Alabama* sails from Liverpool. Cotton famine in Lancashire.  
 1863.—Marriage of Prince of Wales with Princess Alexandra of Denmark.  
 1864.—Orange riots in Belfast.  
 1865.—Death of Lord Palmerston and Richard Cobden. Fenian leaders arrested in Ireland.

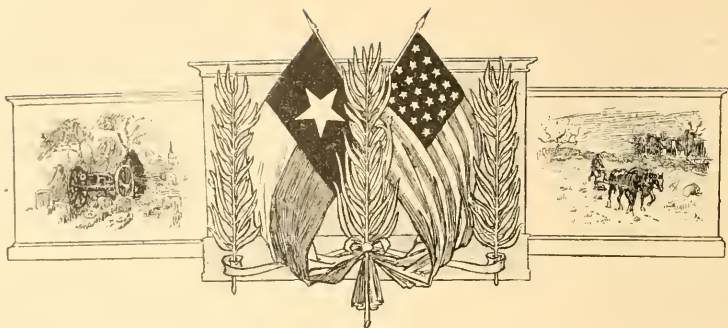
PERIOD VI.  
 THE  
 CIVIL WAR  
 —  
 1861  
 TO  
 1865  
 —

## OTHER COUNTRIES.

- 1862.—France declares war against Mexico. Bismarck, chief minister of Prussia. Ionian Isles ceded to Greece by England.  
 1863.—Insurrection in Poland. Prince George of Denmark elected king of Greece. Christian IX., king of Denmark.  
 1864.—War in Denmark. Austro-Prussian army occupies Schleswig-Holstein.  
 1865.—Leopold II., king of Belgium.



“THE WARRIOR’S BANNER TAKES ITS FLIGHT  
 TO GREET THE WARRIOR’S SOUL.”



## Period VIII.

THE RECONSTRUCTION PERIOD.—1865-1874.



### CHAPTER XXIV.

Presidential and Congressional Reconstruction ;  
 Throckmorton's Administration ; Pease's  
 Administration ; Texas under E.  
 J. Davis's Administration.

Assassination  
 of Lincoln,  
 April 14, 1865

**T**HE fall of the Confederate States was hardly assured, when the President of the United States, Abraham Lincoln, was assassinated, April 14, 1865. The Vice-President, Andrew Johnson, succeeded him, and a serious struggle at once began in regard to the course to be pursued towards the States lately belonging to the Southern Confederacy.

Andrew John-  
 son, President

Theories of the  
 Republican  
 party in 1865

According to the political theories of the Republican party of the North, a State could not successfully secede, the Federal government being "an indestructible Union of indestructible States." Upon this theory the Southern States were still in the Union, and only required to be *reconstructed*, so as to bring their governments and people into harmony with the changes brought about by the war. Just as the war was closing, Congress adopted two amendments to the Constitution, one of which abolished and prohibited slavery in the United States, and the other practically destroyed the control of the States over

Thirteenth  
 and Four-  
 teenth  
 Amendments

their own citizens and affairs by creating a United States citizenship superior in its rights of person and property to citizenship in the several States. These were the *Thirteenth* and *Fourteenth Amendments*, passed respectively in February and June, 1865, and were supposed to contain the practical results of the Civil War. In order for the amendments to become a part of the Constitution, they would have to be adopted or consented to by three-fourths of the States, and it required the votes of some of the Southern States to make up the necessary three-fourths. Here was a dilemma. The lately seceding States were still in the Union, and hence had the right to vote on the adoption of the amendments; it was absolutely certain that, if those States were allowed to express their true and intelligent choice, they would never assent to the proposed changes, and yet it was necessary to secure enough of the Southern States to carry the amendments. What was to be done? *Reconstruction* was the method proposed, but there was great difference of opinion as to the course to be pursued in reconstructing the State governments of the South.

President Johnson determined to adopt the plan of simply punishing the most prominent leaders in the late war by depriving them of all civil rights, and then he would appoint provisional governors in the Southern States and invite the people of those States to call conventions, reorganize their governments, and resume their former places in the Union. This was called *Presidential Reconstruction*, and it proved a failure so far as accomplishing the purposes of the North was concerned. The Southern States had never been without their regular constitutional governments; there had been no destruction of their usual republican forms of government requiring to be reconstructed, and hence, when they were forced by military power to carry out the President's plan of reorganization, they simply re-enacted their former laws and constitutions and remained the same States they had always been, and unanimously opposed to the Thirteenth and Fourteenth Amendments. This was inevitable, and it was right and proper, if the theory of the Northern statesmen was correct, that the seceding States had never left the Union. But it did not serve the end the North had in view in

PERIOD VII.  
RECON-  
STRUCTION  
1865  
TO  
1874

A serious  
dilemma

Reconstruc-  
tion proposed

Plan of Presi-  
dential Recon-  
struction

A failure in its  
operation

Why it was  
a failure

PERIOD VII.  
RECON-  
STRUCTION

1865

TO

1874

Plan of Con-  
gressional Re-  
construction

Inconsistency  
of the method

waging the war. To carry out the *Republican* ideas of government, the negro must be freed and clothed with all civil and political rights as a citizen of the United States, and a new definition of citizenship must be made, so as to give the Federal government power to override the States in enforcing the newly created rights of the recent slaves. Presidential Reconstruction evidently would not accomplish the purpose, and so Congress, ruled by the most violent of the radical Republicans, took hold of the matter in 1867 and 1868.

*Congressional Reconstruction*, as the methods pursued by Congress were called, consisted in placing the Southern States under the absolute and arbitrary control of the military power, disfranchising enough of the intelligent white citizens who had taken part in the war to place the Union men and negroes in the majority, and then adopting such State Constitutions and laws as would force upon the people the adoption of the amendments and the doctrines and institutions of the Northern Republicans. And it must be remembered that all these reconstruction measures were passed through Congress while the Southern States had not a Senator or Representative in that body, notwithstanding it was constantly asserted that the Union had never been dissolved and that the South had not in fact seceded.

The foregoing is necessary to be understood in order to explain the history of those times and to follow intelligently the course of events in Texas.

After the close of hostilities in April, 1865, there was a period of two or three months when the State had no government of any kind. Soldiers were returning home, some fleeing to Mexico, and everything was chaos and gloom. On June 19, 1865, General Gordon Granger, of the United States army, assumed military command over Texas, declared all that had

been done by the State government since 1861 null and void, and proclaimed the freedom of the negroes. In July, President Johnson appointed A. J. Hamilton *provisional governor* of Texas, and he began the performance of his duties on the 25th of that month. According to the plan of Presidential Recon-



A. J. HAMILTON.

A. J. Hamilton,  
provisional  
governor

PERIOD VII.  
RECON-  
STRUCTION  
—  
1865  
TO  
1874  
—

struction before explained, a State Convention was called to amend the Constitution and reorganize the government. It met February 7, 1866, and adopted the Constitution of 1845, in force at the time of Secession in 1861, with certain amendments, thereby ignoring all that had been done by the Secession Convention. One of the amendments to the Constitution was to increase the judges of the Supreme Court from three to five. It was provided by the Convention that a general election should be held on the last Monday in June to choose all the State, district, and county officers, and members of the legislature, and for the ratification of the amendments to the State Constitution. Before adjourning, the conservative members of both parties in the convention agreed upon James W. Throckmorton as a proper candidate for governor, and George W. Jones for lieutenant-governor. George F. Moore, Richard Coke, Stockton P. Donley, A. H. Willie, and George W. Smith were also agreed upon for the new Supreme Court judges. At the election in June, 1866, Throckmorton and Jones were elected, receiving about forty-nine thousand votes as against about twelve thousand for E. M. Pease and L. Lindsey, the opposing candidates, and the gentlemen above named were elected to the Supreme Court.



J. W. THROCKMORTON.

On August 9, the legislature met, and the new State officers were installed. O. M. Roberts and David G. Burnet were elected United States Senators from Texas; and in the election held in the fall of 1866, members of Congress from the State to the Thirty-ninth Congress, then in session, and to the Fortieth Congress, were chosen. The members elected to the Thirty-ninth Congress were George W. Chilton, B. H. Epperson, A. M. Branch, and C. C. Herbert, from the four districts in the order named; and the same gentlemen were also elected to the Fortieth Congress, except George W. Chilton, in whose stead James M. Burroughs was chosen.

The legislature passed quite a number of needed laws for the protection of the frontier against Indians and to restore the prosperity of the State. The people were hopeful and industrious, the government moved smoothly, and nothing was wanting to

Senators and  
Representa-  
tives in Con-  
gress elected,  
1866

Acts of the  
legislature

Peace and  
promise

PERIOD VII.  
RECON-  
STRUCTION

1865  
TO  
1874

Disturbing  
elements in  
the country

"Carpet-  
baggers" and  
"Scalawags"

Texas refused  
representation  
in Congress

Use of the  
military

Governor  
Throckmorton  
removed

E. M. Pease,  
governor

Supreme  
Court

make Texas again a thriving State in the Union, except the removal of the United States soldiers and the admission of her Senators and Representatives in Congress. But neither of these events happened. The new order of things did not suit the Republican party. The country was full of soldiers and Northern politicians who came with the army, and their influence was a continual source of trouble between the recently emancipated negroes and their former masters. The old Union men of Texas, who had opposed Secession and claimed to be the "truly loyal" citizens, were very much dissatisfied to see the government once more in the hands of the men they had resisted in 1861. There was much bitterness of feeling on both sides, and men's minds were not favorable to a harmonious settlement of existing differences. The Northern Republicans who came South after the war were called "Carpet-baggers," and the native Union men and Republicans were called "Scalawags." These terms indicate the odium in which the Reconstructionists were held by the Southern people, and such epithets did not increase the prospect of peaceful times.

In this condition of things, Congress took the reconstruction of the Southern States out of the hands of the President, and proceeded to inaugurate the measures known as Congressional Reconstruction, above described. The Senators and Representatives from Texas, like those of the other late Confederate States, were refused admission to Congress. Military governments were established throughout the South. On March 19, 1867, General P. H. Sheridan, in command of the military department which included Texas, issued an order placing General Charles Griffin in command of the district of Texas. Governor Throckmorton gave such aid as was requested of him in carrying out the new plan of reorganization; but on July 30, 1867, General Sheridan, by military order, removed him from the governorship, "as an impediment to reconstruction," and appointed Elisha M. Pease in his place. All officers were removed by the military power, and their places filled with those supposed to be in sympathy with the methods of Congressional Reconstruction. The Supreme Court as thus changed consisted of E. J. Davis, C. Caldwell, Amos Morrill, A. H. Latimer, and Livingston



Lindsey. No man could hold an office, or participate in any of the elections that were to be held, unless he could take the "Iron-Clad Oath," as it was called. This oath was to the effect that the person taking it had not taken part in the late Rebellion, or given aid thereto; which, of course, disfranchised nearly all the white voters in the State. The "Freedmen's Bureau" was established in Texas and the other Southern States,—being a military court composed of United States officers, whose special duty it was to protect the negroes in their recently acquired rights, and a great many rights that they had not acquired.

In opposition to these measures there was organized among the Southern people what was called the "Ku-Klux Klan," a mysterious secret organization, whose members would parade at night through the towns, on horseback and fully armed, clad in long white or black robes, with masks on their faces and high peaked hats,—claiming to be the returned spirits of dead soldiers who fell in the late war. Their formidable and ghostly array produced great terror among the negroes, and there is no doubt it had a wholesome effect to restrain an ignorant and deluded race of lately emancipated slaves, whose worst passions were being aroused by unprincipled white politicians. In some localities, however, in the South, the Ku-Klux and other lawless bands who assumed their name and garb did not confine themselves to mere displays of mysterious power. Many cruel outrages were perpetrated in their name, and the organization became a menace to the peace and order of society. It is not believed, however, that such lawless acts were ever committed to any great extent in Texas.

A convention was called to meet at Austin, June 1, 1868, to frame a new State Constitution, in accordance with the reconstruction measures of Congress. In selecting delegates to that convention, nearly all the white citizens of Texas were prevented from voting by the "Iron-Clad Oath;" and it was understood that Governor Pease and those acting with him proposed to still further disfranchise the Democrats of the State, by unjust rules and requirements in the registration of voters. This called out from General Winfield S. Hancock, then in command of the department at New Orleans, his famous order and letter, in

PERIOD VII.  
RECON-  
STRUCTION

1865  
TO  
1874

"Freedmen's  
Bureau"

"Ku-Klux  
Klan"

Their methods

Lawless acts

Reconstruc-  
tion conven-  
tion of 1868

White citizen:  
disfranchised

General W. S.  
Hancock's  
letter

PERIOD VII.  
RECON-  
STRUCTION  
1865  
TO  
1874

which he rebuked such an attempt, and declared that the legal voters of Texas must have their rights respected and their votes recorded. The Reconstruction Convention met at the appointed time. Edmund J. Davis was elected president, and the leading men in it were A. J. Hamilton, Morgan C. Hamilton, A. P. McCormick, C. Caldwell, Arvin Wright, and Lemuel D. Evans.

The Hamilton brothers, A. J. and Morgan C., were on opposite sides in the issues that arose in the convention; the former being liberal and just in his desire to protect the men who had taken part in the war, while the latter was extreme and radical in the purpose to completely destroy their influence in the government of the State.

The Reconstruction Convention lasted from June 1, 1868, until February 6, 1869, and it never did actually adjourn, nor was the Constitution ever finally adopted by a vote of the convention or signed by



MORGAN C. HAMILTON.

Irregularity of its acts and proceedings

A forcible protest by a negro delegate

The Constitution of 1869

Liberal provision for free public education

the members. Its proceedings were very irregular and disorderly, and often there was no quorum present. Many members went home in disgust, and one of these, a colored delegate from Galveston, Hon. G. T. Ruby, filed his withdrawal in the following language: "Believing that the present reconstruction convention has lost, through many of its members, all regard for dignity and honor as a legislative assembly, and that its continued assemblage will only terminate in disgrace to the entire country, I herewith tender my resignation as a member hereof, and as a delegate from Galveston County." The Constitution framed by this body is known as the Constitution of 1869. It lengthened the terms and increased the salaries of all officers; reduced the Supreme Court to three judges, and made all judicial officers appointive instead of elective; and required all elections to be held at the county seat of each county, and to last *four days*. The most meritorious features of this Constitution were the liberal provisions made for the public free schools. In addition to lands, bonds, and funds belonging to the schools under former laws, it was provided that all receipts from public lands in the future should go to the school fund, and one-fourth of the annual taxes and all of the poll-tax were

appropriated to the schools,—all to constitute a permanent fund, whose interest could be used to support the free-school system. A State superintendent of public instruction was also provided for, and a bureau to encourage immigration.

PERIOD VII.  
RECON-  
STRUCTION  
1865  
TO  
1874

While these events had been occurring in Texas, enough of the Southern States had been reconstructed by Congress to adopt the Thirteenth and Fourteenth Amendments, and a *Fifteenth Amendment*, allowing negroes to vote, was passed through Congress in February, 1868, but was not ratified by three-fourths of the States until 1870. The right of suffrage, however, was extended to the recent slaves in Texas by the Constitution of 1869 and the ordinances of the military power. In December, 1869, Governor Pease, being dissatisfied with the extreme measures and methods employed in reconstruction, resigned the office of governor, and from that time until the new administration came in, General J. J. Reynolds was the military governor of Texas. In the subsequent political movements in the State, Pease acted with the Hamilton and against the Davis party. The election for the State and county officers was held in November, 1869, and E. J. Davis was elected over A. J. Hamilton by the close vote of 39,901 to 39,092. The Constitution was ratified by a large majority. J. W. Flanagan was elected lieutenant-governor. The registration showed the total number of voters in the State to be 135,553, of whom 78,648 were white and 56,905 were negroes; so that 56,560 voters did not participate in the election.

Fifteenth  
Amendment



E. J. DAVIS.

Governor Davis took the oath of office January 17, 1870, for the four years' term created by the new Constitution. The legislature met in February, adopted the Fourteenth and Fifteenth Amendments, and elected Morgan C. Hamilton to the United States Senate for the term ending March 3, 1871, and also for the term ending in 1877: J. W. Flanagan was elected Senator for the term ending in March, 1875. This government was declared to be merely provisional until Congress should accept the new State Constitution, which it did on March 30,

State election,  
1869

The vote

Davis's ad-  
ministration

United States  
Senators  
elected

PERIOD VII.  
RECON-  
STRUCTION

1865  
TO  
1874

1870, and the Twelfth Legislature met in regular session on April 26, 1870.

It would be a fruitless and unpleasant task to review the details of the Davis administration. He was personally and socially a courteous and considerate gentleman, but politically he was as thoroughly unfitted for the head of a constitutional government in a free country as it is possible to imagine.

His administration was one of boundless extravagance, disorderly and lawless despotism, increasing disregard of every principle of personal and political liberty, and it brought utter ruin to the best interests of the State and its citizens. He was given enormous power and patronage by the legislature, and he used them in the most reckless and arbitrary manner. He established a State police, officered by petty tyrants and composed of disreputable adventurers. He assumed the right to declare martial law whenever and wherever his authority was resisted, and he reduced whole counties and districts to a state of terrorism and outlawry. Finally,

the profligate course of public expenditures and the increase of taxes to the verge of confiscation aroused men of all parties to overthrow such a ruinous system of misrule.

In September, 1871, a "Non-Partisan Tax-Payers' Convention" was held in Austin, to protest against the abuses of the State government. Besides the prominent Democrats in the State, it contained such men as A. J. and Morgan C. Hamilton, Ex-Governor Pease, George Hancock, and many leading Republicans; and Governor Pease was president of the convention. That convention ascertained and published to the world the fact that the two legislatures of 1870 and 1871 had appropriated for the expenses of the government the enormous sum of \$3,752,875, besides subsidies granted to railroads amounting to \$14,000,000; and the State and county tax was \$2.17½ on each one hundred dollars, besides poll, occupation, and license taxes. All these facts being circulated among the people, as well as the many acts of Governor Davis in violation of the Constitution and laws, a revolution in public sentiment began to take place. No election for members of the legislature was held until November,



J. W. FLANAGAN.

Non-partisan  
convention to  
secure relief,  
1871

Disastrous  
results of the  
Davis govern-  
ment

Revolution in  
public senti-  
ment

1872 ; but the Thirteenth Legislature, which met in January, 1873, had a majority in both houses opposed to Governor Davis. It proceeded to repeal many objectionable laws, and it set aside the grant of \$6,000,000 to the Texas and Pacific Railroad Company, substituting lands therefor, as had always been the policy of the State.

A general State election was held in November, 1873, the old method of voting by precincts and on *one day* only having been restored by the Democratic legislature. Richard Coke and R. B. Hubbard were the Democratic candidates for governor and lieutenant-governor, against E. J. Davis and Robert H. Taylor, Republicans. Coke received 103,038 votes to Davis's 51,220, and the entire Democratic ticket was elected. As soon as the result was known, Governor Davis declared he would not surrender the office until April 26, that being the date when the Twelfth Legislature met in regular session in 1870 ; when, by law, his term expired in January. Finding that this contention would probably fail him, a method was then adopted to set the entire election aside as illegal, because it had not been held on four days, as provided in the Constitution. To raise this question, a Mexican named Rodriguez was arrested for illegal voting, and he pleaded in defence that the election at which he voted was not a legal and valid election. In order to settle the point, it was necessary to construe a sentence in the Constitution in which a *semicolon* was used, and a change in the punctuation might change the meaning. The case came before the Supreme Court, composed then of Judges J. D. McAdoo, Moses B. Walker, and Wesley Ogden, and the court held the election to be illegal and void, basing the decision on the force of the semicolon. Upon such slender threads do the destinies of nations sometimes hang ! That court has always since been called the "Semicolon Court," and to this day none of its decisions are ever cited as good law in the courts of Texas.

But the Democrats were not to be cheated of their victory by judicial quibbles over punctuation, nor by the arbitrary claims of Governor Davis. They prepared to assume control of the government to which they had been elected by the people, peaceably, if possible ; forcibly, if necessary. Governor Davis

PERIOD VII.  
RECON-  
STRUCTION

1865

TO

1874

State election  
of November,  
1873

Richard Coke  
elected gov-  
ernor

Governor  
Davis resists  
the result

A fictitious  
law case, *Ex  
parte Rodri-  
guez*

The "Semi-  
colon Court"  
and its deci-  
sion

The Demo-  
crats prepare  
to seize the  
government

PERIOD VII.  
RECON-  
STRUCTION  
1865  
TO  
1874

appealed to President Grant for military aid, the capitol was occupied and surrounded by armed men, and a bloody revolution seemed inevitable. But, fortunately, the Federal authorities declined to interfere; Davis sullenly yielded, Coke was inaugurated, Reconstruction had ended, and on January 17, 1874, Texas was once more a free State in the American Union.

## QUESTIONS.

WHAT terrible event occurred in the United States just at the close of the war, and what was the exact date of it? Who succeeded to the presidency, and what struggle at once began? What was the theory of the Northern Republican leaders in regard to the attitude of the Confederate States as to being in or out of the Union? What did they say about the nature of the Federal Union of the States? According to this theory, what was necessary to be done with the lately seceding Southern States? What two amendments to the Constitution were adopted just as the war was closing? Describe the practical effect of those two amendments, and when did they pass through Congress. What was necessary to make them part of the Constitution? What dilemma did this lead to in regard to the Southern States? What method was proposed to escape this difficulty? What plan of *Reconstruction* did President Johnson propose, and what was it called? Why did it prove a failure in accomplishing the purpose of the North towards the South? Explain the practical operations of *Presidential Reconstruction* as affecting the Thirteenth and Fourteenth Amendments. What was the purpose of the Northern Republicans towards the South, and why did they reject the President's plan of procedure? When did Congress take hold of the matter? What was its plan of treating the Southern States called, and explain in what that plan consisted? How were the *Reconstruction Acts* passed through Congress? What voice had the South in that legislation, and what inconsistency was involved in the action of the Congress? When did the war actually cease? What occurred in Texas for two or three months afterwards? What was the condition of the country and people? When and by whom did the United States assume military command over Texas? What did he do and declare? When and whom did President Johnson appoint *provisional governor* of Texas? What convention was called to carry out the plan of Presidential Reconstruction, when did it meet, and what did it do? What change was made in the State Constitution in regard to the Supreme Court? What was provided in regard to holding a general State election? Who were selected by the conservative men of

all parties as candidates for governor and lieutenant-governor? Who for judges of the Supreme Court? Who were the opposing candidates for governor and lieutenant-governor? What was the result of the election? When did the legislature and the new officers take their seats? Who were elected to the United States Senate? Who were elected as Congressmen in the following fall, and for seats in what Congresses? What character of laws did the legislature pass? What were the disposition and feelings of the people, and what was the only obstacle to the restoration of peace and prosperity? What was the feeling of the Republican party at this time? Describe the condition of the country and the various influences at work to produce trouble. Explain the meaning of the terms "Carpet-bagger" and "Scalawag." What did Congress do at that time? What happened to the Senators and Representatives who had been sent to Washington? What kind of governments were established in the Southern States? Who was in command of the military department including Texas, and when did he put Texas under military rule? Whom did he appoint to command in Texas? What was done with Governor Throckmorton, and for what alleged reason? When was this? Who was appointed in his place? What else was done towards placing Texas under military control? Who constituted the Supreme Court under the new order of things? What was the "Iron-clad Oath," and who were required to take it? What effect did it have? What was the "Freedmen's Bureau," and what was its alleged object? What peculiar organization arose in the South to counteract these political and social evils? Describe the methods and effect of the "Ku-Klux." What abuses did it lead to in some localities? When was a State Convention called to meet to frame a new Constitution under the plan of Congressional Reconstruction? How were the delegates elected, and what was proposed by the Republicans in order to gain complete mastery of the situation? What distinguished Federal general rebuked this outrageous proposition? Who was President of the Constitutional Convention of 1869? Who were some of its leading members? What can you say of the Hamilton brothers in that Convention? How long did that Convention last, and when did it adjourn? Did it adopt a State Constitution? What can you say of its proceedings? What protest was filed by a negro delegate? What was the Constitution thus framed called? What were its provisions as to officers, salaries, Supreme Court, and elections? What were its most meritorious features? What provisions did it make for free schools? What new departments of government did it create? What occurred in the meanwhile in the United States? What new amendment to the Constitution was passed through Congress, and when? When was it ratified by three-fourths of the States? When was the right to vote extended to negroes in Texas? When did Governor Pease resign his position as military governor, and why? What government did Texas then have, and for how long? What was Governor Pease's political attitude afterwards? When did the first State election

PERIOD VII.  
RECON-  
STRUCTION

1865  
TO  
1874

PERIOD VII.  
RECON-  
STRUCTION

1865

10

1874

occur under Congressional Reconstruction? Who were the candidates for governor and lieutenant-governor, and who were elected? What was the vote for governor? What was the total registration and vote at that election, and what proportion were whites and negroes? How many did not vote at all? When did Governor E. J. Davis take his seat, and for what length of term? When did the legislature meet, and what did it do with the Fourteenth and Fifteenth Amendments? Who were elected United States Senators, and for what terms? What was the nature of this government, and when and how did it become permanent? When did the Twelfth Legislature meet? What was the personal and political character of Governor Davis? What was the character of his administration as governor? What powers were given him by the legislature, and how did he use them? What can you say of his "State Police" and his arbitrary acts of despotism? What finally resulted from his misrule? When and where was a Convention of citizens called to protest against these abuses? What was it called? Who was its president, and who were among its leading members? What facts did that Convention ascertain and publish in regard to the acts of the legislatures of 1870 and 1871? What effect did their publication have? When was the next election for members of the legislature, and what was the result of that election upon the political composition of the legislature that followed? What did that legislature do? When was the next general State election held? What was the method of holding that election? Who were the Democratic candidates for governor and lieutenant-governor? Who were their opponents? What was the result of the election? What did Governor Davis at once contend? What plan did he next adopt to defeat the result of the election? Explain the famous *Rodríguez case*, for what purpose it was raised, and the grounds upon which it was decided. Who constituted the Supreme Court at that time, what did they decide, and why? What has that court always been called, and in what estimation are its decisions held? What did the Democrats prepare to do? What did Davis do, and with what result? Describe what then occurred. When did the Reconstruction Period end in Texas?

### Topical Analysis.

#### 1. Condition of affairs in the United States at close of the war :

(a) Lincoln had been assassinated and Andrew Johnson was President. His views did not accord with those of the radical Republicans who controlled Congress.

(b) According to the political theories of the Northern Republicans, there had been no Secession, the Union was indestructible, and the Southern States had never left the Union.

(c) If this were true, the Southern States clearly must be allowed their constitutional rights in the Union and participation in making and changing the Constitution and laws, which would enable them to defeat



the Thirteenth and Fourteenth Amendments. The votes of some of the Southern States were absolutely necessary to make up the three-fourths of the States required to adopt an amendment. Here was a dilemma between a political theory and a practical demand.

(d) It was decided to *reconstruct* the Southern States, or enough of them to pass the Constitutional Amendments, and two methods were tried to accomplish this end.

2. Two plans of Reconstruction attempted :

(a) *Presidential Reconstruction*, according to the plan of President Johnson, which was for the Southern States to simply reorganize their governments. He appointed provisional governors, State conventions were called to frame new constitutions and laws, and then the States were to take their former places in the Union, the more prominent leaders of Secession being temporarily disfranchised. This plan did not work to suit the radical Republicans, because the Southern States simply exercised their rights as sovereign States and re-enacted their former constitutions and laws, which had in fact never been suspended. So Congress determined to take hold of the matter.

(b) *Congressional Reconstruction*, by which was meant a series of arbitrary and unconstitutional acts passed by Congress to regulate the affairs of the Southern States, while those States had no voice in Congress, notwithstanding they were said never to have left the Union. The general features of the plan were to place the South under military rule, disfranchise most of the respectable white population, so as to place the negroes and Republicans in the majority, and then *reconstruct* the State governments on Republican lines and adopt the several amendments desired. This was the odious system enforced in Texas and the South for several years.

3. Reconstruction in Texas :

(a) *Presidential Reconstruction* ; A. J. Hamilton, provisional governor ; Constitutional Convention of 1866 ; election of Governor Throckmorton ; comparative peace and the prospect of prosperity.

(b) *Congressional Reconstruction* ; General Sheridan removes Governor Throckmorton and places General Griffin in command of Texas as a military province ; E. M. Pease is appointed military governor and all officers are placed under military authority ; the "Iron-Clad Oath" required of all voters, which disfranchised nearly all the white population ; "Freedmen's Bureau" and military courts-martial rule the country ; rise of "Ku-Klux" to resist these abuses ; Reconstruction Convention of 1868 frames a State Constitution, and E. J. Davis is elected governor in fall of 1869 ; his administration characterized by extravagance, corruption, arbitrary and despotic outrages, a lawless "State Police," and universal disregard of political and personal liberty ; the conservative citizens of all parties organize a movement for a change ; a Democratic legislature is elected in 1872 and a Democratic governor in 1873 ; Davis

PERIOD VII.  
RECON-  
STRUCTION

1865

TO

1874

attempts to hold the government, with the aid of a corrupt Supreme Court, but is forced to yield ; Democratic government re-established January 17, 1874.

### Parallel Readings.

Scarff's "Comprehensive History of Texas," Vol. II., Part III, O. M. Roberts's "Political History of Texas ;" Brown's "History of Texas ;" "Destruction and Reconstruction," by General Richard Taylor ; "Life of L. Q. C. Lamar," by Mays ; Blaine's "Twenty Years in Congress ;" S. S. Cox's "Three Decades of Federal Legislation ;" John Sherman's "Recollections of Forty Years in House, Senate, and Cabinet ;" General Grant's "Memoirs."



RANGER CAMP IN WESTERN TEXAS.

## CONTEMPORANEOUS EVENTS.—1865—1874.

PERIOD VII.  
RECON-  
STRUCTION  
—  
1865  
TO  
1874  
—

## Parallel to Period VII.

## AMERICA.

- 1866.—*Civil Rights* bill passed by Congress, April 12. *Presidential Reconstruction* of Southern States begun. Outrages by "Freedmen's Bureau" and military authorities upon citizens of the South. Rise of "Ku-Klux Klan." Continued war in Mexico. Fenian invasions in Canada.
- 1867.—Nebraska admitted to the Union, March 1. Alaska ceded by Russia to United States. Napoleon III. abandons Maximilian, who is captured and shot by the Mexicans; Juarez re-elected President. The Dominion of Canada established.
- 1868.—Attempted impeachment of President Johnson. General Grant elected President. Beginning of *Congressional Reconstruction* in the South. Santa Anna and others attempt revolution in Mexico.
- 1869.—President Grant inaugurated, March 4. Fifteenth Amendment adopted. Pacific Railroad completed.
- 1870.—Ninth census of the United States shows a population of 38,558,371.
- 1871.—Treaty of Washington and the Geneva Award. Great fire in Chicago. All the Southern States represented in Congress under the methods of reconstruction, but the white people of those States not represented. Juarez still President in Mexico. Slavery abolished in Brazil.
- 1872.—President Grant re-elected, defeating Horace Greeley, the candidate of the "Liberal Republicans." Great fire in Boston. Death of Juarez in Mexico; succeeded by Lerdo de Tejada.
- 1873.—President Grant inaugurated (second term), March 4. England pays United States the *Alabama* claim. Liberal Constitution of 1857, greatly improved, becomes the permanent Constitution of Mexico.

## GREAT BRITAIN.

- 1867.—Fenian agitation in Ireland. New Reform bill passed. Expedition against Abyssinia.
- 1868.—Death of Lord Brougham. Disraeli resigns, and Gladstone becomes premier.
- 1869.—Irish Church disestablished. Suez Canal opened.
- 1870.—Death of Charles Dickens. Irish land act passed.
- 1872.—Dutch possessions on the Gold Coast transferred to England. Ballot act passed. Riots at Belfast.

PERIOD VII.  
RECON-  
STRUCTION

1865

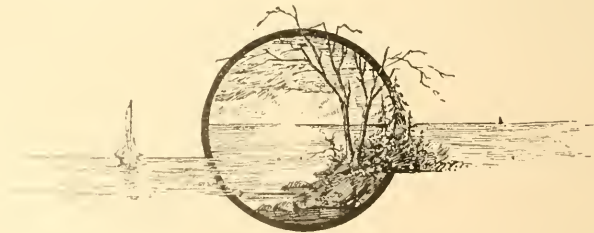
TO

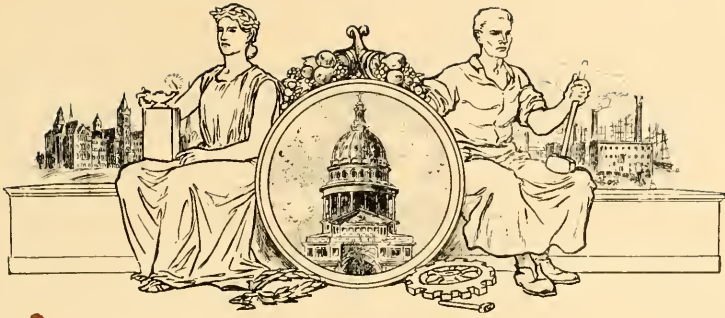
1874

- 1873.—England pays the *Alabama* claims to the United States.  
1874.—Gladstone ministry succeeded by Disraeli. Fiji Islands ceded to England.

#### OTHER COUNTRIES.

- 1866.—Prussia withdraws from Germanic Confederation. "Seven Weeks' War" between Austria, Italy, and Prussia; battles of Sadowa and Lissa. Insurrection in Crete. Vienna North German Confederation formed.
- 1867.—Hungarian Constitution restored; Emperor and Empress of Austria declared king and queen of Hungary. Cochin China annexed to France.
- 1868.—Insurrection in Spain; flight of Queen Isabella; temporary Republic established.
- 1869.—Suez Canal opened. Death of Lamartine.
- 1870.—Isabella II., of Spain, abdicates; succeeded by Duke of Aosta as king. Vatican Council declares the infallibility of the Pope. War between France and Prussia; battle of Sedan; surrender of Napoleon III.; Alsace and Lorraine restored to Germany; battle of Metz and siege of Paris. Revolution in Paris; a Republic declared; insurrection of the *Commune*. The *German Empire* established, December 10. Mount Cenis tunnel completed. King of Italy occupies Rome.
- 1871.—King William of Prussia, Emperor of Germany, January 18. Germans enter Paris. Communist revolution in French capital. Thiers elected President of the new French Republic. Rome is made the capital of Italy.
- 1872.—The German Reichstag expels the Jesuits. Great eruption of Vesuvius.
- 1873.—Death of Napoleon III. Spain adopts republican government. Exhibition at Vienna. MacMahon, President of France. First reception of foreign ministers by Emperor of China. Germans evacuate France. Trial of Marshal Bazaine.





## Period VIII.

SECOND PERIOD OF STATEHOOD.—1874-1897.



### CHAPTER XXV.

**Administrations of Governors Coke, Hubbard, Roberts, and Ireland ; Prosperity and Progress of the State.**

**T**HE election of Governor Coke marks a new era in the history of Texas. From that date the methods of orderly government, stable policies, and healthy progress—so long interrupted by the troublous events of the Civil War and Reconstruction—were restored. It is universally true that the annals of a peaceful and prosperous land are simple and few. The stream runs so smoothly and so swift that, like a river of which Cæsar speaks in his story of the Gallic Wars, we may scarcely tell in which direction it flows.

Beginning of a new era

The new State officers were inaugurated at midnight, January 15, 1874. The scene was dramatic and memorable. The Representative Hall was filled with the two houses of the legislature and assembled citizens ; the corridors without were thronged with the volunteer military company of Austin,—beardless boys in gay uniforms, with glittering muskets,—while among them moved a few stern and grizzled warriors, whose bravery had been tested on many a bloody field of the Civil War ; below stairs, in the



RICHARD COKE.

PERIOD VIII.  
SECOND  
PERIOD OF  
STATEHOOD

1874  
TO  
1897

The Four-  
teenth Legis-  
lature



SAM BELL MAXEY.

dim hallways of the old capitol, was a motley mass of negroes, State police, and desperate politicians, muttering defiance, but cowed by the certainty of disaster ; while on the rocky slopes of Capitol Hill, in the starlit night, sentinels stood in silent watchfulness, as messengers of good or evil tidings came and went in the darkness. But the critical moment passed in peace, and the government of the people claimed and held its own.

The new legislature went to work with energy and intelligence. They found the State burdened with a debt of nearly five millions of dollars, and taxes at two dollars and thirty cents on the hundred. The corrupt Twelfth Legislature had voted the International and Great Northern Railroad a money subsidy of ten thousand dollars per mile for six hundred miles of road, secured by State bonds and the interest provided for in advance. The Fourteenth Legislature, which met January 13, 1874, and adjourned May 4, provided for the payment of four hundred thousand dollars of the public debt, cut down expenses more than one-half, reduced taxes to fifty cents on the dollar, and disposed of the railroad subsidy by a compromise which, although bad enough for the State, was a great deal better than the original measure. There was a fierce fight over this compromise. The railroad had secured the subsidy by fraud and bribery, and it clung to it with desperate greed. The State could not afford to

be involved in another revolution, and the matter was finally settled by repealing the money subsidy and granting the railroad twenty sections of land per mile, in solid bodies, and exempting it from taxation for twenty-five years.

Suppression of  
lawlessness  
and crime

Lawlessness in the State and Indian raids on the frontier were suppressed by small bands of State troops, still called Rangers, and new counties began to be formed in the West.

Constitution  
of 1876

In September, 1875, a Constitutional Convention was held, which formed a new Constitution, known as the *Constitution of 1876*, which was submitted to a vote of the people and

State election,  
February 15,  
1876

adopted on February 15, 1876. At the same time State officers were elected, to hold until November, 1878. All the State officers were re-elected, and a Supreme Court was elected, com-

posed of O. M. Roberts, chief justice ; George F. Moore and R. S. Gould, associate justices. A Court of Appeals was also created, to which John P. White, C. M. Winkler, and M. D. Ector were elected. The Supreme Court from January, 1874, to 1876 was composed of five judges, elected by the people ; and during that period O. M. Roberts was chief justice, while William P. Ballinger, George F. Moore, Thomas J. Devine, Reuben A. Reeves, Peter W. Gray, John Ireland, and Robert S. Gould were associate justices at different times.

In November, 1872, six Congressmen had been elected from Texas, namely : A. H. Willie and R. Q. Mills for the State at large, and W. S. Herndon, W. P. McLean, D. C. Giddings, and John Hancock. Of these, Giddings had been elected two years before and with difficulty obtained his seat. At the November election, 1874, the same gentlemen were all re-elected to Congress. The legislature in 1874 elected General Sam Bell Maxey to the United States Senate, to succeed J. W. Flanagan on March 4, 1875. General Maxey was re-elected in 1881 and served until 1887. Governor Coke was elected to the United States Senate by the Fifteenth Legislature, which met in April, 1876, but did not take his seat until March 4, 1877. He was re-elected twice, and finally retired from the Senate in 1895. Governor Coke resigned from the governorship in December, 1876, and Lieutenant-Governor Hubbard became the acting governor until the next general election in 1878.

The Constitution of 1876 gave to the public schools all that had been granted them under previous laws and constitutions, and added one-half of the public domain, continuing the one-fourth of the general revenues and the poll-tax, as provided in the Constitution of 1869. It was also provided that a tax of not more than twenty cents on the one hundred dollars should be levied on all property, to be used in connection with the interest on the permanent school fund, in order to maintain the public schools for not less than six months of each year. It was further declared that the legislature should establish a first-class University, to be located by a vote of the people, and one

PERIOD VIII.  
SECOND  
PERIOD OF  
STATEHOOD

1874  
TO  
1897

Congressmen,  
1872-1876



RICHARD B. HUBBARD.

Provisions for  
public schools  
in Constitu-  
tion of 1876

State  
University

PERIOD VIII.  
SECOND  
PERIOD OF  
STATEHOOD

1874  
TO  
1897

million acres of land were donated to it, instead of the tenth sections of railroad lands granted in 1858. The Agricultural and Mechanical College, which had been established near Bryan, was declared to be a branch of the University, and a branch for colored youths was required to be founded as soon as practicable. The carrying out of these constitutional provisions and the disposition of the lands granted to the support of public education have engaged the attention of all the legislatures from 1876 to the present time.

Federal judges

Since 1858 there had been two Federal judicial districts in Texas, and Thomas H. Duval was judge of the Western District, while, since 1872, Amos Morrill was judge in the Eastern, succeeding John C. Watrous. In 1879, by an Act of Congress, the Northern Federal District of Texas was created, composed of counties taken from the Eastern and Western Districts. A. P. McCormick was appointed judge, and places for holding courts were established at Dallas, Waco, and Graham, in the Northern District. About this time, Judge Duval died in the Western District, and E. B. Turner was appointed in his stead, who also died during Mr. Cleveland's first administration, when T. S. Maxey, a Democrat, was appointed to the Federal bench in that district. In the Eastern District, Judge C. B. Sabin, who had succeeded Amos Morrill, died in the fall of 1890, and was succeeded by D. E. Bryant. In 1892, Judge McCormick was elevated from the district judgeship to be one of the judges of the United States Circuit Court of Appeals at New Orleans, and John B. Rector was appointed judge of the Northern District. Later, additional places for holding court in that district were established at Fort Worth, Abilene, and San Angelo. The Federal judiciary in Texas has in recent years been ably and acceptably represented, and the several judges have been highly respected by both the bar and the people at large. In November, 1876, there were elected to Congress from the six districts, in the order named, the following gentlemen: John H. Reagan, D. B. Culberson, J. W. Throckmorton, R. Q. Mills, John Hancock, and Gustav Schleicher.



A. P. McCORMICK.

Congressmen  
in 1876



PERIOD VIII.  
SECOND  
PERIOD OF  
STATEHOOD

1874  
TO  
1897

The Fifteenth Legislature provided for a revision of all the laws of the State, and Governor Coke appointed to that task C. S. West, B. H. Bassett, J. W. Ferris, George Clark, and Samuel A. Willson. They completed the work, and it was adopted in 1879, being known as the *Revised Statutes of 1879*.

In the year 1876 the "Greenback Party" made its first appearance, and it continued to agitate the politics of the Southern and Western States for several years, reaching its greatest strength in Texas from 1880 to 1884. It advocated the issue by the government of unlimited quantities of paper money, based upon nothing but the faith and credit of the nation.

The State Democratic Convention met at Austin on July 17, 1878. The candidates before it for nomination for governor were R. B. Hubbard, J. W. Throckmorton, W. W. Lang, and Thomas J. Devine. Neither of these gentlemen could get the requisite two-thirds vote, and, after several days' struggle, a compromise was made by which Oran M. Roberts, then chief justice of the Supreme Court, was nominated for governor, and Joseph D. Sayers for lieutenant-governor. At the ensuing election in November the entire Democratic ticket was elected, Roberts and Sayers defeating W. H. Hamman and J. S. Rains, the Greenback candidates for governor and lieutenant-governor, by over a hundred thousand majority. The Republicans had placed Colonel A. B. Norton and Richard Allen (colored) in the field, and they received about twenty-five thousand votes. At the same election, George F. Moore was elected chief justice of the Supreme Court, and M. H. Bonner associate justice, this change being required



ORAN M. ROBERTS.

State election,  
November,  
1878



GEORGE F. MOORE.

Supreme  
Court

by Judge Roberts's election to the governorship. Reagan, Culberson, Mills, and Schleicher were re-elected to Congress, along with Olin Wellborn from the Third District, and George W. Jones from the Fifth. Mr. Schleicher having died in a few

Congressmen  
in 1878

PERIOD VIII.  
SECOND  
PERIOD OF  
STATEHOOD

1874  
TO  
1897

Legislation  
during Gov-  
ernor Rob-  
erts's two ad-  
ministrations

months, Columbus Upson was elected to the vacancy in April, 1879. Governor Roberts was re-elected in 1880, with L. J. Storey as lieutenant-governor, defeating E. J. Davis, Republican, and W. H. Hamman, Greenbacker. At that election all the Congressmen were re-elected.

There was much important legislation during Governor Roberts's two administrations. When he came into office the finances were somewhat disordered, the public debt had gradually increased to over five millions and a half, the expenses exceeded the income, and State warrants were selling at a dis-



OLD CAPITOL AT AUSTIN. (Burned November, 1881.)

"Pay as you  
go"

count. To remedy these evils, he adopted a policy popularly called "Pay as you go." He accomplished this by reducing all expenses, cutting down the appropriations to the public schools to one-sixth instead of one-fourth of the revenues, and by selling the school and public lands at low prices, so as to get them in the hands of private owners who would pay taxes on them. His financial methods proved successful. The State's credit was restored, the schools were taught a longer term for less money than before, and he left a cash balance in the treasury of three hundred thousand dollars, after paying all expenses,

Cash balance  
in the treasury

discharging four hundred thousand dollars of the public debt, and reducing taxes from fifty to thirty cents on the hundred dollars. His administrations were especially noted for activity and improvement in the educational institutions of the State. The Agricultural and Mechanical College was reorganized, the Sam Houston and Prairie View Normal Schools were founded, and the University of Texas was located, organized, and put in operation, most of these events occurring in his second term, from 1880 to 1882.

On November 9, 1881, the old capitol was burned, and it was fortunate that already, in 1879, the legislature had provided for selling three million acres of public lands to erect a new State capitol. A contract was finally made by which the land was transferred to a Northern company in exchange for the completed building, the land being valued at one dollar and fifty cents an acre. The capitol was completed under the succeeding administrations of Governors Ireland and Ross. The four years from 1878 to 1882 were prosperous and peaceful. Taxable values increased from two hundred and eighty million dollars to four hundred and ten million dollars, and the population of the State had grown in proportion.

John Ireland and Marion Martin were the Democratic candidates for governor and lieutenant-governor in 1882, and they were elected in November of that year, defeating George W. Jones and E. W. Morton, the Greenback candidates. The Supreme Court elected in 1882 was composed of A. H. Willie, chief justice ; C. S. West and J. W. Stayton, associate justices ; while J. M. Hurt, John P. White, and Samuel A. Willson were elected to the Court of Appeals. The census of 1880 had given Texas eleven Congressmen, and in 1882 the following gentlemen were elected for the several districts, in order : Charles Stewart, John H. Reagan, James H. Jones, D. B. Culberson, J. W. Throckmorton, Olin Wellborn,

PERIOD VIII.  
SECOND  
PERIOD OF  
STATEHOOD

1874

TO

1897



JOHN IRELAND.

Prosperity  
and wealth

Campaign of  
1882

State officers  
elected

Congressmen,  
1882-1886



A. H. WILLIE.

PERIOD VIII.  
SECOND  
PERIOD OF  
STATEHOOD

1874  
TO  
1897

Democratic  
victory in  
United States,  
1884

Ireland's two  
administrations



MAIN BUILDING, UNIVERSITY OF TEXAS.

Thomas P. Ochiltree, James F. Miller, R. Q. Mills, John Hancock, S. W. T. Lanham ; and they were all re-elected in 1884, except Mr. Ochiltree and Judge Hancock, who were succeeded by W. H. Crain and Joseph D. Sayers. Governor Ireland was re-elected in 1884, with Barnett Gibbs as lieutenant-governor, again defeating the Greenback candidate, George W. Jones. It was in that year that the Democratic party in the United States elected a President and Vice-President, the first time since 1856. Grover Cleveland and Thomas A. Hendricks were the successful candidates.

Governor Ireland's two administrations were prosperous and progressive. His policies differed in some respects from those of his predecessor. He withdrew the public and school lands from sale on the terms before offered, and they were to be sold

for two dollars an acre, on thirty years' time. Under the land laws adopted in his first administration, a large stock *ranch* might and often did inclose smaller tracts of land owned and cultivated by different persons. When the large tract was fenced up for miles, there was great difficulty in getting in and out through the country. This, together with the regulations against free grazing on public lands, gave rise to a dangerous and lawless

Free grass and  
fence-cutting

practice known as "Fence-cutting." The wire fences were cut and destroyed by persons who considered their rights interfered with by the laws, and the evil became so great as to require a special session of the legislature to suppress it. Two millions of acres of land were granted to the University and public schools ; great improvements were made in the various asylums and penal institutions ; taxes were reduced to seventeen and a half cents on the hundred dollars, and many *boards* were created to look after special interests. The office of superintendent of public instruction was restored during Governor Ireland's first administration. The *Alamo* was purchased by the State and

Land grants to  
public institu-  
tions

Creation of  
many public  
boards

Alamo bought

intrusted to the care of the citizens of San Antonio ; the cornerstone of the new capitol was laid with impressive ceremonies on March 2, 1885 ; and the University was formally opened on September 15, 1883, although teaching in some of its departments had begun at an earlier date. The main branch and law department of the University were located, by the election of 1881, at Austin, and the medical department at Galveston. On September 1, 1886, Sawnie Robertson was appointed to the Supreme Court, Judge West having retired on account of his health.

PERIOD VIII.  
SECOND  
PERIOD OF  
STATEHOOD  
—  
1874  
TO  
—  
1897

### QUESTIONS.

WHAT can you say of the new era inaugurated with the election of Governor Coke? What is universally true of a peaceful and prosperous land? When were the new State officers, succeeding Reconstruction, installed? Describe the scene and events attending their installation. In what condition did the Fourteenth Legislature find the affairs of the State government? What was the amount of the public debt? What measures were adopted by the legislature to remedy existing evils? What compromise was effected with the International and Great Northern Railroad? What was done to suppress lawlessness and protect the frontier? When was a Constitutional Convention held, and what did it do? When was the new Constitution ratified by the people, and what was done at the same election? Who were elected State officers at that election? How was the Supreme Court constituted by this election? What other court of last resort was created by the Constitution of 1876, and who were elected judges of that court at the election in February, 1876? How was the Supreme Court composed from 1874 to 1876, and give the names of the several judges who sat in that court during that period? How many Congressmen were elected from Texas in 1872, and who were they? Who were elected to Congress in 1874? Who was elected to the United States Senate in 1874? Who in 1876? Who in 1881? Who were the Senators until 1895? Explain the various times at which, and terms for which, these gentlemen took their seats in the Senate. When and why did Governor Coke resign ; who then became governor, and for how long? What provisions did the new State Constitution make for public free schools? Explain the difference between the *permanent* and the *available* school funds. What provisions were made for a State University? What about the Agricultural and Mechanical College? How

PERIOD VIII.  
SECOND  
PERIOD OF  
STATEHOOD

1871

TO

1897

have all those provisions been carried out? How many Federal judges were there in Texas from 1858 to that time (1876), and give the names of the judges in the several districts? Who were elected to Congress in November, 1876? What action did the Fifteenth Legislature take for revising the laws, and who were appointed for that purpose? What was that revision called? When did the "Greenback Party" make its first appearance, what did it do, and when did it reach its greatest strength in Texas? What did it advocate? When and where did the State Democratic convention of 1878 meet? Who were candidates for nomination for governor in that convention? Describe what occurred in nominating a candidate for governor, and who was nominated? Who was nominated for lieutenant-governor? What was the result of the November elections in 1878? Who were the candidates for governor on opposing tickets? Who were elected to the Supreme Court at that election, and explain the change that took place in the court? Who were elected to Congress, and what change took place in the Fourth district soon afterwards? Who were candidates for governor and lieutenant-governor in 1880, and what was the result of the election that year? What Congressmen were elected in 1880? What was the condition of the State's finances when Governor Roberts came into office in January, 1879? What legislation was passed in his administrations affecting the public treasury and public lands? What policy did he adopt, and with what success? For what were his administrations specially noted? What educational institutions were developed by him and his legislatures, and in what years? When was the old capitol burned? What provisions had already been made for a new State capitol? Explain the contract for that purpose. When was the new capitol completed? What was the general condition during the four years from 1878 to 1882? What increase took place in taxable values and population? Who were the opposing candidates for governor and lieutenant-governor in 1882, and what was the result of the election? How were the Supreme Court and Court of Appeals constituted by that election? How many Congressmen did Texas have under the census of 1880, and who were elected in 1882? Who in 1884? Who were elected governor and lieutenant-governor in 1884, and whom did they defeat? What occurred that year in the Federal elections? What was the character of Governor Ireland's two administrations? What were his policies in regard to the public lands? What trouble arose under the land laws adopted in his first administration? Explain "fence-cutting," and what was done to stop it? Give an outline of the most important legislation during Ireland's two terms as governor. What State office was restored? What important historical purchase was made by the State? What interesting public ceremonies occurred, and on what dates? When, where, and how were the several departments of the State University located? When were the main and law departments formally opened? What change occurred in the Supreme Court in September, 1886?

### Topical Analysis.

1. Reformation in the State government, to restore it to a sound, prosperous, and economical basis ; reduction of expenses and taxes ; improvement in educational affairs ; wise and provident management of public lands ; erection of a new State capitol ; opening of the State University ; great increase in population and taxable values.

2. Complete reorganization of the government, under the Constitution of 1876, extending and amplifying all the functions and institutions of the government ; a revision of the statute laws ; development of all the interests and industries of the State and its people.

PERIOD VIII.  
SECOND  
PERIOD OF  
STATEHOOD

1874  
TO  
1897

### Parallel Readings.

Scarff's "Comprehensive History of Texas" (1897), Vol. II., Part III. ; O. M. Roberts's "Political, Legislative, and Judicial History of Texas, 1845-1895," Part VI. : "Fifty Years of Material, Social, and General Growth," by Dudley G. Wooten ; Brown's "History of Texas," Vol. II.



AGRICULTURAL AND MECHANICAL COLLEGE, Bryan, Texas.

Main Building.

Ross Hall.

## CHAPTER XXVI.

### Administrations of Governors Ross and Hogg; Legislation against Corporations; The Populist Party.

PERIOD VIII.  
SECOND  
PERIOD OF  
STATEHOOD

1874  
TO  
1897

**A**T the November election, 1886, General L. S. Ross and T. B. Wheeler were the Democratic candidates for governor and lieutenant-governor, and they, with the entire ticket, were elected, defeating the Republican and Prohibition candidates by a majority of over one hundred and fifty thousand votes. At the same election, R. R. Gaines was elected to the Supreme Court, while Charles Stewart, W. H. Martin, R. Q. Mills, D. B. Culberson, Silas Hare, Jo Abbott, C. B. Kilgore, S. W. T. Lanham, W. H. Crain, L. W. Moore, and Joseph D. Sayers were chosen as the Texas Congressmen. Governor Ross and Lieutenant-Governor Wheeler were re-elected in November, 1888, at which time also John W. Stayton was elected chief justice of the Supreme Court, with R. R. Gaines and John L. Henry as associate justices, and the same Congressmen were re-elected.



L. S. Ross.

Governor Ross's two administrations were singularly peaceful, and the whole State was quiet and prosperous. The new State capitol was completed and dedicated on May 16, 1888, with great ceremony, there being an international military drill, in which the volunteer companies of Texas and other States and regular United States troops took part, to the number of several thousands.

In the summer of 1887 there occurred an election on the adoption of a Constitutional Amendment to prohibit the manufacture, sale, and importation of intoxicating liquors in Texas. The campaign which preceded it was intensely exciting and

Prohibition  
campaign  
in 1887



aroused great enthusiasm throughout the State. Nearly every leading man in the State took part on one side or the other, and the interest was in some respects more universal than on any public question since the war. The amendment was defeated by a vote of 129,270 for and 220,627 against it. During Governor Ross's administrations laws were passed requiring the attorney-general to institute legal proceedings to compel railroads and other corporations to comply more strictly with their corporate duties and obligations. Texas has ever been most liberal in her encouragement of railroads, and has granted them many millions of acres of land since the first law was passed for that purpose in 1854. They have been of great benefit to the State, but they have been generously paid for all they have ever contributed to the welfare of Texas. In return, they have not always shown a disposition to comply with the laws or to respect the rights and interests of the people, and when they have had the advantage of the government in any manner they have not failed to improve it to the uttermost. By illegal and fraudulent methods in years past the railroads had obtained large quantities of land to which they were not entitled by law, and under Ross's administrations Attorney-General James S. Hogg was industrious and earnest in his efforts to recover these lands, and to otherwise enforce the laws against the railroads and other corporations. About this time, also, the question of regulating freight rates on railroads began to be discussed, and soon became a controlling issue in State politics. Passenger rates had been reduced to three cents a mile, and it was believed that the charges for freight transportation could be justly lessened without injury to the railroads. The formation of combinations between various corporations, in order to create monopolies, called "trusts," was also an evil against which legislation and the action of the government began to be exerted, and likewise the issuance of fictitious bonds and stocks by railroads, so as to absorb all their capital and destroy their usefulness. At this time (1889) the *Farmers' Alliance*, an association originating among the farmers of the State for social and industrial pur-

PERIOD VIII.  
SECOND  
PERIOD OF  
STATEHOOD

1874  
TO  
1897

Railroad pol-  
icy of Texas



ROGER Q. MILLS.

Regulation of  
freight rates,  
"trusts,"  
and fictitious  
bonds

Origin of the  
"Farmers'  
Alliance"

PERIOD VIII.  
SECOND  
PERIOD OF  
STATEHOOD

1874  
TO  
1897

poses, began to make its influence felt in politics, and it was arrayed on the side of regulating and restraining railroad and other corporations within such limits as to protect the people against unjust and arbitrary acts on the part of those creatures of the government.

All these questions entered into the campaign of 1890. Attorney-General Hogg became a candidate for governor, on the proposition that Texas must rule the corporations or they would rule and ruin the people. He was nominated by the Democratic State Convention in August, 1890, George C. Pendleton being the nominee for lieutenant-governor. The entire Democratic ticket was elected in November by a majority of one hundred and sixty-eight thousand, and at the same time an amendment to the Constitution was adopted, authorizing the legislature to create a *Commission* to regulate railroads. At that election the old Congressmen were all re-elected except Silas Hare, who was succeeded by J. W. Bailey, and W. H. Martin, who was succeeded by J. B. Long. The legislature



J. S. HOGG.

Railroad  
Commission  
established

at once established a Railroad Commission to be appointed by the governor, and Governor Hogg appointed on the first Commission, John H. Reagan, W. P. McLean, and L. L. Foster. Judge Reagan was then in the United States Senate, having been elected in 1887 to succeed General Maxey. He resigned from the Senate, and Horace Chilton was appointed United States Senator in his stead, April 25, 1891. Subsequently, Roger Q. Mills was elected by the legislature to fill out the unexpired term, and was re-elected to a full term in the Senate in 1893. In 1895, when Senator Coke retired, Mr. Chilton was elected to a full term in the United States Senate.

U. S. Senators,  
1887 1897



HORACE CHILTON.

Reorganiza-  
tion of the  
judicial sys-  
tem in 1890  
to 1893

By an amendment to the Constitution, adopted at the election in 1890, the entire judicial system of the State was reorganized, so far as the higher courts are concerned. By legislation

PERIOD VIII.  
SECOND  
PERIOD OF  
STATEHOOD

1874  
TO  
1897

passed under that amendment there have been created a Supreme Court composed of three judges, sitting at Austin ; a Court of Criminal Appeals, three judges, sitting at Austin, Tyler, and Dallas ; five intermediate Courts of Civil Appeals, sitting at Austin, San Antonio, Galveston, Fort Worth, and Dallas, and composed of three judges each. The Supreme Court, as constituted in 1890, was composed of John W. Stayton, chief justice, R. R. Gaines, and John L. Henry. Judge Henry resigned in 1893, and Thomas J. Brown was appointed in his place. On July 5, 1894, Chief Justice Stayton died, and Judge Gaines was promoted to the chief-justiceship, while Leroy G. Denman was appointed associate justice. At the election in November, 1894, Chief Justice Gaines and Justices Brown and Denman were elected to the Supreme Bench, and Judge Denman was re-elected in 1896. The Court of Criminal Appeals, in 1891, was composed of J. M. Hurt, W. L. Davidson, and E. J. Simkins. In 1894, John N. Henderson succeeded Judge Simkins, and the whole court as thus constituted was re-elected in 1896. The five Courts



JOHN W. STAYTON.

of Civil Appeals, as finally constituted in 1893, were composed as follows : First District, at Galveston, C. C. Garrett, chief justice, F. A. Williams, H. C. Pleasants ; Second District, at Fort Worth, B. D. Tarleton, chief justice, H. O. Head, I. W. Stephens ; Third District, at Austin, H. C. Fisher, chief justice, W. E. Collard and W. M. Key ; Fourth District, at San Antonio, J. H. James, chief justice, H. H. Neill, W. S. Fly ; Fifth District, at Dallas, H. W. Lightfoot, chief justice, N. W. Finley, Anson Rainey. In 1895, Judge Head resigned in the Second District and Sam T. Hunter was appointed to the vacancy, and was regularly elected in 1896.

Courts of Civil  
Appeals



REUBEN R. GAINES.

In his first administration, Governor Hogg pursued fearlessly and consistently the policy laid down in his campaign

Policies of  
Governor  
Hogg's first  
administra-  
tion

PERIOD VIII.  
SECOND  
PERIOD OF  
STATEHOOD

1874  
TO  
1897

Corporations  
aroused  
against him

Also, the  
conservative  
element

and in the platform on which he was elected. Extensive and radical laws were passed for the regulation of corporations, to prevent trusts and monopolies, to prohibit alien ownership of land, and generally to control and abridge the power of large moneyed and corporate interests. This course of conduct aroused great opposition to him in certain quarters. The corporations, of course, would naturally resent the effort to regulate their business and control their exactions. Besides these, very many conservative men objected to the methods pursued by the governor and his legislatures. It was believed that the continual war and agitation against railroads and corporations were injuring the State, driving away foreign immigration and investments, and crippling the growth and prosperity of the country.

Hence arose a very formidable and determined opposition to Governor Hogg's re-election. The campaign of 1892 began early in May, and it was the most exciting political contest the State had ever witnessed. George Clark was the candidate of all the elements opposed to Hogg. He was the logical choice of the corporations, and the conservative element sup-



SAM HOUSTON NORMAL SCHOOL, HUNTSVILLE.

ported him, hoping to defeat Hogg and elect some third man less extreme than either of them. On the Clark side the campaign motto was "Turn Texas Loose," while the governor's supporters rallied under the banner of "Hogg and the Commission."

Democratic  
State Conven-  
tion at Hous-  
ton in August,  
1892

The Democratic State Convention met in Houston in August, 1892. From what had preceded, it was almost certain there would be trouble in that body. There were charges of fraud in the selection of delegates on both sides, the attendance on the convention was unprecedented in magnitude, the weather was intensely hot, and the condition of men's minds and tempers scarcely less so. A dispute arose upon the call of the roll for the election of temporary chairman, indescribable confusion and

Divides into  
two conven-  
tions

discord ensued, and out of the seething, wrangling, angry, and uncontrollable multitude of delegates two conventions were organized, called the "Car-stable" and "Turner Hall" conventions, from the buildings in which they assembled. James S. Hogg and M. M. Crane were nominated for governor and lieutenant-governor by the "Car-stable Convention," which was afterwards generally recognized as the regular Democratic organization, while George Clark and C. M. Rogers were nominated for the same offices by the "Turner Hall" meeting. The campaign that followed until November was more or less enthusiastic, but the heat of passion subsided, and Democrats began to realize the folly of such disagreements within the lines of their own party. A presidential campaign was in progress, in which the Democracy had strong hopes of success, and this served very much to reconcile many men to the support of the regular nominees.

It was in this year that the *coinage question* became an issue in Texas politics. As a rule, the supporters of Governor Hogg favored a decided and explicit declaration in favor of the free coinage of silver and gold by the Federal government, at the *ratio of sixteen to one*; while the Clark men generally contended for a modified demand for the equal coinage of both metals at such *ratio* as would insure their parity and circulation as money *at par*. Governor Hogg and his ticket were victorious at the polls in November, but not by a majority vote. There was another political party, lately organized in Texas, whose candidates received a large vote. This was the People's Party, or *Populists*, as they came to be called. Their platform of principles was a protest against the conduct of both the Democratic and Republican parties, declared in favor of paper money based on the credit of the government, demanded the government ownership of railroads and telegraph lines, and was generally opposed to the growing evils of the money and corporation interests. Their candidates for governor and lieutenant-governor were Thomas

PERIOD VIII.  
SECOND  
PERIOD OF  
STATEHOOD

1874  
TO  
1897

Governor  
Hogg nomi-  
nated by the  
regular con-  
vention

George Clark  
the candidate  
of the oppo-  
sition

Subsequent  
campaign

The coinage of  
gold and silver  
as a political  
issue in Texas



MEDICAL DEPARTMENT OF UNIVERSITY.

The Populist  
party

PERIOD VIII.  
SECOND  
PERIOD OF  
STATEHOOD

1874  
TO  
1897

Governor  
Hogg's second  
administra-  
tion

Congressional  
elections in  
1892

In 1894

L. Nugent and Marion Martin. The vote for governor in November was : Hogg, 190,486 ; Clark, 133,395 ; Nugent, 108,483.

In the Federal election in the United States for 1892 the Democrats were successful, electing Grover Cleveland President and Adlai E. Stevenson Vice-President.

Governor Hogg's second administration was not materially different from the first, and there was no incident of special importance in its history. There was a firm adherence to the policies followed during his former term and on which he had been re-elected. Towards the close of his second administration, however, it became evident that the finances of the State were not in good condition. The government was not able to meet its expenses out of its income, and State warrants could not be paid in cash.

Under the census of 1890, Texas was entitled to thirteen Congressmen, and in 1892 the State was reapportioned into that number of districts. At the election in November of that year the following Democrats were elected to Congress from the several districts in the order named : J. C. Hutcheson, S. B. Cooper, C. B. Kilgore, D. B. Culbertson, J. W. Bailey, Jo Abbott, George C. Pendleton, C. K. Bell, J. D. Sayers, Walter Gresham, W. H. Crain, Thomas M. Paschal, J. V. Cockrell. In 1894, all these gentlemen were re-elected except Kilgore, Gresham, and Paschal, who were then succeeded by C. H. Yoakum, Miles Crowley, and George H. Noonan (Republican).

## QUESTIONS.

Who were elected governor and lieutenant-governor in 1886, and by what majority? Who was then elected chief justice of the Supreme Court? Who were the Congressmen selected? What State officers and Congressmen were elected in 1888? What was the character of Governor Ross's two administrations? When was the new capitol finished and dedicated, and with what ceremonies? What exciting campaign and election occurred in 1887? Describe the nature and interest of that contest. What was the vote on prohibition? What laws affecting corporations were passed in Ross's administrations? What has been the policy of Texas towards railroads, and what has been their disposition and con-

duct towards the State? What efforts were made by Attorney-General Hogg to recover lands fraudulently acquired by railroads? What other question at that time began to excite public attention and became a political issue? What was sought to be done to regulate freight rates on railroads? What other evils connected with corporations existed and were attempted to be prevented by law? What noted organization sprang up in Texas in 1889, and what were its objects? How did it figure in politics? How did all these questions affect the campaign of 1890? Who was the Democratic candidate for governor that year, and what were his views on these public issues? Who was the candidate for lieutenant-governor with him? What was the result of the election? Who were the Congressmen elected at that time? What important commission was appointed by Governor Hogg, and whom did he appoint? What change occurred in regard to Texas's representation in the United States Senate in consequence of this action? How long did Mr. Chilton hold his seat in the Senate, and who succeeded him? Explain subsequent elections of United States Senators until 1895. What important constitutional amendment was adopted in 1890 affecting the judicial system of the State? Explain the system of higher courts established under that amendment. What changes occurred in the composition of the Supreme Court from 1890 to 1896? How was the Court of Criminal Appeals constituted from 1891 to 1896? Give the locations and designations of the five Courts of Civil Appeals, and the judges composing each, from 1893 to 1896. What was Governor Hogg's conduct during his first administration? What important legislation was enacted at that time? What effect did these things have upon the political attitude of the corporations and their friends? What other element was arrayed against the governor and his policies, and why? What influence did this opposition have on the campaign of 1892 in Texas? Who were the opposing candidates for governor, and by what elements were they respectively supported? What were the campaign mottoes? When and where did the Democratic State Convention meet that year? Describe what occurred at that convention. Who were the nominees for governor and lieutenant-governor put out by the two opposing factions? What developed in the ensuing campaign? What influenced Democrats to stick to their party that year? What Federal issue became an issue at that time in Texas politics? Explain the attitude of the Hogg and Clark men on that question. Who was successful at the election in November? What new political party appeared in that campaign? What was its platform? Who were its candidates? Give the result of the votes for the several candidates in 1892. Who were elected President and Vice-President in that year? What were the character and policy of Governor Hogg's second administration? What difficulties arose towards its close? How many Congressmen was Texas entitled to by the census of 1890? Who were elected to Congress in 1892? Who in 1894?

PERIOD VIII.  
SECOND  
PERIOD OF  
STATEHOOD

1874  
TO  
1897

PERIOD VIII.  
SECOND  
PERIOD OF  
STATEHOOD

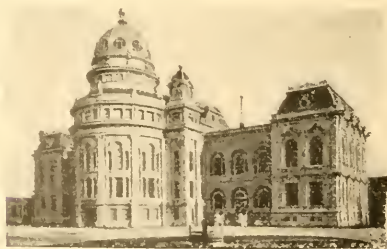
1874  
TO  
1897

### Topical Analysis.

1. General prosperity and advancement of the State.
2. Introduction of new political issues and influences, such as :
  - (a) The attempt to restrain the inordinate power and the oppressive exactions of corporations and "trusts."
  - (b) The effort to regulate transportation rates over railroads, and to prevent the fraudulent issuance of stock and bonds as the basis for exorbitant freight charges.
  - (c) The money question, as involved in the coinage of gold and silver, and the financial policy of the Federal government.
3. These issues disturb the harmony of existing party relations, give rise to political excitement, and tend to disrupt the old political parties and to create new ones,—the object of all the agitation being to find a remedy against the growing power of corporations and combined wealth.

### Parallel Readings.

Roberts's "Political History," Part III., Vol. II., of Scarff's "Comprehensive History of Texas" (1897).



BALL HIGH SCHOOL, Galveston.



## CHAPTER XXVII.

### Governor Culberson's Administrations; Campaigns of 1894 and 1896; Reduction of Public Expenses; General Progress and Prosperity of the State; Death of Distinguished Men.

IN the campaign of 1894, Charles A. Culberson, who was attorney-general during Governor Hogg's two administrations, John H. Reagan, John D. McCall, and S. W. T. Lanham were candidates for the Democratic nomination for governor. Of these Mr. Culberson was the youngest, but his service as attorney-general had attested his abilities, while his views on public questions were known to be, in the main, the same as those of his popular predecessor. Judge Reagan's career had been one of singular and signal distinction, extending through forty years of eventful and trying experience in high public station, and identified with much that endeared him to the hearts of the people. Mr. McCall had evidenced his good sense and practical capacity as State comptroller for several years; while Colonel Lanham had served in Congress with credit and success. After a spirited canvass, the convention met in Dallas in August, and Mr. Culberson was nominated, with George T. Jester for lieutenant-governor. This convention, however, after a considerable debate, abolished the *two-thirds rule* in making nominations, which rule had been adhered to in Texas since the first Democratic State convention in 1857. There was also a long and very able debate on the adoption of the platform for the Democracy in that campaign. The principal point of difference was in reference to the money or *coinage* question. One side advocated the adoption of the declaration contained in the National Democratic Platform of 1892, which was understood

PERIOD VIII.  
SECOND  
PERIOD OF  
STATEHOOD

1874  
TO  
1897



CHARLES A. CULBERSON.

Two-thirds  
rule abolished

Debate on the  
money ques-  
tion

PERIOD VIII.  
SECOND  
PERIOD OF  
STATEHOOD

1874

TO

1897

Campaign of  
1894

Governor Cul-  
berson's first  
administra-  
tion



THOMAS L. NUGENT.

Special ses-  
sion on the  
prize-fight

Campaign of  
1896

Universal dis-  
content and  
agitation

to be in favor of the *single gold standard*; while the other favored a declaration for the *free and unlimited coinage of gold and silver at the ratio of sixteen to one*. The gold standard men won the fight amid great enthusiasm.

In the ensuing campaign the Democrats were opposed by a Populist and two Republican tickets for State officers. Judge Nugent and Marion Martin were again the Populist candidates for governor and lieutenant-governor, while the Republicans were divided into two factions, called "Lily-Whites" and "Black-and-Tans." The vote stood: Culberson, 207,167; Nugent, 152,731; Makemson (Black-and-Tan), 54,520; Schmitz (Lily-White), 5026.

Governor Culberson's first administration was uneventful, but conservative, wise, and stable. He was greatly embarrassed by the financial condition of the State when he assumed control of the government, and it required great caution and economy to conduct affairs so as to avoid serious trouble.

At the election in 1894, amendments to the Constitution were adopted, making the Railroad Commission elective, and authorizing appropriations to support the "Home for Confederate Soldiers." The efforts of the administration were directed towards reducing expenses, collecting delinquent taxes, and compelling corporations which derive large revenues from the State to pay a reasonable tax for their franchises and business. An incident of the administration was a special session of the legislature, in October, 1895, to pass a law to prevent a notable *prize-fight* that was threatened at Dallas, to the scandal of the civilization and laws of Texas.

The political campaign of 1896, State and Federal, was one of unusual activity and interest. Since the dissensions at the State convention of 1892, two factions had existed in the Democratic party of Texas, mainly on the coinage question, which was strictly an issue of Federal politics. This division also existed to some extent throughout the Union. The growth of the great corporations, and their combinations in the form of "trusts;" the accumulation of vast wealth in the hands of a few persons,

by that means and the protective tariff ; the controlling influence of these agencies in shaping the financial policies of the Federal government ; the growing discontent of the laboring and agricultural masses, especially in the West and South, caused by low wages, low prices, and general depression of business and industry,—all these things contributed to produce a wide-spread dissatisfaction with existing conditions, and a consequent weakening of old party ties, both locally and nationally. The course of President Cleveland during his second administration had disgusted and alienated the bulk of his party, and the Democracy

PERIOD VIII.  
SECOND  
PERIOD OF  
STATEHOOD  

---

1874  
TO  
1897  

---

President  
Cleveland's  
conduct



CONFEDERATE SOLDIERS' HOME, Austin, Texas.

was in danger of great disorganization. It was this state of affairs that had caused the formation and sudden strength of the Populist party in Texas and elsewhere. In both the preceding State campaigns that political organization had exhibited great vitality and power, under the leadership of Thomas L. Nugent, a man of ability, purity of character, and very plausible in his presentation of the new theories of the Populists. His death, in 1895, transmitted the headship of the party in Texas to Jerome C. Kearby, a prominent and able lawyer of Dallas. There were no issues in 1896 of controlling importance in State politics, but, it being the occasion of a presidential election, all interest centred on Federal questions. A state-

The Populists

Thomas L.  
Nugent

PERIOD VIII.  
SECOND  
PERIOD OF  
STATEHOOD

1874

TO

1897

Issues in the  
national cam-  
paign of 1896

Democrats

W. J. Bryan

Free silver  
platform

Bolting Demo-  
crats

Republicans

ment of those questions is necessary to an understanding of the situation.

The Democratic National Convention met in Chicago on July 7, and the fight between the Free Silver and Gold Standard Democrats was earnest and bitter, the former constituting the great majority of the delegates, while the latter were mostly Northern and Eastern men, led by David B. Hill and William C. Whitney, of New York. A spirited and eloquent debate occurred on the adoption of the party platform, the point of dispute being the declaration for "the free and unlimited coinage of both silver and gold at the ratio of sixteen to one, without waiting for the aid or consent of any other nation." In closing that discussion, William J. Bryan, of Nebraska, speaking for the affirmative, delivered a speech of phenomenal power and dramatic effect. He had not previously been a candidate for the Presidency, but so completely did his address capture the convention, and so thoroughly did it embody the prevailing sentiments of the assembled delegates, that he was nominated on the first ballot. The vote adopting the free silver platform was 628 *ayes*, 301 *nays*. The convention refused to indorse Mr. Cleveland's administration by a vote of 357 *ayes* to 564 *nays*. The platform, besides the declaration on the money question, contained declarations opposing the issuance of United States bonds in time of peace; against national banks and bank-notes; denouncing a protective tariff, but advising that that issue be not agitated until the coinage issue was settled; favoring an income tax by the general government; deprecating the unwarranted interference of the Federal authorities in local and State affairs, and the unconstitutional acts of Federal judges; and the other usual fundamental doctrines of the Democratic faith. The Gold Standard Democrats, who had been thus defeated in the convention, *bolting* the platform and nominees of their party, and met at Indianapolis on September 2, where they nominated John M. Palmer, of Illinois, and Simon B. Buckner, of Kentucky, for President and Vice-President.

The Republican National Convention met at St. Louis on June 16, and nominated William McKinley, of Ohio, and Garrett A. Hobart, of New Jersey, for President and Vice-President.

The platform issued was the usual Republican declaration, favoring a high protective tariff, pensions to Union soldiers, and, on the money question, it proclaimed in favor of "the existing gold standard" until the free coinage of silver could be obtained by "the international agreement of the leading commercial nations of the world." When this last declaration was adopted, Senators Henry M. Teller, of Colorado, Fred T. Dubois, of Idaho, and other advocates of free silver withdrew from the convention.

On July 22, the so-called "National Silver Party" met in St. Louis, composed of many free silver Republicans and some Democrats and Populists. They simply indorsed the Democratic ticket that had been nominated at Chicago. The Populist National Convention met at the same time and place, and after a stormy session, in which the Texas delegation took a leading part, as "middle-of-the-road" Populists (by whom were meant those opposed to *fusion* with any other party), it indorsed Bryan for President, and nominated Thomas E. Watson, of Georgia, for Vice-President. By a peculiar freak the usual order of proceeding was reversed, and the Vice-President was nominated first. The platform was made up of the characteristic Populist demands on all public questions.

Thus, practically, Mr. Bryan was supported by all the elements favoring the free coinage of silver, while Mr. McKinley, directly or indirectly, received the support of all who opposed that policy. In Texas the sentiment was largely one way,—in favor of the Democratic candidate for President; although the Republicans developed a healthier strength than at any previous period since Reconstruction days.

The Populist State Convention met at Galveston on August 5, 1896, and nominated a full State ticket, with Jerome C. Kearby for governor and H. S. P. ("Stump") Ashby for lieutenant-governor. The Democratic State Convention met in Fort Worth on August 18, and the entire list of State officers was nominated for re-election, except that Allison Mayfield was put forward to fill the vacancy on the Railroad Commission. The platform contained the customary Democratic declarations, with several demands for legislation on local issues, such as the regulation of official fees, reformation of the criminal laws and procedure,

PERIOD VIII.  
SECOND  
PERIOD OF  
STATEHOOD

1874

TO

1897

National  
Silver Party

National Populist  
Convention

The practical  
situation

State conven-  
tions of Pop-  
ulists and  
Democrats

State Demo-  
cratic platform

PERIOD VIII.  
SECOND  
PERIOD OF  
STATEHOOD

1874

TO

1897

Fusion

abolition of the convict lease system, reduction of freight rates, and the enactment of laws for reduction of expenses in the government. The Republican State Convention met at Fort Worth on September 9. It made no nominations for State officers, but appointed an executive committee whose duty was understood to be to work mainly for the Republican national ticket, and, if possible, to secure the Populist support of McKinley in exchange for the Republican support of Kearby. The small faction of Republicans called "Lily-Whites," however, did nominate a full State ticket, headed by Henry B. Cline, of Harris County.

The canvass  
in Texas

With the foregoing array of candidates and complications, the canvass until the November elections was necessarily earnest and sometimes confusing. The small fragment of *bolting* Democrats who favored the gold standard generally voted for the Populist candidate for governor, and many of them supported the Republican national ticket. The Populists were badly confused and demoralized by the peculiar ticket they had put out at St. Louis, and all kinds of political bargains, fusions, and coalitions were made or attempted to be made during the campaign. At the election on November 3, 1896, the entire Democratic State ticket was elected, and the electoral vote of Texas was cast for Bryan for President. The vote for governor stood thus: Culberson, 298,528, Kearby, 238,692; for lieutenant-governor: Jester, 306,244, Ashby, 230,863. The vote in Texas for President and Vice-President was as follows: Bryan and Sewall electors, 284,953; McKinley and Hobart electors, 160,695; Bryan and Watson electors, 78,129; Palmer and Buckner electors, 4861. The vote in the whole United States showed this result: For McKinley, popular vote, 7,107,822, or 271 electoral votes; for Bryan, popular vote, 6,511,073, electoral votes, 176; for Palmer, popular vote, 133,800; for Levering, Prohibitionist, 130,683.

Results of the  
elections, No-  
vember 3, 1896

Character of  
the campaign

No national campaign since the War had aroused such universal public interest, and the result was for a long time regarded as very doubtful. The excitement in Texas was not so intense as in the Prohibition canvass of 1887 or the Hogg-Clark contest of 1892, but the activity of all parties was immense, and, although

the result of the vote in this State was never uncertain, the campaign was conducted with energy and enthusiasm.

The Twenty-fifth Legislature convened in regular session on January 12, 1897, and L. T. Dashiell, of Leon County, was elected speaker of the lower house. The inauguration ceremonies occurred at the usual time, and the governor's message was practical and conservative. He recommended the passage of laws in accordance with the platform demands of his party in the recent campaign, and the labors of the body were directed to the accomplishment of those ends. The regular session was a very stormy and unsatisfactory one, much time being fruitlessly consumed in the discussion of a bill to regulate assignments by insolvent debtors, a bill to reduce and equalize the fees of county officers, a bill to abolish what was known as "the fellow-servant doctrine" in the matter of the liability of railroads for personal injuries to their employes, and the deficiency and general appropriation bills. The session continued the full ninety days allowed by the Constitution, and just as the time expired the governor vetoed the general appropriation bill, for several substantial reasons. This necessitated an extra or special session of the legislature, which was accordingly convened the next day, May 22. That session also continued for the thirty days permitted by law, adjourning on June 19. Its labors were devoted to finishing the work begun at the regular session. During the two sessions of the Twenty-fifth Legislature, Governor Culberson found it necessary to veto quite a number of the bills passed by the two houses, and in every instance his action was apparently approved by the people of the State, as well as acquiesced in by the legislature itself. The most important acts of a general nature passed by this legislature were the following: Providing for a uniform system of text-books in the public schools of the State, to take effect in 1898; reforming the criminal code and procedure, so as to avoid many technical defects in the trial of criminals and secure more prompt execution of the laws; a fee bill, to reduce and regulate the official fees of county officers; giving to foreign corporations the same rights in the management of their property that are enjoyed by domestic corporations; modifying and limiting the "fellow-servant doctrine" in

PERIOD VIII.  
SECOND  
PERIOD OF  
STATEHOOD

1874

TO

1897

Twenty-fifth  
Legislature,  
January-June,  
1897

Regular  
session

Special  
session

Governor's  
vetoes

Important  
general laws

PERIOD VIII.  
SECOND  
PERIOD OF  
STATEHOOD

1874

TO

1897

Constitutional  
amendments

Success and  
prosperity of  
Culberson's  
administra-  
tions

Reduction in  
expenses

Collection  
of taxes

Congressmen

Greer County  
case

suits for personal injuries against railroads, and several laws affecting the sale of the public school lands. An act was also passed for the purchase of the battle-field of San Jacinto.

Several joint resolutions for amending the Constitution were attempted to be passed, the most important of which was one providing for the issue of bonds and the levy of local taxes for irrigation purposes in the arid counties of the State, which was adopted, and was defeated by a vote of the people in August, 1897.

Aside from the general prevalence of "hard times" throughout the entire country, and the difficulties arising from financial conditions existing at the time he came into office, the administrations of Governor Culberson have been characterized by thrift, prosperity, and peaceful progress. Texas has, perhaps, suffered less from the general depression than most of the other States for the past several years, and, so far as the administration of the State government could conduce to the happiness, welfare, and advancement of the people and all their interests, it has performed its full duty acceptably and creditably. During the period since January 1, 1895, there have been great reductions in the general expenses of the government, in official fees, and in the cost of transportation over the railroads by the operation of the Railroad Commission. A large deficiency has been paid off, the public schools have been improved and their terms lengthened, delinquent taxes have been collected promptly and successfully, and the whole business and financial aspects of the administration have been healthy, practical, and efficient.

At the election of 1896, the Congressmen elected for the several districts in their numerical order were as follows: T. H. Ball, S. B. Cooper, R. C. DeGraffenried, J. W. Cranford, J. W. Bailey, R. E. Burke, R. L. Henry, S. T. W. Lanham, J. D. Sayers, R. B. Hawley (Republican), R. J. Kleberg, J. W. Slayden, J. H. Stephens.

An important event was the decision of the Greer County litigation, by the Supreme Court of the United States, on March 16, 1896. As has been previously seen, the question involved in that suit was as to which of the two forks of the upper Red River was the true boundary, as called for in the treaty of 1819

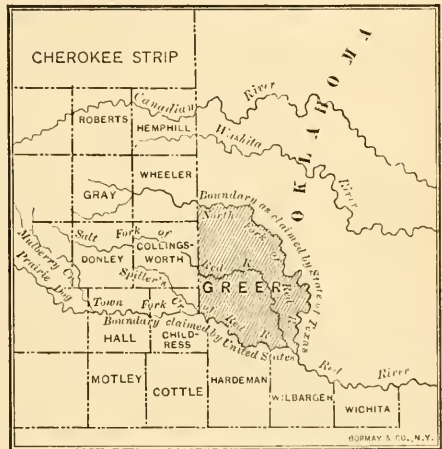


between the United States and Spain, defining and establishing the northern boundary of Texas. If the "Prairie-Dog Town" Fork was decided to be the true line of Texas, Greer County belonged to the United States, but if the North Fork was adopted, Texas would own that district of country. As a matter of fact, Texas had been in peaceful possession of the country for many years, had organized a county government there, established and supported courts and public free schools, and exercised all the jurisdiction that she did over any other county in the State. Even the United States had practically recognized it as part of Texas by placing it as one of the counties of the Northern Judicial District of Texas. But for some reason, not now obvious, the public men of Texas began to agitate the question of title and ownership. After several times attempting to arbitrate the question through joint commissions, there being no tribunal having jurisdiction to try the case, a bill was finally introduced and passed in Congress, at the instance of Texas, conferring special jurisdiction upon the Supreme Court of the

PERIOD VIII.  
SECOND  
PERIOD OF  
STATEHOOD  
1874  
TO  
1897

History of the case

United States to try a suit between the United States and Texas to determine the title to Greer County. After able argument and years of delay, the case was finally decided adversely to the State upon every proposition and contention that had been urged by the lawyers representing her. This litigation furnishes a curious example of a person whose possession and title to land are quiet and undisturbed, rushing into court to remove a cloud from his title, and losing his property by the suit. Greer County contained 1,575,680 acres, and the suit was very expensive to the State.



MAP SHOWING TERRITORY DISPUTED BETWEEN UNITED STATES AND TEXAS, CALLED GREER COUNTY.

An interesting incident occurred at Galveston on February 20, 1897, being the presentation of a *silver service* by the gov-

Folly of the suit

Battleship "Texas"

PERIOD VIII.  
SECOND  
PERIOD OF  
STATEHOOD

1874

TO

1897

Death of dis-  
tinguished  
men

J. W. Throck-  
morton

ernor, in behalf of the State, to the United States battleship *Texas*. This magnificent vessel was one of the first two warships built by the government for its new navy, and the honor of the name was appropriately recognized by Texas, amid imposing ceremonies, at the chief seaport city of the State.

While the intelligence and enterprise of an energetic people have kept the State abreast with modern civilization, and their hopeful spirit has conquered all adverse circumstances, many of those who in the past have contributed the wealth of their labor and talents to the up-building of Texas have recently been called from the scenes of their toils and their triumphs. In the year 1894, at his home in McKinney, Ex-Governor J. W. Throckmorton died, at the age of sixty-nine years. His father was one of the first settlers of Collin County, and he himself had devoted his life largely to the defence and development of Texas. Beginning his services as a Texas Ranger, in the Mexican War, he successively held high rank as a lawyer, was a prominent officer in the War for Secession, negotiated important treaties with the Indians, and became governor of the State in 1866, under the operation of Presidential Reconstruction. In that capacity, he labored wisely and successfully to remove the disastrous effects of the war, and to restore peace and prosperity to his people, until removed by the arbitrary order of a military satrap. He afterwards took a leading part in the projection and extension of the early lines of railway in Northern Texas, and in the general encouragement of immigration and industry in the State. He served several terms in Congress, and to the date of his enforced retirement from active life he was a valuable factor in all great public movements, whether in the field of politics or in the direction of business progress for his State.

Sam Bell  
Maxey

On August 16, 1895, at Eureka Springs, Arkansas, died General S. B. Maxey, who had been a distinguished citizen of Texas for over forty years. As a young soldier, he won his first laurels in that war by which Texas secured her independence and peace as one of the United States; later he came from "Old Kentucky" to the land he had fought for, and at once became a leader at the bar, an invaluable assistant of every movement for the advancement of his State and section, and a man of wisdom

and firmness in every public crisis. When the storm of civil strife swept Texas into the great struggle for Secession, he led her soldiers to battle, and won glory for them and himself in many arduous campaigns. At the close of that conflict he returned to his home at Paris, and lent his aid and counsel towards rehabilitating the commonwealth, for which he found his reward, when Texas regained her sovereignty, by his elevation to the United States Senate in 1874, to which position he was re-elected in 1880, and for twelve years he rendered practical services to the State and country that have not been surpassed by any one who has ever held the commission of Texas in the Federal legislature. His later years were spent in scholarly retirement at his home, although on all great questions affecting the policies of the government and the welfare of the people his opinions were sought and fearlessly given, to the end of his life.

Ex-Governor John Ireland died at San Antonio, on March 15, 1896, at the age of sixty-nine. As State Senator after Reconstruction, judge of the Supreme Court, and governor for two terms, he always displayed that rugged vigor of character, Spartan virtue of firmness and honesty, and a blunt simplicity of purpose that had enabled him, in a life of great labor and sacrifice, to win his way from poverty and obscurity to distinction and usefulness in his adopted State. In the summer of the same year, the University of Texas sustained a serious and painful loss in the death of Professor Leslie Waggener, chairman of its faculty. He was one of the original corps of professors in that institution at its organization, in 1883, and had been chairman of the faculty for a number of years before his death. He was a man of finished and profound culture, intensely loyal to the University, and gifted with a rare practical judgment and plain, common sense method of conducting the affairs of the great institution over which he presided that were as useful as they are difficult to duplicate. At his death, the Board of Regents, acting under the authority of a recent act of the legislature, created the office of President of the University, which place they filled by the selection of

PERIOD VIII.  
SECOND  
PERIOD OF  
STATEHOOD

1874  
TO  
1897

John Ireland



LESLIE WAGGENER.

PERIOD VIII.  
SECOND  
PERIOD OF  
STATEHOOD

1874

TO

1897

Professor George T. Winston, late of the University of North Carolina.

On February 10, 1896, Congressman William H. Crain died in Washington City, aged forty-eight years. Mr. Crain was a native Texan, a man of thorough education, high order of natural talent, gifted with great eloquence, graceful and captivating in social life, and very popular among his people. His career for ten years in Congress had amply established his reputation for ability, and his loss at so early an age was deeply deplored by his friends and by the State at large. At a special election in the summer of 1896, R. J. Kleberg was elected to fill the vacancy caused by the death of Mr. Crain.

William H.  
Crain

Richard Coke

On May 14, 1897, at his home in Waco, Ex-Governor and Ex-Senator Richard Coke ended his days, mourned by the whole people of Texas, and followed by the highest evidences of the esteem in which he was universally held. His distinction was due to a remarkably strong and commanding personality, a vigorous and powerful intellect, and an unbending tenacity of purpose in the pursuit of what he conceived to be right. His first public station of prominence was as judge of the Supreme Court in 1866, under Presidential Reconstruction. When the time came for the final struggle to overthrow the corrupt and ruinous system that had grown up under the Davis administration, he was selected as the most suitable leader of the aroused people of Texas. His firmness in the critical moment of transition to free Democratic government attested the wisdom of the choice, and his administration as governor marked the opening of a new era in the development of Texan Statehood. He was elected to the Senate in 1876, was twice re-elected, and voluntarily retired in 1895.

Closing reflec-  
tions

Thus, in the short space of three years, several of the most notable and useful men of later Texas history have passed from the stage of action. Their ages were not so advanced as to have rendered them no longer useful, and there is a melancholy significance in the fact that the generation of our later statesmen seems not so long-lived as that which went before. While these men, whose public service and fame belong to the more recent periods in the development of the State, are thus being gathered

to their fathers, there remain among us some whose youthful vision saw the sunrise of liberty and independence at San Jacinto, and whose wisdom and valor contributed to the foundation and support of the first free government in Texas. Such are the venerable Ex-Governors O. M. Roberts and Frank R. Lubbock, and that heroic old statesman and patriot, John H. Reagan. Through long and busy lives they have served their State in many and exalted stations ; they have seen the friends and comrades of their earlier careers pass into history, and now, from the summit of an honorable old age, they are permitted to view the land their labors and sacrifices have blessed and fostered, and to receive the homage and gratitude of the people whose liberties and happiness they have cherished and defended. But ere long it may be truthfully said of them all,—

“Their part in all the pomp that fills  
The glory of the summer hills  
Is that their graves are green.”



## QUESTIONS.

Who were the candidates for governor in 1894, and give a brief account of each? When and where did the State Democratic Convention meet that year? Who were nominated for governor and lieutenant-governor? What important *rule* was abolished by that convention? On what subject was there an exciting debate, explain the question debated, and what was the result? Who were the candidates of the Republicans and Populists in the campaign of 1894? Give the vote for each candidate for governor at the elections of that year. What was the character of Governor Culberson's first administration, what difficulties did he have to contend with, and how did he meet them? What Constitutional amendments were adopted at the election of 1894? To what subjects was the attention of the administration mainly directed? When was a special session of the legislature called by Governor Culberson in his first administration, and for what purpose? What was the nature of the political campaign, State and Federal, in 1896? What two factions of the Democratic party existed in Texas and elsewhere, since when, and on what issue? Explain the various causes that had operated to produce discontent in the country and disorganization among political parties. To the formation and growth of what party had these things contributed? Who had been the leader of that party in Texas, when did he die, and who

PERIOD VIII.  
SECOND  
PERIOD OF  
STATEHOOD  
1874  
TO  
1897

PERIOD VIII.  
SECOND  
PERIOD OF  
STATEHOOD

1874  
TO  
1897

succeeded him as the head of the party? What were the controlling issues in the campaign of 1896? When and where did the Democratic National Convention meet that year, and what exciting contest occurred in it? On what special question did the debate arise, and what was the result? Who made a notable speech on that occasion, and to what did it lead? Who was nominated for Vice-President? What did the convention do in regard to President Cleveland? Give the main points of the platform adopted by the Democrats. What did the "gold standard Democrats" do? When and where did the Republican National Convention meet, and whom did it nominate? What was its platform? What occurred among the "silver Republicans"? What convention was held by those who favored the free coinage of silver above all other questions, and what did it do? When and where did the Populist National Convention meet? What part did the Texas delegation take in that meeting? What did that convention do? What was its platform? Practically, how were the people divided in that campaign as between Bryan and McKinley? What was the sentiment in Texas? When and where did the Populist State Convention meet, and what candidates did it nominate? When and where did the Democratic State Convention meet, what nominations did it make, and what platform did it adopt? What did the Republican State Convention do in that year? What was the policy of the Republicans in the State campaign? Explain the political situation in Texas during that campaign; how did the "gold standard Democrats" and the Populists generally vote? What was the result of the election in November, 1896, as to State officers? Give the vote for governor. What was the vote in Texas for President and Vice-President? What was the vote, popular and electoral, in the country at large? What can you say of the general character of the campaign of 1896 in Texas? When did the regular session of the Twenty-fifth Legislature meet, and who was elected speaker of the lower house? What did the governor recommend in his message? What was the general character of the regular session of that legislature? What measures received its attention? How long did it sit, and when and for what purpose did the governor call a special session? What did that session do, and when did it adjourn? What course did the governor pursue as to several bills passed by the legislature, and how was his action regarded? Give the subject of the most important laws enacted by the Twenty-fifth Legislature. What important Constitutional amendment was submitted to the people by that body? What can you say of the general character and results of Governor Culberson's administrations? What important things have been accomplished under his management? Who were elected to Congress in 1896? What important law-suit was decided against Texas in March, 1896? Explain what was involved in that suit, how it originated, and the history of the case in its various stages. What can you say of the necessity of the litigation? How much land did Texas lose by that decision? What interesting incident occurred at Galveston in Feb-

ruary, 1897? What six distinguished citizens of Texas have died in the last three years? Give a sketch of the character and public career of each of them. To what era of Texas history did they belong? What three eminent men of an earlier era still survive, and what can you say of them?

PERIOD VIII.  
SECOND  
PERIOD OF  
STATEHOOD  
—  
1874  
TO  
1897  
—

### Topical Analysis.

1. The political campaign of 1896, State and Federal, involving the issues of free coinage of silver, restriction of the power of corporations and moneyed monopolies, protest against unwarranted interference by the Federal government and judiciary in local affairs, and other fundamental doctrines of Democracy.

2. The several national political conventions of that year, their platforms and candidates. Marked features of the times were the introduction of economic and social questions in politics, general discontent and agitation among the people, and a weakening of old party ties.

3. The State campaign of 1896, followed by Democratic victory, but attended with more than usual interest and discussion.

4. Governor Culberson's administrations, characterized by financial reforms, economy in public expenses, reduction of official fees, a more systematic collection of taxes, improved school facilities, reforms in criminal laws and procedure, and general thrift and conservatism.

5. End of the Greer County litigation, by which Texas lost a large area of valuable territory as the result of a law-suit instigated by the State.

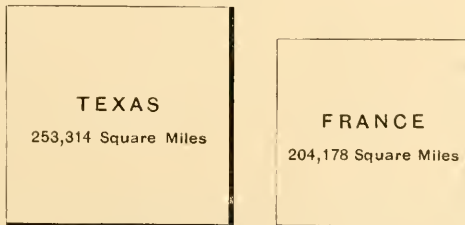
6. Death of eminent men, and reflections thereon.

### Geography.

Study the boundaries claimed by the United States and Texas in the Greer County litigation, and the exact location, size, and nature of the territory involved.

### Parallel Readings.

Roberts's "Political History," Part III., Vol. I., Scarff's "Comprehensive History of Texas" (1897); W. J. Bryan's "The First Battle."



RELATIVE SIZE OF TEXAS AND FRANCE.

## CONTEMPORANEOUS EVENTS.—1874-1897.

 1874  
 TO  
 1897

## Parallel to Period VIII.

## AMERICA.

- 1874.—Act for resumption of specie payments passed, to take effect January 1, 1879. Supplementary Civil Rights Bill passed. Political difficulties in Louisiana between Kellogg and McEnery. United States troops sought to be used to keep the Republican party in power in the South. Tidal wave of Democratic success sweeps the country.
- 1875.—Prosecution of the "Whiskey Ring." Democrats continue to win in the elections; lower house of Congress Democratic.
- 1876.—Colorado admitted to the Union. Centennial Exhibition at Philadelphia. "Force Bill" passed by Congress. Massacre of Custer's command by Sioux Indians. Presidential campaign between Hayes and Tilden. Civil service reform agitated. Porfirio Diaz deposes Lerdo de Tejada in Mexico by revolution.
- 1877.—Contest for the Presidency between Hayes and Tilden; Electoral Commission appointed to decide the contest, which declares Hayes elected, and he is inaugurated, March 4. Great railroad strike. Troops withdrawn from South Carolina and Louisiana. Diaz elected President of Mexico. Greenback party organized in United States.
- 1878.—Yellow fever epidemic in the Southern States. Gold sells at par in New York. United States pay the fisheries award. The "Bland Silver Bill" passed by Congress. Growth of the Greenback party.
- 1879.—United States resume specie payments. Democrats pass a free silver bill in the lower house of Congress. Parliamentary fight to repeal Federal election laws. *Jeannette* Arctic expedition. Senate passes bill to license women to practice in the Supreme Court.
- 1880.—Tenth census shows population of 50,155,783. James A. Garfield elected President. Diaz not being eligible to succeed himself, Manuel Gonzales elected President of Mexico.
- 1881.—President Garfield inaugurated, March 4; shot by Guiteau, July 2; died September 19; succeeded by Vice-President Chester A. Arthur. Cotton Exhibition at Atlanta. Centennial Celebration at Yorktown, Virginia.
- 1882.—Execution of Guiteau for the murder of President Garfield.
- 1883.—New York and Brooklyn bridge opened. Great strike among telegraph operators.



- 1884.—Grover Cleveland elected President, the first Democratic President since 1856. Greely relief expedition rescues seven survivors of the lost explorers. Díaz elected President of Mexico.
- 1885.—Inauguration of President Cleveland, March 4. Great railroad strike in the Western States. Death of General Grant. Rebellion in Canada under Riel. War in Central America between Nicaragua and Guatemala.
- 1886.—Labor riots and agitation throughout the United States. Anarchist murders and trial at Chicago. Earthquake at Charleston, South Carolina. Slavery abolished in Cuba. The Constitutional rule forbidding re-election of President to succeed himself abolished in Mexico.
- 1887.—Interstate Commerce Bill becomes a law. Centennial of framing of Constitution celebrated in New York. International Fishery Commission established. Hanging of the Chicago anarchists. Death of Henry Ward Beecher.
- 1888.—Benjamin Harrison elected President. Chinese exclusion law passed. Yellow fever in Florida. Díaz re-elected President of Mexico.
- 1889.—President Harrison inaugurated, March 4. Oklahoma made a territory. Centennial Celebration of the beginning of the United States Government in New York. The Johnstown flood. Difficulties between Germans and Americans in Samoan Islands. Brazil becomes a Republic.
- 1890.—Eleventh census shows population of 62,622,250. Idaho and Wyoming admitted to the Union. War in the West with Sioux Indians. Sitting Bull killed.
- 1891.—International copyright law passed. Mob murders members of the Italian *Mafia* in New Orleans. Heavy financial failures. Trouble with Chili threatened.
- 1892.—Grover Cleveland elected President. Behring Sea arbitration treaty concluded. Great strike and riots at Homestead, Pennsylvania. Chili apologizes to United States. Díaz re-elected President of Mexico, and is again re-elected in 1894 and 1896.
- 1893.—President Cleveland inaugurated, March 4. Columbian World's Fair at Chicago. Agitation of the free coinage of silver. General financial distress in the country. Satolli appointed by the Pope apostolic delegate to United States. Difficulties in Hawaii, in which United States declines to exercise protectorate.
- 1894.—Increasing labor agitation. "Coxey's Army" marches to Washington. Strike of railway employés against Pullman Car Company. Riots at Chicago, in which Federal troops are used. Utah admitted to the Union. Insurrection in Cuba assumes formidable proportions.

PERIOD VIII.  
SECOND  
PERIOD OF  
STATEHOOD

1874  
TO  
1897

PERIOD VIII.  
SECOND  
PERIOD OF  
STATEHOOD

1874  
TO  
1897

- 1895.—Income tax law held unconstitutional by Supreme Court. Atlanta Exposition. Cuban insurgents organize provisional government. Trouble between England and Venezuela as to boundary; United States asserts the Monroe doctrine as against England's claims.
- 1896.—Venezuela Boundary Commission appointed. Continued war in Cuba. Utah declared eligible to become a State in the Union. Many strikes and failures throughout the Union. Exciting Presidential campaign on the money issue; William McKinley elected President. Utah declared to be a State in the Union. Nicaragua, Honduras, and Salvador form the Republic of Central America. United States issues \$100,000,000 of gold bonds.
- 1897.—President McKinley inaugurated, March 4. General arbitration treaty between United States and Great Britain rejected by the Senate. A treaty for annexation of Hawaii signed and submitted to the Senate. Belligerency of Cuba recognized by United States.

#### GREAT BRITAIN.

- 1875.—Tennyson's "Queen Mary" published. Prince of Wales visits India. England acquires control of the Suez Canal.
- 1876.—Queen Victoria proclaimed empress of India.
- 1877.—Annexation of the Transvaal.
- 1879.—Great disaster at the Tay bridge.
- 1881.—Death of Lord Beaconsfield. Irish land league declared illegal.
- 1882.—War in Egypt. Attempted assassination of the Queen. Assassination of Lord Cavendish and Thomas H. Burke at Phoenix Park, Dublin. Great fire in London.
- 1883.—The English occupy Egypt, and war in the Soudan with El Mahdi ensues. Phoenix Park murderers are executed.
- 1884.—England assumes protectorate over Egypt; war in the Soudan continues. Part of New Guinea attached to Great Britain.
- 1885.—Capture of Khartoum by the Mahdi, and death of General Gordon. Another expedition sent to Soudan. Burmah annexed to Great Britain.
- 1886.—The Queen opens Parliament in person, the first time in many years. Gladstone resigns, and Salisbury forms a ministry.
- 1887.—Fiftieth anniversary of Queen Victoria's reign celebrated by a great jubilee. Stanley goes to Africa. Island of Cyprus ceded to Great Britain by Turkey. International Fishery Commission with United States established.
- 1888.—England annexes the Cook Islands. Parnell Commission sits in London. Portuguese blockade the east coast of Africa.
- 1889.—Great strikes and labor riots in England.

- 1890.—Failure of the Baring Brothers.  
 1892.—Treaty with the United States to arbitrate the Behring Sea dispute.  
 1893.—Behring Sea Court of Arbitration sits in Paris.  
 1894.—Gladstone retires to private life; Roseberry becomes prime minister.  
 1895.—Lord Salisbury premier. Trouble with Venezuela as to boundary.  
 1896.—English under Dr. Jamieson invade the Transvaal. War with the Matabeles in South Africa. Alfred Austin made poet-laureate. Agreement to arbitrate the Venezuela matter, at the instigation of the United States.  
 1897.—Great celebration of the sixtieth anniversary of Queen Victoria's reign.

PERIOD VIII.  
 SECOND  
 PERIOD OF  
 STATEHOOD

1874

TO

1897

### OTHER COUNTRIES.

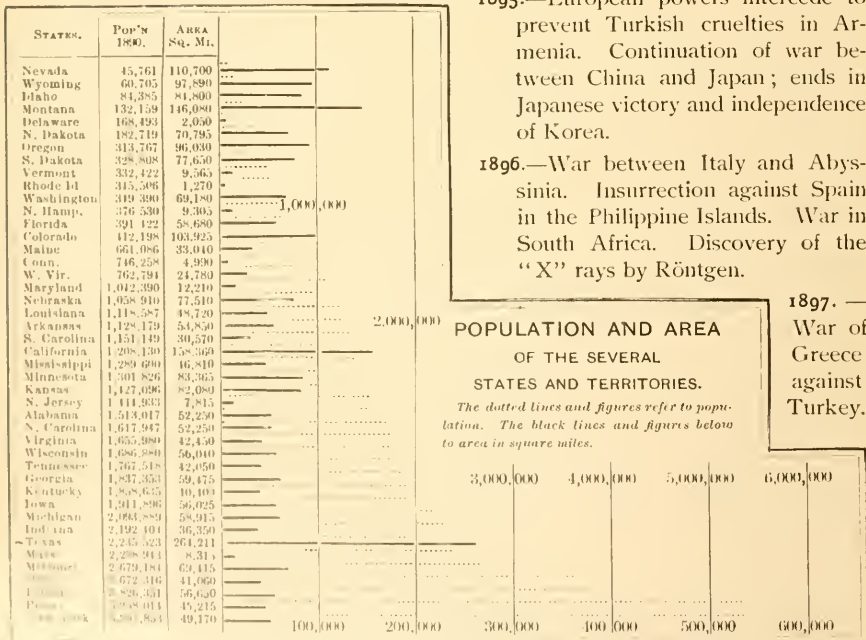
- 1874.—*Coup-d'état* in Spain; Alphonso XII. ascends the throne.  
 1876.—Imperial bank of Germany opened. Amnesty to the Communists proclaimed in France.  
 1877.—First Turkish Parliament assembled. Trial of *Nihilists* in Russia. War between Russia and Turkey.  
 1878.—Paris International Exposition. Attempt to assassinate the emperor of Germany. Russian victory at Plevna. Berlin Treaty signed. King Humbert ascends the throne of Italy.  
 1879.—The Zulus defeat the English in South Africa; Prince Napoleon is killed. McMahon resigns the presidency of France, and is succeeded by Jules Grévy.  
 1880.—Winter Palace at St. Petersburg is blown up with dynamite. Mont St. Gothard tunnel completed. Jesuits expelled from France. Cologne Cathedral completed, begun in 1228.  
 1881.—Gambetta premier of France. Alexander II. of Russia assassinated; succeeded by Alexander III.  
 1882.—Resignation and death of Gambetta. Rebellion in Egypt; bombardment of Alexandria.  
 1883.—Death of Comte de Chambord (Henry V.); Comte de Paris succeeds as the Bourbon claimant to the throne of France. English occupy Egypt. War of El Mahdi in the Soudan. Great eruption of Mount Etna. Coronation of Alexander III.  
 1884.—England assumes protectorate over Egypt. Continuation of war in Soudan. Cholera in Italy and France.  
 1885.—Death of Victor Hugo and Alphonso XII. of Spain. Alphonso XIII. ascends the throne under regency of Queen Christina. War between Bulgaria and Servia. Congo Free State formed. Jules Grévy re-elected President of France. Burmah annexed to British India.

- PERIOD VIII. 1886.—Germany annexes the Samoan Islands. Leopold II. of Bavaria  
 SECOND deposed for insanity.  
 PERIOD OF  
 STATEHOOD 1887.—President Grévy resigns in France; succeeded by Sadi Carnot.  
 1874 Revolution in Hawaii; King Kalakaua deposed.  
 TO 1888.—Emperor William of Germany dies; succeeded by Frederick III.,  
 1897 who also died during the year, and is succeeded by William II.  
 Papal jubilee at Rome to celebrate the priesthood of Leo XIII.  
 Failure of the Panama Canal Company.  
 1890.—Prince Bismarck retires from public life.  
 1891.—Persecution of the Jews in Russia. France annexes the Island of  
 Tahiti. Great earthquakes in Japan.  
 1892.—Cholera in Russia, Germany, and other countries of Europe.  
 Panama Canal scandals threaten the French government.  
 1894.—President Carnot assassinated in France. Death of Alexander  
 III. of Russia, and Nicholas II. ascends the throne. Massacre of  
 Armenian Christians begun by the Turks. War between China and  
 Japan. Death of Louis Kossuth. Execution of anarchists in France  
 and Spain. Hawaiian Republic proclaimed.

1895.—European powers intercede to prevent Turkish cruelties in Armenia. Continuation of war between China and Japan; ends in Japanese victory and independence of Korea.

1896.—War between Italy and Abyssinia. Insurrection against Spain in the Philippine Islands. War in South Africa. Discovery of the "X" rays by Röntgen.

1897.—War of Greece against Turkey.



## CHAPTER XXVIII.

### General Review; Progress and Development of Texas in Population, Resources, Industry, Educational and Social Life; Growing Influence in Federal Affairs.

**A** RETROSPECTIVE view of Texas history discloses the extent and importance of the subject. In point of time, it covers a longer period than that of any one of the United States. The first authentic European exploration in this territory antedates, by three-quarters of a century, the beginning of English colonization on the Atlantic coast of North America. The actual occupation of the province by the Spaniards began a hundred years before the American Union fairly entered upon its career of constitutional government. But the early settlement and development of Texas were astonishingly slow and difficult. From 1528 to 1690, it was an unknown and undefined expanse of outlying Spanish territory attached to the Mexican viceroyalty. From the latter date until the end of the eighteenth century it was a field for difficult mission work, precarious military manœuvres, and alternate filibustering expeditions from Mexico and Louisiana. In 1803, the acquisition of the latter country by the United States brought the Anglo-Americans face to face with the Spaniards; and in 1810 the beginning of revolutionary movements in Mexico attracted the attention of adventurous pioneers to the rich but undeveloped resources of the region between the Sabine and the Rio Grande. From that time until 1820, successive armed expeditions attempted the conquest of the province, to end successively in failure and disaster. In 1821, the independence of Mexico from Spain gave promise of a peaceful and liberal government, and American colonization under the Austins began to lay the foundations of a new civilization in the Southwest. For the next ten

Extent and importance of Texas history

Early development very slow

Era of American colonization

Character of  
early settlers

years a splendid immigration continued to flow from the United States into Texas, and the basis of a sturdy and enterprising commonwealth was slowly but surely laid in the wilderness. It is a great mistake to suppose, as some have done, that the early settlers of Texas were a lawless and ignorant mob of desperate adventurers and bankrupt refugees from their former homes. That there were among them dangerous and reckless characters is true ; but that these constituted any considerable or influential proportion of the population is extravagantly false. Considering the newness of the country, the hard conditions of its occupancy, and the circumstances attending its first settlement, a more conservative, peaceable, and energetic community never peopled any land, than that which built itself up in the wilderness of Texas, from 1822 to 1835. The character and habits of the colonists were simple and severe. Their hospitality was ample but unostentatious ; their code of morals and of social life was rude and primitive, but it was inflexible and unsparing ; their privations were many and their dangers incessant, but their courage was equal to all emergencies, and their constancy and fortitude, blended with a certain serious dignity of purpose, have never been surpassed in the annals of colonial development in a new country. The true spirit and high order of intelligence and virtue of the Texan colonists are fully demonstrated by their conduct during the Revolution from 1832 to 1836, and in the formation and policies of the Republic from 1836 to 1846. A disorderly band of freebooters and outlaws could never have conceived, much less executed, the military campaigns of 1835 and 1836, or the measures of enlightened civil policy proclaimed by the Consultation of 1835 and the Convention of 1836.

Simplicity,  
hospitality,  
and courage

Capacity for  
self-govern-  
ment

Poverty of  
Texas in 1836

The Republic of Texas began its career with comparatively few citizens, an empty treasury, a burdensome public debt, general poverty among the people, and an extensive domain abounding in great but undeveloped resources. Its independence was still threatened by Mexico, but its hopes were brightened by the recognition and friendship of many older and more powerful nations ; while a consciousness of inherent strength and capacity inspired its inhabitants with prophetic pride and patriotic zeal. The real poverty of Texas at that time is at this

day but faintly realized. No census of the population had ever been taken, but rough estimates had been made from time to time during the preceding century. In 1744 the white inhabitants did not exceed 1500; in 1765 they had decreased to half that number, and the whole trade and commerce of the province was about \$175,000 annually. In 1806 there were in Texas about 7000 whites and *reduced* Indians, of whom one-third lived in and around San Antonio de Bexar. In 1831 the American immigration had raised the population to about 20,000.

Population  
and resources  
from 1744 to  
1834

In 1834, Almonte visited the country for the purpose of inspecting and reporting on its condition and resources. He reported a population of 21,000 whites, while he estimated the total exports at \$1,080,000, consisting of cotton, grain, and peltries, and the imports at \$590,000.

In September, 1836, six months after Texas had achieved her independence, Mr. Henry M. Morfit was sent by the President of the United States to investigate the condition of the new Republic, and he reported as follows: Total estimated population, 52,670,—consisting of 30,000 Anglo-Americans, 14,200 Indians, 5000 negroes, and 3470 Mexicans. At the date of the inauguration of the first president of the Republic, the whole country and its people were in a deplorable state of prostration and poverty; there were no stable industries of any kind; transportation was difficult and trade practically suspended; the country was rapidly filling up with a class of immigrants not so desirable as the original colonists; while ambitious and reckless men, released from the dangers of war and the incentive of patriotic devotion to the cause of freedom, instigated many wild and adventurous schemes. All that the infant government possessed was a vast landed domain, valued very slightly, but sufficiently tempting to arouse the spirit of cupidity and speculation among the unscrupulous and the improvident. There were practically no schools, but one newspaper had survived the Revolution,

Population in  
1836

Difficulties of  
the Republic



BAYLOR UNIVERSITY, WACO.

and the government itself was without a fixed habitation. The next ten years were filled with doubts, debts, and difficulties innumerable, and at times apparently insurmountable ; but the result, wrought amid many perils and privations, culminated in the ultimate redemption of the government from all its embarrassments, the assured prosperity of a thrifty and increasing population, and its incorporation as a stable commonwealth among the States of the American Union.

## Annexation

The Joint Resolution of the Congress of the United States for the annexation of Texas was approved March 1, 1845. In accordance with its terms a State Constitution was framed and adopted by the Texas Convention, August 27, 1845, was submitted to a vote of the people, together with the question of annexation, in the following October, and, by a vote of 4174 for to 312 against, it was ratified by the people of Texas. On December 29, 1845, the Constitution thus framed and adopted was accepted by the Congress of the United States, and from this last-named date Texas legally became one of the United States of America. The new State government, however, which was elected in December, 1845, did not assume its functions until the following February, 1846. For purposes of practical computation we may adopt January 1, 1846, as the beginning-point in the history of Texas as an American State, so that on January 1, 1896, she closed her first half-century of Statehood.

No official census of the Republic was ever taken, and the number of its inhabitants can only be estimated by the popular vote at the successive elections, aided by some attempts that were made at enumerating the population of various countries. The vote at the several elections from 1836 to 1849 was as follows :

For first President, September, 1836 . . . . .	5,704
For second President, September, 1838 . . . . .	7,247
For third President, 1841 . . . . .	11,534
For fourth and last President, 1844 . . . . .	12,689
For first Governor, 1845 . . . . .	9,578
For second Governor, 1847 . . . . .	14,767
For third Governor, 1849 . . . . .	21,715

Upon the basis of ten inhabitants for every voter, the election of 1845 would show a population of 95,780 ; or, taking the



preceding election of 1844 as more nearly representative, the population at the date of annexation would be 126,890, which is no doubt a very liberal estimate. It is more probable that the entire population, including the Indians, did not exceed 100,000. In 1847 a partial enumeration by counties was made, showing 135,777 inhabitants, including 38,729 slaves. These inhabitants were for the most part located in Eastern Texas and along the Trinity, Colorado, and Brazos Rivers from the coast as far inland as the Old San Antonio Road, with a considerable settlement at San Antonio, and a fringe of floating population along Red River and the Rio Grande. There was no city of any size, no trade centre, few roads of the roughest character, no internal trade of much value, and a primitive scarcity of all those things that constitute modern civilization in its most vigorous attitude. The Mexican War, which at once broke out in 1846 as the result of annexation, retarded further immigration for a time, and it was not until after 1848 that the country began to really develop in its population and resources.

In 1850 the first census was taken, showing a population of 212,592, of whom 154,034 were white and 58,161 were colored. The composition of this inhabitation was cosmopolitan in a very marked degree, and in that regard it was the prototype of the character of the Texan citizenship of all the subsequent years to the present time. Perhaps no other American State has had so unique a blending of nationalities and social types. Although what may be called the *staple* of the population—that element which gives complexion and a permanent character to social life and customs—has from the first been derived from the Southern States of the American Union, there has always been such a large and influential admixture of immigrants from the North and East, together with a vigorous and healthy foreign colonization from Germany, Sweden, Norway, Denmark, Bohemia, France, and Great Britain, to say nothing of the Spanish

Population,  
1847



LADIES' ANNEX OF SOUTHWESTERN UNIVERSITY, Georgetown, Texas.

Mexican War

First census,  
1850

Character of  
population

and Mexican influences that originally underlay all the others, that the resultant *Texan* is a composite citizen of a commonwealth that possesses peculiar excellencies for rapid and liberal growth.

When the war with Mexico had ended, February 2, 1848, the way was opened for safe and stable progress in Texas, except for two vexed and unsettled questions. These were the public debt and the boundary dispute. The settlement of the two was more or less inseparable, and the final result was fortunate for Texas. The debt of the Republic was at last fixed at \$11,050,201.50, which by a process of scaling was adjusted at \$5,528,195.19, and was finally paid off with \$8,497,604.95, the ultimate liquidation being consummated in 1858. The boundary dispute with the United States was disposed of as part of the famous Compromise Measures of September 9, 1850, passed by the Congress of the United States, and accepted by Texas on November 25, 1850. By this act Texas surrendered her claim to New Mexico in consideration of the payment by the United States of \$10,000,000 in stock, due in fourteen years, and bearing five per cent. interest. The money thus realized enabled the State to discharge the old debts of the Republic without impoverishing her current revenues for a series of years, as would otherwise have been inevitable. The adjustment of this troublesome issue seemed to forever dispose of all controversies in regard to the Texas boundaries, but the Greer County case, involving the location of one part of our northwestern boundary, arose in later years to vex legislatures, congresses, and courts. It was finally decided by the Supreme Court of the United States in 1896 adversely to the contention of Texas, thus taking away the large territory formerly known as Greer County. That controversy involved the construction of the third article of the treaty between Spain and the United States of February 22, 1819, as to the true location of the "Red River" therein named as constituting part of the limits of the two governments on this continent.

The rapidity in the growth of the population of Texas from 1850 to 1890 is shown by the following totals of the United States census for the several decades :

Public debt  
and boundary  
questions

Greer County  
case

Rapid growth  
of population,  
1850-1890

Population, 1850 . . . . .	212,592
Population, 1860 . . . . .	604,215
Population, 1870 . . . . .	818,579
Population, 1880 . . . . .	1,591,749
Population, 1890 . . . . .	2,235,523

These figures demonstrate that in the decade from 1850 to 1860 the inhabitants increased threefold ; from 1860 to 1870, despite the ravages and impediments of the great Civil War, the increase was over 33 1/3 per cent. ; from 1870 to 1880 the population was nearly doubled ; and from 1880 to 1890 the increase was seventy-five per cent. The rate of increase in thirty-eight States of the Union during a period of forty years was on an average 39.53 per cent. The great increase in the popular vote at the three State elections since 1890 indicates that there have been large additions to the population in the past six years. The returns show the following results :

Population,  
1890-1896

Popular vote at the election of 1892 . . . . .	435,467
Popular vote at the election of 1894 . . . . .	422,716
Popular vote at the election of 1896 . . . . .	539,591

A conservative estimate, based on the usual proportion between the voters and the entire population, would give Texas at the present time not less than 3,000,000 of people, being more than fourteen times her population in 1850.

According to the census of 1890, the then population was classified as follows :

White . . . . .	1,741,190
Colored . . . . .	492,837
Indian . . . . .	766
Chinese . . . . .	727
Japanese . . . . .	3
Total . . . . .	<u>2,235,523</u>

The occupations of the people have not been classified, nor the ratio between rural and urban populations. There are two cities (Dallas and San Antonio) of more than 50,000 inhabitants, three others of over 25,000, and perhaps six or seven of over 10,000. Farming and stock-raising are of course the leading pursuits of the great mass of the people, but manual and skilled

Occupations  
of the people

labor is rapidly finding lucrative employment in the larger cities and towns, where the arts of industrial life are fast developing.

Under the apportionment of 1890, Texas is entitled to thirteen Representatives in the lower house of the American Congress, and she has thus fifteen votes in the electoral college.

Political  
development

Prior to the Texas Revolution of 1835-36 the territory of the province was divided into *municipalities*, each governed by its local officers, after the manner of Spanish-Mexican institutions; and the country was further divided into three political districts, each ruled by a political chief (*géfe político*), who was in turn responsible to the governor of the state or to the commandant of the military province. The system of county governments was adopted by the provisional government in November, 1835, and upon the organization of the Republic in 1836 twenty-three counties were created. This number was increased from time to time, until at the date of annexation in 1845 there were thirty-six organized counties. In 1846 thirty-two new counties were created, and these local governments have multiplied with the growth and necessities of the population until, in 1894, there were two hundred and twenty-six organized counties and twenty-one unorganized. Some of these are larger in area than several of the smaller States of the Union, and they are all quite liberal in dimensions.

Counties

Area

The present area of Texas, according to the official records of the General Land Office of the State, is 260,901 square miles of land and 3310 square miles of water surface, making a total of 264,211 square miles, being about 8.7 per cent. of the entire area of the United States and Territories. This does not include the rivers and streams, which are estimated to cover an additional area of 800 square miles.

Timber lands

The timber lands of the State cover 35,537,967 acres, the bodies of heaviest timber being situated in the eastern and southeastern part of the State, although there is a liberal supply of forest growth along all the streams in the prairie region.

Public lands

Under the system of jurisdiction existing while Texas was a part of the Mexican federation, the vacant lands within her borders, except as required for Federal purposes, were owned and controlled by the state government of Coahuila and Texas. At

the time of the establishment of Texan independence there was an immense territory of these public lands, exclusive of such as had been titled under the Spanish and Mexican government. It is impossible to determine accurately the amounts and respective dispositions of titles to lands in Texas under Spanish, Mexican, or Texan jurisdiction, as the records kept are too meagre and confused. It is roughly estimated that 10,000,000 acres were titled under Spanish domination, 25,000,000 acres during Mexican rule, and that the Republic owned at the time of its organization nearly 150,000,000 acres of vacant public lands.

This, of course, included the territory of New Mexico, which was afterwards ceded to the United States, being about 125,000 square miles. The history of the manner in which this vast domain has been handled and

disposed of by the successive governments of Texas constitutes a separate and very complex subject of historical research and narrative, and cannot be pursued further here.

By the terms of the joint resolution for the annexation of Texas, further strengthened by the Compromise Measures of 1850, the State of Texas retained the title to all of her vacant public domain. This at once gave her a source of wealth and a means of promoting internal development not enjoyed by any other State in the Union. The many millions of acres which she owned in 1845 have been liberally used to establish and maintain a magnificent system of free public education, including a great University and a complete system of normal schools ; to build railroads throughout her borders ; to endow and provide for the support of her various asylums and charitable institutions ; to erect a State capitol, which is one of the largest and finest public structures on the Western continent, and to promote many other measures of necessary and valuable internal improvements.

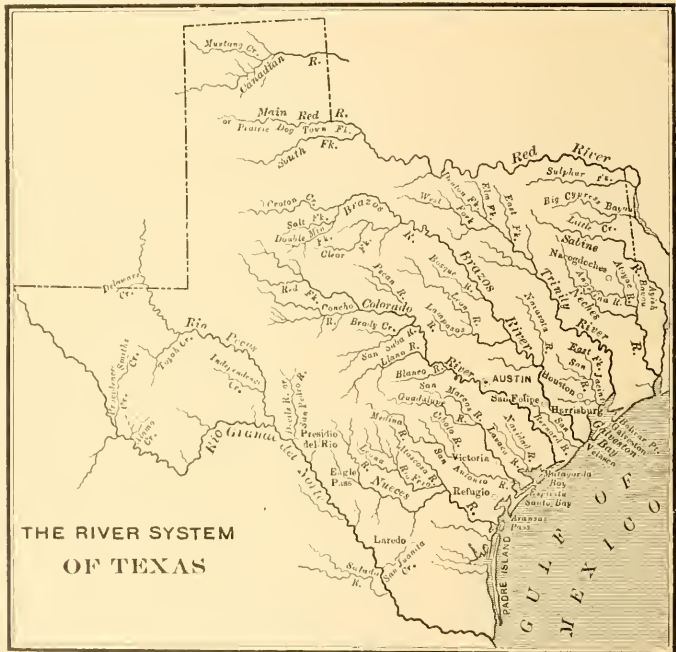
There are now estimated to be about 4,400,000 acres of unappropriated public lands, which are subject to be acquired



LAND OFFICE OF TEXAS, Austin.

Disposition of  
public lands

under the laws regulating homestead donations. This land is exclusive of the large amount of domain held in trust by the State for the benefit of public schools, University, and asylums, and is situated in Western and Northwestern Texas. The lands belonging to the schools, University, and asylums aggregate about 30,000,000 acres, and of these the greater part is subject



to purchase or lease by actual settlers at low rates and on easy terms.

Products and  
pursuits

The extended domain of Texas is such that it combines the products of the temperate and subtropical zones, abounding in the cereals, cotton, sugar, every variety of fruit product, and many things peculiar to Mexico and the lower latitudes. The early settlers were chiefly engaged in pastoral pursuits, although the sturdy colonists of Austin and his associate *empresarios* made considerable progress in farming, cotton and grain being subjects of export in paying quantities. The sparse population, how-

ever, and the difficulties of transportation rendered agriculture a precarious and irksome occupation, and the facilities for stock-raising were so favorable and extensive that the great domestic industry from the beginning was that of cattle- and horse-raising, the State having always held the lead in those pursuits. Irrigation in the neighborhood of the early Spanish-Mexican settlements promoted a certain degree of small agriculture, but it was not until the building of railroads and the opening up of the great black-land prairies of Central, Northern, and Northwestern Texas that farming assumed its present proportions. The inexhaustible fertility of the river-bottoms, when brought in communication with the markets of the seaboard and the outlets by rail to the North and East, readily responded with marvellous crops of cotton and corn, while the broad acres of rolling plain throughout the middle and northern parts of the State became the granaries of the Southwest and the greatest cotton-producing country in the world.

*Cotton*  
Agricultural products

After 1850 the growth of these interests was astonishing in its rapidity and volume. The following figures for the year 1857 show the progress that was made to that date :

Acres planted in cotton . . . . .	544,495
Acres planted in wheat . . . . .	196,878
Acres planted in cane . . . . .	16,080
Acres planted in corn . . . . .	<u>1,125,500</u>
Total acres in staples . . . . .	1,882,953

The crop of 1857-58 was estimated to be 425,000 bales of cotton, 25,000,000 bushels of corn, 3,750,000 bushels of wheat, and 11,000 hogsheads of sugar.

A comparison of crops by decades shows the following results :

YEARS.	COTTON, BALES.	CORN, BUSHEL'S.	WHEAT, BUSHEL'S.
1850 . . . . .	58,072	6,928,876	41,729
1860 . . . . .	431,463	16,500,702	1,478,345
1870 . . . . .	350,628	20,554,538	415,112
1880 . . . . .	805,284	29,065,172	2,567,737
1890 . . . . .	1,471,242	69,112,150 (1889)	4,283,344

The production in live-stock and wool for the same periods was as follows :

	1850.	1860.	1870.	1880.
Cattle, number . . . . .	61,013	2,761,736	2,933,588	3,387,927
Horses and mules, number . . . . .	76,760	352,698	424,504	805,606
Hogs, number . . . . .	629,022	1,371,532	1,202,445	1,950,371
Wool, pounds . . . . .	131,917	1,493,738	1,251,328	6,928,619

Census of 1890 . The census of 1890 discloses the following facts as to the agricultural and pastoral products of Texas :

Number of bales of cotton . . . . .	1,471,242
Pounds of wool, 1889-90 . . . . .	14,917,068
Number of horses on farms . . . . .	1,026,002
Number of meat cattle on farms . . . . .	6,201,552
Number of hogs on farms . . . . .	2,252,476
Number of sheep on farms, lambs excluded . . . . .	3,454,858
Number of horses on the range . . . . .	99,838
Number of cattle on the range . . . . .	2,342,083
Number of sheep on the range . . . . .	809,329

Cotton crop

The entire cotton crop for the season of 1894-95 was 9,901,251 bales, of which Texas produced 3,154,976 bales. The value of the total crop was estimated at \$297,037,530, which would make the value of the Texas product for that year nearly \$100,000,000.

Mineralogical resources

The mineralogical resources of Texas have only recently begun to be explored and developed, and of them no accurate or extensive information can be given. Enough is practically known, however, to demonstrate that the mineralogical wealth of the State is not inferior to its other natural funds for the support of the vast population that will soon fill its borders. Coal is found in abundant quantities in various parts of the State, and is being profitably mined at several places, notably at Thurber, on the Texas and Pacific Railway, west of Fort Worth. There are three coal-fields of great extent in Texas, two of which furnish good qualities of bituminous coal and the other a superior grade of lignite. The supply, when fully developed, is ample for all manufacturing and industrial purposes.



Iron ore has long been known and worked to a limited extent in Eastern Texas, but within the last few years a new impetus has been given to the mining of this valuable product. Experts pronounce the iron ores of Texas to be in many important respects superior to any in the world, and the only impediment to their rapid development is the difficulty encountered in their reduction, owing to the scarcity of suitable fuel. This want will be met when further progress is made in the mining of our extensive coal-fields.

Iron ore

The reports of the State Geological Department show the existence in profitable quantities and favorable localities of copper, lead, silver, gold, manganese, potters'-clay, kaolin, petroleum, gypsum, hydraulic limestones and lime, cements, marbles and building stones, salt, asphaltum, and many refractory materials valuable in the arts. These are all being used, and their production increases year by year. Artesian water is obtainable over a very large area of the State, and the ease with which flowing wells can be constructed renders the problem of water-supply in many otherwise arid regions one whose solution will not be difficult. The mineral resources of the State are as yet in an experimental period of development, and enough has not been done or ascertained to enable an accurate table of statistics on that head.

Other minerals

The Fathers of Texas early realized the necessity for rapid and easy means of transportation and intercourse between the different portions of the extensive territory included within the limits of the State. These were absolutely indispensable to the settlement and development of so vast a dominion, both for populating and policing the great extent of country and for marketing the products of the soil which an industrious citizenship would naturally evolve. The absence of streams navigable to any profitable degree rendered railroads a prime necessity, and to their construction the ingenuity and providence of the first legislatures were directed. The newness of the country and the almost total want of such internal trade as would support great lines of steam traffic, required substantial inducements to that character of enterprise, aside from any immediate profits to be derived from the transportation business.

Necessity for railroads

First enter-  
prises in that  
direction

Fortunately, Texas possessed the means to offer these inducements. Her immense tracts of public land furnished a fund for munificent subsidies to railroad construction, and most munificently has that fund been applied to that purpose. In the first years of the State's existence, and even before annexation, special laws were passed looking to the encouragement of railway-building in Texas, but little of practical progress was made until 1854. In that year the policy of land donations to railroads took shape in the enactment of a general law for the purpose of promoting such enterprises. There were at first two policies proposed. One—which was understood to have for its leading exponent Governor E. M. Pease—was that the State should build and own her own railroads, paying for them in public lands, and then lease them out to competing companies, which would operate them under government regulation and control, paying for their use a reasonable hire, and rendering to the public acceptable service at the lowest practicable rates for transportation. The other plan was a donation of the lands outright to the railroad companies for lines of road actually constructed and put in operation, requiring the companies to survey and sectionize the public lands, the State and the railroads to receive the alternate sections, and the companies being required to alienate their lands within a reasonable term of years. The latter policy was the one finally adopted. Its advantages were that it secured a survey of the public lands without cost to the State, that it made it to the interest of the railroads to settle the country as rapidly as possible so as to bring all the lands into the market, and that it promoted the public revenues by tending to create a constantly increasing taxable wealth in the shape of lands held by private ownership.

Land grants  
to railroads

Act of Jan. 30,  
1854, in aid of  
railroads

In Governor Pease's first administration, by the act of January 30, 1854, the first general law for the encouragement of railroad construction by grants of land was passed. In its general provisions this law furnished the model and contained substantially the same conditions as were embodied in all subsequent legislation on the same subject, of which there has been a great deal from time to time. It provided that when any company had constructed and put in running order twenty-five miles of

railroad, it could have thirty-two sections of public land surveyed for each mile of road so constructed, the land to be surveyed in square sections of six hundred and forty acres each, and every alternate section was donated to the railroad company, while the intervening sections were appropriated to the permanent fund of the public free schools of the State.



Under these liberal inducements the building of railroads progressed rapidly until interrupted by the Civil War in 1861. After the restoration of peace and settled order, a renewed activity characterized this with all other departments of domestic industry, and the results have been most satisfactory. In 1857 there had been incorporated by the State 41 railroad companies, of which 15 had forfeited their charters, and at the breaking out of the war in 1861 there were about 300 miles of railway in Texas in detached sections. In 1865 there were 335 miles,

Progress in  
railroad build

which increased to 583 miles in 1869, and to 711 miles in 1870. In the ten years that followed, to 1880, construction developed with astonishing rapidity, so that at the close of the latter year there were 3293 miles of road. The period between 1880 and 1890 was also most prolific in railroad-building, as in the last-named year there had been completed a mileage of 8709 miles. In 1892 this had increased to 8977 miles; in 1893 (June) it was 9088 miles; in June, 1894, it was 9153 miles; and in June, 1895, it had reached 9290 miles. At the close of the year 1895 there had been an increase of 224 miles for that year, being nearly three times as much increase as that of the next highest State in the Union,—Ohio with 87 miles of new road in 1895.

In 1892 there were 52 roads operating lines in Texas; in 1893, 54 railroads; on June 30, 1894, there were 58; and on June 30, 1895, there were 59. Under the various laws for donating lands to railroad construction, it is estimated that the companies have received from the State the magnificent area of about 35,000,000 acres, besides many large money subsidies and extensive exemptions from taxation and other public charges.

The growth of railroads furnishes a very fair index to the magnitude of the internal commerce of the State. The foreign trade is difficult to be estimated, as in the movement of freight over the railroad systems it is intermingled with inter-State commerce, and there is no method for computing such traffic. The largest seaport in the State is Galveston. There is also a very considerable trade at Sabine Pass, Velasco, Aransas, Corpus Christi, Brazos Santiago, and El Paso, besides the land trade at Laredo and Eagle Pass on the Rio Grande.

The great commercial enterprise in which Texas, in common with the entire Western country, has been for many years deeply interested is the obtaining of a safe and commodious harbor on the coast of the Gulf of Mexico. This has apparently been at last accomplished at Galveston. It has been done by liberal appropriations from the United States government, under what is known as the "jetty system" of engineering. The first work began in 1870, and the amount of money expended and to be expended for the purpose of securing deep water aggregates the immense sum of \$8,478,000.

Commerce and  
trade

Galveston  
deep water  
improvements

The growth of manufacturing industries has been of comparatively recent date in Texas. The sparsity of population, the distance from the great centres of trade and distribution, and the difficulties and expense of transportation have all been serious impediments to the development of such enterprises. Yet there are many flourishing and profitable factories now in operation, and their number and efficiency are steadily increasing. Cotton- and woollen mills, iron-foundries, salt-works, coal- and iron-mines, cement- and lime-works, rope-factories, cotton-seed-



THE GREAT COLORADO DAM, Austin.

oil-mills, flouring- and lumber-mills, tanneries and leather goods factories, and, in fact, every species of manufactory for the conversion of raw material into finished products, are in successful and constantly increasing activity throughout the State.

For the two years ending December 31, 1893, there were organized in Texas 6657 manufactories of all kinds, with a total capital of \$50,261,620, employing 37,763 operatives, handling \$21,927,471 of raw material, and turning out \$36,950,864 of finished products. The increase for the three succeeding years has been in still greater ratio, although the exact figures are not now obtainable.

## Public schools

The devotion of Texas to the cause of popular education is historic. The unfriendliness of Mexico to free public education was one of the emphatic grievances alleged in the Declaration of Texan Independence in 1836. By an act of the legislature of Coahuila and Texas of May 11, 1829, decree No. 92, the first law for the establishment of public schools, was enacted. It provided for a system of schools for "mutual instruction on the Lancasterian plan" (monitorial schools) at the capital of each department, and required free instruction for a limited number of poor children, enforcing compulsory education upon parents able to pay tuition. On May 2, 1833, we notice a decree granting four leagues of land to the municipality of Nacogdoches for public school purposes. These were the initiative acts towards public free schools, but evidently the Mexican government did not practically satisfy the demands of the Texas colonists in this direction, as they made it the subject of specific complaint in their Revolution three years later.

Beginning of  
the school  
system

After the Republic was inaugurated, under the presidency of Lamar, the first general law for the establishment and maintenance of a system of public instruction was passed, which also contemplated the foundation of two universities. By the act of January 26, 1839, the Congress of the Republic enacted that each county should have surveyed and set apart to it three leagues (13,285 acres) of land, for the purpose of establishing and maintaining a primary school or academy in the county; and fifty leagues of public lands were required to be set apart to the founding of two universities. By the act of February 5, 1840, an additional league was granted to each county for the purpose of being sold to furnish equipment and apparatus for the schools. The same act provided for the organization of school districts and communities and the actual inauguration of the system contemplated.

After annexation, by the act of January 16, 1850, four leagues of land were appropriated to the new counties that had been formed since February 16, 1846, so as to put them on an equal footing with the old counties. On January 31, 1854, \$2,000,000 of the bonds received from the United States in payment for the territory of New Mexico were set apart to the public free schools,

and the organization of a complete system of free public instruction was provided for. This fund was afterwards invested in railroad bonds to encourage railroad construction, and a great part of it was lost.

The alternate sections of lands surveyed by the railroads under the laws for railroad promotion were donated to the schools, and these added immensely to the landed endowment of the public school system. In 1856 the fifty leagues of University lands were authorized to be sold, the proceeds to constitute an available fund for the founding of the institution. In 1858 an act was passed to organize the University, but the approach of the war prevented its organization at that time. During the war a large sum of money belonging to that institution was diverted to other purposes. In 1866 an act was again passed contemplating the immediate organization of the University, but nothing came of it, and it was not until 1883, under the act of 1881, that it was finally opened, with its main branch at Austin and the medical school at Galveston.

~~X~~ In the mean while, by various legislative and constitutional provisions, large quantities of public domain have from time to time been appropriated to the public schools and University, amounting in the aggregate to nearly 40,000,000 acres. ~~X~~ These lands and the proceeds of the sale and lease of the same constitute the permanent fund of the educational system, while the interest thereon and moneys derived from other sources are the available fund.



THOMAS D. WOOTEN.

In addition to the interest on bonds and land notes and rental from leases, the State levies an annual *ad valorem* school-tax of two mills, devotes one-fourth of the occupation taxes, and an annual poll-tax of \$1 to the available school fund. The entire amount of available



ASHBEL SMITH.

Educational  
endowment

apportioned school fund for the years 1894-95 was \$2,836,363.50, and the total receipts by local treasurers, including balances from the previous year, were \$3,962,637.51. The disbursements for the same year amounted to \$3,675,501.62. Balance on hand, \$287,135.89.

The University is governed by a Board of Regents composed of eight citizens, residents of different sections of the State, who are appointed by the governor and confirmed by the Senate. The first president of the Board of Regents was the venerable Ashbel Smith, who died in 1886, and was succeeded by Dr. Thomas D. Wooten, who still holds that position. To the intelligent and zealous efforts of these two men—especially of the latter—the institution owes its growth, vigor, and popularity. By an act of the legislature approved April 10, 1883, 1,000,000 acres of the public-debt land were added to the permanent University fund. Of the various land-grants made to the University there remained unsold 2,020,049 acres on December 31, 1891.

The permanent fund consists of,—

State bonds . . . . .	\$571,340.00
Cash . . . . .	1,327.21
Total . . . . .	\$572,667.21

The interest on the above sum, rental on leased lands, and matriculation fees, amounting to \$53,831.87 per annum, constitute the available University fund.

Attendance at the University has steadily increased in all the departments, and during the college year beginning in September, 1896, there were about 450 matriculates in the main branch at Austin and about 200 in the medical department at Galveston. The institution now has a president, after the manner of the older universities of the country, the first selection to that office being Dr. George T. Winston, late of the University of North Carolina, appointed in June, 1896.

As important parts of the educational system of Texas are also two large normal schools at Huntsville and Prairie View,—the former for whites and the latter for colored teachers,—



Agricultural and Mechanical College near Bryan, and the Deaf and Dumb and Blind Institutes at Austin, the latter being, in part at least, in the nature of public charities.

There are very many excellent private schools and colleges in the State, most of them under denominational religious patronage or control. Some of these date from pioneer days,



INSTITUTION FOR THE BLIND.

and they are all valuable and potent factors in the intellectual, moral, and social evolution of Texan civilization.

Side by side with intellectual culture and enterprise, religious faith and zeal have attended the progress of Texas. In fact, religion began its ministrations in the wilderness of Mexican Texas before education was much thought of by the struggling colonists. The Methodists and Baptists were the pioneers in the mission field, always excepting those first Catholic missionaries whose silent sacrifices and heroic courage planted the Cross from the Sabine to the Rio Grande before the Anglo-American had set foot west of the Alleghanies. In 1824-25 the first Protestant Church services were held among the settlements of Austin's colony, and from that time the advance in religious thought and labor has kept pace with every forward movement in the development of Texas. The results of these years of prayer and preaching, as shown in the present condition of church affairs in the State, may be partially seen in the following table for the year 1894 :

Religious  
growth

Church  
statistics

Number of church organizations . . . . .	6,890
Number of ministers . . . . .	5,605
Number of members . . . . .	694,070
Number of church edifices . . . . .	2,532
Value of church property . . . . .	\$2,958,882
Number of church universities, colleges, and schools . . . . .	52
Number of teachers in same . . . . .	196
Number of pupils in attendance . . . . .	3,977
Value of property invested in education by churches . . . . .	\$1,001,250

Taxable  
wealth, 1850-  
1895

The taxable values of property of all kinds in Texas, as shown by the assessment rolls, for the past five decades were as follows: 1850, \$51,814,615; 1860, \$294,315,659; 1870, \$170,473,778;



SCHOOL FOR THE DEAF AND DUMB, Austin.

1880, \$311,470,736; 1890, \$782,111,883. For the five years following 1890 the assessed values were as follows: 1891, \$856,202,283; 1892, \$856,528,600; 1893, \$886,175,395; 1894, \$865,120,989; 1895, \$860,910,567.

These figures show a constantly increasing wealth until within the last three years, except for the decade ending in 1870, which was due to the devastating effects of the war and the ravages of Reconstruction, coupled with the destruction of the property in slaves which was enumerated prior to 1864.

Aside from its administration of educational affairs and its strictly governmental functions, the State has been most liberal in providing and maintaining all those public institutions of charity, benevolence, and humanity the existence of which is so characteristic a feature of Christian civilization. From the foundation of the State government specific funds were provided for the establishment of the principal eleemosynary institutions for the care of the afflicted and destitute members of society, and as the increasing population of the State has rendered these establishments necessary to be extended, the liberality of the people through their legislatures has kept pace with the demands of the occasion. The chief establishments of this kind are as follows : The three asylums

Public  
charities



MAIN BUILDINGS, INSANE ASYLUM, Austin.

for the insane, at Austin, San Antonio, and Terrell, with property and investment valued at \$1,082,969 ; the Blind Asylum, which is also a school for the instruction of the blind, at Austin, with property valued at \$146,550 ; the Deaf and Dumb Asylums, at Austin, one for whites and the other for negroes, with property valued at \$193,859 ; the Orphan Asylum, at Corsicana, opened in 1890 ; the House of Correction and Reformatory, at Gatesville, established in 1888.

Asylums

The penal system and institutions of the State are on a very extensive scale, and their development and management constitute one of the most expensive, skilful, and successful departments of the government, as well as evidencing a high order of humanity and wisdom. The problem of penitentiary management was for a long time the most perplexing the State had to deal with. The lease system was practised for a while, but was abandoned in 1883, and now the convicts are employed on State account or by private contract. There are two State penitentiaries, one located at Huntsville and the other at Rusk. Forces

Penitentiaries

of convicts are worked in some instances outside the prison walls, on farms and railroads, sometimes on private contract, and sometimes by the State on its own account, considerable areas of sugar lands owned by the State having been thus profitably farmed. Various industries are prosecuted at the prisons, and the revenues therefrom in the future may prove to be very substantial. The total valuation of penitentiary property and investment reaches nearly five millions of dollars.

Public build-  
ings

The various public buildings at the State capital for the use of the government in its several departments are commodious and imposing structures, but the new State capitol is so notable a building that it merits special mention. The old capitol erected in 1856 was destroyed by accidental fire in November, 1881, and for a time the offices of the government were kept in a temporary structure built by the State at the head of Congress Avenue, in Austin. Very soon active steps were taken to build a new capitol suitable in dimensions and grandeur to the dignity and wealth of the State. Three millions of acres of public land had been appropriated for that purpose, and an arrangement was finally consummated by which a syndicate of Chicago capitalists agreed to take the land in exchange for a completed State-house built on the plans and specifications furnished by the State. The structure was finally completed and dedicated by a grand international military drill and display in May, 1888.

State capitol

Its dimensions are as follows: Length, 566 feet 6 inches, inclusive of porticos. Width, 288 feet 10 inches at widest point. Height, 311 feet from grade-line to top of statue on dome. It contains 258 rooms, and is second only in size to the capitol at Washington, and is the seventh largest building in the world. It is built of red granite from Burnet County, and Texas materials were mainly used in its construction and finish.

Relative  
growth of  
Texas among  
the United  
States

The progress of Texas in the various departments of life and enterprise that go to constitute the civilization of a commonwealth, during her fifty years of Statehood as an American State, has been most satisfactory and encouraging. By comparison with the achievements of the other communities composing the Union of States, Texas has every reason to be proud of her career. She was the sixteenth State admitted by the Congress of the

United States, making with the original thirteen colonial States twenty-nine in the Union at that date. Between 1845 and 1850 two others were admitted,—Wisconsin and California,—and at the taking of the census of 1850 Texas stood twenty-fifth in population among the United States. In 1860 she was twenty-third; in 1870 she was nineteenth; in 1880 she had reached eleventh; and in 1890 she stood seventh, being beaten for sixth place by Massachusetts by only 3480. The States ranking her in population in 1890 were in the order named: New York, with a population of 5,997,853; Pennsylvania,



COMPANY OF TEXAS RANGERS.

5,258,014; Illinois, 3,826,351; Ohio, 3,672,316; Missouri, 2,679,184; and Massachusetts, 2,238,943. The recent election of 1896 clearly indicates by the popular votes of the several States that Texas has now a greater population than either Missouri or Massachusetts, and the census of 1900 bids fair to place her fourth or fifth in the list of the most populous States in the Union.

In proportion to her importance, territorially and otherwise, Texas has not, until recent years, exerted the influence abroad to which she seemed entitled. This has been due to many and adequate causes. As has been seen, her real growth as a State did not fairly begin until 1850. The following decade was

Attitude of  
Texas before  
the Civil War

largely occupied with the great sectional questions leading up to the War for Secession, and the position of the new State was such as to somewhat restrain her active and prominent participation in the prevailing public issues in Federal politics. Texas sustained a peculiar relation to the Union,—having been an independent Republic prior to annexation,—and her statesmen were puzzled by the situation in which they found themselves.

Notwithstanding this embarrassment, however, her Senators and Representatives in Congress commanded great respect and exerted considerable influence in the national councils. General Houston ranked among the ablest men at Washington, and was sufficiently prominent to have been mentioned for the presidency in 1856 and in 1860. General Rusk was regarded as an exceptionally strong statesman by his colleagues in the Senate, and but for his

untimely death no doubt would have become a national character. A. J. Hamilton and John H. Reagan likewise were distinguished in the lower house of Congress. The Civil War, however, put a stop to the further connection of Texas with Federal affairs for many years; but her ablest men, in both civil and military life, were among the recognized leaders of the Southern Confederacy in the great conflict from 1861 to 1865, and their services shed lustre on the State. It was not until 1874 that Texas resumed her active participation in the affairs of the Union.

Since that date her statesmen have won respect and distinction among the great characters of national public life. In the Senate, Sam Bell Maxey, Richard Coke, John H. Reagan, Roger Q. Mills, and Horace Chilton have wielded a useful influence and been conceded high rank. Mr. Mills and Mr. Reagan, however, attained their chief reputation during a long service in the lower house,—the former as a tariff reformer at



D. B. CULBERSON.

Texas in the  
Southern  
Confederacy

Texas in Fed-  
eral politics of  
recent years

Mills and  
Reagan



JOSEPH D. SAYERS.

the head of the Committee on Ways and Means and author of the "Mills Bill," and the latter in connection with the Inter-State Commerce Law and Commission.

In the House, David B. Culberson served for twenty years, retiring in 1897. In the latter years of his service he was chairman of the Judiciary Committee of that body, and enjoyed the reputation of being its ablest lawyer. After his retirement, President Harrison appointed him one of the commission to codify the penal statutes of the United States. In the same body, Joseph D. Sayers, as the chairman of the Appropriations Committee, has achieved a permanent and practical distinction as a wise, prudent, and capable states-



J. W. BAILEY.

man. In the Fifty-fifth Congress, Joseph W. Bailey, one of the youngest members of the House, was the Democratic candidate for the Speakership, and as such became the recognized leader of that party,—an honor phenomenal for so youthful a man in years and in public life.



A. W. TERRELL.

In the diplomatic service of the United States, Texas has been twice honored with high stations. Under President Cleveland's first administration, from 1885 to 1889, Richard B. Hubbard was

Minister to Japan ; while Alexander W. Terrell was Minister to Turkey during Cleveland's second term, from 1893 to 1897. Seth Shepard, a native Texan and distinguished lawyer of the State, was appointed by President Cleveland one of the justices of the Court of Appeals of the District of Columbia upon the organization of that court in 1893.

Although her situation and environment have been such as to preclude her earlier and active prominence in national affairs, in whatever department of aspiration and effort the sons and citizens



SETH SHEPARD.

of Texas have been called upon to display themselves, their conduct and achievements have reflected credit upon the State and been consistent with her heroic history and her prophetic prowess.

## QUESTIONS.

WHAT can you say of the importance and extent of Texas history as compared with that of other portions of the Union? What was the character of the early settlement of Texas? Give an outline of its condition and progress during the period up to the year 1821. What important era began in that year, and by whose efforts? What mistake is often made in regard to the early American settlers of Texas? What were their real character and habits? What proves the high character and intelligence of the American colonists in Texas in 1835 and 1836? What was the condition of the Republic when it began its career? What was the population of Texas in 1744, 1765, 1806, and 1831, respectively? Who visited the country in 1834, and what did he find? Who made an investigation and report of the country in 1836, and what did he report? Describe the condition of the country and its inhabitants at the date of the inauguration of the first President of the Republic. What occurred during the next ten years, and with what results? When and by what popular vote was annexation to the United States adopted? When did Texas actually become one of the United States? When did the State government begin operations? What date may be taken as the beginning-point in the State's history? What was the population of Texas from 1836 to 1849, and explain how you arrive at it? Where was most of the population located? What event retarded the growth of the State for several years after annexation? When was the first regular census taken, and what did it show? What can you say of the character of Texas citizens then and since? What two questions absorbed public attention after the end of the Mexican War? How were they finally settled? What famous boundary dispute remained unsettled until recent times, and how was it finally disposed of? Give the population of the State for the several decades from 1850 to 1890, both inclusive. What do these figures demonstrate? What has been the popular vote at the several general elections since 1890, and what does it show? How was the population classified by the census of 1890? What can you say of the pursuits and residences of the inhabitants? Prior to the Texas Revolution, how was the country divided and governed? When was the system of county governments adopted, and how many counties existed at the organization of the Republic? How many counties were there in 1845, and how many were



added in 1846? How many are there now? What can you say of their size? What is the present area in square miles, and how does it compare with that of the whole Union? What proportion of this is in timber lands, and where are they mostly situated? Describe the condition and management of the public lands under Mexican rule. What proportion of the lands was disposed of under the Spanish and Mexican system? How much land did the Republic own at its organization, and how much was afterwards ceded to the United States? What became of the public lands after annexation, and what did this enable Texas to do? Explain the gradual growth of agricultural and pastoral pursuits. Give the acreage in cotton, wheat, cane, and corn in 1857. Give the comparative figures on the production of cotton, wheat, and corn for the several decades from 1850 to 1890. Give the live-stock statistics for the same periods. What does the census of 1890 show as to the agricultural and live-stock products of Texas? What was the cotton crop of Texas for the season of 1894-95, and how did it compare with the entire crop of the world for the same season? What can you say of the mineralogical resources of the State? What minerals are found in the State, and in what localities? Why were railroads early recognized as a necessity for the development of the State? By what means was their construction encouraged by the government, and give an account of the system or policy of land donations to railroads? Give the number of miles and number of railroad lines in Texas for the years 1857, 1861, 1865, 1870, 1880, 1890, 1892, 1893, 1894, and 1895, respectively. How much public land has been donated to railroad construction? What can you say of the foreign trade of Texas? What places are chiefly engaged in foreign trade? What great commercial enterprise on the Gulf coast has enlisted much attention, and explain what has been done towards developing it? What can you say of the growth of manufacturing interests? What number of factories were organized in Texas for the two years ending in 1893, and with what capital invested? What has been the historic policy of Texas towards public education? Give an account of the early laws and movements in that direction under Mexican rule. When did the Republic begin a liberal policy towards free public schools? Explain the early legislation on the subject. What laws were passed after annexation for the endowment of the public schools, and to form a fund for that purpose? Give an account of the present endowment of the schools and University. How is the University governed, and what is its present condition and endowment? What two men have largely aided in its prosperity and development? What other institutions belong to the educational system of the State? What can you say of the religious growth and institutions of the State? Give the statistics of the churches and their property and institutions for the year 1894. What were the taxable values of property of all kinds in the State for the five decades ending with 1895? What charitable institutions does the State maintain, where are they located, and what is the value of the property of each of them? Give an account of the peniten-

tiary system of the State and its cost and value. What can you say of the various public buildings at the capital? Give a description of the new State capitol. Explain fully the relative growth of Texas in the Union, and her present position as to population and resources. Why did not Texas take a more prominent part in the affairs of the Union prior to 1874? What was the character and influence of her Senators and Representatives in Congress before the Civil War? Give a short account of the various Texas statesmen who have won distinction in public life in recent years, and the positions they have held. What has been the uniform character of Texans in all matters in which they have taken part at home and abroad?

### Topical Analysis.

1. The relative length, importance, and variety of the events and periods going to make up Texas history, as compared with other States in the Union.

2. The slow development of the country prior to the advent of the American colonists in 1821. Causes for the conditions existing before and after that date.

3. Difficulties of the Republic in the matter of its public finances, the poverty of the people, and the want of material resources. The manner in which these were overcome and the government finally rescued from ruin and ushered into the Union.

4. The effect of the Mexican War in retarding the development of the State after annexation.

5. The beginning of progress and prosperity after 1848, the disposition of the Public Debt and Boundary questions, and rapid growth of population.

6. The Land System of Texas and the public policy followed in the disposition of the lands belonging to the State. Texas, unlike the other American States, owned a vast public domain, which she was able to devote to the development of internal improvements and educational and charitable institutions.

7. The policy of land donations to railroads, and its results in the growth of such enterprises.

8. The educational endowment of the State as shown in the large landed and other funds of the schools and University.

9. The charitable institutions, penitentiaries, public buildings, and other institutions of public utility.

10. The growth of the agricultural and pastoral industries, manufactures, mining, and other material resources as exhibited in the statistics from 1850 to 1890.

11. The present relative position of Texas in the Union, her influence and prominence in Federal affairs, and her prospective greatness as an American commonwealth.

### Geography.

The student should trace the various changes in the boundaries of Texas, from 1836 to 1896, so as to understand the disposition of public domain from the formation of the original territory of the Republic down to the present area of the State. Then the river and railroad systems should be accurately considered, and outline maps of them made. The public lands, their location and disposition should be traced, and the present location of the unappropriated remnant of the public domain should be fixed. The physical divisions of the State into agricultural, timber, and pastoral lands should be traced, the mineralogical resources should be located, the artesian water district outlined, and the region susceptible of irrigation pointed out. The names and locations of the several counties should be carefully studied, and an interesting study can be made of the present county divisions as compared with the Mexican municipalities, old land districts, and original counties of the Republic and at the date of annexation.



UNITED STATES BATTLESHIP "TEXAS."

TABLE SHOWING CHIEF EXECUTIVES AND STATE ELECTIONS OF  
TEXAS FROM 1691 TO 1897—206 YEARS.

SPANISH—1691 TO 1822—131 YEARS.

Domingo Teran.	Jacinto de Barrios.
Don Gaspardo de Anaya.	Antonio de Martos.
Don Martin de Alarcon.	Juan Maria, Baron de Ripperda.
Marquis de Aguayo.	Domingo Cabello.
Fernando de Almazan.	Rafael Pacheco.
Melchior de Mediavilla.	Manuel Muñoz.
Juan Antonio Bustillos.	Juan Bautista el Guazabel.
Manuel de Sandoval.	Antonio Cordero.
Carlos de Franquis.	Manuel de Salcedo.
Prudencia Basterra.	Christoval Dominguez.
Justo Boneo.	Antonio Martinez.

MEXICAN—1822 TO 1835—13 YEARS.

Trespalacios . . . . . 1822	Victor Blanco . . . . . 1826
Don Luciano de Garcia . . . 1823	José Maria Viesca . . . . . 1828
Rafael Gonzales (Coahuila and Texas). . . . . 1825	José Maria Letona . . . . . 1831
	Francisco Vidauri . . . . . 1834

TEXAN—1835 TO 1846—11 YEARS.

Henry Smith, Provisional Governor . . . . .	1835 to 1836
David G. Burnet, President <i>ad interim</i> . . . . .	1836
Sam Houston, Constitutional President . . . . .	1836
Mirabeau B. Lamar, President . . . . .	1838
Sam Houston, President . . . . .	1841
Anson Jones, President . . . . .	1844

STATE GOVERNMENT SINCE ANNEXATION—1846 TO 1897—51 YEARS.

J. Pinckney Henderson . . . . . 1846	James W. Throck-
George T. Wood . . . . . 1847	morton . . . . . 1866 to 1867
P. H. Bell . . . . . 1849 to 1851	E. M. Pease (Provi-
P. H. Bell . . . . . 1851 to 1853	sional) . . . . . 1867 to 1870
E. M. Pease . . . . . 1853 to 1855	E. J. Davis . . . . . 1870 to 1874
E. M. Pease . . . . . 1855 to 1857	Richard Coke . . . . . 1874 to 1876
H. R. Rummels . . . . . 1857 to 1859	R. B. Hubbard . . . . . 1876 to 1879
Sam Houston . . . . . 1859 to 1861	O. M. Roberts . . . . . 1879 to 1883
Edward Clark . . . . . 1861	John Ireland . . . . . 1883 to 1887
F. R. Lubbock . . . . . 1861 to 1863	L. S. Ross . . . . . 1887 to 1891
Pendleton Murrah . . . . . 1863 to 1865	J. S. Hogg . . . . . 1891 to 1895
A. J. Hamilton (Pro-	C. A. Culberson . . . . . 1895 to 1899
visional) . . . . . 1865 to 1866	

## GENERAL ELECTIONS IN TEXAS FROM 1835 TO 1896, INCLUSIVE.

In the Consultation of Texas, November 11, 1835, Henry Smith was elected Governor and J. W. Robinson Lieutenant-Governor. The vote in the Consultation was,—

*For Governor.*—Henry Smith, 31; Stephen F. Austin, 22.

FIRST GENERAL ELECTION UNDER REPUBLIC, IN 1836.—*For President.*—Sam Houston, 3585; Stephen F. Austin, 551; Henry Smith, 144; T. J. Green, 42; Scattering, 5; against Constitution, 223; for Constitution, 1836, 3199.

SECOND GENERAL ELECTION, 1838.—*For President.*—M. B. Lamar, 6995; Robert M. Wilson, 252.

THIRD GENERAL ELECTION, 1841.—*For President.*—Sam Houston, 7915; David G. Burnet, 3616.

FOURTH GENERAL ELECTION, 1844.—*For President.*—Anson Jones, 6443; Edward Burleson, 5054.

FIRST STATE ELECTION, 1845.—*For Governor.*—J. P. Henderson, 7853; J. B. Miller, 1673; Scattering, 52.

SECOND STATE ELECTION, 1847.—*For Governor.*—George T. Wood, 7154; J. B. Miller, 5106; N. H. Darnell, 1276; J. J. Robinson, 379; Scattering, 852.

THIRD STATE ELECTION, 1849.—*For Governor.*—P. H. Bell, 10,319; George T. Wood, 8764; John T. Mills, 2632; for Amendment to Constitution, 15,852; against Amendment to Constitution, 3139.

FOURTH STATE ELECTION, 1851.—*For Governor.*—P. H. Bell, 13,595; M. T. Johnson, 5262; John A. Greer, 4061; B. H. Epperson, 2971; T. J. Chambers, 2320; Scattering, 100.

FIFTH STATE ELECTION, 1853.—*For Governor.*—E. M. Pease, 13,091; W. B. Ochiltree, 9178; George T. Wood, 5983; L. D. Evans, 4677; T. J. Chambers, 2449; John Dancy, 315.

SIXTH STATE ELECTION, 1855.—*For Governor.*—E. M. Pease, 26,336; D. C. Dickson, 18,968; M. T. Johnson, 809; George T. Wood, 226.

SEVENTH STATE ELECTION, 1857.—*For Governor.*—H. R. Rannels, 32,552; Sam Houston, 28,628.

EIGHTH STATE ELECTION, 1859.—*For Governor.*—Sam Houston, 36,227; H. R. Rannels, 27,500; Scattering, 61.

NINTH STATE ELECTION, 1861.—*For Governor.*—F. R. Lubbock, 21,854; Edward Clark, 21,730; T. J. Chambers, 13,759.

TENTH STATE ELECTION, 1863.—*For Governor.*—Pendleton Murrah, 17,511; T. J. Chambers, 12,455; Scattering, 1070.

ELEVENTH STATE ELECTION, 1866.—*For Governor.*—J. W. Throckmorton, 49,277; E. M. Pease, 12,168.

TWELFTH STATE ELECTION, 1869.—*For Governor.*—E. J. Davis, 39,901; A. J. Hamilton, 39,092; Hamilton Stuart, 380.

THIRTEENTH STATE ELECTION, 1873.—*For Governor.*—Richard Coke, 85,549; E. J. Davis, 42,633.

FOURTEENTH STATE ELECTION, 1876.—*For Governor.*—Richard Coke, 150,581; Wm. Chambers, 47,719.

FIFTEENTH STATE ELECTION, 1878.—*For Governor.*—O. M. Roberts, 158,933; W. H. Hamman, 55,002; A. B. Norton, 23,402; Scattering, 99.

SIXTEENTH STATE ELECTION, 1880.—*For Governor.*—O. M. Roberts, 166,101; E. J. Davis, 64,382; W. H. Hamman, 33,721.

SEVENTEENTH STATE ELECTION, 1882.—*For Governor.*—John Ireland, 150,809; George W. Jones, 102,501; J. B. Robertson, 334.

EIGHTEENTH STATE ELECTION, 1884.—*For Governor.*—John Ireland, 212,234; George W. Jones, 88,450; A. B. Norton, 25,557.

NINETEENTH STATE ELECTION, 1886.—*For Governor.*—L. S. Ross, 228,776; A. M. Cochran, 65,236; E. L. Dohoney, 19,186; Scattering, 102.

TWENTIETH STATE ELECTION, 1888.—*For Governor.*—L. S. Ross, 250,338; Marion Martin, 98,447.

TWENTY-FIRST STATE ELECTION, 1890.—*For Governor.*—J. S. Hogg, 262,432; W. Flanagan, 77,742; E. C. Heath, 2235.

TWENTY-SECOND STATE ELECTION, 1892.—*For Governor.*—J. S. Hogg, 190,486; George Clark, 133,395; T. L. Nugent, 108,483; A. J. Houston, 1322; D. M. Prendergast, 1605; Scattering, 176.

TWENTY-THIRD STATE ELECTION, 1894.—*For Governor.*—C. A. Culberson, 207,167; W. K. Makemson, 54,520; J. B. Schmitz, 5026; T. L. Nugent, 152,731; J. M. Dunn, 2196; Scattering, 1076.

TWENTY-FOURTH STATE ELECTION, 1896.—*For Governor.*—C. A. Culberson, 295,528; Clark, 1876; J. C. Kearby, 238,692; Scattering, 495.



*Table Showing the Speakers of the Texas House of Representatives from 1846 to 1897, inclusive.*

LEGISLA- TURE.	NAMES.	DATE OF MEETING.	DATE OF ADJOURN- MENT.	EXTRA SESSION MET.	EXTRA SESSION ADJOURNED.
1	William E. Crump . . . . .	February 16, 1846	May 13, 1846	. . . . .	. . . . .
2	James W. Henderson . . . . .	December 13, 1847	March 20, 1848	. . . . .	. . . . .
3	C. G. Keenan . . . . .	November 5, 1849	February 11, 1850	. . . . .	. . . . .
4	D. C. Dickson . . . . .	November 3, 1851	February 16, 1852	. . . . .	. . . . .
5	H. R. Runnels . . . . .	November 7, 1853	February 15, 1854	. . . . .	. . . . .
6	H. P. Bee . . . . .	November 5, 1855	February 4, 1856	. . . . .	. . . . .
7	W. S. Taylor . . . . .	November 2, 1857	February 16, 1858	. . . . .	. . . . .
8	M. D. K. Taylor . . . . .	November 7, 1859	February 13, 1860	. . . . .	. . . . .
9	N. H. Darnell . . . . .	November 4, 1861	January 14, 1862	. . . . .	. . . . .
10	M. D. K. Taylor . . . . .	November 2, 1863	December 16, 1863	. . . . .	. . . . .
11	N. M. Barford . . . . .	August 6, 1866	November 13, 1866	. . . . .	. . . . .
12	Ira H. Evans <sup>2</sup> . . . . .	April 26, 1870	August 15, 1870	. . . . .	. . . . .
13	M. D. K. Taylor . . . . .	January 14, 1873	June 4, 1873	. . . . .	. . . . .
14	G. M. Bryan . . . . .	January 18, 1874	May 4, 1874	. . . . .	. . . . .
15	T. R. Bonner . . . . .	April 18, 1876	August 21, 1876	. . . . .	. . . . .
16	J. H. Cochran . . . . .	January 14, 1879	April 21, 1879	. . . . .	. . . . .
17	George R. Reeves . . . . .	January 11, 1881	April 1, 1881	. . . . .	. . . . .
18	C. R. Foster . . . . .	January 9, 1883	April 13, 1883	. . . . .	. . . . .
19	L. I. Gibson . . . . .	January 13, 1885	March 31, 1885	. . . . .	. . . . .
20	George C. Pendleton . . . . .	January 11, 1887	April 6, 1887	. . . . .	. . . . .
21	F. P. Alexander . . . . .	January 8, 1889	April 4, 1889	. . . . .	. . . . .
22	K. T. Milner . . . . .	January 13, 1891	April 13, 1891	. . . . .	. . . . .
23	John H. Cochran . . . . .	January 10, 1893	May 9, 1893	. . . . .	. . . . .
24	T. S. Smith . . . . .	January 8, 1895	April 30, 1895	. . . . .	. . . . .
25	L. T. Dashiell . . . . .	January 12, 1897	May 21, 1897	. . . . .	. . . . .

<sup>1</sup> The Twelfth Legislature was called together on April 26, 1870. The regular time of meeting as provided by the Constitution was January 10, 1871. This legislature also met in second called session September 12, 1871, and adjourned December 2, 1871. W. H. Sinclair was speaker of the adjourned session.

<sup>2</sup> First regular session, January 10, 1871.





# INDEX.

## A.

- Abbott, Jo, 400, 406.
- Abolition party, original secessionists, 302; attitude of, towards Texas boundary question, 322, 323; fanatical and lawless conduct of, 348.
- Acebedo, Father Antonio, 56.
- Acequia*, 52.
- Acoquash, a Waco chief, 262.
- Acquisition of territory by the United States, attitude of the North and East towards, 301, 302.
- Actions at law, forms of, abolished, 273.
- Ad interim*, the government of the Republic, 209, 210.
- Adaes, mission San Miguel Cuellar de los, 67; mission and presidio Pilar de los, 68, 69; the Indian tribe of the, 86.
- Adaizan family of Indians, 86.
- Adams, G. W., 333.
- Adams, John Quincy, an original secessionist, 301, 302.
- Administrations: first presidential, of Sam Houston, 250-258; of M. B. Lamar, 263-274; second presidential, of Houston, 279-296; of Anson Jones, 301-310; of Governor Henderson, 307, 321-327; of Governors Wood, Bell, and Pease, 334-341; principal public questions under the several, 1847-57, 337-341; of Governor Runnels, 348-350; of Governor Houston, 350-354; of Governors Lubbock and Murrah, 363-365; of A. J. Hamilton, 374, 375; of J. W. Throckmorton, 375, 376; of E. M. Pease, 376-379; of General J. J. Reynolds, military governor, 379; of Edmund J. Davis, 379-382; of Richard Coke, 389-391; of R. B. Hubbard, 391-393; of Oran M. Roberts, 393-395; of John Ireland, 395-397; of L. S. Ross, 400-402; of J. S. Hogg, 402-406; of C. A. Culberson, 409-418.
- Aes, mission Dolores, among the, 67; an Indian tribe, 85, 86.
- African slave-trade, the, proposition to revive, 350.
- Agricultural and Mechanical College, 392, 395.
- Agricultural products, 438-440.
- Aguayo, Marquis de, governor of Coahuila and Texas, 68, 69.
- Aguayo, mission San Miguel de, 56; mission San José de, 69.
- Ahumada, San Augustin de, presidio of, 72.
- Alabama, volunteers from (1835-36), 202; secedes, 351.
- Alamo, the, history of, 77, 78; siege and fall of, 212-218; ground-plan and restoration of, 213, 217; burial of the heroes of, 218; the flag of, 267; purchased by the State, 396.
- Alarcon, expedition of, 41.
- Alarcon, Martin de, governor of Texas, 67; founds San Antonio de Bejar, 68.
- Alazan, battle of the, 106.
- Alcaldes*, 28, 155.
- Alcantra, battle at the, 268.
- Alexander VI., Pope, establishes the "line of demarcation," 5.
- Alexander, Rev. R., 326.
- Algonquin family of Indians, 87.
- Alguazil*, 27.
- Alibamu, or Alabamas, an Indian tribe, 90.
- Allen, A. C., 256.
- Allen, Ebenezer, 279, 309, 335.
- Allen, Colonel J. K., 186, 202, 256.
- Allen, Richard, 393.
- Allen, Sam T., 170, 185.
- Alliance, the Farmers', 401, 402.
- Almazan, General, acting governor of Texas, 69, 70.
- Almonté, Colonel Juan N., visits Texas and reports population, 156, 431; at battle of San Jacinto, 232, 233.

- Altamira, Marquis de, 72, 75.  
 Amendments: the 13th and 14th, to the United States Constitution, 372, 373; the 15th, 379; to State constitution, on prohibition, 400, 401; to State constitution, on railroad regulation, 402; reorganizing the judicial system, 402, 403; for a Confederate Soldiers' Home, and an elective railroad commission, 410.  
 Alvarez, Señora, her kindness at Goliad, 220.  
 America, discovery of, and early explorations in, 4-21.  
 American colonists forbidden in Mexico, 158, 159; settlers in Texas, influence of, on the Revolution, 166, 167; party, or Know-Nothings, 347.  
 Amichel, the province or land of, 8, 9, 38.  
 Ampudia, General, 288.  
 Anadarkos, the, an Indian tribe, 89, 292.  
 Anahuac, Colonel Bradburn at, 169, 170; expedition against Tenorio at, 183; attacked by Mexican vessel of war, 184.  
*Analysis* of Texas history, 1.  
 Anaquas, an Indian tribe, 89.  
 Anderson, Kenneth L., Vice-President, 295, 296.  
 Anderson, T. S., 350.  
 Andrade, General, 204.  
 Anglo-American colonists, influence of, on the Revolution, 166, 167.  
 Anian, the fabled Straits of, 38.  
 Annexation, suggested by Texas, 244; voted for by the people, 246; proposed to the United States, 253, 254; political agitation respecting, in the United States, 301, 302; diplomacy, politics, and negotiations attending, 303-305; terms of the joint resolutions for, 305, 308, 309; accepted by Texas, 305, 306, 307; final scene in, 310; the several steps towards, 432.  
*Apacheria*, the, 54.  
 Apaches, beginning of the wars with the, 54, 55; in Texas, 62; battle between St. Denis and Lipans and, 66; hostility of, under Sandoval, 71; seek refuge in the missions, 72; ethnology of, 87, 88.  
 Apodaca, viceroy of Mexico, 102, 103, 104.  
 Aranamas, an Indian tribe, 89.  
 Archer, Branch T., activity of, in early revolutionary movements, 169, 170, 176; president of the Consultation, 198; commissioner to the United States, 198, 199; returns to Texas, 243.  
 Archevque L., 63.  
 "Archive War," the, 283, 284.  
 Arcoquisac, mission of, 72.  
 Area of Texas, 436.  
 Arispe, Ramos, 135.  
 Arista, General, 281.  
 Arizona, first explorations in, 40-42.  
 Armijo, governor of New Mexico, 271.  
 Arms, the national coat of, of the Republic, 267.  
 Army, influence of the, in Spanish colonization, 25-34, 47-49; the "Republican," of the "North," invasion of Texas by, 105-107; first Texan, organized, 187; organized by the Consultation, 199; disorganization of, by the Matamoras expedition, 201; Mexican, prepares to invade Texas, 202; Texan, movements of, in the West, under Houston, 202, 203; Mexican, reaches San Antonio, 204; condition of Texan, at beginning of campaign of 1836, 210; Texan, retreats from Gonzales to the Brazos, 224-226; Mexican, progress of, from Bexar to New Washington, 224, 226, 227; both, meet at San Jacinto, 229-233; Mexican, retires from Texas, 235; disorderly conduct of the Texan, 240, 241; reckless and dangerous schemes in the, 251; is disbanded by Houston, 255; raised to repel Mexican invasion (1842-43), 282, 284, 287; of United States, Texas troops in the, during the Mexican War, 331-333; of the Confederate States, Texas troops in the, 365-367.  
 Arredondo, General, 105, 106, 107, 130.  
 Arrest of Texans, Santa Anna issues orders for the, 184, 185.  
 Arroyo Hondo, the, *neutral ground* along, 99, 100.  
 Ashby, H. S. P. ("Stump"), 413.  
 Asile, Champs d', French colony of, 108.  
 Asinais, an Indian tribe, 62; mission and presidio among the, 67, 69, 85, 86.  
 Asylums, the public, 451.  
 Athapascan family of Indians, 87.  
 Attakapan family of Indians, 88.  
 Audiences, royal, in Spanish times, 27.  
 Augustin, Henry W., 171.  
 Aury, Don Luis, "Commodore," 107, 108.  
 Austin, Captain John, 170.  
 Austin, Moses, 129; his colonization enterprise, experiences, and death, 129-131.  
 Austin, Stephen F., 129; succeeds his father, visits Texas and Mexico, and establishes first American colony, 131-137; methods of granting lands by, 132, 136; his influence in Mexico, 135; limits of his first colony, 138; organization of his

government, 138; subsequent colonies of, 139; colony of Williams and, 148; powers of, in governing his colonies, 167, 168; his influence on the legislation of Coahuila and Texas, 171, 172; president of first convention, 172; letter of, to Ramon Musquiz, 173; commissioner to Mexico, experience and captivity there, 174; returns to Texas, 177; Santa Anna's object in his imprisonment, 182; chairman of Committee of Safety at San Felipe, 185; his activity and influence, 186; elected general of the Texan army at Gonzales, 187; his campaign to Bexar, 187-189; commissioner to the United States, 190; his views of independence, 202; speech of, at Louisville, and his labors in the United States, 204; returns to Texas, 243; party devoted to, in early politics, 245; defeated for the Presidency, 245; secretary of state, 246; last labors, character, service, and death, 254.

Austin, the city of, located and capital moved to, 266, 267; government removed from, and "archive war" results, 283, 284.

Austin, William T., 187, 190, 225.

Ayllon, Lucas Vasquez de, 9.

*Ayuntamiento*, 28, 29, 155.

## B.

Bacon, Rev. Sumner, 326.

Bahia, La (see *Goliad*), presidio of, founded, 69; removed, 70; captured by Magee's expedition, 105.

Bailey, Joseph W., 402, 406, 416, 455.

Baker, John R., 286.

Baker, Mosely, 184, 226, 227.

Baker & Borden, publish first newspaper at San Felipe, 197.

Balboa, 6.

Ball, Thomas H., 416.

Ballinger, William P., 391.

Bankruptcy, law for, under the Republic, 274.

Banks: project for establishing a national, for the Republic, 267; constitutional provisions respecting, 317.

Baptist church, the, growth of, 325.

Barr, Robert, 246, 257.

Barradas, General, 158.

Barrett, D. C., 184, 198.

Barrett, General, 368.

Barrios, governor, 71.

Bassett, B. H., 393.

Bastrop, Baron de, aids Austin, 130; land commissioner, 137.

Bastrop (Mina), municipality of, 183.

Battle-field of San Jacinto, description of, 228-230.

Battles: at the Bridge of Calderon, 102; of Rosillo, 106; of the Alazan, 106; of the Medina, 107; of Velasco, 170; of Gonzales, 185, 186; of Concepcion, 187, 188; at capture of Bexar by the Texans, 190-193; of Lipantitlan, 193; of San Patricio, Agua Dulce, and Refugio, 211, 212; at the Alamo, 215-218; at the Coleto, 218, 219; of San Jacinto, 229-234; of Plum Creek, with Indians, 266; of Alcantra, Matamoros, Monterey, and Saltillo (1839-40), 268, 269; of the Salado, 286; of Palo Alto and Resaca de la Palma, 331; of Monterey, 332; noted, of the Civil War (1861-65), 367; of Palmito Ranch, the last of the Civil War, 368.

Bautista, San Juan, mission of, 57, 66.

Baylor, Henry W., 333.

Baylor, John R., 354, 365.

Baylor, R. E. B., 321.

Baylor University, 325.

Bays, Rev. Joseph, 325.

Bean, Ellis P., 98, 146, 169.

Beans, the drawing of, by the Mier prisoners, 289.

Beard, Spruce M., 337.

Beason's Crossing, 225.

Beaujeu, 14, 15.

Bedais, an Indian tribe, 85, 86, 292.

Bee, Barnard E., 242, 257, 259, 269.

Bee, Hamilton P., 291, 333, 367.

Bejar or Bexar, San Antonio de, founded, 68; missions transferred to, 70, 71; captured by Magee's expedition, 106; political department of, 154, 155; loyalty of certain Mexicans at, 183; siege and capture of (1835), 188-193; plan of, and environs, 189, 191; Mexicans enter (1836), 204; siege of the Alamo at, 212-218.

Belgium recognizes Texan independence, 270.

Bell, Charles K., 406.

Bell, James H., 348, 365.

Bell, Josiah H., 134.

Bell, P. Hansborough, in the Mexican War, 332; governor, 335; in Congress, 336.

Bernardino, San, mission of, 57.

Bernardo, San, Bay of, La Salle lands at, 15.

- Bigelow, Horatio, 109.  
 Billingsley, Jesse, 286.  
 Biloxis, the, an Indian tribe, 91, 292.  
 "Bimini," the island of, 6.  
 Bird, James, 286.  
 Bird's Fort, 291.  
 Birdsall, John, 257.  
 Biscay, New, kingdom of, 53.  
 Blanco, Victor, governor, 153, 168.  
 Blount, Stephen W., 208.  
 Boards, of land commissioners, 257; multiplicity of, created in Ireland's administration, 396.  
 Bonaparte, Joseph, king of Spain, 101.  
 Bonaparte, Napoleon, sells Louisiana to the United States, 96.  
 Bonds of the United States donated to the school fund, 338.  
 Boneo, Justo, governor, 71.  
 Bonham, James B., at Bexar and the Alamo, 210, 214, 215, 217.  
 Bonilla, Don Antonio, *Brief Compendium* of, 75.  
 Bonnell, George W., 290.  
 Bonner, Micajah H., 393.  
 Borden, Gail, 176, 197.  
 Borden, Gail, Jr., 176.  
 Borden, John P., 176, 197, 257, 279.  
 Borden P. P., 176.  
 Borden, Thomas H., 176, 197.  
 Boundary, between United States and Spain on the Louisiana border, 96-98; troubles in regard to, 67-100; settled by treaty of 1819, 108, 109; of Texas, provisions for fixing, 257, 269; attempt to extend, over Mexican territory, 281; questions of, to be adjusted by United States, 307; issue of, in politics, 322; its relation to the slavery question, 322, 323; agitation and final settlement of, 337, 338, 434; litigation regarding, in the Greer County case, 416, 417, 434.  
 "Boundary bill," the (1850), 338.  
 Bounties, granted to soldiers by the Consultation, 200, 209; land, nature of titles, 318, 319, 320.  
 Bowie, James, 171, 176, 182; at Conception, 187, 188; at the "Grass fight," 189; sent to relieve San Antonio, 203; at San Antonio, 210; his death in the Alamo, 216.  
 Bowie, Rezin P., 176.  
 Bowles, a Cherokee chief, 136, 264, 265.  
 Bowles, John, son of the above, 265.  
 Bradburn, John D., tyrannical acts of, and his expulsion, 169, 170.  
 Bradford, Captain, massacre of, with his men, at Goliad, 220.  
 Bradley, Thomas H., 170.  
 Branch, A. M., 365, 375.  
 Bravo, Nicolas, 104.  
 Bravo, Rio, 55-57, 66.  
 "Bravo," the, Mexican vessel, 202.  
 Brazil, discovery of, 4, 5.  
 Brazoria, first revolutionary meeting at, 169.  
 Brazos, political department of the, 155.  
 Brazos River, early fort and trading posts on, 109; first settlers on, 133; Houston's retreat to the, 226; Santa Anna crosses, 227.  
 Breese, Captain, at the siege of Bexar, 190-193.  
 Brenham, Richard F., 271, 290.  
 Brewster, H. P., 334, 335.  
 Bridge, Vince's, importance of, at San Jacinto, 230.  
 Brigham, Asa, 279.  
 Briscoe, Andrew, 208.  
 Brister, Colonel, at the siege of Bexar, 190.  
 Britain, Great, relations of, to Texas, 254, 270.  
 Brown, Henry S., 170, 176.  
 Brown, Reuben R., 211.  
 Brown, Thomas J., 403.  
 Brownsville, capture of, by General Banks's expedition, 366.  
 "Brutus," the, a Texan war-ship, 235.  
 Bryan, Guy M., 336, 349.  
 Bryan, Moses Austin, 233.  
 Bryan, William, 282.  
 Bryan, William J., nominated for President, 412, 413.  
 Bryant, David E., 392.  
 Bucareli, mission of, 76.  
 Buchel, August, 332.  
 Buenaventura, San, mission of, 57.  
 Buffalo Bayou, in the campaign of 1836, 227, 228.  
 Bullard, Captain, 107.  
 Bullock, John W., 171.  
 Bureau, the Freedmen's, 377; immigration, established, 379.  
 Burke, R. E., 416.  
 Burleson, Edward, 182, 185, 187; succeeds Austin in command at Bexar, 190; at San Jacinto, 230; in the Ranger service, 255, 264, 265, 266, 286; Vice-President, 274; defeated for President, 295; in the Mexican War, 332.  
 Burnet, David G., 140; colony contract of, 148; judge in Coahuila and Texas,

- 156; in the convention of 1833, 174; President *ad interim*, 209; visits San Jacinto and concludes treaty with Santa Anna, 234, 235; his troubles with Santa Anna's custody, 241; Vice-President, 259; in the Cherokee War, 265; acting President, 270; his extravagant claims for Texas, 272; defeated for the Presidency, 274; secretary of state, 321; United States Senator, 375.
- Burnham's Crossing, 225.
- Burr, Aaron, 100.
- Burroughs, James M., 375.
- Burton, Isaac W., 171, 242, 266.
- Bustamente, President of Mexico, 158, 159; tyrannical conduct and decree of, towards the colonists, 158, 159, 168, 169, 170, 172-174; deposed by Santa Anna, 159, 160.
- C.**
- Cabeza de Vaca, adventures of, in Texas, 39, 40, 61.
- Cabildo*, 28.
- Cabot, John and Sebastian, 4, 18.
- Cabral, Pedro Alvarez de, 5.
- Cabrillo, 11, 42.
- Caddoan family of Indians, 88, 89.
- Caddos, an Indian tribe, 89, 242, 262.
- Cadillac, Governor, 65.
- Calabras, Isla de*, early name for Galveston Island, 107.
- Calderon, battle at the Bridge of, 102.
- Caldwell, C., 376, 378.
- Caldwell, John, 176.
- Caldwell, Matthew, 208, 266, 286.
- Calhoun, John C., favors annexation, 304.
- Calleja, 101.
- Cameron, Ewan, 286; in the Mier expedition, 288, 289.
- Cameron, John, 203.
- Campaigns: of Texan army (1835), 187-193; of 1836, situation at the beginning of, 210; progress of, 211-221; closing of, at San Jacinto, 224-235; political, the first, in Texas, 244-246; for the Presidency in 1838, 258, 259; military, in Northern Mexico (1839-40), 268, 269; political, of 1844, in the United States, on annexation, 304; military, of the Mexican War, 331-334; political, between Houston and Runnels (1859), 350; military, of the Civil War, 365-367; political, of 1869, between Davis and Hamilton, 379; between Davis and Coke, 381; of 1887, on prohibition, 400, 401; of 1892, between Hogg and Clark, 404, 405; of 1894, 409, 410; State and Federal, in 1896, 410-414.
- Campbell, Isaac, 267.
- Campeachy*, name of Lafitte's colony at Galveston, 108.
- Canales, General, in the Mexican revolutionary struggles, 268, 269; in Texas, 284, 285.
- Canary Islands, colonists from, to Texas, 70.
- Candelaria, mission of, 72.
- Canoma, a Caddo chief, 89.
- Cantino, map of, 6.
- Capital, commissioners to locate a permanent, 256, 266; located at Austin on the Colorado, 266, 267; removed temporarily to Houston, 283.
- Capitol, the new State, contracted for and constructed, 395; ceremonies of laying corner-stone and dedication of, 397, 400; description of, 452.
- Captivity of Stephen F. Austin, objects of, 182; of Santa Anna, 233, 235, 240, 250.
- Carbajal, 169, 184.
- Carizos, an Indian tribe, 92.
- "Carpet-baggers," 376.
- Carroll, Daniel S., 294.
- Carson, Samuel P., 209, 240.
- Cartier, Jacques, 13.
- Casas, Las, the "Universal Protector of the Indians," 27.
- Cash, L. L., 290.
- Cassiano, a loyal Mexican, 183.
- Castinado, at Gonzales, 185, 186.
- Castrillon, General, 204, 215, 232.
- Castro, Henri, colony of, 294.
- Castro, a Lipan chief, 88, 266.
- Catholic church, the, in New Spain, 29-34; missions, of New Spain, 44; missionary labors of, in New Mexico and Texas, 47-57; missions, the first, in Eastern Texas, 64, 65; colonists required to belong to, 137; citizens required to belong to, 167; early priests of, in Texas, 324; proposition of Count Farnesé to make it the established church of Texas, 324, 325.
- Cenis, an Indian tribe, 62; missions founded among the, 67; history of the, 86.
- Census, of 1847, by counties, 324; of 1880, 365; of 1890, 406; the several, from 1744 to 1890, 431-435.
- Central National Road, projected, 295.

- Centralists, a political party in Mexico, 158, 268.
- Certificates, land, the several kinds of, 318-320.
- Chambers, Thomas J., 156, 176, 205, 335, 363.
- Champs d'Asile, French colony at, 108.
- Chandler, Captain, in the Snively expedition, 293.
- Character of the early colonists, 429, 430.
- Charles IV., of Spain, tyranny of, 101.
- Charles V., Emperor, 26.
- Cherokees, ethnology of the, 89, 90; chiefs of the, in Mexico, 136; in the Fredonian War, 147; rights of, guaranteed by the Consultation, 197, 199; treaty with (1836), 204; incited to hostility by Mexican agents, 242; war with, and final expulsion of, 264-266; their rights in Texas, 264.
- Chevallie, Major Michel, in the Mexican War, 332.
- Chiefs, Political, under Mexican and Spanish rule, 154, 155.
- Chihuahua, early history of, 51-57.
- Childress, George C., 208.
- Chilpancingo, the Congress of, 102.
- Chilton, George W., 375.
- Chilton, Horace, 402, 454.
- Chiricahua Apaches, 87, 88.
- Chrisman, Horatio, 138.
- Christian or Campbellite church, growth of, 326.
- Christianity, Spanish methods of propagating, 47-53; labors of Franciscans and Jesuits in spreading, 49-57; spread and growth of, in Texas, 323-326.
- Christy, William, 190, 204.
- Churches: the Catholic, in New Spain, 29-34; the early missionary labors of the Catholic, in Mexico and Texas, 47-57; union of State and, under Mexican government, 167; the Catholic, its labors among the Americans in Texas, 324; Catholic, proposition to make it the State church, 324, 325; the Protestant, the labor and growth of, in Texas, 325, 326; statistics of, 450.
- Cibola, the fabled land of, with its Seven Cities, 10, 37, 38, 41, 42.
- Ciguatan, the land of, 10, 37, 41, 42.
- Cities, the Seven, of Cibola or Quivira, 10, 37, 40-42.
- Citizenship, a new kind of, created by the 14th amendment to the United States Constitution, 372, 373.
- Civil Law* of Spain, relations of, to the Texas system, 273.
- Clark, Edward, 332, 336, 350; acting governor, 353, 354; defeated for governor, 363.
- Clark, George, 393, 404, 405.
- Clay, Henry, attitude of, on annexation, 304, 305.
- Clergy, members of the, ineligible to the legislature of the Republic, 316, 317.
- Cleveland, Grover, 396, 406, 411, 412.
- Coahuila, in early times, 53; early missions in, 53-57; Spanish name for, 63; separation of Texas from, determined upon, 172-174; revolution in, 175.
- Coahuila and Texas, State colonization law of, 135; constitution of, adopted, 140; united with New Leon, 152; separated into an independent state, 152, 153; constitutional provisions in regard to, 153; constitution of, 153, 168; governors of, 153, 154; representation in the Congress of, 156; full power of laws of, established in Texas, 168; acts of its Congress unfriendly to Texas, 172; separation of, decided upon by the colonies, 172-174; end of the government of, 175, 176.
- Coahuila, villa de, 57.
- Coahuiltecan family of Indians, 89.
- Coal-fields of Texas, 440.
- Coat of arms of the Republic, 267.
- Cocke, James D., 290.
- Cockrell, J. V., 406.
- Coinage question, the, in State and Federal politics, 405, 409, 410-414.
- Coke, Richard, on the Supreme Court, 375; elected governor, 381; the dramatic scene of his inauguration, 389; United States Senator, 391, 402, 454; death of, 420.
- Coleman, Robert M., 185, 208, 255.
- Coleto, the battle of the, 218, 219.
- Collard, W. E., 403.
- College, the Agricultural and Mechanical, 392, 395.
- Collingsworth, George M., 186.
- Collinsworth, James B., 208, 240, 242, 246, 257, 258, 259.
- Colonial, system, the Spanish, 25-34; contracts of the Austins, 130-141; contracts of the later colonies, 145-149, 264; contracts declared void (1845), 306.
- Colonies: English, in America, 18, 19; Dutch, 19, 20; characteristics of the Spanish, in America, 25-34; in Texas, under Spanish rule, 129; foundation of,

- by the Austins, 130-141; of Martin de Leon, 145; of Green Dewitt, 145; of Hayden Edwards, 146, 147; of Robert Leftwich (Nashville), 147, 148; of Power and Hewitson, 148; of McMullen and McGloin, 148; of Austin and Williams, 148; of Zavala, Burnet, and Vehlein, 148; of Cameron, Beale, Grant, Padillo, and others, 148; condition of, in 1834, 156, 157; Bustamente's tyrannical conduct towards the, 158-160; attitude of the, leading to the Revolution, 166-177; prepare to resist invasion, 183, 184; Peters's colony, 294; Mercer's, 294; other later, 294.
- Colonists, distribution of lands to the, 136, 137; condition of the first, 137; under later contracts, 145-149; character of, in Edwards's colony, 146; prosperity of (1834), 156, 157; from the United States, forbidden in Texas and Mexico, 158, 159; political temper of the, leading to the Revolution, 166-168; first revolutionary meetings of the, 169, 170-174; prepare to resist invasion, 183, 184; under later contracts, 294; character of the early, 429, 430.
- Colonization, the Spanish system of, 25-34; religion as an element in Spanish, 47-53; of Texas, under Spanish rule, 129; by the Austins, 130-139; under Mexican rule, 136-141; under later contractors, 145-149; laws of Mexico, 153; decree of April 6, 1830, affecting, 158; laws of Coahuila and Texas, repealed, 172; revival of contracts for, under the Republic, 294; contracts for, declared void, in 1845, 306.
- Colorado River, explored by La Salle, 15, 16; explored by De Leon, 63; first settlers on the, 133; Houston's retreat to, 225, 226.
- Columbia, meeting at, to call a consultation of the colonists, 184.
- Columbus, Christopher, 4, 5.
- Comanches, mission of San Saba destroyed by the, 72; defeat the Spaniards, 73; ethnology of the, 91; depredations of (1839-41), 265, 266; attempt to make treaty with, 291, 292.
- Commerce, of Texas (1834), 157; treaty of, with England and France, 254; condition of, in 1838, 258; in 1841, 274.
- Commission to regulate railroads, 402.
- Commissioners, to the United States (1835-36), 198, 204; to United States, to secure recognition of independence, 243, 244; to select permanent capital, 256, 266, 267; to run boundary line, 257; to make Indian treaty, 291, 292.
- Committees of safety (1835), 183; the, of the Secession Convention, 352-354.
- Common Law* of England, adopted, 272, 273.
- Community property of husband and wife, 317.
- Compromise, the Missouri, as affecting the Texas boundary, 322, 323; measures of 1850, settling Texas debt and boundary, 337; the effect of those measures, 346; of the International and Great Northern Railroad subsidy, 390.
- Concepcion, La Purissima, mission of, 67; battle at the, in 1835, 187, 188.
- Conchos, the, an Indian tribe, 55.
- Confederate States of America, organized, 352; Texas senators and congressmen of the, 365; Texas troops in the army of, 365, 367.
- Congress, of Chilpanzingo, 102; the Constituent, of Mexico, 152, 153; of Coahuila and Texas, representation in, 156; the First, of the Republic, 246, 256; the Second and Third, 256; the Third, Fourth, Fifth, and Sixth, 272-274; efforts of the Sixth, to relieve the finances, 280; foolish act of, in claiming Mexican territory, 281; passes a "war bill," which is vetoed, 285; time for meeting of, changed, 285; the Seventh, Eighth, and Ninth, 295, 306; special session of the Ninth, on annexation, 305, 306; of the United States, first representatives in, 321; Texas members of (1847-51), 335; members of, from 1851 to 1861, 336, 349; passes the compromise measures of 1850, settling Texas debt and boundary, 338; action of, affecting slavery and States'-rights (1854), 346, 347; of the Confederate States, Texas senators and congressmen in, 365; of United States, adopts the 13th and 14th amendments, 372, 373; attempts to reconstruct the Southern States, 373, 374, 376 382; members of, elected in 1866, 375; Texas members of, refused admission, 376; adopts the 15th amendment, 379; members of (1872-76), 391; members of, elected in 1876, 392; members of, from 1878 to 1882, 393, 394; from 1882 to 1886, 395, 396; from 1886 to 1890, 400; from 1890 to 1896, 402, 406; members elected in 1896, 416; influence of Texas in, 451-456.

- Congressional Reconstruction, methods and results of, 374, 376-379.
- Conrad, Edward, 208.
- Constituent Congress of Mexico*, 152, 153.
- Constitutional, convention, the first (1836), 208, 209; convention of 1845, 305, 306; provisions (1845), 316, 317; amendments, 13th, 14th, and 15th, adopted by Congress, 372, 373, 379; conventions of 1866 and 1869, 375, 377-379; convention of 1875, 390-391; amendments, on prohibition, railroad commission, soldiers' home, and reorganizing the judicial system, 400, 401-403, 410.
- Constitutions: the Federal, of 1824, 152; of Coahuila and Texas, 153; defects of the Mexican, from an American stand-point, 167; loyalty of the Texans to that of 1824, 170, 171, 183; a State, adopted by the convention of 1833, 174; of the Republic, adopted, 209; the State, of 1845, 305, 306, 316, 317; of 1861, 353; of the United States, 13th and 14th amendments to, 372, 373; State, of 1866, 375; of 1869, 377-380; the 15th amendment to the United States, 379; State, of 1876, 390-392; amendments to the State, 402, 403, 410.
- Constitutive acts*, 152.
- Consultation, movements among the colonies for calling a, 183-185; election for, 185; postponed, 187; delegates of, visit the army, 187; meeting and proceedings of, 197-199.
- Contents*, table of, vii-xi.
- Contracts, colonial, under Spanish laws, 129; under Mexican laws, 136-141; of the Austins, 130-141; of later colonies, 145-149; for colonies, revived under the Republic, 294; colonial, declared void, in 1845, 306.
- Conventions: the first, at San Felipe, 172, 173; the second, at San Felipe, 173, 174; a general, called for March 1, 1836, 205; the first constitutional (1836), proceedings of, 208, 209; constitutional, of 1845, 305, 306; the first political, in Texas, 336, 337; the first State Democratic, in Texas, 348; the Secession, 351-353; of the Southern States at Montgomery, Alabama, 352; State constitutional, of 1866, 375; State constitutional, of 1868-69, 377-379; Non-partisan Tax-payers' (1871), 380; Constitutional, of 1875, 390; State Democratic (1878), 393; State Democratic (1892), 404, 405; State Democratic (1894), 409, 410; State and National (1896), of all parties, 412-414.
- Convicts, to be sent to Texas, under the decree of 1830, 159.
- Cooke, Captain, of the United States army, 293.
- Cooke, James R., 287.
- Cooke, Lewis P., 267.
- Cooke, William G., 193, 271, 287, 309, 321.
- Cooper, S. B., 406, 416.
- Cordero, Governor Antonio, 99, 106.
- Cordova, Francisco Hernandez de, 7.
- Cordova, the treaty of, between Spain and Mexico, 104.
- Cordova, Vicente, a Mexican agent among the Indians, 256, 264.
- Coronado, expedition of, 10, 11, 41, 42, 61.
- Corporations, attempts to restrain and regulate, 401, 402, 404.
- "Correo," the, captured by the "San Felipe," 184.
- Cortez, Hernando, conquers Mexico, 7; explorations by, 10, 37.
- Cortina, Juan, a Mexican bandit, raids by, into Texas, 349.
- Corzine, Shelby, an early district judge, 246.
- Cos, General Martin Perfecto de, subdues Coahuila, 175, 176; military governor of Coahuila and Texas, 183; at San Antonio, 187; his defence and defeat at San Antonio, 189-193; prepares for re-invasion, 202; at San Antonio, 204; brings reinforcements to Santa Anna at San Jacinto, 230; is captured, 232.
- Cotonames, an Indian tribe, 89.
- Cottle, Captain George W., 185.
- Cotton, product of, 439, 440.
- "Council of the Indies," the, 26-34.
- Council, the Executive, formed by the municipalities, 186; proceedings of, 197, 198; of the Provisional Government, 198; troubles between Governor Smith and the, 199, 200; favors the Matamoros expedition, 201.
- "Council-house fight," the (1840), 265.
- Counties: organized, under the Republic, 257, 274, 436; under the State government, 324, 436; Greer, 338, 416, 417, 434; lands donated to, for school purposes, 273, 274, 338, 339.
- Courts: the first Supreme, of the Republic, 246; a complete system of, adopted, and procedure therein, 257, 272, 273; the first Supreme, of the State, 321; the Supreme, during the Civil War, 365; the Supreme, changed in 1866 and



- 1869, 375, 378; the Supreme, under Reconstruction, 376, 377; military, in the South during Reconstruction, 377; the Supreme, known as the "Semicolon" court, 381; the Supreme (1874-80), 391; the Supreme, in 1882, 395; complete reorganization of, in 1892, 402, 403.
- Crain, William H., 396, 400, 406, 420.
- Crane, Captain, at the siege of Bexar, 192.
- Crane, M. M., 405.
- Cranford, J. W., 416.
- Crawford, W. C., 208.
- Creeks, the, an Indian tribe, 60.
- Crime and lawlessness, the suppression of, 390.
- Crockett, Davy, at San Antonio and the Alamo, 210; his death in the siege of the Alamo, 217.
- Crockett, John M., lieutenant-governor, 363.
- Croix, General, 75.
- Crops, agricultural, statistics of, 439, 440.
- Crosby, Stephen, 336.
- Crowley, Miles, 406.
- Cuba, Lopez's expedition to, 350.
- Cuellar, San Miguel, de los Adaes, mission of, 67.
- Cuernavaca, the *Plan* of, 175.
- Culberson, Charles A., elected governor, 409; his administrations, 410, 415, 416.
- Culberson, David B., 392, 393, 395, 400, 406, 455.
- "Cushatta trace," the, a pioneer road of Texas, 91.
- Cushattas, the, an Indian tribe, 60, 61; in Magee's expedition, 105; rights of, guaranteed by the Consultation, 167, 199; treaty with (1836), 204; incited to hostility by Mexican agents, 242.
- Custom-houses, established, 168; under the Republic, 257.
- D.**
- Daggett, Ephraim M., 333.
- Daingerfield, William H., 279.
- Dallas, George M., 304.
- Dancy, John W., 335.
- Darden, Stephen H., 365.
- Darnell, Nicholas H., 307, 334, 335.
- Dashiell, L. T., 415.
- Davidson, W. L., 403.
- Davis, Edmund J., 367, 376, 378; elected governor, 379; character and conduct of his administration, 380; popular uprising against his methods, 380, 381; resists his defeat for governor, but is compelled to yield, 381, 382; candidate for governor, 394.
- Davis, General James, 284, 285.
- Davis, Jefferson, 352.
- Dawson, Captain Nicholas, massacre of his command (1842), 286.
- "Dawson's Massacre," 286.
- De Bray, General X. B., 367.
- De Graffenried, R. C., 416.
- D'Iberville, 65.
- De Leon, Alonzo, expeditions of, to Texas, 63, 64; founds the first mission among the Tejas Indians, in Eastern Texas, 64.
- De Leon, Martin, the colony of, 145.
- De Mezieres, 75.
- De Monts, the Sieur, 13.
- De Soto, Ferdinand, 10, 40, 61.
- De Vaca, Cabeza, Alvar Nuñez, adventures of, in Texas, 39, 40.
- De Witt, Green, 135; the colony of, 145.
- Debt, the public, in 1836, 250; in 1841, 272; provisions for payment of, at annexation, 307, 450; final settlement of (1850), 337, 338, 434; reduction of (1874), 390.
- Declaration: of grievances against Mexico, 198; of Independence voted down in the Consultation, 198; of Independence issued at Goliad, 200; of Texan Independence adopted, 208.
- Decree of April 6, 1830, the, against American colonists, 158, 159; provokes the Revolution in Texas, 159, 160, 168-173.
- Deep water at Galveston, the jetty system for securing, 444.
- Delaware Indians, the, 87, 292.
- Delegates, from the Consultation, visit the army, 187; from Texas to the Confederate States' convention (1861), 352.
- Delgado, Captain, 106.
- "Demarcation," "the Line of," as fixed by Pope Alexander VI., 5.
- Democratic party, attitude of, towards annexation, 301-305; early allegiance of Texas to the, 322, 346; attitude of, on the slavery question, 346-348; first appearance of, as an active power in Texas, 347, 348; holds its first State convention, 348; defeated in Texas in 1859, 350; elects the Thirtieth Legislature, 381; elects the entire State ticket in 1873, 381; assumes control of the State, 389-

391; State convention of (1878), 393; wins the national election of 1884, 396; and of 1892, 406; its conventions and platforms in 1896, 410-412.

Denis, Saint, in Texas, 65-67; is banished and escapes, 67; drives the Spaniards from Eastern Texas, 68.

Departments, the Political, of Mexican Texas, 154, 155.

Devine, Thomas J., 365, 391, 393.

Dickson, David C., 335, 347.

Dimmitt, Philip, 200.

Dimmitt's Point, site of old Fort St. Louis, 15.

Diplomatic, relations of the Republic, 253, 254, 270; relations between United States and Mexico, 254; negotiations for peace and annexation, 294, 301-305.

Discovery, general view of, in the Western Hemisphere, 4, 5; by the Spaniards in America, 5-13; by the French, 13-18; by the English and Dutch, 18-20; by the Spaniards in the region of Texas, 37-44.

Disfranchisement of Southern white men, in Reconstruction times, 377.

Distinguished men of early Texas, 176, 177.

Districts, the first judicial, 156; judicial, of the Republic, 246; land, 257; judges of the first judicial, of the State, 321; Federal judicial, 321, 392; judicial, of the Confederacy, 365.

Dolores, the mission of, in New Leon, 57; mission of, among the Aes in Eastern Texas, 67.

Donations, of lands for military service, 200, 209; of lands for public education, 273, 274, 378, 391, 392; nature of titles to lands by, 318-320; of lands to build the new State capitol, 395.

Donley, Stockton P., 375.

Donoho's, an old-time settlement and trading-post, 226.

Doyle, Father Henry, an early priest, 324.

Drake, Sir Francis, voyages of, 18.

Dubois, Fred T., in the political campaign of 1896, 413.

Duelling prohibited, 317.

Dunham, Robert H., 260.

Dunlap, Richard G., 259.

Dutch, the, discoveries and explorations by, in America, 18-20.

Duval, Captain, massacre of his command, at Goliad, 220.

Duval, Thomas H., a Federal judge, 392.

## E.

Early development of Texas, slow and difficult, 429, 430.

Eastland, William M., 256, 290.

Eberly, Mrs., her exploit in the "archive war," 283.

Ector, M. D., 367, 391.

Education: conditions of (1834), 157; free public, provided for, by the Republic, 273, 274; provisions for, in the Constitution of 1845, 317; early private enterprises for, 327; donations of lands to the cause of, 273, 274, 378, 391, 392, 396; history of the State's benevolence in providing for, 446-449.

Edwards, Asa M., 171.

Edwards, B. W., brother of the above, 147.

Edwards, Hayden, 135; his colony and its troubles, 146, 147, 168; at Nacogdoches, 171.

Edwards, Monroe, 170.

Egg, a Cherokee chief, 265.

Eldridge, Joseph C., 291.

Elections: for the General Consultation, 185; for a general convention, ordered, 205; first regular, of the Republic, 244-246; second general, 258, 259; third general, 274; fourth general, 295, 296; on annexation and adoption of the Constitution of 1845, 306, 307; first State, 307; second State, 334; for Congress (1847-48), 335; for Congress (1851-59), 336, 349; State, of 1857 and 1859, 348, 350; State and congressional, of 1861 and 1863, 363, 365; State, of 1866, 375; of 1869, 379; oppressive laws regulating, under Reconstruction, 378, 379; State, of 1873, 381; of 1876, 390, 391; of 1878, 393; of 1880, 394; of 1882, 395; State and national, of 1884, 396; of 1886 and 1888, 400; of 1890, 402; of 1892, 404-406; of 1894, 410; State and national, of 1896, 414; popular vote at the several State (1836-96), 432, 433, 435, 461, 462; *Table* of, 460-462.

"Eleven league land grants," the nature and origin of, 320.

Elguezabal, Juan José, governor of Coahuila and Texas, 153, 175.

Elisondo, General, 106, 107.

Ellis, Richard, 208, 246.

El Paso del Norte, early history of, 42; founding of, 55.

Emancipation of the negroes, 372, 374.

- "Emigrants' Guide," the, an early newspaper, 197.
- Empresario*, meaning of, 131; end of the system of, 140; powers of an early, 167, 168; system of contracts by, declared at an end, 257.
- Encinal del Perdido (Coletto), battle of the, 218, 219.
- Encomiendas*, the system of, 30.
- England, Texas secures a commercial treaty with, 254; recognizes Texan independence, 270; *Common Law* of, adopted, 272, 273; attitude of, towards annexation, 302, 303.
- English, Captain, at the siege of Bexar, 162.
- English discoveries and explorations in America, 18-20; *Common Law* adopted, 272, 273.
- Enrique, Juan, 63.
- Episcopal church, growth of, in Texas, 326.
- Epperson, B. H., 335, 375.
- Erath, George B., 256.
- Escaray, Father, 57.
- Espada, La, mission of, 71; Texan army at, 187.
- Espejo, Antonio de, 11, 42, 61.
- Espinosa, Father Felix, 66.
- Espiritu Santo, Rio del, early name for the Mississippi, 8; Bay, 63, 64, 68; mission of, 69, 70.
- Espriella, governor, 71.
- Estell, Rev. Milton, 326.
- Estevez, Father Francisco, 57.
- Estremadura, New, Spanish name for Coahuila, 63.
- Esty, Robert, 290.
- Exchequer currency of the Republic, 280.
- Executive Officers: under President Houston's first administration, 257; under Lamar, 259; under Houston's second term, 279; under Anson Jones, 309; under Governor Henderson, 321; under Governor Wood, 334, 335; under Governor Bell, 335; under Governor Pease, 335, 336; under Governor Runnels, 350; under Governors Houston and Clark, 354.
- Exemption, homestead, 273, 317; legal, from forced sales, 317.
- Expeditions: of Pineda, 7, 8, 37, 61; of Garay, 7, 9, 37; of De Narvaez, 10, 38, 39; of Cortez and the Guzmans, 10, 37, 38, 61; of Coronado, 10, 11, 41, 42, 61; of La Salle, 13-18; of De Leon, 63, 64; of St. Denis and Ramon, 65-67; of Parilla, against the Indians, 72-74; Magee's, 105-107; Long's, 109, 110; Perry's, 107, 108; the Matamoros, 200, 201, 202, 203; to Matamoros, revived, 251; filibustering, into Mexico (1839-40), 268, 269; to Santa Fé, 271; to Mier, 287-290; Snively's, 293; filibustering, to Cuba and Nicaragua, 350.
- Exploration, general view of, in the Western Hemisphere, 4; Spanish, in America, 5-13; French, 13-18; English and Dutch, 18-20; early Spanish, in the region of Texas, 37-44; extent of Spanish, in 1687, 61, 62.
- Evans, Lemuel D., 335, 336, 347, 378.

## F.

- Fall of the Alamo, the, 215-218.
- Families, the linguistic, of North American Indians, represented in Texas, 84-93.
- Fannin, Colonel J. W., at the battle of Concepcion, 187, 188; favors the Matamoros expedition, 201, 203; at Goliad, 210; sends relief to Refugio, 211; fails to aid Travis in the Alamo, 215; leaves Goliad and fights the battle of the Coletto, 218, 219; capture and massacre of his command, at Goliad, 220.
- Farias, Gomez, Vice-President of Mexico, 160.
- "Farmers' Alliance," the, 401, 402.
- Farnesé, the Count, proposes to make the Catholic church the State church of Texas, 324, 325.
- Federal, the, government and constitution of Mexico (1824), 152; politics, introduced into Texas, 346-348; judicial district, the first, in Texas, 321; government attempts to *reconstruct* the South, 372-382; judiciary in Texas, 392; election of 1884, 396; election of 1892, 406; politics in 1896, 410-414; affairs, the influence of Texas in, 454-456.
- Federalists, the, in Mexico, 158, 268.
- Felipinas, Nuevas, or New Philippines, early name for Texas, 62.
- "Fence-cutting," era of, in Texas, 396
- Ferdinand VII., 101.
- Ferdinand and Isabella, 26.
- Ferguson, Isaac, 333.
- Fernando, San, villa of, founded, 70.
- Ferris, J. W., 393.
- Fiat* money, 252.
- Fields, a Cherokee chief, 136, 146, 147.

- Fifteenth amendment, the, to the United States Constitution, 379.
- Filibusters, on the Sabine frontier, 100; from Texas into Mexico (1839-40), 268, 269, 287-290; to Cuba and Nicaragua, 350.
- Filisola, General, 204, 224, 234.
- Finances: in 1835-36, 201, 202; of the Republic, at its beginning, 250, 251; Houston's policy towards the, 252; condition of (1838), 258; under Lamar's administration, 267, 270, 272, 273; efforts of Congress to relieve the, 280, 281; in Houston's second administration, 281, 293, 294; at close of Jones's administration, 306; in Pease's administration, 338; under Governor Coke, 390; under Governor Roberts, 394; under Governor Hogg, 406; under Governor Culbertson, 416.
- Financial, panic of 1837, 252; conditions (1838), 258; conditions (1839-42), 267, 270, 272, 273; policy of President Houston, 280; results of his policy, 281, 293, 294; conditions in 1846, 309; policy of Governor Roberts, 394; questions in Federal politics, 405.
- Finley, N. W., 403.
- Fiscales*, 27.
- Fisher, H. C., 403.
- Fisher, S. Rhoads, 176, 208, 246, 257.
- Fisher, William S., 257, 268, 269, 287, 288.
- Fisher and Miller's colony, 294.
- Flaco, a Lipan chief, 88.
- Flag, the, of the Alamo, 217; the national, of the Republic, 267; of San Jacinto, 267.
- Flanagan, J. W., 379.
- Flores, Gaspar, 139.
- Flores, Manuel, a Mexican agent among the Indians, 242, 264, 265.
- Florida, discovery of, 6; the Spaniards in, 65; secedes, 351.
- Fournoy, George M., 351, 354.
- Fly, W. S., 403.
- Foucault, Father, in the Texas missions, 64.
- Fonseca, bishop of Burgos and "Patriarch of the Indies," 26, 27.
- Forbes, John, 203, 204.
- Lord, John S., 333, 349, 354, 366, 368.
- Foreign, relations of the Republic, 253, 254, 258, 270, 302, 303; trade, 441.
- Foreigners, New Spain ruled by, 30, 31.
- Forgery of land titles, 268.
- Fort Bend, 226, 227.
- Fortes: *St. Louis*, built by La Salle, 15-18, 63, 64, 69; *Defiance*, at Goliad, established by Fannin, 211; *Bird's*, 291; *Suuller*, fall of, 354.
- Foster, L. L., 402.
- Fourteenth amendment, the, to the United States Constitution, 372, 373.
- Fowler, Rev. Littleton, 326.
- France, explorations by, in the Western Hemisphere, 13-18; establishes rule in Louisiana, 65; cedes Louisiana to Spain, 72; regains Louisiana and sells it to the United States, 96; commercial treaty with, 254.
- Franciscan friars, missionary labors of, 49, 50, 55, 56; in Texas, 64-67.
- "Franco-Texan Land Company," the, its fraudulent schemes, 270, 271.
- Franklin, Benjamin C., 246.
- Franquis, governor, 71.
- Frauds, in land titles, 253, 268; attempted by the "Franco-Texan Land Company," 270, 271; laws to prevent land, 320.
- "Freedonian War," the, 146, 147, 168.
- Free coinage of silver as a political issue, 405, 412-414.
- "Free grass," 396.
- Freedmen's Bureau, the, 377.
- Freeman, Rev. G. W., 326.
- French, discoveries and explorations in America, 13-18; Huguenots, 12; claim to Texas, validity of, 18; the, in Louisiana, open trade with Texas Indians, 65; seize Spanish forts in Eastern Texas, 68; move to west bank of the Sabine, 71; settlements on Red River, 98; colony under Generals Lallemand and Rigaud, 108.
- Frontier protection, provisions for, 390.
- Fucros*, meaning of, 30, 167.
- Fullenwider, Rev. P. H., 326.

## G.

- Gachupins*, 30.
- Gaines, General Edmund P., 97, 243.
- Gaines, Captain James, 105, 146, 208.
- Gaines, Reuben R., 400, 403.
- Galindo, Bishop, visits Texas, 57.
- Galveston, probably *Malhado Island*, 39, 40; early history of, 107, 108; building of the jetties at, to secure deep water, 444.
- "Galveston Bay and Texas Land Company," 148.
- Galvez, José de, 107.
- Gano, General R. M., 367.
- Gaona, General, 204, 226, 234.

- Garay, Francis de, 7, 9, 37.
- Garcia, Andres, founds El Paso del Norte, 55.
- Garrett, C. C., 403.
- Garrisons established in Texas by Mexico, 159, 169, 170.
- Garza, De la, house of, in San Antonio, 190-193.
- Gavira, Father Lorenzo, 53.
- Geography, the physical, of Texas, xvii.
- "Georgia Battalion," the (1836), 202; massacre of, at Goliad, 220.
- Georgia secedes, 351.
- Gibbs, Barnett, 396.
- Giddings, D. C., 391.
- Gilbert, Sir Humphrey, 18.
- Gillespie, R. A., in the Mexican War, 333.
- Gillett, John S., 333, 335.
- Gillette, Rev. Charles, 326.
- Godoy, Manuel, the "Prince of Peace," 100, 101.
- Goheen, Captain, 185.
- Goliad (see *La Bahía*), 70, 105, 186; declaration of independence at, 200; occupied by Fannin, 210, 211; massacre at, 220.
- Gomez, Stephen, 9.
- Gonzales, General, in the Mexican revolutionary struggles, 368, 369.
- Gonzales, Rafael, governor, 153.
- Gonzales, the town of, founded, 145; municipality of, 183; battle at, 185, 186; Texan army organized at, 187; General Houston retreats from, 218, 224.
- Goodbread, Joseph, in the "Moderator and Regulator War," 260, 291.
- Goodrich, B. B., 208.
- Goribar, José Maria, 153, 175.
- Gould, Robert S., 361.
- Government, the Mexican, character of, as leading to the Texas Revolution, 166, 169; of Coahuila and Texas, destroyed, 175, 176; the provisional, established, 198, 199; troubles of the provisional, 199, 200; of the Republic, *ad interim*, 209, 210; flight of, from Harrisburg, 227; at Velasco, 235; disorderly condition of, following San Jacinto, 240, 241; the permanent, of the Republic, 246, 247; difficulties of the first, 250, 251; critical condition of, in 1841, 272; of the State, inaugurated, 307, 316-318, 321-324; of the Confederate States organized, 352; of Texas, during the Civil War, 363-365; absence of, at the close of the war, 374; during Reconstruction, 375-382; military, in the South after the war, 376, 377, 379; popular democratic, restored in Texas (1874), 389.
- Governors of Texas (1821-35), 153, 154; *Table of*, from 1690 to 1896, 460-462.
- Graham, Malcolm D., 336, 350, 365.
- Granbury, General H. B., 367.
- Grande, Rio, early missions on the, 55-57; Presidio del, 66; operations on the, during the Civil War, 367.
- Granger, General Gordon, in command in Texas, 374.
- Grant, Colonel, at the siege of Bexar, 190.
- Grant, Dr. James, agitates an expedition to Matamoros, 200, 201, 203; campaign and death of, on the Nueces, 210, 211.
- Grant, President U. S., refuses to aid E. J. Davis, 382.
- Grants, of public lands, the several kinds of, 318-320; of lands, to schools, railroads, etc., 339, 340, 378, 391, 392.
- "Grass fight," the, 189.
- Gray, Peter W., 365, 391.
- "Grays," the, from New Orleans, at siege of Bexar, 160, 193; massacre of, at Goliad, 220.
- Grayson, Peter W., 187, 240, 242, 243, 257, 258, 259.
- Great Britain, Texas negotiates a treaty with, 254; recognizes Texan independence, 270; attitude of, towards annexation, 302, 303; excites the jealousy of the United States, 303.
- Gregg, General John, 367.
- Green, General Thomas, 333, 367.
- Green, Thomas Jefferson, 241.
- Greenback party, the, 393.
- Greer County, litigation as to title to, between Texas and the United States, 338, 416, 417, 434.
- Greer, John A., 309, 334, 335.
- Gresham, Walter, 406.
- Griffin, General Charles, military governor of Texas, 376.
- Grijalva, Juan de, expeditions of, 7, 37.
- Grimes, Jesse, 140, 208.
- Grisnold, Bartholomew, 19.
- Grito*, the, meaning of, 103.
- Gritton, Edward, 184.
- Groce's Ferry, 226.
- Grollet, one of La Salle's men, 63.
- Ground-plan* of the Alamo, 213.
- Growth of Texas, in population, 432, 434, 435; of railroads, 441-444.
- Grumbles, John J., 333.
- Guadalupe-Hidalgo, the treaty of 333, 334-

- Guadalupe, early mission of, 55; River, named by De Leon, 63; mission of *Our Lady of*, in Eastern Texas, 67, 76.  
 "Guaranties," the "Three," in the *Plan of Iguala*, 103.  
 Guereña, Father Marcos, 57.  
*Guerra, tierra de*, meaning of, 47.  
 Guerrero, Vicente, 104, 158.  
 "Guide," the "Emigrants'," an early newspaper, 197.  
 Guizot, M., friendly to Texas, 303.  
 "Gulf, West Texas and Pacific Railroad," 339.  
 Gutierrez, Bernardo, in the "Republican Army of the North," or Magee's expedition, 104-106.  
 Guzman, Diego de, 37.  
 Guzman, Nuño de, 37, 38, 61.
- H.
- Habeas Corpus*, the writ of, unknown to the Mexican Constitution, 167.  
*Hacienda*, meaning of, 136; of the Salado, Mier prisoners at, 288, 289.  
 Hall, Sims, 197.  
 Hall, Warren D. C., 170, 176, 187.  
 Hamilton, A. J., 335, 336, 347, 349; provisional governor, 374, 375; in the convention of 1868-69, 378; defeated for governor, 379; opposes E. J. Davis, 380.  
 Hamilton, General James, 247, 270.  
 Hamilton, Morgan C., 378, 380.  
 Hancock, George, 380.  
 Hancock, John, 347, 391, 392, 396.  
 Hancock, General W. S., 377.  
 Handley, Alexander E., 333.  
 Hanks, Rev. Thomas, 325.  
 Hardeman, Bailey, 206, 208, 242.  
 Hardeman, General W. S., 367.  
 Hardin, A. B., 208.  
 Hare, Silas, 400, 402.  
 La Harpe attempts to settle in Texas, 68.  
 "Harriet Lane," the capture of, 366.  
 Harris, John W., 321, 334.  
 Harris, Robert, 290.  
 Harrisburg, the seat of government, 210; burned by Santa Anna, 227.  
 Harrison, General Thomas, 367.  
 Hawley, R. B., 416.  
 Hay, Captain John C. ("Jack"), a noted Ranger, 286; in the Mexican War, 332, 333.  
 Head, H. O., 403.  
*Headrights*, the several kinds of, 253, 318, 319.  
 Hebert, General P. O., 366.  
 Hemphill, John, 259, 287, 321; United States Senator, 348; delegate to Confederate States' convention (1861), 352.  
 Henderson, J. Pinckney, 240, 241, 246; minister to England, 254; in Houston's cabinet, 257; minister to the United States, 279, 304; first governor of Texas, 307; his administration, 316-327; in the Mexican War, 332; United States Senator, and death, 349.  
 Henderson, J. W. ("Smoky"), 335.  
 Hendricks, Thomas A., 396.  
 Henry, John L., 400, 403.  
 Henry, Robert L., 416.  
 Herbert, C. C., 375.  
 Herndon, W. S., 391.  
 Herrera, José Joaquin de, 134, 305, 330.  
 Herrera, General Simon D., 99, 105, 106.  
 Hewitson, James, and James Power, colony of, 148.  
 Hidalgo, Father Francisco, 57.  
 Hidalgo y Costilla, Miguel, the "patriot priest" of Mexico, his career as the father of the Mexican revolution, 101, 102.  
 Highsmith, Samuel, a noted Ranger, 176, 333.  
 Hill, Benjamin, 335.  
 Hill, George W., 279, 309.  
 Hill, William Pinckney, 365.  
 History of Texas, the extent and importance of the subject, 429, 430.  
 Hockley, George W., 230, 257, 279, 303.  
 Hogg, James S., his work as attorney-general, 401; elected governor, 402; his second campaign and election, 404-406.  
 Hogg, General Joseph L., 367.  
 Holland, Bird, 354.  
 Homestead exemption, adopted, 273; in the Constitution of 1845, 317.  
 Hondo, the Arroyo, 99, 100.  
 Hondo River, 63.  
 Hood, General John B., 367; his famous brigade, 367.  
 Horton, Albert C., 259, 266, 307, 321.  
 Horton, Alexander, 171, 182, 202.  
 Hostility, first acts of, by Mexico, 158, 159; feeling of, by Mexico towards popular meetings in Texas, 173; between Governor Smith and the Council, 199, 200; towards Santa Anna after his capture, 240, 241; Indians aroused to, by Mexican agents, 242, 250, 264; of Mexico towards the United States, 242, 243,

- 254; towards President Houston, caused by his vetoes, 285; first act of, in the Mexican War of 1846-48, 331.
- Houston, Sam, in the Convention of 1833, 174; his previous career and advent to Texas, 176, 177; elected commander at Nacogdoches, 185; his views as to the siege of Bexar, 189, 190; in the Consultation, 198; elected commander-in-chief, 199; opposed to the Matamoros expedition, 201; his movements in the west, 202, 203; leaves the army and negotiates an Indian treaty, 203, 204; views of, on independence, 202; in the Convention of 1836, 208, 209; in supreme command of the army, 208; his beginning of the campaign, 212; retreats to the Colorado and Brazos, 218, 224; his movements until the battle of San Jacinto, 225-228; fights and wins that battle, 230-233; is granted leave of absence, 234; protests against the treatment of Santa Anna, 241; first President of the Republic, 245, 246; his cabinet, 246; policies of his administration, 252-254; his vetoes, 252, 253, 285; attitude of, towards annexation, 253, 254, 302-305, 308, 309; disbands the army, 255; members of his cabinet during his first term, 257; rudeness of his life at Houston, 258; in the Congress of the Republic, 274; elected President the second time, 274, 275; his second administration, 279-296; his executive appointments and cabinets, 279; his policies and their results, 279-281, 293, 294; his conduct in regard to the Mexican invasion, 282, 284, 287; his troubles with the navy, 282, 283; vetoes the "war bill," 285; establishes a treaty with the Indians, 291, 292; issues an appeal to foreign powers, 313; elected United States Senator, 321; offered major-generalship in the United States Army, 332; his position on the Kansas-Nebraska bill, and its effect, 347; is defeated for governor, retires from the Senate, 348, 349; his attitude towards Secession, 351-353; is deposed by the convention, 353; his death, 365; his prominence in Federal politics, 454.
- Houston, the town of, founded, 256; rudeness of life at, in early times, 258; the seat of government moved to, in 1842, 283, 284.
- Houston and Texas Central Railroad, built, 339.
- Howard, Volney E., 335.
- Hoxey, Asa, 182.
- Hubbard, Richard B., 381; acting governor, 391-393; defeated for governor in 1878, 393; minister to Japan, 455.
- Hudson, Sir Henry, 19, 20.
- Hughes, Thomas P., 352.
- Huguenots, the, in South Carolina and Florida, 12, 13.
- Humaña, an early Spanish explorer, 61.
- Humanas, the, an Indian tribe, 55, 62.
- Hunt, General Memucan, 240, 241, 253, 255, 257, 259, 274.
- Hunter, John Dunn, 146, 147.
- Hunter, Sam T., 403.
- Hurt, James M., 395, 403.
- Husband and wife, property rights of, under Texas laws, 317.
- Huston, Almazan, 171.
- Huston, General Felix, 240, 241, 247, 255.
- Hutcheson, J. C., 406.

## I.

- Iberville, D', 65.
- Iguala, the *Plan* of, 103, 104.
- Ildefonso, San, the mission of, 57.
- Immigration, early, 140, 141; bureau of, created, 379.
- Imperial Colonization Law of Mexico, 134, 136, 153.
- Independence, of Mexico from Spain, 103, 104; first symptoms of sentiment for, in Texas, 186; views of the Consultation in regard to, 198; growth of the sentiment for, 200; adoption of the Declaration of (1836), 208; recognized by the United States, 244, 253; recognized by England, Belgium, and France, 270.
- "Independence," the, a Texan war-ship, 235; captured by the Mexicans, 255.
- Indians, Spanish methods of dealing with, 47-49; "reduced" and "brave," 48; early troubles with, in Northern Mexico, 53-55; the Apaches, beginning of wars with, 54, 55; the Tobosos, Jumanas, and Tejas, 55, 56; the Tejas, missions founded among, 64-67; the Lipans, battle with, 66; of Eastern Texas, missions and presidios among the, 66, 67; difficulty of civilizing the tribes of, in Texas, 67; early wars with, 70; Apaches and Comanches, 72; raids by, 73, 74; history of the several tribes of, originally dwelling in Texas, 83-93; American, characteristics of, 83, 84; troubles of Austin's colonists with, 138,

- 139; proceedings of the Consultation in regard to the Cherokees and allied bands, 197, 199; treaty with the Cherokees and others (1836), 204; incited to hostility by Mexican agents, 242, 250, 256, 264; Houston's policy towards, 252, 280; raids by, in 1837-38, 255; hostility of, in 1839, 264; war with the Cherokees, followed by general raids, 264-266; make a treaty and trading agreement with Houston (1843), 291, 292; reservations established for, in Texas, 341; fights with (1857-59), 349; are finally removed from Texas, 349; protection against, in recent years, 390.
- Indies, the extent of, under Spanish rule, 26; the Council of the, 26-34.
- Indios reducidos* and *bravos*, 48.
- Industrial growth in Texas, 445.
- Influence of Texas in Federal affairs, 454-456.
- Ingram, Ira, 200, 246.
- Inquisition, the Holy, in Mexico, 31-34.
- Intendancies*, the nature and power of, 33, 34.
- Internal provinces*, the, under Spanish and Mexican rule, 33, 34.
- International and Great Northern Railroad, compromise of the subsidy to, 390.
- Introduction*, xiii-xix.
- Invasion, Santa Anna's plans for, 182; colonies prepare to resist, 183, 184; preparations for, in Mexico, 202; Mexican army of, reaches San Antonio, 204; is defeated and retires after San Jacinto, 224-226; rumors of, in Mexico, 242; of Mexico, reckless schemes for, in the Texan army, 251; of Mexico, by Texans, 268, 269, 287-290; of Texas, by Vasquez and Woll, 281, 282, 285, 286.
- "Invincible," the, a Texan war-ship, 235; captured by Mexicans, 255.
- Ionies, an Indian tribe, 89, 292.
- Ireland, John, 391; governor, 395, 396; his death, 419.
- Irion, Robert A., 257.
- Irish, the, as colonists in Texas, 148; first to declare for independence from Mexico, 200.
- Iron, product of, in Texas, 441.
- "Iron-clad Oath," the, in Reconstruction times, 377.
- Iroquoian family of Indians, 89, 90.
- Isabella, Ferdinand and, 26.
- Isleta, origin of the town of, 42, 43, 55, 92.
- Iturbide, Agustín de, the career of, as emperor of Mexico, 102-104, 134, 135, 152.

## J.

- Jack, Patrick C., 170, 176.
- Jack, William H., 170, 174, 242.
- Jackson, Andrew, attitude of, towards Texas, 242; treatment of Santa Anna by, 250; his views on annexation, 301.
- Jackson, Charles W., in the "Moderator and Regulator" war, 290, 291.
- Jalisco, the state of, revolts against Santa Anna, 160.
- James, John H., 403.
- Jamestown, English colony at, 19.
- Jaranamas, an Indian tribe, 89.
- Jarman, Asa, 171.
- Jealousy of Mexico towards the United States, 168, 169.
- Jefferson, Thomas, purchases Louisiana, 96; sends Philip Nolan to Texas, 98.
- Jennings, Thomas J., 326.
- Jester, George T., 409.
- Jesuits, the, missionary labors of, in Mexico and Texas, 50-55.
- Jesus Maria y José, mission of, in Eastern Texas, 65.
- Jesus, the Society of, labors of, in Mexico and Texas, 50-55.
- Jetties, system of, at Galveston, to secure deep water, 444.
- Jironza, Governor, 56.
- Johns, C. R., 350.
- Johnson, Andrew, becomes President, 372; his method of *reconstructing* the Southern States, 373, 374.
- Johnson, Francis W., 140; at Anahuac, 170, 176; order for the arrest of, from Santa Anna, 184; at the siege of Bexar, 190-193; connected with the Matamoros expedition, 200, 201, 203; at San Patricio, 210; escapes the battle at that place, 211.
- Johnson, Moses, 309.
- Johnson, M. T., 333, 335.
- Johnson, William H., 352.
- Johnston, Albert Sidney, duel of, with General Felix Huston, 255; secretary of war, 259; in the Cherokee War, 265; in the Mexican War, 332; in the Civil War, 367.
- Johnston, General Joseph E., 367.
- Joint resolutions for annexation of Texas, 305-309.
- Joliet, 13.
- Jones, Anson, 257, 279; elected President, 295; his administration, 301-310; calls special session of Congress and a convention to consider annexation, 305; his



- attitude on the subject, 308, 309; his final address, 310.
- Jones, George W., 375, 393, 395.
- Jones, James H., 395.
- Jones, John B., an early district judge, 321.
- Jones, Oliver, 176, 182.
- Jones, Thomas L., 290.
- Jones, William E., 321.
- Jordan, Colonel S. W., 268.
- José, San, de los Nazonis, mission of, 67; removed to Bexar and called San Juan Capristano, 71.
- Judicial, districts, the first, in Texas, 156; system of the Republic, 246, 272, 273; of the State (1845), 316, 321; districts, Federal, 321, 392; officers made elective, 348; districts of the Confederacy, in Texas, 365; system of the State, reorganized (1890-93), 402, 403.
- Judiciary, the first, of the Republic, 246; first, of the State, 321; made elective, 348; of the Confederacy, in Texas, 365; the Federal, in Texas, 392; reorganization of the State, 402, 403.
- Jumanas, the, an Indian tribe, 55, 62.
- Junta de los Rios, mission at, 55.
- Jurisprudence, foundations of the Texas system of, 272, 273.
- Jury trial, unknown to the Mexican constitution, 167.
- K.**
- Kansas-Nebraska bill, the, 346; position of Sam Houston on, 347.
- Karankawan family of Indians, 60.
- Karankawas, ethnology of the, 60; on Galveston Island, 107, 108; troubles of the colonists with the, 138, 139.
- Karnes, Henry W., 187, 255, 256.
- Kaufman, David S., 309, 321, 335, 336.
- Kearby, Jerome C., 411, 413.
- Kechais or Keechies, an Indian tribe, 89, 292.
- Keene, Edmund, attempts a colony in Texas, 129.
- Kemper, Major, in Magee's expedition, 105, 106.
- Kendall, George W., with the Santa Fé expedition, 271.
- Kerisas or Carizos, an Indian tribe, 62.
- Kerr, James, 145, 208.
- Key, W. M., 403.
- Kickapoo Indians, 87.
- Kilgore, C. B., 400, 406.
- Kimball, H. S., 208.
- King, General W. H., 367.
- King, Captain, death of, near Refugio, 211, 212.
- King, Captain, massacre of, with his men, at Goliad, 220.
- Kingdoms, the early, of New Spain or Mexico, 33.
- Kinney, Henry L., 332.
- Kiowan family of Indians, 60.
- Kiowas, ethnology of the, 60; raids by (1840), 266.
- Kleberg, R. J., 416.
- Know-Nothing*, or *American*, party, origin and purposes of the, 346-348; its appearance and following in Texas, 347, 348.
- Koasati or Cushatta, an Indian tribe, 90, 91.
- "Ku-Klux Klan," the, origin and purposes of, 377.
- Kuykendall, Abner, 176.
- L.**
- L'Archeveque, one of La Salle's men, 63.
- La Bahia (see *Goliad*), presidio of, founded at old Fort St. Louis, 69; removed, 70; captured by Magee's expedition, 105; captured by the Texans in 1835, 186; occupied by Fannin, 211; massacre of Texans at, 220.
- L'Espada, mission of, 71; Texan army at (1835), 187.
- La Harpe, attempts of, to settle in Texas, 68.
- La Salle, discoveries and adventures of, 13-18; names and fate of his companions, 17, 18; survivors of his colony captured by the Spaniards, 63, 64.
- Labór*, meaning of, 136.
- Lacy, William Y., 171.
- Lafitte, Jean, the career of, 108-110.
- Laguna, Viceroy of Mexico, 62.
- Lallemand, General, attempts to found a French colony in Texas, 108.
- Lamar, Mirabeau B., at San Jacinto, 229, 230; secretary of war, 234, 240; his attitude towards Santa Anna, 234, 235, 240; troubles over his appointment to command the army, 241; elected Vice-President, 246; elected President, 259; his cabinet, 259; his policies and the general character of his administration, 263, 264; his war on the Cherokees, 264, 265; sickness forces his retirement, 270; authorizes the Santa Fé expedition, 271; his services to the cause of public education, 273, 274; general re-

- sults of his administration, 274; in the Mexican War, 332.
- Land, distribution of, under Mexican colonial system, 136, 137; Spanish and Mexican measurements of, 136; lawless acts of legislature of Coahuila and Texas disposing of, 175; acts of the Consultation in regard to, 199; granted to soldiers of the Revolution, 200, 209; scrip for, worthlessness of, 250, 251; system, confusion and fraud in, 252, 253; office, a general, established, 253, 257, 317; districts, 257; scrip, issued, 257; boards, organized, 257; forgery of titles to, 268; a travelling board to examine titles to, 268; donations of, to public education, 273, 274, 338, 339, 378, 391; public, retained by the State at annexation, 307, 437; laws for the disposition of public, 318-320, 437, 438; donated to railroads, 339, 340, 442-444; disposition of, by the *Reconstruction* Convention (1868-69), 378, 379; donated to education by the Constitution of 1876, 391, 392; donated to build new capitol, 395; donated to the University, 396; importance and value of the public, to Texas, 436-438; use of, for support of the educational system, 446-450.
- Land Company, "Galveston Bay and Texas," 148; "Franco-Texan," 270, 271.
- Landrum, Captain, at the siege of Bexar, 162.
- Lane, Walter P., 333, 367.
- Lang, W. W., 393.
- Language, as the basis of classification of Indian tribes, 84.
- Lanham, S. W. T., 396, 400, 409, 416.
- Larios, Father Juan, an early missionary priest, 56.
- Larios, governor, 71.
- Las Casas, the "Universal Protector of the Indians," 27.
- Latimer, Albert H., 208, 376.
- Lavaca River, named by La Salle, 15.
- Lawlessness and crime, suppression of, 390.
- Laws: early, of New Spain, 29-34; colonization of Mexico, 134-137; of Coahuila and Texas, take effect in Texas, 140; the several, affecting colonization in Mexico and Texas, 153; of April 6, 1830, against colonists from the United States, 153, 159, 168-170; of Coahuila and Texas, unfriendly to the colonies, 171, 172; of the Consultation and provisional government, 198-205; of the First and Second Congresses, 256, 257; of the Third, Fourth, and Fifth Congresses, 272-274; the *Common*, of England, adopted, 272, 273; of the Sixth, Seventh, and Eighth Congresses, 295; of homestead, exemptions, and marital property, duelling, divorce, slavery, etc. (1845), 317; for disposition of public lands, 318-320, 339, 340; conscript (1861-65), 364; election, under *Reconstruction*, 378, 379; passed to restrain and regulate corporations, railroads and "trusts," 401, 404; against prize-fights, 410; passed by the Twenty-fifth Legislature, 415, 416.
- League, as a land measure, 136.
- Lee, Colonel Robert E., service of, on the Rio Grande, 349.
- Lee, William D., 309.
- Letwich, Robert, 135; his colony, 147, 148.
- Legislatures: of Coahuila and Texas, representation in, 156; of Coahuila and Texas, acts of, unfriendly to Texas, 171, 172; lawless disposition of lands by, 174, 175; end of the, in Coahuila and Texas, 175, 176; organization of, under the Constitution of 1845, 316, 317; labors of the First, 318-321, 324; from 1847 to 1857, 337; of 1861, recognizes the Secession Convention, 351-353; of 1866, 375, 376; the Twelfth, and its corrupt acts, 380, 390; the Thirteenth, 381; the Fourteenth, 390; the Fifteenth, 391, 393; the Twenty-fifth, 415, 416; *Table of the Speakers of* (1846-97), 463.
- Leon, Alonzo de, expeditions of, to Texas, 63, 64; establishes missions among the Tejas Indians, 64.
- Leon, New, the state of, 152.
- Leon, Ponce de, 6, 7.
- Leona Vicario (Saltillo), 152.
- Letona, José Maria, governor, 153, 171.
- Lewis, G. K., 333.
- Lewis, Mark B., 283.
- Liberty, the municipality of, established and dissolved, 169.
- Lightfoot, Henry W., 403.
- Lincoln, Abraham, effect of his election in the South, 351; assassination of, 372.
- Lindsey, Livingston, 375-377.
- Linn, John J., 185, 208.
- Linnville, raided by Indians (1840), 266.
- Lipan Indians, early battle with, 66; ethnology of the, 87, 88; in Magee's expedition, 105; aid the Rangers, 266.

Lipantitlan, the battle of, 193.  
 Lipscomb, Abner, 321, 348.  
 Live stock, statistics of, 440.  
 "Lively," the, a steamer, 133.  
 Llewellyn, Captain, at the siege of Bexar, 192.  
 Loan, a public, provided for by the Consultation, 199; secured in the United States, 204; authorized in Congress, 257; from the United States Bank, 268; law for, repealed, 280.  
 Long, Dr. James, the expedition of, 109, 110.  
 Long, J. B., 402.  
 Lopez, Nicolas, an early missionary priest, 56; Father, president of the Texas missions, 75.  
 Lopez's expedition to Cuba, 350.  
 Loreto, Santa Maria de, de la Bahia, or *La Bahia*, presidio of, 69, 70.  
 Louis, St., Fort, built by La Salle, 15, 16-18, 63, 64, 69.  
 Louisiana, named by La Salle, 14; occupied by the French, 65; ceded to Spain, 72; retroceded to France and sold to the United States, 96; colonists in Texas required to come from, 137; secedes, 351.  
 Love, James, 321.  
 Loyalty of Texas to the Constitution of 1824, 170, 171, 183; of certain Texas Mexicans, 183.  
 Lubbock, Frank R., 257, 279, 348, 350; his administration as governor, 363, 364; in the Confederate service, 364.  
 Luis, San, early name for Galveston Island, 107.  
 Lynch's Ferry, 229.

### M.

Macomb, David B., 187.  
 Madero, 169.  
 Magee, Augustus W., expedition by, to Texas, 105, 106.  
 Magellan, 9.  
 Mahan, Patrick, 290.  
 Mails, early provisions for, 197; under the Republic, 257.  
 Makemson, W. K., 410.  
 Malhado Island, 39.  
 Manchola, Don Rafael, 173.  
 Manufactures, statistics of, 445.  
 Manzanet, Father, an early missionary priest, 57; visits Texas and founds missions, 63-65.

Maps: of the physiography of Texas, xviii; the world in the fifteenth century, 2; of 1520, of Gulf of Mexico, 8; Ribero's (1529), 12; of the routes of the early navigators, 19; of Cabeza de Vaca's route across Texas, 39; of the north Mexican states in the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries, 43; of the ground-plan of an old mission, 51; of Coahuila in the seventeenth and eighteenth centuries, 56; showing changes of territory in the eighteenth century, 73; of Texas in the eighteenth century, 76; of the Indian tribes of Texas, 85; of territorial changes (1800-03), 97; of the "Neutral Ground," 99; Austin's, of Texas, 140; of Spanish Texas, 149; of the political departments, 154; of the original municipalities, 155; of San Antonio de Bexar and its environs, 189; of the siege of Bexar, 191; of the Alamo mission, 213; of the routes of the Texan and Mexican armies to San Jacinto, 225; of the region near San Jacinto, 228; of the battle-field of San Jacinto, 231; of territorial changes after annexation, 308; of campaigns of the Mexican War, 332, 333; of territory acquired by the Mexican War, 334; of territorial changes (1845-53), 340; of the river system of Texas, 438; of the railroad system, 443.  
 Margil, Father, an early missionary priest, 66.  
 Marital property rights in Texas, 317.  
 Marquette, 13.  
 Martin, Captain Albert, 185, 214.  
 Martin, Cristobal, 11.  
 Martin, Marion, 395, 406, 410.  
 Martin, Wylie, 226, 227.  
 Martinez, Governor Antonio, relations of, with the Austins, 130, 131; the last Spanish governor of Texas, 153.  
 Martos, governor, 74.  
 Mason, Charles, 279, 309.  
 Mason, C. L., 335.  
 Masons, the first Grand Lodge of, in Texas, 326.  
 Massacre, at the Alamo, 212-218; at Goliad, 220; of Dawson and his men, 286.  
 Matagorda Bay, La Salle lands at, 15.  
 Matamoros, agitation of an expedition to, 200-203; revival of the scheme for an expedition to, 251; battle at (1839), 268; evacuated in the Mexican War, 331.  
 Mateo, Fort San, 13.  
 Maverick, Samuel A., 208.

- Maxey, Sam Bell, 367; elected United States Senator, 391, 402, 454; his death, 418.
- Maxey, Thomas S., 392.
- Mayfield, Allison, 413.
- Measurements of land, Spanish and Mexican system of, 136.
- Mediavilla, Melchor de, governor of Texas, 70, 71.
- Medina River, named by De Leon, 63; battle of the, 107.
- Meetings, the first revolutionary, 169-174; to prepare resistance against Mexico, 183, 184; for calling a general consultation, 184; for conciliating Mexico, 184; at Columbia, 184; in favor of independence, 200.
- Mejia, General, 171.
- Memorials of the Texans to the Mexican government, 172-174.
- Menard, M. B., 208.
- Mendoza, Antonio de, viceroy of New Spain, 27; orders expedition to explore the north, 40, 41.
- Menefee, Thomas, 176.
- Menefee, William, 176, 208, 266, 267.
- Menendez, Pedro de, 12, 13.
- Mercer, Charles Fenton, colony contract of, 294.
- Mescalero Apaches, 87, 88.
- Mexico, early government of, by Spain, 26-34; geographical and political divisions of, under Spanish rule, 33, 34, 43, 44; early Catholic missions in, 49-55; condition of, under Spain, 100; early loyalty of, to Spain, 101; revolution in (1810-21), 101-104; political parties in, 104; independence of, 103, 104; colonization laws of, 134-137, 153; Constituent Congress of, 152; adopts a republican government, 152; begins unfriendly acts towards Texas, 157; progress of revolutions in (1824-35), 157-160; tyranny of, towards Texas, 158-160; defeats the Spanish invasion, 158; attitude of Texas colonists towards, leading to the Revolution, 166-168; further acts of tyranny by, 168-177; jealousy of, towards the United States, 168, 169; memorials of Texas to the government of, 172-174; resents popular meetings in Texas, 173; Santa Anna becomes dictator of, and subdues all the states except Texas, 175, 176; prepares for invasion of Texas, 183, 202; is defeated in campaign of 1835, 187-193; is defeated in campaign of 1836, 224-236; conduct of, after San Jacinto, 242; hostility of, to the United States, 242, 243, 254; reckless schemes for invasion of, by Texans, 251; depredations of, on American commerce, 254; diplomatic relations of, 254; revolutionary movements in (1839-40), 268, 269; filibustering expeditions from Texas into, 268, 269, 271, 287-290; attempts of Texas to claim territory of, followed by invasions of Vasquez and Woll, 281, 282, 285, 286; Mier expedition to, 287-290; agrees to an armistice, which Texas rejects, 303; finally offers peace if annexation is abandoned, 305; revolution in, leads to war with United States, 330; progress and results of the war, 330-334; City of, captured, 333; treaty between United States and, 333, 334.
- Mexico, New, first explorations in, 40-42; missions and Indian wars in, 55; reconquered by Vargas, 55; claimed by Texas, 269, 270, 281; expedition to (1841), 271, 281; relations of, to Texas boundary question, 322, 323; occupied by United States troops, 323; Texas transfers, to United States, 338; military operations in, during the Civil War, 366.
- Mezieres, De, 75.
- Mier expedition, the, 287-290; prisoners of, released, 295.
- Mier y Teran, General, 169.
- Miguel, San, de Aguayo, 56; San, Cuellar de los Adaes, 67, 68.
- Milam, Ben R., 176, 186; at the siege of Bexar, 190, 192.
- Military, power, as an element in Spanish colonization, 25-34, 47-49; evils of, in Mexico, 167; occupation of Texas, attempted in 1831, 169; service, bounties for, 200, 209; situation at beginning of campaign of 1836, 210; operations of that campaign, 215-221, 224-229; roads, projected to Red River and Santa Fé, 270; operations attending Mexican invasion (1842), 282, 284, 287, 288; operations of the Mexican War, 331-333; service of Texans in the Civil War, 365-367; power, use of, in the South during *Reconstruction*, 373, 374, 376, 379.
- Militia, organization of (1835), 185; called out to repel Mexican invasion (1842-43), 282, 284, 287.
- Millard, Henry, 198, 230, 241.
- Miller, James B., 173, 176, 183, 185, 279, 307, 334.
- Miller, James F., 396.

- Miller, Major, spared with his men at the Goliad massacre, 220.
- Miller, W. D., 334.
- Mills, John T., 321, 335.
- Mills, Roger Q., 391-393, 396, 400, 402, 454, 455.
- Mina (Bastrop), municipality of, 183.
- Mina, Xavier, expedition of, 102, 107, 108.
- Mineralogical products of Texas, 440, 441.
- Ministers of the gospel, ineligible to the legislature under Constitution of 1845, 316, 317.
- Missionaries, early Catholic, their methods and labors, 48-57; Franciscan and Jesuit, 49-51; work of, on the Rio Grande and in Coahuila and Texas, 55, 57; visit Texas and found missions, 63-65; failure of, in Texas, 76, 77; Protestant, in Texas, 321-326.
- Missions: the Catholic, of New Spain, 44; history and operation of, in New Spain and Mexico, 47-57; methods of their organization and work, 47-53; plan of building them, 51, 52; early, on the Rio Grande, 55, 56; in Coahuila, Chihuahua, and Texas, 53-57; the first, founded in Eastern Texas, 64, 65; temporarily abandoned, 65; revived and extended by Ramon, 66, 67; names of, in Eastern Texas, 67, 71; troubles of, with the military, 67; San Antonio de Valero, 68; San José de Aguayo, 69; La Bahía, 69, 70; mutations of, in Texas, 68-71; Idefonso, San Saba, San Javier, Candelaria, and Arcoquisac, 72; western, abandoned, 74; eastern, abandoned, 77; failure of the system, 76, 77; the Alamo, siege and fall of, 212-218; of Refugio, battle at, 212; end of the old, 324.
- Mississippi River, the discovery of, 8.
- Mississippi, the State of, secedes, 351.
- Missouri Compromise*, the, relations of, to Texas, 322, 323.
- Mitchell, Major, with Fannin at Goliad, 210.
- Mobile sends aid to the Texas Revolution, 201.
- Mode of life among the early colonists and under the Republic, 258.
- "Moderators" and "Regulators," war between, in East Texas, 290, 291.
- Molano, 268.
- Monclova, early name of, 57; dispute between Saltillo and, as to the capital, 175.
- Money, paper, under the Republic, 252, 270, 272, 280, 393; coinage of gold and silver as, a political issue, 405, 409, 410-414.
- Monks, early missionary labors of the, 47-57.
- Monopolies in New Spain, 30-34.
- Monterey, battle at (1839), 268; battle at (1846), 332.
- "Montezuma," the, a Mexican war-ship, 202.
- Monts, the Sieur de, 13.
- Moore, Commodore, of the Texan navy, his troubles with President Sam Houston, 282, 283.
- Moore, George F., 365, 375, 391, 393.
- Moore, John H., 140, 185, 186, 187, 255, 266, 286.
- Moore, John W., 208.
- Moore, L. W., 400.
- Moqui Indians, discovery of the land of the, 10, 41.
- Morelos, José Maria, a Mexican patriot, 102.
- Morfi, Father Juan Augustin, an early missionary priest, 75.
- Morritt, Henry M., visits Texas and reports on its condition, 244, 431.
- Morgan, James, 282.
- Morgan, S. H., 365.
- Morley, William, 208.
- Morrell, Rev. Z. L., 325.
- Morrill, Amos, 376, 392.
- Morris, Captain Robert C., at the siege of Bexar, 190-193; in the army, 202, 210; killed at Agua Dulce, 211.
- Morton, E. W., 395.
- Muldoon, Father, an early priest among the colonists, 324.
- Municipalities, early, in Texas, 155, 156, 436; population of, in 1834, 156; organize committees of safety, 183; movement among, for calling a consultation, 183-185; form an executive council, 186.
- Murrah, Pendleton, governor, 363-365.
- Muskogean family of Indians, 60.
- Muskogees, a tribe of Indians, 90.
- Musquiz, Ramon, Austin's letter to, 173.
- "Mustangs," the, a military company, massacre of, at Goliad, 220.
- "Mystery," the "Northern," 38.
- McAdoo, J. D., 381.
- McCall, John D., 409.
- McComb, David B., 187.
- McCormick, A. P., 378, 392.
- McCown, Jerome B., 333.
- Mculloch, Ben, in the Rangers, 266; in the Mexican War, 332, 333; in the Civil War, 367.

- McCulloch, Henry E., in the Rangers, 286 ; in the Mexican War, 333 ; in the Civil War, 366.
- McFarland, Thomas S., 171.
- McGloin, Patrick, and John McMullen, colony of, 148.
- McKinley, William, 412.
- McKinney, Collin, 176, 208.
- McKinney, Thomas F., 197.
- McKinstry, George B., 169, 170, 176.
- McLean, W. P., 391, 402.
- McLeod, General Hugh, 265, 271.
- McMullen, John, and Patrick McGloin, colony of, 148.
- N.**
- Nabadaches, an Indian tribe, 89.
- Nacogdoches, early mission near, 67, 72 ; mission at, 76 ; an Indian tribe, 89 ; first American settlements at, 138 ; political department of, 155 ; revolutionary meeting at, 171 ; prepares for revolution, 185.
- Nadaores, missions at, 56.
- Napoleon Bonaparte, sells Louisiana to the United States, 96.
- Narvaez, Panfilo de, conquers Cuba, 6 ; his expedition in the Gulf of Mexico, shipwreck, etc., 10, 38, 39.
- Nashville, the colony, 147, 148.
- Nassonite Indians, missions among the, 67, 71 ; French settlement among the, 68.
- Natchitoches, French fort of, moved to west bank of the Sabine, 71.
- National colonization law of Mexico, 135, 153.
- National railroad, project for building a, through Texas, 339.
- National seal, flag and coat of arms of the Republic, 367.
- Navarro, José Antonio, 183 ; house of, in the siege of Bexar, 191-193 ; in the Convention of 1836, 208 ; in the Santa Fé expedition, 271 ; released and sent to negotiate peace, 305.
- Navy, the Texan, during the Revolution, 235, 236 ; losses of, in 1837, 255 ; appropriation for, 257 ; enlarged and sent to Yucatan, 270 ; recalled and ordered sold, 282, 283 ; General Houston's troubles with, 282, 283.
- Nazonis, mission San José de los, 67, 71 ; or Nassonites, an Indian tribe, 68, 86.
- Neches River, visited by La Salle, 16, 17 ; missions founded on and near the, 66, 67 ; mutations of the missions on the, 68-71.
- Negrete, a Mexican statesman, 104.
- Negro, the, attitude of the Republican party towards, in 1865, 374.
- Neill, Colonel, at San Antonio (1836), 203.
- Neill, H. H., 403.
- "Neutral Ground," the, established on the Sabine, 68-100 ; effect of, on Edwards's colony, 146.
- New Biscay, 53.
- New England, attitude of, towards Secession, territorial extension, etc., 301, 302.
- New Estremadura, 63.
- New Mexico, first explorations in, 40-42 ; missions and Indian wars in, 55 ; reconquered by Vargas, 55 ; claimed by Texas, 269, 270, 281 ; expedition to (1841), 271, 281 ; relations of, to Texas boundary question, 322, 323 ; United States troops occupy, 323, 337 ; Texas finally transfers her claim to, to the United States, 338, 434 ; military operations in, during the Civil War, 366.
- New Orleans, founded, 65 ; ceded to Spain, 72 ; "Grays," the, a volunteer company that aided Texas in the Revolution, 190-193 ; aid from, to Texas, 201.
- New Philippines, 62, 63.
- New Santander, 63.
- New Spain, named, 7 ; extent of, 27, 28 ; character of the government of, 29-34 ; geographical and political divisions of, 33, 34 ; early Catholic missions in, methods, organization, and labors of, 47-57.
- New states, may be formed out of Texas territory, 307, 308 ; effect of this on the *Missouri Compromise* line, 322, 323.
- New Washington, 227, 229.
- New Year's Creek, 133.
- Newspapers : the first, in Texas, 109 ; the "Telegraph" and "Emigrants' Guide," 197 ; condition of, in 1840, 274.
- Nicaragua, Walker's expedition to, 350.
- Nicollet, a Cherokee chief, 136.
- Nizza, Marcos de, expedition of, to "Cibola," 40, 41.
- Nolan, Philip, 98.
- Nombre, de Dios, 56 ; de Jesus Peyotes, 57.
- Non-interference, the doctrine of, in regard to slavery, 346, 347.
- Noonan, George H., 406.
- Normal schools, "Sam Houston" and "Prairie View," 365, 448, 449.
- "North," the "Republican Army of the," or Magee's expedition, 105-107.

North, the, attitude of, towards annexation, 301-305; the growing bitterness between South and, 346-348; the lawless attitude of, towards the South, 348, 349.  
 Norton, A. B., 393.  
 Norton, M. P., 321.  
 Notes, treasury, of the Republic, 252, 257, 267, 268, 272, 280, 294.  
 Nueces River, named, 63; United States troops cross the (1846), 331.  
 Nueva Filipinas, or New Philippines, 62.  
 Nugent, Thomas L., 405, 406, 410, 411.  
 Nuñez, Alvar, Cabeza de Vaca, 39, 40, 61.

## O.

Oajaca, the state of, revolts against Santa Anna, 160.  
 Oath, Governor Houston refuses to take, of allegiance to Secession, 353; the "Iron-clad," in *Reconstruction* times, 377.  
 Occupation, of Texas by the Spaniards, 63-70; of New Mexico by United States troops, 323; of the people of Texas, 435, 436.  
 Ochiltree, Thomas P., 396.  
 Ochiltree, William B., 309, 321, 335, 352.  
 O'Connor, Hugo, governor of Texas, 74.  
 Odin, Bishop, 324.  
 O'Donaju, Don Juan, the last viceroy of Mexico, 104.  
 Office, General Land, established, 253, 257, 317.  
 Officers, distinguished, from Texas, in the Confederate army, 365-367; of the State, removed by military order (1867), 376.  
 Ogden, James M., 290.  
 Ogden, Wesley, 381.  
 Oldham, Williamson S., 352, 365.  
 Olivares, Father Antonio, an early missionary priest, 57, 68.  
 Oñate, Juan de, 11, 42; enters Texas, 61.  
 Ordinances, of the Consultation and provisional government, 198-205; of Secession, adopted, 352; other, of the Secession Convention, 353, 354.  
 Oregon, 301, 304.  
 Orleans, New, founded, 65; ceded to Spain, 72.  
 Orobio, governor, 71.  
 Otermin, 43, 55.  
 Owen, Robert Dale, attempts a colony in Texas, 129.

## P.

Pacific Railroad, the land "reservation" of the, 339.  
 Pajalates, an Indian tribe, 89.  
 Palmas, Rio de las, 9, 38.  
 Palmito Ranch, battle at, the last of the Civil War, 368.  
 Palo Alto, battle of, 331.  
 Panic, the, following the Alamo and Goliad massacres, 218, 224.  
 Panuco River, discovered and named, 7.  
 Paper money, 252, 270, 272, 280, 393.  
 Paredes, Father Alonzo, his account of Texas (1686), 62.  
 Paredes, President *ad interim* of Mexico, 330.  
 Parilla, Diego Ortiz, expedition by, against the Indians, 72, 73.  
 Parmer, Martin, 146.  
 Parras, Mexico, 53, 54.  
 Parties, political, in Mexico, 104, 157-160; two, in Texas, on the subject of revolution, 182, 183; the *Austin* and *Wharton*, in early politics, 245; struggles of, in Mexico (1839-40), 268; the *Houston* and *anti-Houston*, 279; attitude of political, in the United States, on annexation, 301-305; attitude of, on slavery, Secession, etc., in Texas, 346-348; the Republican, theories of, in regard to Secession and Reconstruction, 372-374; the Greenback, 393; State Democratic, divided (1892), 404, 405; the Populist, 405, 411; conventions and platforms of the several, in 1896, 410-414.  
 Paschal, Thomas M., 406.  
 Patacales, an Indian tribe, 89.  
 Patrick, James B., 176, 182.  
 Pay-hay-yuc-co, a Comanche chief, 292.  
 Paz, tierra de, or "land of peace," 48.  
 Peace, "the land of" (*tierra de paz*), 48; party in favor of (1833), 182; concluded between Santa Anna and Burnet, 234, 235; concluded between Mexico and the United States, 333, 334.  
 Pease, Elisha M., 257; his administrations as governor, 335, 336; candidate for governor, 375; appointed provisional governor, 379; resigns, 379; in the "Tax-payers' Convention," 380.  
 Pecos River, early name of, 56.  
 Pedraza, Gomez, 158-160.  
 Peebles, Robert R., 176.  
 Peel, Sir Robert, friendly to Texas, 303.  
 Peñalosa, 61, 62.

- Penasco, Father Francisco, an early missionary priest, 57.
- Pendleton, George C., 402, 406.
- Penitentiaries, 451, 452.
- Perdido, Encinal del (Coletto), battle at the, 218, 219.
- Perez, Colonel, 109.
- Permanent, government of the Republic established, 246, 247; capital, commissioners to locate, 256, 266, 267; capital, located, and government moved to, 266, 267.
- Perote, the castle of, prisoners confined in the, 289, 290; prisoners of, released, 295.
- Perry, Captain Henry, in Magee's expedition, 106, 107; visits Galveston and makes a fatal expedition to Mexico, 107, 108.
- Peters, W. S., colony of, 294.
- Petition, the right of, denied by Mexican government, 174, 175.
- Pettes or Pettus, Captain, massacred with his men at Goliad, 220.
- Phelps, Dr., 241.
- Philip II., king of Spain, 26.
- Philippines, New, early name for Texas, 62, 63.
- Physical geography of Texas, xvii.
- Physiography of Texas, map of, xvii.
- Piedras, Colonel, a Mexican officer, experiences of, in Texas, 169-171.
- Pilar de los Adaes, mission and presidio of, 68, 69.
- Pilgrim, Rev. Thomas, 325.
- Pilsbury, Timothy, 321, 335.
- Pineda, Alonzo Alvarez de, 7, 8; map by (1520), 37; visits the Texas coast, 61.
- Pinzon, Vicente Yañez, 4, 6.
- Pitts, John D., 335.
- Pizarro, 10.
- Placido, a Tonkawa chief, 92.
- Plan, ground, of the Alamo, 213; of San Antonio de Bexar, 189, 191.
- Plan*, meaning of, in Mexican revolutions, 103; of Iguala, 103, 104; of Toluca, 160; of Cuernavaca, 175.
- Platforms of the several political parties (1896), 410-414.
- Pleasants, H. C., 403.
- Plum Creek, battle of, an Indian fight, 266.
- Poe, George W., 257.
- Police, the State, under E. J. Davis's administration, 380; protection by Rangers, 390.
- Political, affairs in Mexico (1823-35), 152-160; departments of Texas, 154, 155; chiefs, 154, 155; parties in Mexico (1824-35), 157-160; influences contributing to the Revolution, 166, 167; campaign, the first, in the Republic, 244-246; campaign of 1838, 258, 259; agitation in the United States regarding annexation, 301-305; tone and temper of New England, 301, 302; affairs in Texas in 1845, 322; conventions, the first, in Texas, 336, 337; affairs (1847-57), 337-341; issues in the United States (1854-57), 346-348; campaigns of 1857 and 1859, 347-350; events leading to the Civil War, 350-353; theories of the Republican party, respecting Secession and Reconstruction, 372-374; events in Texas (1865-74), 374-382; events (1874-86), 389-397; questions (1890-94), 400-406; divisions of early Texas, 436; campaigns and conventions of 1896, 410-414; influence of Texas in Federal affairs, 454-456.
- Politics, early, in Texas, 244; in the United States, on the annexation of Texas, 301-305; in Texas in 1845, 322; from 1847 to 1857, 337-341; Federal, issues of, introduced in Texas, 346-348; the coinage question in, 405, 410-414.
- Polk, James K., elected President on the annexation issue, 304.
- Population of Texas, in 1834, 156; character of, as influencing the Revolution, 166, 167; in 1847, 324; from 1744 to 1850, 431-433; from 1850 to 1897, 433-435; classification of, 431, 435.
- Populist party, the, 405, 411, 413.
- Portilla, Lieutenant, at Goliad, 220.
- Ports of Texas closed by the decree of April 6, 1830, 159, 169.
- Portugal, discoveries by, in America, 5.
- Postal facilities in early times, 197; under the Republic, 257.
- Potter, Robert, 208, 209, 234, 235, 242.
- Poverty of the early colonists, 201; of the Republic, 250, 430, 431.
- Power, James, and James Hewitson, colony of, 148.
- Pre-emption certificates and titles to land, 320, 321.
- Presbyterian church, growth of, in Texas, 326.
- President, the domestic life of the, under the first administration, 258.
- Presidential *Reconstruction*, 373-376; election of 1884, 396; election of 1892, 406; election of 1896, 410, 414.



- Presidio*, meaning of, 52; del Rio Grande, 66; de los Tejas, 69, 70; in Eastern Texas abandoned, 75.
- Price, Captain John T., in the Mexican War, 331-333.
- Priests and preachers, ineligible to the legislature, 316, 317; early labors of, 324-326.
- "Priests' House," the, in the siege of Bexar, 191-193.
- Prisoners, of the Mier expedition, fate of, 288-290; of the Santa Fé expedition, fate of, 290.
- Prize-fights, law against, passed, 410.
- Products, agricultural and mineral, 438-441.
- Progress of Texas, *Review of*, 429-436.
- Prohibition, constitutional amendment for, defeated, 400, 401.
- Pronunciamento*, meaning of, 103.
- Pronunciation, key to, xi.
- Property, public, ceded to United States, 307; of husband and wife, 317; of United States surrendered to Texas, 352.
- Protection of the frontier, 390.
- Protestant churches, labors of, in Texas, 324-326.
- Provinces*, the *Internal*, of Mexico or New Spain, 33, 34.
- Provisional government, of Coahuila and Texas, 152, 153; of Texas, established, proceedings and troubles of, 198-200; of Texas, at the close of the Civil War, 374, 375.
- Proviso*, the *Wilmot*, effect of, upon Texas, 323.
- Public asylums, 451.
- Public buildings, at the capital, 452.
- Public debt, 250, 258, 272; provision for, at annexation, 307, 434; final settlement of that of the Republic, 337; reduction of (1874), 390.
- Public free schools, provisions for, 273, 274, 446-449.
- Public lands, 257; donated to public schools, 273, 274; retained by Texas at annexation, 307; constitutional provisions respecting, 317, 378, 379, 391, 392; laws for disposition of, 318, 319, 339, 340, 378, 391, 392; donated to build a new capitol, 395; donated to the University, 396; donated to railroads, 339, 340, 441-444; the importance and value of, to Texas, 436-438.
- Public property of the Republic, ceded to the United States, 307; of the United States surrendered to Texas in 1861, 352.
- Public questions, following annexation, 322; from 1847 to 1857, 337-341.
- Puebla, the state of, revolts against Santa Anna, 160.
- Pueblo*, meaning of, 52.
- Pueblo Indians, the, first discovery of, 10, 41; in Texas, 92.
- Purissima, La, Concepcion, mission of, 67.

## Q.

- Questions, public, following annexation, 322; political and public, from 1847 to 1857, 337-341.
- Quincy, Josiah, an original secessionist, 302.
- Quintana, a minister under Iturbide, 134.
- Quivira, the fabled land of, 10, 37, 41, 42, 61, 62.

## R.

- Railroads, first enterprises for building, 339; donation of lands for constructing, 339, 340, 442, 443; corrupt subsidies to, 380, 381, 390; regulation of, by the State, by law and a commission, 401, 402, 404; map of the Texas system of, 443; the growth of, in Texas, 441-444.
- Rainey, Anson, 403.
- Rains, J. S., 393.
- Raleigh, Sir Walter, 18.
- Ramon, Captain Diego, relations of, with St. Denis, 66.
- Ramon, Domingo, expedition of, with St. Denis, 66, 67.
- Randolph, C. H., 350.
- Rangers, provision for, by the Consultation, 199; capture of ships by the, at Copano, 242; in Houston's first administration, 252; service by, against Indians, 255, 257, 266, 333, 341, 349, 350; in the Cherokee War, 264, 265; assist in repelling the Mexican invasion, 286; service of, in the Mexican War, 331-333; service of, against Cortina, 349; during the Civil War, 367; in recent times, for frontier and police protection, 390.
- Ravago, Felipe de, 74.
- Raymond, Charles H., 279.
- Raymond, James H., 316, 321, 335.
- Reagan, John H., in Congress, 336, 349; delegate to convention of Confederate States, 352; Postmaster-General of the Confederacy, 364; in Congress, 392, 393, 395; United States Senator, 402, 454;

- railroad commissioner, 402; candidate for governor, 409.
- Rebellion among Indians and Mexicans in Eastern Texas, 256.
- Reconstruction of the Southern States, the Republican theory of, 372, 373; presidential and congressional, methods of, 376-379; of Texas, 374-382.
- Rector, John B., 392.
- Red River, early settlement on, 68; French settlements on, 68; location of, in the Greer County litigation, 416, 417, 434.
- "Red Rovers," the, massacre of, at Goliad, 220.
- Reed, Rev. Isaac, 325.
- Reeves, Reuben A., 365, 391.
- Refugio, mission of, the last founded in Texas, 76; battle at the mission of, 211, 212.
- Rigidores*, meaning of, 28.
- Regulation, of freight and passenger rates on railroads, first law for, 340, 341; laws passed for, 401, 404.
- "Regulators" and "Moderators," war between, in Eastern Texas, 290, 291.
- Reiley, James, 279, 309.
- Religion, as an element in Spanish colonization, 47-53; spread of, by Protestant missionaries in Texas, 324-326; growth and statistics of, 449, 450.
- Repatriamientos*, meaning of, 30.
- Representatives, in Congress, the first, 321; from 1847-51, 335; from 1851-61, 336; in the Confederate Congress, 365; in 1866, 375; from 1872-76, 391; from 1876-78, 392; 1878-82, 393, 394; 1882-86, 395, 396; 1886-90, 400; in 1890, 402; 1892-98, 406.
- Republic, the, of Texas, constitution of, adopted, 209; independence of, established at San Jacinto, 234, 235; first regular election in, 244-246; politics in, 244, 245; difficulties of the first government of, 250, 251, 430, 431; laws passed by first three Congresses of, 256, 257; mode of life under, 258; capital of, located at Austin, 266, 267; national seal, flag, and coat of arms of, 267; annexed to the United States, 302-309; terms of the annexation of, 307; last scene in the life of, 310.
- "Republic of the Rio Grande," attempt to establish the, 268, 269.
- "Republican Army of the North," the, or Magee's expedition, 105-107.
- Republican, government, established in Mexico, 152, 153; party in Mexico, 158.
- Republican party in the United States, its theories in regard to Secession and Reconstruction, 372-374; its attitude towards the negro, 374; odium of, in the South, in 1866, 376; its platforms and conventions in 1896, 410, 412, 413.
- Resaca de la Palma, battle of, 331.
- Reservations, Indian, in Texas, 341.
- Resolutions, joint, of Congress, for annexation of Texas, 305-309; of 1858, for a convention of Southern States, 348, 349.
- Retreat of the Texan army from Gonzales to the Brazos, 224-226.
- Review, a general*, of Texas progress, 429-436.
- Revised Statutes of 1879, 393.
- Revolution, rise, progress, and results of, in Mexico (1810-22), 101-104; methods of a, in Spanish America, 103; progress of, in Mexico (1824-35), 157-160; events leading to the Texas, 166-177; first popular meetings preparatory to, 169-174; agitation preceding, 182-184; first battle of, 185, 186; progress of, 197-205, 210-221, 224-236; ends in victory at San Jacinto, 234-236; in Mexico (1839-40), 268, 269; in Mexico (1845), 330.
- Rice, Captain James O., 265.
- Rigaud, General, attempts French colony in Texas, 108.
- Rio Grande, the, early missions on, 55-57; Presidio del, 66; military operations along, during the Civil War, 367; "the republic of the," 268, 269.
- Ripperda, Baron de, 74.
- River system, the, of Texas, map of, 438.
- Rivera, General, visits Texas, 70.
- Roads, military, projected (1841), 270; the "Central National," 295.
- Roberts, Charles, 290.
- Roberts, Jacob, 333.
- Roberts, Oran M., district judge, 321; elected to the Supreme Court, 348; president of the Secession Convention, 351-353; chief-justice, 365; United States Senator, 375; chief-justice, 391; governor, 393; his administrations, 394, 395.
- Robertson, General Felix, 367.
- Robertson, General Jerome B., 367.
- Robertson, Sawnie, 397.
- Robertson, Sterling C., his colony, 147, 148, 176, 183, 208.
- Robinson, James W., 198, 246.
- Robinson, Joel W., 233.

- Rodriguez, *ex parte*, case of, in the election of 1873, 381.
- Rogers, C. M., 405.
- Rogers, William P., 351.
- Rosario, mission of, 76.
- Rosillo, battle of the, 106.
- Ross, Lawrence Sullivan, 367; governor, 400, 401.
- Ross, Major, in Magee's expedition, 105, 106.
- Ross, Colonel Reuben, 268.
- Ross, Shapley P., 333.
- Rowe, Joseph, 259.
- Rowen, William, 290.
- Royal audiences*, in Spanish times, 27.
- Royall, R. R., 186.
- Rubi, Marquis de, 74.
- Ruby, G. T., 378.
- Rueg, Henry, 185.
- "Runaway Scrape," the, 218, 224.
- Runnels, Hardin R., 336; governor, 348-350; campaign between him and Sam Houston (1859), 350.
- Rusk, Thomas, J., 189, 202, 208, 209; joins the army, 226; at the battle of San Jacinto, 233, 234; succeeds to the command of the army, 234; resigns, 341; secretary of war, 246; in the Rangers, 256; chief-justice of the Supreme Court, 259; in the Cherokee War, 265; president of the Convention of 1845, 316; United States Senator, 321; offered major-generalship in Mexican War, 332; his suicide, 348; his influence in the Senate, 454.
- Russell, William I., 140, 170.
- Ruter, Rev. Martin, 326.
- S.**
- Sabin, Chauncey B., 392.
- Sabine River, Spanish settlements on the, 66, 67; mutations of the missions on the, 68-71; the French transfer Natchitoches to the west bank of the, 71; troubles between United States and Spain along the, 97-100; the "neutral ground" established between Arroyo Hondo and the, 98-100.
- Safety, committees of, appointed by the municipalities, 183.
- Saint Denis, expedition of, to Texas and Mexico, 65, 66; establishes missions in Eastern Texas, 66, 67; is banished and escapes, 67; drives the Spaniards from Eastern Texas, 68.
- Salado, early name for the Pecos River, 56.
- Salado, *Hacienda* of the, Mier prisoners at the, 288, 290.
- Salado, the battle of the, 286.
- Salaries, official, under the Republic, 280.
- Salcedo, Manuel de, 105, 106.
- Saltillo, 53; capital of Coahuila and Texas, 152; dispute between Monclova and, as to the capital, 175; battle of (1840), 269.
- San Antonio de Bexar, founded, 68; missions from Eastern Texas transferred to, 70, 71; captured by Magee's expedition, 106; loyalty to Texas of certain Mexicans at, 183; Mexican force occupies, 184; General Cos in command at, 187; besieged and captured by the Texans, 188-193; map of, and its environs, 189, 191; Santa Anna reaches, with army of invasion (1836), 204; military situation at, in the beginning of campaign of 1836, 210; siege and fall of the Alamo at, 212 218; the "Council House fight" at, 265, 266; captured by Vasquez, 281, 282; captured by Woll, 285, 286.
- San Antonio de Valero, mission of, 68.
- San Antonio River, missions on the, 69, 70, 71.
- San Augustine, Florida, founded, 12.
- San Augustine de Ahumada, in Eastern Texas, 72.
- San Bernardino, mission of, 57.
- San Bernardo Bay, La Salle lands at, 15.
- San Buenaventura, mission of, 57.
- San Felipe de Austin, founded, 138; first convention at, 172, 173; second convention at, 173, 174; meeting at, to call a general consultation, 183, 184; conciliatory meeting at, 184; meeting and proceedings of the Consultation at, 197-199; is burned (1836), 226.
- "San Felipe," the, captures "El Correo," 184.
- San Fernando, villa de, founded, 70.
- San Francisco de los Tejas, first Texas mission, founded, 64; revived, 67; removed to San Antonio River, and called *San Francisco de L'Espada*, 71.
- San Francisco Solano, mission of, 68.
- San Ildefonso, mission of, 57, 72.
- San Jacinto, the battle of, 228-234; the flag of, 267.
- San Javier, mission of, 72.
- San José de los Nazonis, mission of, in Eastern Texas, 67; removed to San

- Antonio River, and called *San Juan Capristano*, 71.
- San Juan Bautista, mission of, 57, 66.
- San Juan Capristano, mission of, 71.
- San Luis, early name for Galveston Island, 107.
- San Marcos River, missions on the, 72.
- San Miguel, de Aguayo, 56; Cuellar de los Adaes, 67.
- San Patricio, battle at, 211.
- San Saba, mission of, 72.
- San Salvador, mission of, in New Leon, 57.
- Sandoval, governorship of, 71.
- Santa Anna, Antonio Lopez de, the rise of, 104, 134; in the revolution of 1828-33, 158-160; the hero of Tampico, 158; usurps the government and declares a dictatorship, 160; loyalty of Texans to, 170, 171; conduct of, towards S. F. Austin, 174; declares the *Plan of Cuernavaca*, and subjugates Mexican states, 175, 176; his object in imprisoning Austin, 182; his plans for invading Texas, 183; orders arrest of Texans, 184, 185; prepares army of invasion, 202; reaches San Antonio, 204; his siege and capture of the Alamo, 212-218; orders Goliad massacre, 220; his plans for conquest of Texas, 224; his march from San Antonio to New Washington, 226, 227; is defeated at San Jacinto, 230-233; captured, 233, 234; signs treaties of peace, 235; controversy and trouble as to his treatment, 235, 240, 241; released from captivity, 250; again in power, threatens Texas, 281; orders execution of the Mier prisoners, 289; his attitude towards annexation, 303, 305.
- Santa Fé, the town of, founded, 11, 42; road to, projected, 270; the expedition to (1841), 271; the prisoners of the expedition to, 260, 265; the territory of, 322, 323.
- Santa Maria, mission of, 65.
- Santander, New, or Tamaulipas, 63.
- Santander, Rio, 9.
- Santiago, mission of, 57.
- Santo, Espiritu, Rio del, early name of the Mississippi, 8; Bay, 63, 64; mission of, 69, 70.
- Saucedo, José Antonio, political chief, his troubles with Edwards's colony, 146, 147, 168; first political chief, 154.
- Sayers, Joseph D., 393, 396, 400, 406, 416, 455.
- "Scalawags," meaning of the term, 376.
- Schleicher, Gustav, 392, 393.
- Schools, in 1834, 157; free public, provisions for, 273, 274; in the Constitution of 1845, 317; early private, 327; United States bonds donated to, 338; lands donated to, 338-340; provisions for, in Constitution of 1869, 378, 379; in Constitution of 1876, 391; normal, established, 395, 448, 449; growth and endowment of, 446-449.
- Scott, General Winfield, his campaign in Mexico, 333.
- "Scrape," the "Runaway," 218, 224.
- Scrip, land, worthlessness of, 250, 251; land, issued and agents appointed to sell it, 257.
- Scurry, Richardson, 336, 367.
- Scurry, William R., 332, 367.
- Seal, the national, of the Republic, 267.
- Secession, original attitude of New England towards, 302; of the Southern States, 351, 352; convention called in Texas, 351; proceedings of the convention for, 351-353; convention deposes Governor Sam Houston, 353; the vote on, in the convention, 352; adopted by popular vote, 352; Republican party's theories as to the effect of, 372, 373.
- Seguin, Don Erasmo, 131, 174, 183.
- Seguin, Colonel John N., 218, 268, 269.
- "Semicolon Court," the, 381.
- Seminoles, an Indian tribe, 90.
- Senators from Texas, United States, 321, 348, 349, 352, 375, 379, 391, 402; Confederate States, 365.
- Separate property of husband and wife under Texas laws, 317.
- Separation of Texas from Coahuila demanded, 172-174.
- Sesma, General, 202, 204, 224, 225, 227.
- Settlers, the character of the early, 429, 430.
- "Seven Cities," the, fable of, 72.
- "Seven Years' War," in Europe, relations of, to Texas, 72.
- Sexton, Frank B., 365.
- Shackleford, Captain or Doctor, at the Goliad massacre, 220.
- Shaw, James B., 279, 309, 321, 335.
- Shelby County, "War of the Regulators and Moderators" in, 290, 291.
- Shepard, Seth, 455.
- Shepherd, J. L., 290.
- Shepherd, William M., 257.
- Sheridan, General P. H., in command of military department of Texas, 376.

- Sherman, General Sidney, at San Jacinto, 229, 230; projects the first Texas railroad, 339.
- Shoshonean family of Indians, 91.
- Shuford, A. P., 352.
- Siege, of San Antonio (1835), 188-193; of the Alamo, 212-218; of Mier, 288.
- Silver, the free coinage of, as a political issue, 405, 409-414.
- Simkins, E. J., 403.
- Sims, Bartlett, 176.
- Siouan family of Indians, 91.
- Sitio*, meaning of, as a land measurement, 136.
- Slave-trade, the, proposition to revive, 350.
- Slavery, prohibited by the colonization laws of Mexico, 137; agitation of the question of, as relating to the annexation of Texas, 301, 302; provision respecting, in annexation resolutions, 307, 308; provisions regarding, in Constitution of 1845, 317; as affecting the boundary question, 322, 323; attitude of political parties on, 346-348; lawless agitation against, in the North, 348, 349; prohibited by the thirteenth amendment, 372.
- Slayden, J. W., 416.
- Slidell, John, United States minister to Mexico, 330.
- Smith, Ashbel, 309, 447.
- Smith, Ben Fort, 185, 186, 203.
- Smith, Erastus ("Deaf"), 189, 227, 230.
- Smith, General E. Kirby, 367.
- Smith, George W., 336, 375.
- Smith, Henry, 140, 176; provisional governor, and his trouble with the Council, 198-200; opposed to the Matamoros expedition, 201; candidate for President, 245, 246; secretary of the treasury, 246.
- Smith, Captain Thomas I., 283.
- Smythe, George W., 208, 335.
- Snively, Colonel Jacob, expedition of, 293.
- Social life under the Republic, 258.
- "Society of Jesus," missionary labors of the, 50-57.
- Solano, San Francisco, mission of, 68.
- Solis, Juan Diego de, 6.
- Somervell, General Alexander, 187, 241, 282, 287, 288.
- Sosa, an early Spanish explorer, 61.
- Soto, Ferdinand de, 10, 40, 41.
- South, the, attitude of, towards annexation, 301-305; attitude of, on slavery and States'-rights, 346-348; growing hostility between the North and, 346; is alarmed by the lawless attitude of the North, 348, 349; the States of, secede and form the Confederate States, leading to Civil War, 351-354; the *Reconstruction* of, presidential and congressional, 372-374; arbitrary use of military power in, to force *Reconstruction*, 373-379.
- South Carolina secedes, 351.
- Sovereignty, the doctrine of *squatter*, 346, 347; State, 346-348, 372, 373.
- Spain, discoveries and explorations by, in America, 5-13; her methods of colonization and government in her colonies, 25-34; her mode of Christianizing the Indians, 47-49; the Catholic church of, its early labors in Mexico and Texas, 49-57; extent of her occupation of Texas in 1687, 61, 62; occupies Texas, 63-70; seizes Florida, 65; acquires Louisiana, 72; retrocedes Louisiana, 96; troubles between the United States and, as to boundary, 97-100; relations of, to Mexico, 100, 101; independence of Mexico from, 103, 104; treaty between United States and (1819), 108, 109; colonization laws of, 129; is finally defeated and driven from Mexico, 158; the *Civil Law* of, in Texas, 273.
- Spain, New, named, 7; extent of, 27, 28; character of the government of, 29-34; geographical and political divisions of, 33, 34; missionary work of the Catholic church in, 47-57.
- Spanish, discoveries in America, 5-13; colonial system, characteristics of, 25-34; explorations in region of Texas, 37-44; methods of Christianizing the Indians, 47-49; missions in Mexico and Texas, 49-57; system of colonizing, defects of, 48, 49; occupation of Texas, 61-70; troops retire to Bexar from the Sabine, 68; protest against the French crossing the Sabine, 71; settlements in Texas at end of eighteenth century, 75-79; hostility and depredations towards the United States, 100; rule in Mexico, effects of, 100; victory over the "Republican Army of the North," 107; mode of granting lands to colonists, 129; land measurements, 136; invasion of Mexico defeated (1829), 158; *Civil Law*, 273.
- Speakers of the Texas legislatures (1846-97), *Table* of, 463.
- Squatter sovereignty, the doctrine of, 346, 347.
- St. Louis, Fort, built by La Salle, 15; visited by De Leon, 63, 64; presidio and

- mission founded at, 69; removed from, 70.
- Standard, the national, of the Republic, 267.
- Stapp, Elijah, 208.
- State, of Coahuila and Texas, 152, 153; colonization law of (1825), 153; colonization law of, repealed, 172; Texas determines to separate from, 172-174; lawless acts of the legislature of, towards Texas, 174, 175; the government of, ends, 175, 176; of Texas, is annexed to the United States, 305-308; police, under E. J. Davis, 380; capitol, new, built and dedicated, 395, 397, 400.
- State, union of Church and, 167.
- States, new, may be formed out of Texas, 307, 308; effect of this on *Missouri Compromise* line, 322, 323; the Southern, attitude of, on slavery and States'-rights, 346-348; *Secession* of the Southern, 372-374.
- States'-rights, the doctrine of, 346-348.
- Statistics, of population, 431-435; of political elections, 460-462; agricultural and mineralogical, 438-441; of public lands, 437, 438; of railroads, 441-444; of manufactures, 445; of educational institutions, 446-449; of churches, 450; of taxable wealth, 450.
- Statutes, the Revised, of 1879, 393.
- Stayton, John W., 395, 400, 403.
- Steele, General William, 367.
- Stephens, Alexander, 352.
- Stephens, I. W., 403.
- Stephens, J. H., 416.
- Stephenson, Rev. Henry, 325.
- Sterne, Adolphus, 176, 190.
- Stevenson, Adlai E., 406.
- Stewart, Charles, 395, 400.
- Stewart, Charles B., 170, 208.
- Stockdale, Fletcher S., 363.
- Storey, L. J., 394.
- Storming, the, of Bexar, 190-193; of the Alamo, 215-217.
- "Straits of Anian," the, the fable of, 38.
- Subdelegaciones*, meaning of, 33.
- Sublett, Phil A., 171.
- Subsidies, to railroads, corrupt granting of, 380, 390; modification of these acts, 381, 390.
- Suggestions to Teachers*, v., vi.
- Sumter, Fort, fall of, 354.
- Superintendent of public education created, 379.
- Suppression of lawlessness and crime, 390.
- Supreme Court, the first, of the Republic, 246; the first, of the State, 321; during the Civil War, 365; changed in 1866, 375; changed again in 1869, 378; under Reconstruction, 376, 377; in the "Semi-colon case," 381; from 1874 to 1880, 391; in 1882, 395; in later years, 403.
- Swisher, James G., 208.
- Swisher, John M., 335.
- Sylvester, James A., captures Santa Anna, 233.
- System, the Spanish colonial, 25-34; of missionary labor in New Spain, 47-57; defects of the Spanish, 48, 49; the land, condition of (1837), 252; legal and judicial, founded, 272, 273; the land, peculiarities of, 318, 319; of public free schools, 339; the judicial, reorganized, 402, 403; the river, map of, 438; the railroad, map of, 443.

## T.

- Tables*: of the governors (1690-1897), 460; of elections (1835-96), 461, 462; of legislatures and the Speaker in each (1846-97), 463.
- Tachies, an Indian tribe, 89.
- Tacomias, an Indian tribe, 89.
- Tamaquez, an Indian tribe, 89.
- Tamaulipas, or New Santander, the State of, 63.
- Tañoan family of Indians, 92.
- Tarleton, B. D., 403.
- Tarrant, E. H., 292, 334.
- Tawakana, or Tehuacana, an Indian tribe, 89; in Magee's expedition, 105; treaty with, 292.
- Taxable wealth, statistics of, 395, 450.
- Taxation, levied on colonists by custom-houses, 168, 169; system of, under the provisional government, 201; under the Republic, 257; exorbitant, under *Reconstruction*, 380; reduction of, 390.
- Taxpayers' Convention, in 1871, 380.
- Taylor, Captain, 107.
- Taylor, Robert H., 333, 381.
- Taylor, General Zachary, in the Mexican War, 330-332.
- Teachers, Suggestions to*, v., vi.
- Teguas, an Indian tribe, 92.
- Tehuacanas, or Tawakanas, an Indian tribe, 89, 105, 292.
- Tejanos, an Indian tribe, 89.
- Tejas, the tribe of the, 38; Coronado meets with them, 42; the land of the,

- early account of, 55, 56, 62; name of *Texas* derived from, 62; visited by De Leon, 64; missions founded among the, 64-67; accompany St. Denis on his expedition to the Rio Grande, 66; mission and presidio of, abandoned, and transferred to Bexar, 70, 71; further mention of, 85, 86.
- "Telegraph," the, an early newspaper, 197.
- Teller, Henry M., 413.
- Tenorio, driven out of Texas, 183; sent to arrest Texans, 184.
- Teran, Don Domingo, governor of Coahuila and Texas, his expedition, 64, 65.
- Teran, General Mier y, 169.
- Terrill, Alexander W., 455.
- Terrill, George W., 279, 292, 301.
- Territory, the North and East opposed to the acquisition of, by the United States, 301, 302; added by the Mexican War, 334.
- Terry, B. F., 366.
- Terry's Rangers, 367.
- Texas, origin of the name, 62.
- "Texas," the United States battle-ship, 417, 418.
- Texas and New Orleans Railroad, the building of the, 339.
- Texas and Pacific Railroad, land and other subsidies to, 380, 381.
- Thirteenth amendment, the, to United States Constitution, 372, 373.
- Thomas, David, 209, 240.
- Thomas, Isaac D., 171.
- Thompson, J. W. N., 290.
- Thomson, Alexander, 147, 325.
- "Three Hundred," the "Original," the first settlers in Austin's colony, 138.
- Throckmorton, James W., governor, 375; removed by military order, 376; in Congress, 392, 395; candidate for governor, 393; his death, 418.
- Thruston, Albert S., 257.
- Tierra de guerra* and *tierra de paz*, meaning of, 47, 48.
- Tiguez, an Indian tribe, 92.
- Timber lands, 436.
- Titles, land, confusion and frauds in (1836-37), 252, 253; forgery of land, 268; the Texas system of land, 318-320.
- Tlaxcaltecs, in Coahuila, 53; brought as colonists to Bexar, 70.
- Tobosos, an Indian tribe, 55.
- Toledo, General, 106, 107.
- Tolsa, General, 204.
- Toluca, the *plan of*, 160.
- Tonkawan family of Indians, 92.
- Tonkawas, the ethnology of the, 92.
- Topolovampo, attempted Spanish colony at, 10.
- Tordesillas, the *Convention of*, 5.
- Torrey, James N., 290.
- Torrey, Thomas, 291.
- Towash, an Indian tribe, 89, 292.
- Trade, in 1834, 157; relations with England and France, 254; in 1840-41, 274; present state of foreign, 444.
- Trading-posts with the Indians, established in 1843, 292, 293.
- Travis, William B., imprisoned at Anahuac, 170; favors war, 182; commands the expedition against Tenorio, 183; order for his arrest, 184, 185; in the army, 202; sent to San Antonio, 203; at Bexar, 210; his heroic defence and death in the Alamo, 212-217.
- Treasury notes of the Republic, issuance and worthlessness of, 252, 257, 267, 268, 272, 280, 294.
- Treaties: of Cordova, 104; of 1819, between Spain and the United States, 108, 109; with the Cherokees, 204; with Santa Anna at San Jacinto and Velasco, 234, 235; commercial, with England and France, 254; with the Indians (1843), 291, 292; of annexation, rejected by the United States Senate, 304; of Guadalupe-Hidalgo, with Mexico, 333, 334.
- Trespalcios, Colonel, 109, 153.
- Trial by jury, unknown to the Mexican law, 167.
- Tribes, Indian, classification, character, and history of, in Texas, 83-93.
- Trinity River, visited by De Leon and missions founded near, 64, 65; early trading-posts on, 109; first settlers on, 138.
- Troops, Mexican, sent to Texas, to enforce tyranny, 168-170; Mexican, occupy San Antonio, 184-186; volunteer, from the United States, to aid the Texas Revolution, 190; disposition of the Texas, at the beginning of the campaign of 1836, 210; movements of the Mexican and Texas, in that campaign, 224-235; United States, work of, on the Texas border, 242; called for, to repel Mexican invasion (1842-43), 282, 284, 287; United States, occupy New Mexico, 323; Texas, in the Mexican War, 331-333; Texas, in the Civil War, 365-367; State, for frontier and police protection, 390.

- Truitt, Alfred M., 333.  
 "Trusts," laws and attempts to suppress, 401.  
 Tunlinson, Captain, in the Rangers, 266.  
 Turner, E. B., Federal judge, 392.  
 Twiggs, General David E., surrenders Federal property to Texas, 352.  
 "Twin Sisters," the, cannon presented to Texas in 1836, 227.  
 Two-thirds rule in Democratic conventions, abolished in Texas, 409.  
 Tyler, President John, attitude of, towards annexation, 303, 304.  
 Tyranny, Mexican, beginning of, towards Texas, 158, 159; continued acts of, lead to the Revolution, 168-177.

## U.

- Ugartachea, Colonel Domingo, at Velasco, 169; at San Antonio, 184, 185; sent for reinforcements, 187.  
 Union, the Mexican, formed, 152, 153; of church and state, 167; Texas annexed to the American, 305-308; Southern States secede from the, 351-353; Civil War of, against the Confederacy, 363-368; troops from Texas in the army of the, 366, 367; theories of the Republican party in regard to the, 372, 373.  
 Union Democrats, 347, 348; men in 1866, attitude of, 376.  
 United States, acquire Louisiana, 96; incursions from the, into Texas, 98; troubles between Spain and, as to boundary, 98-100; treaty between Spain and (1819), 108, 109; first colonists from, to Texas, 130-140; Mexican decree against colonists from, 158, 159; influence of immigration from, on the Texas Revolution, 166, 167; jealousy of Mexico towards, 168, 169; offer to buy Texas, 168, 169; first volunteers from, to Texas, 190, 202, 235; aid from, to the Revolution, 201; volunteers from, killed at Goliad, 220; attitude of, during the Texas Revolution, 242, 243; prevent Indian uprising in Texas, 243; recognize Texan independence, 243, 244, 253; annexation of Texas to the, voted and proposed by Texas, 246, 253, 254; political agitation in the, on annexation, 301-305; annexation to, accomplished, 305-308; slavery agitation in the, as affecting the Texas boundary, 322, 323; troops of the, occupy New Mexico, 323; war of

- the, with Mexico, 330-334; treaty between Mexico and, 333, 334; war between the Confederate States and the, 363-368; thirteenth and fourteenth amendments to the Constitution of, 372, 373; courts of the, in Texas, 321, 392; win the Greer County suit, 416, 417; relative position of Texas in the, 452, 453; influence of Texas in the politics of the, 454-456.  
 University, the State, provided for in 1839, 273, 274; Baylor, 325; the State, first act for establishing, 350; provided for in Constitution of 1876, 391, 392; located and inaugurated, 395, 397; lands donated to, 396; formal opening of, 397; endowment and growth of, 448.  
 Upson, Columbus, 394.  
 Urdinola, Captain, 53.  
 Urrea, General José, sent to Matamoros, 202; marches to San Patricio, 204; defeats the Texans at Agua Dulce and Refugio, 211, 212; at the battle of the Coleto, 218, 219; his movements in the subsequent campaign, 224, 226, 227; is ordered to retire to Victoria, 234.

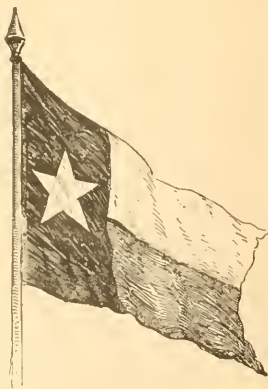
## V.

- Vaca, Cabeza de, Alvar Nuñez, adventures of, in Texas, 39, 40.  
 Valdivia, in Chili, 10.  
 Valero, San Antonio de, mission of, 68.  
 Van Buren, Martin, views of, on annexation, 304.  
 Van Dorn, General Earl, 366.  
 Van Zandt, Isaac, 279, 304, 334.  
 Vara, a land measure, 136.  
 Vasquez, General Rafael, captures San Antonio, 281, 282.  
 Vehlein, Joseph, colony of, 148.  
 Velasco, battle at (1832), 170.  
 Venados, an Indian tribe, 89.  
 Veramendi, Juan Martin, 171; the house of, in the siege of Bexar, 190-193.  
 Verazzani, 13.  
 Vespuccius, Americus, 4.  
 Vetoes, of President Sam Houston, 252, 253; of Governor Culbertson, 415.  
 Viceroy, the powers of the, 27, 28; condition of Mexico under the, 100; the last of the, 104.  
 Victoria, Guadalupe, first President of Mexico, 157, 158.  
 Victoria, the town of, founded, 145; raided by Indians (1840), 266.



- Vidauri y Villaseñor, Francisco, governor, 153.
- Viesca, Augustin, the last governor of Coahuila and Texas, 153, 154, 175.
- Viesca, José Maria, governor, 153.
- Villa*, the meaning of, 52.
- Villafañe, 12.
- Vince's bridge, importance of, at San Jacinto, 230.
- Viscaino, Sebastian, 11, 42.
- Volunteers, from the United States, to aid Texas Revolution, 190, 202, 235; from the United States, massacred at Goliad, 220; called for, to repel Mexican invasion (1842-43), 282, 284, 287.
- Vote, on the *Secession Ordinance*, 352; of allegiance to the Confederacy, 353; in the several State elections (1836-96), 432, 435, 461, 462.
- W.**
- Wacos, an Indian tribe, 89; treaty with, 291.
- Waggener, Leslie, 419, 420.
- Walker, Moses B., 381.
- Walker, Captain Samuel H., in the Mexican War, 331-333.
- Walker's expedition to Nicaragua, 350.
- Wallace, J. W. E., 186, 210.
- Wallace, William A. A., 333.
- Wallace, W. J., 286.
- Waller, Edwin, 208, 267, 334, 354.
- "War," the "land of," meaning of, 47.
- War: with Indians in Northern Mexico, beginning of, 53-55; with Indians in Texas, 71; the "Seven Years," in Europe, 72; the Fredonian, 146, 147, 168; party in favor of (1833-34), 182; beginning of the, for independence, 185, 186; progress of, 187, 190, 193, 210, 215-221; successful end of, at San Jacinto, 224-235; with the Cherokees, 264, 265; general Indian (1839-41), 265, 266; in Northern Mexico (1839-40), 268, 269; with Mexico, threatened (1842), 282, 284, 287; the "archive," 283, 284; against Mexico, bill for, passed and vetoed by Houston, 285; between the "Regulators" and "Moderators," 290, 291; the Mexican (1846-48), 330-334; causes and events leading to the Civil, 346-354; service of Texas troops in the Civil, 365-367; disorderly state of the country at the close of the Civil, 374.
- Ward, Matthew, 349.
- Ward, Thomas William, 279, 309, 321, 335.
- Ward, Major William, commands the "Georgia Battalion," 202; at Goliad, 210; sent to relieve Refugio, his battle there, 211, 212; massacred with his men at Goliad, 220.
- Washington, New, Santa Anna at, 227, 229.
- Washington, on the Brazos, old fort at, 109; constitutional convention at (1836), 208, 209; capital moved to, 287.
- Watrous, John C., 259, 321, 392.
- Watson, Thomas E., 413.
- Waul, General Thomas N., 336, 349, 352, 367.
- Wealth, the taxable, of Texas, increase in, 395, 450.
- Webb, James, 335.
- Wellborn, Olin, 393, 395.
- West, Charles S., 354, 393, 395, 397.
- West, Claiborne, 176, 208.
- Westover, Captain, at Lipantitlan, 193.
- Whaling, Henry, 290.
- Wharton, John A., 176, 182, 198, 233, 242, 245, 255.
- Wharton, General John A., in the Civil War, 367.
- Wharton, William H., 140; commissioner to Mexico, 173; president of the second convention, 173; in favor of war, 182; in the army, 187; commissioner to the United States, 190; his views in regard to independence, 198, 199; returns to Texas, 243; political activity of, 245; minister to the United States, 247, 253, 257; captured by the Mexicans, 255; his death, 255.
- Wheeler, Royall T., 321, 348, 365.
- Wheeler, T. B., 400.
- Whig party, the, attitude of, towards annexation, 301-305; its attitude on slavery, 346; its destruction, 346, 347.
- White, F. M., 350.
- White, Jesse, 176.
- White, John P., 391, 395.
- Whitfield, General, 367; his legion, 367.
- Whitney, William C., 412.
- Wichitas, an Indian tribe, 89.
- Wife, property rights of the, under Texas laws, 317.
- Wigfall, Louis T., 349, 352, 365, 367.
- Wilcox, John A., 365.
- Wilkinson, General James, 97, 99, 135.
- Williams, F. A., 403.
- Williams, Lemuel H., 352.

- Williams, Samuel M., 138; colony of Austin and, 148; commissioner to Mexico, 303.
- Williamson, Robert M., 140, 170, 176, 182, 184, 185, 246.
- Willie, Asa H., 375, 391, 395.
- Willie, James, 336.
- Wills, the statute of, adopted, 257.
- Willson, Sam A., 393, 395.
- Winnot proviso*, the, effect of, on slavery and the Texas boundary question, 323, 346.
- Wilson, Rev. Hugh, 326.
- Wing, Martin Carroll, 290.
- Winkler, General C. M., 367, 391.
- Winston, George T., 420.
- Wintuissen, governor, 71.
- Witt, Preston, 333.
- Woll, General, 204, 225, 227; captures San Antonio, 285, 286; is defeated at the battle of the Salado, 286.
- Wood, George T., in the Mexican War, 332; governor, 334, 335.
- Wooten, Thomas D., 447.
- Wright, Arvin, 378.
- Wright, George W., 352.
- Wright, W. B., 365.
- Wyatt, Colonel, in the Texas Revolution, 202.
- Y.
- Yoakum, C. H., 406.
- Young, W. C., 366.
- Ysleta, origin of the town of, 42, 43, 55.
- Yucatan, Texan navy sent to aid revolution in, 270.
- Z.
- Zacatecas, the State of, revolts against Santa Anna, 160, 175.
- Zambrano, a Mexican patriot loyal to Texas, 183; order for the arrest of, 184. "Zambrano Row," the, in the siege of Bexar, 191-193.
- Zapata, Colonel, 268.
- Zavala, Lorenzo de, colony of, 148; in Mexico, 158; comes to Texas, 184; efforts to arrest, 184; issues an address, 184, 185; in the convention of 1836, 208; Vice-President of the provisional government, 209; in the army, 226, 233; his death, 246.
- Zavaleta, Juan de, an early missionary priest, 56.
- Zuñi Indians, discovery of the land of the, 10, 41.
- Zuniga, Espiritu Santo de, mission of (see *La Bahia*), 69, 70.



















LIBRARY OF CONGRESS



0 014 646 381 2

